PREFACE

The rapid technological progress of the 1960s is characterized by the advanced systems produced during this period. The Apollo spacecraft, the metroliner, jet aircraft capable of carrying several hundred passengers, commercial nuclear power plants, and high-speed data processing facilities stand out as examples. These systems are highly visible and have had a marked effect on the American public. They represent what we accept as milestones of "progress."

Advances made in the life sciences during the 1960s are not as visible and only now are being accepted by the public as comparable in importance to progress in the physical and engineering sciences. It now is becoming very clear that a body of life sciences information is needed not only to determine the best way in which to utilize man in complex systems, but also to assess the impact of system operation on man. In this latter sense, we refer to impact on all mankind and not just to effects on humans working within a system.

As the problems of living in a technological age become more obvious, work must be accelerated towards solutions for human-oriented issues. Fortunately, there is a substantial body of life sciences data upon which one may draw. Although not generally recognized, basic research in the life sciences has kept pace with that in the physical sciences during recent years. In 1970, Federal expenditures in this field approached 700 million dollars, a fourfold increase over those of 1960. Data collected by the National Science Foundation indicate that, in 1969, basic research in the life sciences, social sciences, and psychology received 52 percent of the total Federal basic research funds, as opposed to 47 percent for the physical sciences, engineering sciences and mathematics.

This revision of the Bioastronautics Data Book was prepared in order to bring together the essentials of the large body of human research information generated in recent years and to present it in a form suitable for engineers and others concerned with the development and evaluation of modern systems. This effort represents an updating and expansion of an earlier document prepared for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration in 1964 by Webb Associates. The revision was prepared under the guidance of Working Group 5 of the Committee on Hearing,
Bioacoustics and Biomechanics of the National Academy of Sciences. Members of this group include:

A. Pharo Gagge, Ph.D, Chairman
Walton L. Jones, M.D.
Milton A. Whitcomb, Ph.D
Gilbert C. Toihurst, Ph.D
Donald P. Woodward, Ph.D
Randall M. Chambers, Ph.D
Henning E. von Gierke, Ph.D
Edward J. Baldes, Ph.D

The revised Bioastronautics Data Book was prepared by BioTechnology, Inc. under contract to the Office of Naval Research with support from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration. It deals with a substantial array of content areas within the broad domain of life sciences and presents primarily that information deemed of value for system design and evaluation. We in NASA trust that it will prove as useful as the earlier Data Book and that it will contribute to solutions for some of the pressing problems in human ecology now faced by man.

Charles A. Berry, M.D.
NASA Director for Life Sciences
National Aeronautics and Space Administration

Walton L. Jones, M.D.
Deputy NASA Director for Life Sciences
National Aeronautics and Space Administration
### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Barometric Pressure</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Survival Under Near-Vacuum Conditions</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Tolerance for Low Barometric Pressures</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Tolerance for Gaseous Environments Composed of Air</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Tolerance for High Barometric Pressures</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in Barometric Pressure</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Atmosphere</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Considerations</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Dioxide</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Inert Gases</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Gaseous Compounds</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Temperature</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological Parameters</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy Balance Equation</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat Transfer Equations</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Comfort</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat Stress</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold Stress</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothing</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Sustained Linear Acceleration</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective Effects of Sustained Acceleration</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological Effects of Sustained Acceleration</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolerance to Sustained Acceleration</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Under Sustained Acceleration</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Rotary Acceleration</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective Reactions and Tolerance</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance During Rotary Acceleration</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological Effects of Rotary Acceleration</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pathological Effects of Rotary Acceleration</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Impact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms and Definitions</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The &quot;G&quot; System of Units</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpreting the Data</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Tolerance Limits</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological and Biochemical Response to Impact</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biomechanical Factors of Impact</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact Other Than Along Primary Axis (&quot;Off Axis&quot;)</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Vibration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vibration Environment</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Effects</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological Effects</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biodynamic Effects</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective Tolerance Levels</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction of Vibration with Other Environmental Parameters</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Weightlessness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects of Weightlessness on Physiological Systems</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Effects of Zero Gravity Upon Performance</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counteracting the Physiological Effects of Weightlessness</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Ionizing Radiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation Terms and Measures</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes and Sources of Ionizing Radiation</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole Body Radiation Effects</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation Effects on Specific Body Systems</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Effects of Radiation</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Toxicology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Toxicity and The Effects of Variations</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Oxygen Partial Pressure on Toxicity</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects of Oxygen on the Toxicity of Ozone and Nitrogen Dioxide</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxicity of Fuels and Oxidizers</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Monoxide</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacecraft Threshold Limit Values</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Exposure Limits (EEL)</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacecraft Contaminants</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Quality Standards for Space Missions</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Respiratory System</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Anatomy of Chest and Lungs</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Function of Respiration</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiration</td>
<td>493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breathing Movements</td>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control of Breathing</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung Volumes and Capacities</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical Relations</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factors Relevant to Respiratory Support Equipment Design</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. The Vestibular System</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The End Organs</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Nervous System Connections</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static and Dynamic Characteristics</td>
<td>547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vestibular Serration In Man</td>
<td>555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Guidelines in the Prevention of Vestibular Side Effects on Space Missions Involving The Generation of Artificial Gravity</td>
<td>584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B</td>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbols</td>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Vision</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Visual Environment</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of the Visual System</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual Performance</td>
<td>637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vision Under Stress</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual Tasks in Space Operations</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Auditory System</td>
<td>667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Correlates of Hearing</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Auditory System</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hearing Loss</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Noise and Blast</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of the Noise and Blast Environment</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects of Noise and Blast on Hearing</td>
<td>705</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effects of Hearing Loss on Performance</td>
<td>719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjective and Behavioral Responses to Noise Exposure</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological (Nonauditory) Responses to Noise Exposure</td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design Criteria</td>
<td>735</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Physiological studies of pressure effects have been conducted for over a century. Still, many facets of the problem have been incompletely explored. It is known that if man is supplied with an appropriate gas mixture, he can survive considerable periods of exposure to a wide range of barometric pressures (figure 1-1). Man's ultimate tolerance limits for high and low barometric pressures are not known, however. Likewise, it is not known whether the gas mixtures required for such exposures are in themselves toxic.

This chapter describes the effects of alterations in barometric pressure on human beings. The subject is of considerable importance in both aerospace and underwater exploration, although the former area is given primary emphasis here. The effects of barometric pressure as such must be differentiated from the effects of changes in pressure. In the latter case, our knowledge is more complete. Abrupt and controlled changes in pressure can be produced in compression and decompression chambers, shock tubes, wind tunnels, and the like.

Increases in barometric pressure are experienced most commonly during descents through the atmosphere and underwater diving. High dynamic (unbalanced) pressures are encountered during escape from aircraft. Still higher pressures occur in the vicinity of explosions. Decreases in pressure are encountered during ascents through water or the atmosphere or during depressurization of an aircraft or space vehicle. The physical effects of these changes are considered in this chapter. Exposure throughout the tolerable range of pressures is discussed first, followed by descriptions of the effects of increases, and then decreases, in barometric pressure.

In view of the multiplicity of systems for describing pressure, the following tables have been included as an aid to the reader wishing to convert pressure...
terms from one notational system to another. Tables 1-1 and 1-2 shown here contain many, though not all, the units of pressure measurement in common use. The preferred units for scientific use are those of the new International System (Systeme Internationale), which recommends Newtons per square meter but accepts the bar and millibar for common usage. The inch of mercury and millibar are widely used in aviation. Millimeters of mercury are in common biomedical use in the United States and elsewhere. In diving medicine, the atmosphere is commonly used. Note in table 1-1 that zero feet of water equals 1 atmosphere. The increase of pressure with increasing depth in sea water is roughly 1 atm for each 33 feet. Since air is compressible, the altitude scale is logarithmic. The data for altitude are from the U.S. Standard Atmosphere (1954).

---

**Figure 1-1.** Approximate range of barometric pressure (above and below sea level) tolerated by humans breathing gas mixtures containing the indicated concentrations of O₂. Heavy curve indicates gas mixture which will maintain sea level equivalent PO₂ in the lungs at the indicated barometric pressures. (U.S. House of Representatives Select Committee on Astronautics and Space Exploration, 1959)

**Survival Under Near-Vacuum Conditions**

The vapor pressure of water at a body temperature of 37°C is 47 mm Hg (0.9 psia). Since the human body is largely composed of water, exposure to barometric pressures much below 47 mm Hg absolute leads rapidly to
vaporization of body fluids, a process known as ebullism. That this phenomenon does not occur precisely at 47 mm Hg is due to some degree of counterpressure exerted by the skin and connective tissues and blood vessels.

Table 1–1
Equivalent Pressures, Altitudes and Depths

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atmospheres (atm)</th>
<th>Pounds per square inch (psi)</th>
<th>Inches of Mercury (in Hg)</th>
<th>Millimeters of Mercury (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Millibars (mb)</th>
<th>Newtons per square meter (N/m²)</th>
<th>Pressure Altitude</th>
<th>Depth in Sea Water</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>29.92</td>
<td>760</td>
<td>1013.2</td>
<td>1.013 x 10⁵</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>9 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.9 x 10⁵</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>8 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.8 x 10⁵</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>7 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.7 x 10⁵</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>6 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.6 x 10⁵</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>5 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.5 x 10⁵</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>4 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.4 x 10⁵</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.3 x 10⁵</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2 x 10⁴</td>
<td>0.2 x 10⁵</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10⁴</td>
<td>0.1 x 10⁵</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10³</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Depth in Sea Water (Ft)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Atm</th>
<th>N/M²</th>
<th>bars</th>
<th>mb</th>
<th>kg/cm²</th>
<th>gm/cm² (cm H₂O)</th>
<th>mm Hg</th>
<th>in. Hg (&quot; Hg)</th>
<th>lb/in² (psi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Atmosphere</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.013 X 10⁵</td>
<td>1.013</td>
<td>1013</td>
<td>1.033</td>
<td>1033</td>
<td>760</td>
<td>29.92</td>
<td>14.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Newton/M²</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(N/M²)</td>
<td>.9869 X 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10⁻⁵</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>1.02 X 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>.0102</td>
<td>.0075</td>
<td>.2953 X 10⁻³</td>
<td>.1451 X 10⁻³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 bar</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.9869</td>
<td>10⁵</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1020</td>
<td>750.1</td>
<td>29.53</td>
<td>14.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 millibar</strong></td>
<td>.9869 X 10⁻³</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>.001</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.00102</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>.7501</td>
<td>.02953</td>
<td>.01451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(mb)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 kg/cm²</strong></td>
<td>.9681</td>
<td>.9807 X 10⁵</td>
<td>.9807</td>
<td>980.7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>735</td>
<td>28.94</td>
<td>14.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 gm/cm²</strong></td>
<td>.9681</td>
<td>98.07</td>
<td>.9807 X 10⁻³</td>
<td>.9807</td>
<td>.001</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.735</td>
<td>.02894</td>
<td>.01422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1 cm H₂O)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 mm Hg</strong></td>
<td>.001316</td>
<td>133.3</td>
<td>.00133</td>
<td>1.333</td>
<td>.00136</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.03937</td>
<td>.01934</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 in. Hg</strong></td>
<td>.0334</td>
<td>3386</td>
<td>.03386</td>
<td>33.86</td>
<td>.03453</td>
<td>34.53</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.4910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(&quot; Hg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 lb/in²</strong></td>
<td>.06804</td>
<td>6895</td>
<td>.06895</td>
<td>68.95</td>
<td>.0703</td>
<td>70.3</td>
<td>51.70</td>
<td>2.035</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(psi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recent studies of dogs, squirrel monkeys, and baboons decompressed in 2 seconds from 250 to 1 to 2 mm Hg absolute (Bancroft & Dunn, 1965; Cooke et al., 1967; Cooke et al., 1968) have demonstrated remarkable similarity among these species in responses to exposure to a near vacuum. Chimpanzees respond in the same way, though at a slower rate, to this stress. It is reasonable to assume that similar responses would occur in humans exposed to very low pressures by puncture of a space vehicle or suit or failure of a pressure seal under space-equivalent conditions.

Some degree of consciousness will probably be retained for 9 to 11 seconds (see chapter 2 under the heading Hypoxia). In rapid sequence thereafter, paralysis will be followed by generalized convulsions and paralysis once again. During this time, water vapor will form rapidly in the soft tissues and somewhat less rapidly in the venous blood. This evolution of vapor will cause marked swelling of the body to perhaps as much as twice its normal volume unless it is restrained by a pressure suit. (It has been demonstrated that a properly fitted elastic garment can entirely prevent ebullism at pressures as low as 15 mm Hg absolute [Webb, 1969, 1970].) Heart rate may rise initially but will fall rapidly thereafter. Arterial blood pressure will also fall over a period of 30 to 60 seconds, while venous pressure rises due to distension of the venous system by gas and vapor. Venous pressure will meet or exceed arterial pressure within 1 minute. There will be virtually no effective circulation of blood. After an initial rush of gas from the lungs during decompression, gas and water vapor will continue to flow outward through the airways. This continual evaporation of water will cool the mouth and nose to near-freezing temperatures; the remainder of the body will also become cooled, but more slowly.

Cooke and Bancroft (1966) reported occasional deaths in animals due to fibrillation of the heart during the first minute of exposure to near-vacuum conditions. Ordinarily, however, survival was the rule if recompression occurred within about 90 seconds. The hearts in these studies tolerated even repeated decompression well (Cooke & Bancroft, 1966), although it is by no means certain that the human heart will be as tolerant. Once heart action ceased, death was inevitable, despite attempts at resuscitation. During recompression, as the absolute pressure exceeded about 50 mm Hg (1 psia), a dramatic reduction in swelling was demonstrated. Breathing usually began spontaneously, the time being dependent on the duration of exposure at minimum pressure. Heart rate and blood pressure rose to fairly high levels, then gradually returned toward normal. There was suggestive evidence in the Cooke and Bancroft studies that denitrogenation prior to exposure, and recompression with 100 percent oxygen, both improved recovery time and decreased mortality. Neurological problems, including blindness and other defects in vision, were common after exposures (see problems due to evolved gas), but usually disappeared fairly rapidly.

It is very unlikely that a human suddenly exposed to a vacuum will have more than 5 to 10 seconds to help himself. If immediate help is at hand, although one's appearance and condition will be grave, it is reasonable to assume that recompression to a tolerable pressure (200 mm Hg, 3.8 psia) within 60 to 90 seconds could result in survival, and possibly in rather rapid
recovery. There is, of course, no guarantee of a successful outcome; some animals have died within seconds of decompression and a few others have had severe, lasting central nervous system damage (Casey, Bancroft, & Cooke, 1966).

Barometric pressures below those at which adequate blood and tissue oxygenation can be maintained (about 190 mm Hg, 3.7 psia) must be considered hostile for more than brief exposures without proper protective equipment (see chapter 2); those below about 100 mm Hg (1.9 psia) must be considered hostile for any exposure. Pressures much below 50 mm Hg cause almost immediate failure of the circulation and total anoxia and must be considered lethal if sustained for more than 60 to 90 seconds.

**Human Tolerance for Low Barometric Pressures**

As indicated previously, the partial pressure of water vapor in the lungs is about 47 mm Hg (0.9 psia). The normal partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the lungs ranges from 35 to 45 mm Hg (0.7 to 0.9 psia). A partial pressure of oxygen in the lungs of about 100 mm Hg (1.94 psia) will maintain essentially complete oxygen saturation of arterial blood. A total barometric pressure of 190 mm Hg (3.66 psia), then, will support a human being if his environment consists of pure oxygen. It should be noted, however, that this figure leaves little room for further reductions such as would occur in the face of space cabin or pressure suit leaks, temporary failures of gas supply, dilution of the atmosphere by nitrogen or other inert gases, or carbon dioxide buildup due to inefficient absorption or scrubbing.

Although this pressure environment will support life for long periods of time, it has certain inherent disadvantages. Even after virtually complete removal of inert gases from the body, there is a finite, though minimal, risk of decompression sickness due to evolved gas. Because oxygen and carbon dioxide are physiologically active gases, they are absorbed rather rapidly from gas-containing cavities in the body. This can result in symptoms, especially in the ears, sinuses, and lungs (Hyde, Pines, & Saito, 1963).

The low density of a pure oxygen environment at 190 mm Hg (0.357 gm/liter, 28 percent of air at sea level) attenuates sound transmission and also alters, to some extent, the mechanics of the lung-chest system. The maximum pressure which can be developed by the system is lowered substantially. This inhibits the effectiveness of coughing and may make it difficult to rid the lungs of secretions or foreign matter. Breath holding time is also markedly reduced. On the other hand, the work of breathing at high flow rates is decreased due to reduction in the proportion of turbulent flow at low gas density. Thus, it is easier to sustain high ventilation volumes during the performance of muscular work (Boothby, 1964). Also, respiratory water loss may be decreased somewhat at low total pressures (Wortz et al., 1966).

It is not known whether man can tolerate an environment free of "inert" gases indefinitely. The 14-day Gemini flight and a few altitude chamber tests for
up to 30 days represent the only available data, and it is noteworthy that these exposures have been at 258 to 282 mm Hg (5 to 5.5 psia), in the main, rather than at the minimum tolerable pressures. When much longer exposures are contemplated, a number of more subtle factors must be considered. These include the possible dependence of man himself, or of his normal and essential saprophytic bacteria, on trace amounts of nitrogen or other “inert” gases. One study has also indicated that cell wall fragility may be increased at low total pressures (Bomadini, 1966). Such questions as these can only be answered by much longer experiments than those which have been conducted to date.

Man has successfully tolerated exposures of 56 days to environments containing physiological pressures of oxygen, with helium as the diluent, at a total pressure of 258 mm Hg (5.0 psia). Very careful medical, biochemical, physiological, and psychological studies disclosed no adverse effects during this period of exposure other than those which are inevitable under reduced pressure and which have been mentioned (Welch et al., 1966).

In summary, low barometric pressures, in and of themselves, do not appear to be harmful to man, insofar as they have been studied critically. There are disadvantages at pressures so low that pure oxygen must be used as the sole atmospheric constituent; many of these are minimized or alleviated by the addition of a small proportion of a diluent gas. Pressures as low as 5 psia appear to be innocuous for fairly long exposures.

**Human Tolerance for Gaseous Environments Composed of Air**

Man has been successfully adapting to a wide range of barometric pressures for many centuries. A skeleton roughly 9000 years old was recently found in Peru at an elevation of 13,800 feet, equivalent to a pressure of 450 mm Hg (8.65 psia). Extensive studies have been carried out on acclimatized natives at elevations of 15,000 feet in the Andes and on partially acclimatized mountaineers at 19,000 feet and above in the Himalayas. These environments are not optimal, and they exert a considerable physiological toll (see chapter 2 under the heading *Hypoxia*), but they are survivable for substantial periods of time. There is little evidence that long-term inhabitants at elevations above 10,000 feet differ substantially from their sea level counterparts except for decreased work tolerance and the presence of certain body adjustments to the lower partial pressure of oxygen at that altitude.

The usual range of barometric pressure at sea level in the United States is from about 29 to 31 inches of mercury (14.25 to 15.25 psia). Changes occur relatively slowly except under very unusual meteorological conditions. While certain psychological and physiological disorders have been attributed to such changes in pressure, there is no proof of a causal relationship.

There are mines on earth in which maximum depths exceed 10,000 feet below sea level, equivalent to a barometric pressure of at least 20 psia. There is no evidence that men working at these depths have been harmed by the pressure.
Increasing interest in undersea exploration during recent years has led to a number of long-term human studies at pressures substantially higher than those normally encountered by man. While excessive pressures of both nitrogen and oxygen are toxic to man and animals (see chapter 2), some of the earlier studies in which air was used as the gaseous medium (Conshelf I, two men, 7 days, 2.05 atm absolute; Conshelf II, six men, 30 days, 1.95 atm absolute; Tektite, four men, 60 days, 2.27 atm absolute) have shown that man can tolerate at least 2 months of exposure to these environments without apparent harm (Aquadro & Chouteau, 1967).

Human Tolerance for High Barometric Pressures

Bert, in 1876 (translated by Hitchcock & Hitchcock, 1943), described oxygen toxicity. While this problem is discussed in chapter 2, it should be noted here that as man has extended his technological capability under the seas, he has found that if oxygen poisoning and nitrogen narcosis can be avoided, his tolerance for high barometric pressures is considerable.

If the partial pressure of oxygen in the lungs is maintained at physiological levels, and if the partial pressure of nitrogen is kept below toxic limits, other inert gases may be added to man’s environment in large amounts. The majority of work in this area has used helium as the inert pressurizing gas, though some research has been conducted with other noble gases, notably argon and neon. Hydrogen has not been popular because of its flammability when mixed with oxygen, though it also is physiologically inert and has some theoretical advantages for work at extremely high pressure (see chapter 2).

Leaving aside problems due to changing pressures, the physiological problems encountered in a high pressure environment are due almost entirely to the physical characteristics of the gas mixture used to create that environment.

At rest, man’s instantaneous respiratory flow rate rarely exceeds 1 liter per second. Under these circumstances, most flow in the airway system is laminar; turbulent flow occurs only at branchings and in the smallest terminal bronchial tubes. When physical work is performed, however, ventilation volume and flow rates increase in proportion to the power output. Under these circumstances, volumes of 60 to 120 liters per minute and peak flow rates of 5 liters per second are not uncommon. The proportion of turbulent flow increases substantially and with it, the metabolic work required to move the air.

Otis, Fenn, and Rahn (1950) derived equations which describe the work of breathing at various barometric pressures. They showed that the work required to produce laminar flow is linearly related to the instantaneous velocity of air movement and is essentially independent of barometric pressure, whereas the work required for turbulent flow is a function of the second power of velocity and is directly related to density or pressure. (In calculating the work of breathing at altitude, the compressibility of alveolar air must be taken into account [Jaeger & Otis, 1964]; this factor is relatively unimportant at high barometric pressures.) Figures 1-2 and 1-3 illustrate some effects of high
Barometric Pressure

pressures on ventilation. Wood, Bryan, and Koch (1969) have recently demonstrated some of the limiting factors in respiratory mechanics at very high pressures. The theoretical limit for steady-state breathing at depth is the point at which the work to move a given quantity of gas requires all the oxygen which can be extracted by the blood from that increment of gas while it is in the lungs.

Figure 1-2. Calculated reductions in maximum ventilatory capacity with increasing depth breathing air or He–O₂. (Data of Workman, cited by Wood, 1963)

It is possible, by using combinations of oxygen, nitrogen, and helium, to maintain a gaseous environment whose partial pressure of oxygen and density remain at sea level values up to a total pressure of 5.74 atm absolute (84.4 psia), at which pressure the mixture contains 3.7 percent oxygen and 96.3 percent helium (figure 1-4). At greater pressures, the density of an appropriate oxygen-helium mixture increases almost in proportion to the total pressure (figure 1-5). Using oxygen-helium mixtures, brief habitability studies have been carried out at pressures as great as 684 psia (equivalent to 1500 feet of water) and much longer experiments have been conducted to lesser depths (Aquadro & Chouteau, 1967). These are discussed in more detail in chapter 2, since it appears that most of the physiological changes observed are due to the gases in the breathing mixtures, rather than to the pressure per se.

Other problems must be considered when man lives in a gaseous environment composed mostly of helium. The thermal conductivity of this gas is high; as a result, higher environmental temperatures are required to maintain man in the
zone of thermal neutrality (see chapter 3, *Temperature*). Very recent studies indicate that during work at depths greater than 600 feet, respiratory heat losses are considerable and can threaten man's ability to maintain thermal equilibrium even in the face of increased heat production (Rawlins, 1970). Speech is also a problem; the low density of helium produces a rise in the fundamental pitch of the human voice (Cooke, 1964; Cooke & Beard, 1965; Wather-Dunn, 1967). While this is partially compensated for over a period of time, intelligibility is appreciably decreased.

Man's ultimate tolerance limits for high barometric pressure are not known. It is possible that the work of breathing at rest will set a practical limit, although there may well be other factors yet-undetected, which will limit longer stays at lesser pressures (see chapter 2). In an effort to extend very considerably the tolerance limits, Kylstra (1967) has conducted experiments in which water instead of air is used as the carrier of oxygen and carbon dioxide. This technique, radical though it seems, may well be feasible at a later point in time. Extremely high static pressures may curtail or interfere with biochemical reactions which involve changes in tissue or molecular volume (Fenn, 1967).

![Figure 1-3](image-url)

Figure 1-3. Measured (to 200 ft) and computed data for decreases in ventilation with increasing depth at constant values of respiratory work: 1.8 kgM/min, "a level which can be sustained for many hours," and 7.2 kgM/min, "respiratory work which can only be performed for a few minutes." (Redrawn from the data of Buhlmann, 1963)
Barometric Pressure

Figure 1-4. Mixtures of O₂, N₂, and He which will maintain sea level equivalent density and normal PO₂ in the lungs at various total pressures. Above 5.74 atm absolute, sea level gas density cannot be maintained without resorting to H₂-O₂ mixtures. (Billings, 1964)

Figure 1-5. Density of mixtures of He and O₂ which will maintain a sea level equivalent PO₂ in the lungs, as a function of barometric pressure and depth in the sea water. (Billings, 1964)
Changes in Barometric Pressure

It has been indicated that human tolerance for barometric pressure extends from less than four to at least several hundred psia. Changes in barometric pressure in themselves, however, also exert profound physical and physiological effects on man. This section deals with increases and decreases in pressure.

Effects of Increases in Barometric Pressure

Increases in barometric pressure are encountered during descents through the atmosphere (whether in space vehicles, aircraft, or elevators), during represurization of a space vehicle following extravehicular activity, and during dives in water. Local increases in pressure within the body, sometimes of considerable magnitude, occur with coughing, sneezing, blowing the nose, and with mechanical straining in the act of defecation. Exposure to high dynamic pressures, as well as high rates of change of pressure, occur when the body is suddenly subjected to windblast during ejection from aircraft. Still higher pressures are encountered in the vicinity of an explosion.

Problems Due to Trapped Gas Within the Body. If the human body were composed entirely of fluids, it would tolerate quite sudden changes in pressure well. The body has several cavities, however, which normally contain gas. The most important during increases in pressure are the ears, the paranasal sinuses, and the lungs. When rates of compression are relatively slow (no more than 1 to 2 psi/second), the primary concern is the ear. Such rates of change can occur during the dive of a fighter aircraft, during emergency recompression of an altitude chamber, or during a diver’s descent through water.

The Ear. The eardrum is a slightly flexible partition between the external ear canal and the middle ear, a small air filled cavity which communicates with the environment only through the Eustachian tube, which opens into the back of the nose (figure 1-6). Air leaves the middle ear passively during decompression or ascent, but the mucous membrane lining the tube tends to prevent air from reentering the Eustachian tube without voluntary muscular effort during recompression.

Rapid recompressions from 28,000 feet to sea level, an increase of 10 psia, were performed by Raeke and Freedman (1961). The rates of change are shown in figure 1-7. None of the subjects sustained serious ear damage during the tests. In three of 28 tests, however, it was necessary to initiate reascent of the chamber to aid the subjects in equalizing pressure across the eardrum.

Table 1-3 summarizes the symptoms which result from a differential pressure across the eardrum. Once high differentials exist, it is difficult or impossible to force air into the middle ear voluntarily; avoidance of such differentials requires frequent attention during rapid descents. Descents of less than 500 feet per minute in the lower atmosphere (0.25 psia/minute) are usually tolerated by inexperienced air passengers without difficulty, though modern pressurization controllers are usually operated at perhaps half this rate.
Schematic of the middle ear, showing the rigid structure except at the eardrum, which is semi-flexible. The Eustachian tube openings are at the junction of the nasal cavity and the upper throat.

During ascent, the pressure in the external ear canal and nose drops, creating a positive differential within the middle ear. The eardrum bulges outward, then air leaves the middle ear.

During descent, a negative pressure differential is created within the middle ear. The drum is pushed inward, but air cannot re-enter the middle ear without voluntary effort.

Figure 1-6. Effect of pressure change on middle ear.

Figure 1-7. Rapid compressions from 4.7 to 14.7 psi (28 000 ft to sea level).

(Raee & Freedman, 1961)
Table 1-3
Type of Ear Complaints Encountered During Change in Barometric Pressure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ascent (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Complaint</th>
<th>Descent (mm Hg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No sensation; hearing is normal (level flight)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+3 - 5</td>
<td>Feeling of fullness in ears</td>
<td>- 3 - 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+10 - 15</td>
<td>More fullness, lessened sound intensity</td>
<td>- 10 - 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+15 - 30</td>
<td>Fullness, discomfort, tinnitus in ears: Ears usually “pop” as air leaves middle ear</td>
<td>- 15 - 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desire to clear ears; if this is done, symptoms stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+30 plus</td>
<td>Increasing pain, tinnitus, and dizziness</td>
<td>- 30 - 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Severe and radiating pain, dizziness, and nausea</td>
<td>- 60 - 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voluntary clearing becomes difficult or impossible</td>
<td>-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eardrum ruptures</td>
<td>200+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Modified from Adler, 1964)

NOTE: During ascent pressure in middle ear is higher than ambient pressure; during descent, middle ear pressure is lower than ambient.

The likelihood of difficulty in “clearing the ears,” and thus the likelihood of barotitis, as ear trouble due to pressure change is called, is much greater in an individual in whom the nasal mucous membranes are swollen, with resultant constriction of the Eustachian tube orifice. This occurs with upper respiratory infections such as the common cold, nasal allergies (hay fever), and the like. Barotitis is the most common medical problem in the flying population, largely because the conditions which cause it are so common in temperate climates.

The Sinuses. The paranasal sinuses are small, rigid air filled cavities in the skull. They communicate with the nose through small ducts. Unlike the Eustachian tube, these ducts show no particular predisposition to blockage during descent. Inflammation or swelling of the mucous membranes of the sinuses of nose, however, can cause partial or complete obstruction of these ducts, and thus a differential pressure between the sinus and the environment during changes of environmental pressure. Severe or incapacitating pain may result, a condition known as barosinusitis.

The Teeth. Occasionally, toothaches are reported during changes in barometric pressure; this is called barodontalgia. The condition usually occurs in teeth which have been filled, or in which cavities are present. The explanation usually given is that a small air bubble is trapped below a
restoration or in the decayed tooth substance. There is, however, evidence that loose fillings may allow saliva to penetrate into the interior of these teeth during changes of pressure (Restarski, quoted by Adler, 1964).

In summary, symptoms due to trapped gas are relatively common in altitude chamber flights, where the changes in pressure are fairly large. It should be noted, however, that the rate of pressure change with changes in altitude is greatest near sea level. The three problems cited, therefore, commonly occur at comparatively low altitudes and in diving. Barotitis, in particular, often occurs below 5000 feet altitude. The incidence of such problems in a large number of routine altitude indoctrination “flights” is shown in table 1-4.

Table 1-4
Incidence of Symptoms Due to Trapped Gas in 51 580 Altitude Indoctrination Flights*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Severity (Grade)</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ear pain</td>
<td>6650</td>
<td>2437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>2738</td>
<td>1187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinus pain</td>
<td>1516</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toothache</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>11 189</td>
<td>4489</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Numbers shown are rates per 100 000 man-flights.
(From data of Berry, 1958)

The Lungs. Unlike the middle ear, sinuses, and teeth, the lung-chest system is capable of wide variations in volume. Its minimum, or residual, volume in an adult male is commonly less than 1.5 liters; its maximum volume during full inspiration may exceed 8 liters. When barometric pressure increases, therefore, the volume of gas in the lungs is free to contract. If the lungs are in communication with the environment, air flows into them. During breath-holding diving, however, the volume of air in the lungs contracts in accordance with Boyle’s law (allowing for the constant pressure of water vapor).

If the pressure ratio (ratio of final to initial pressure) is such as to compress the air in the lungs to less than the residual volume of the system, a phenomenon known commonly as “squeeze” occurs. The relative vacuum in the lungs causes an increase in the blood volume in the chest. The lungs are pulled toward a position of greater collapse than they can attain within the closed chest; the result is pain and hemorrhage into the lung tissue and airways. This condition is of practical importance only in underwater work, where large changes in
pressure can occur rapidly. It is the limiting factor in breath-holding diving (Schaefer et al., 1968). Squeeze can also occur in face masks used in diving if air is not introduced into the mask during descent.

**Problems Due to High Dynamic Pressures on the Body.** During ejection or manual escape from aircraft, a pilot is suddenly thrust from a cockpit in which the air around him is moving at the same velocity he is into an environment in which he is a projectile. The dynamic pressure $Q$ exerted on the frontal surface of his body (if he is facing forward) is a function of the air density and his airspeed.

$$ Q = \frac{Pv^2}{2} $$

Pressures of 1000 psf (7 psig) are not uncommon during high speed, low altitude ejections. Figure 1-8 shows data collected during human exposures to high dynamic pressure produced on an underwater centrifuge. The figure shows injuries produced by the more severe exposures. Figure 1-9 shows the separation forces developed on the arms and legs plotted against overall dynamic pressures (Fryer, 1962). It should be noted that ejection in the rearward facing position offers a substantial degree of protection against $Q$ forces, by interposing the seat between the subject and the source of pressure (see chapter 4, *Sustained Linear Acceleration*).

**Problems Due to Blast.** A pressure wave, moving outward from the source of an explosion, may act as do high dynamic pressures on people and objects in its path. Many injuries caused by explosives are due to bodies being thrown about. If a body is restrained, however, the overpressure will cause different displacements of the compressible and incompressible portions of the body. These overpressures, and the following underpressures, involve very rapid changes of pressure and thus of local force fields within the body. The chest, and other air filled cavities, not being entirely elastic, cannot respond instantaneously. As a result, substantial shear forces are produced, with tearing of tissues.

No data are available on fatal shock pressures in man. Figure 1-10 shows 50 percent lethal shock pressures for animals restrained in a shock tube, with an estimate of the median lethal overpressure for man. Figure 1-11 shows calculated curves of equal maximum strain in the human lung.

The pulse signature of sonic booms involves an almost instantaneous rise in pressure, a ramp decay, and a very rapid return to atmospheric pressure following the passage of the wave (N wave). Sonic booms, however, rarely involve peak pressures of more than 10 psf; pressure changes of this magnitude are annoying, but not physically harmful, to humans. Most booms encountered on the ground have peak pressures no higher than 1 to 2 psf.
Figure 1–8. Data obtained on two subjects in ejection seat attached to arm of underwater centrifuge. Subjects wore rubber suits, full face helmets, and mouthpieces for underwater breathing. They held their breath during accelerations. Maximum forces shown (1030 psf) were obtained at 32.6 fps equivalent to 515 kts in air. Time course of runs is shown. (Drawn from data of Fryer, 1962)

Figure 1–9. Leg and elbow separation forces, determined by strain gauges attached to arm and leg restraints during underwater centrifuge runs shown in figure 1–8. (Drawn from data of Fryer, 1962)
Figure 1–10. Overpressures necessary to kill 50% of animals of various species exposed in a shock tube to overpressure lasting 350 to 412 msec, extrapolated to estimate median lethal overpressure for 70 kg (man-sized) animal. (Sources: Richmond & White, 1962)

Figure 1–11. Calculated curves of equal strain in human lung in response to blast, ramp compression, and ramp decompression, as a function of overpressure and duration of event. (Source: von Gierke, 1964)
Effects of Decreases in Barometric Pressure

Decreases in barometric pressure occur when a diver ascends through water, or when an aircraft or space vehicle ascends through the atmosphere. More sudden decreases in pressure are encountered during depressurization of an aircraft, space cabin or pressure suit, whether accidental or intentional.

Effect of Decompression on Trapped Gases.

The Ears, Sinuses, and Teeth. It was mentioned previously that the ear rarely poses a problem during ascent because the structure of the Eustachian tube allows air to escape from the middle ear passively. Pain in the sinuses is more likely to occur if an obstruction to airflow exists. Tooth pain is probably more common during ascent than descent.

The Stomach and Intestines. The human gut contains a variable amount of gas, some of it swallowed with food and saliva, the rest arising from the metabolic activity of gas-forming bacteria in the intestinal tract. The volume of intestinal gas at sea level usually varies from about 0.05 to 0.10 liters. Ingestion of gas-forming foods, such as baked beans, can, however, elevate this value by an order of magnitude (Allen & Chinn, cited by Greenwald, Allen, & Bancroft, 1967). In one series of experiments, Greenwald and coworkers (1967) observed increases in intestinal gas volume in subjects decompressed to high altitude (figure 1-12), together with a roughly predictable increase in the incidence of abdominal symptoms (figure 1-13). In these studies, however, subjects attempted to retain intestinal gas throughout the exposures.

Normally, an increase in the volume of a gas bubble in the gut causes stretching of the walls of the tube, which reflexly causes propulsive muscular contraction of the walls, together with the feeling known as “cramps.” These propulsive contractions usually move the gas to the lower bowel, from which it is expelled. If the gas is in the stomach, it is expelled by belching. Such gas bubbles have, however, been known to cause vomiting in divers during ascent. Adler (1964) reported a lower incidence of symptoms due to intestinal gas during routine altitude chamber flights.

Bryan (1961) has hypothesized that whereas relatively slow expansions of intestinal gas leads to muscular contractions, cramps, and, usually, to expulsion of gas, very rapid expansion during a rapid decompression may simply result in extreme stretching of a relaxed gut wall, which, by reflex action, can cause marked slowing of the heart and unconsciousness without warning. It may be difficult to differentiate fainting due to this from that due to lack of oxygen or to decompression sickness.

The Lungs. Although the air in the lungs and airways is normally in free communication with the environment, the outward flow of air during a very rapid decrease in barometric pressure is limited by aerodynamic considerations. The physical damage that may occur in the lungs is generally considered to be the critical limiting factor in human tolerance for very rapid
decompressions. Haber and Clamann (1953) have defined pressure transients during rapid decompression in terms of the two principal parameters. The *time characteristic*, $t_c$, has the general form:

$$t_c = \frac{V}{A \cdot C}$$

Where $V$ is the volume of the container being compressed, $A$ is the effective area of the orifice ($A$ is always somewhat smaller than the geometric orifice, for aerodynamic reasons), and $C$ is the velocity of sound.

![Figure 1-12. Expansion of lower trunk during slow decompressions from near sea level to indicated barometric pressures. Filled circles denote studies in which water-filled stomach tube was connected to pressure transducer; open circles represent experiments without tube. X's show lower trunk volumes after decompression and return to original pressure. (Adapted from Greenwald, Allen, & Bancroft, 1967)](image-url)
Figure 1–13. Incidence of symptoms of abdominal fullness or pain (circles) during slow decompressions, versus average increase in intestinal gas volume at indicated pressures. Curves for initial gas volumes were derived from equation shown, in which $P_1 =$ ambient ground level pressure, $P_2 =$ pressure at any point during ascent, $P_{1a} =$ intraabdominal pressure (gauge), and $P_w =$ water vapor pressure at body temperature. (Adapted from Greenwald, Allen, & Bancroft, 1967)

The pressure factor $P'$ is a function of the initial pressure $P_i$ and the final pressure $P_f$ in the container (figure 1-14).

$$P' = f\left(\frac{P_i - P_f}{P_i}\right)$$

The total decompression time, or duration of the transient $t_d$ is the product of the time characteristic of the system $t_c$ and the pressure factor $P'$:

$$t_d = t_c \cdot P'$$

If the time characteristic of the human lungs and airways is greater than the time characteristic of the pressure suit or cabin in which a subject is confined during a decompression, a transient differential pressure buildup must occur within the lungs. This is illustrated diagrammatically in figure 1-15.

Figure 1-16 shows experimental data demonstrating the differential pressures observed during various decompressions. Points have been derived
from the data of Luft and Bancroft (1956) and Luft, Bancroft, and Carter (1953). Though Adams and Polak (1933) have shown that the mammalian lung may rupture when distended by a differential pressure above about 80 mm Hg, the subjects for whom data are shown in the figure were apparently uninjured. Figure 1-17 shows the time characteristic as a function of container volume $V$ and effective orifice area $A$. The time characteristic for one of the subjects whose data are plotted in figure 1-16 is shown. Since the volume of the lungs varies with respiration, it is obvious that the time characteristic of the lungs may vary considerably, depending on the phase of respiration during which a rapid decompression occurs. The time characteristic increases to infinity during swallowing or straining, when the airway is closed by the glottis. Severe lung injury or death can result from a rapid decompression while the glottis is closed.

![Figure 1-14. Pressure factor $P'$ related to fractional pressure differential. (Drawn from data of Haber & Clamann, 1953)](image)

Experiments on dogs rapidly decompressed from 180 to less than 2 mm Hg (a fractional pressure differential of 0.99) in 1.0 or 0.2 seconds demonstrated lung damage in all cases. Changes in the lungs after a 1 second decompression, however, were reversible in animals who stayed at the low pressure for short periods of time; they became more severe and lasting as exposure time at 2 mm Hg increased (figure 1-18). If total exposure time was less than 90 seconds only mild residual findings were observed. Faster decompressions produced more severe and lasting damage (Dunn, 1965). Estimates of the probable danger zone for explosive decompressions are shown in figure 1-19.
Figure 1–15. Schematic diagram of origin of pressure differentials in the lungs during rapid decompression. (Redrawn from Luft, 1954)

Figure 1–16. Human exposure to rapid decompressions involving significant pressure differentials in lungs. (Drawn from data of Luft & Bancroft, 1956; and Luft, Bancroft, & Carter, 1953)
Figure 1-17. Time characteristic, $t_c$, as a function of container volume and effective area of orifice. (After Luft & Bancroft, 1956)

Figure 1-18. Damage produced in lungs of dogs decompressed from 180 to less than 2 mm Hg in 1 sec with 5-sec recompressions after various times at peak altitude. Each column represents one dog, autopsied at time indicated by shading. Scale of damage:

- +: Mild reversible changes
- ++: Several reversible changes together, or moderate damage
- +++: Severe changes, including hemorrhage involving 30% of the lungs
- ++++: Hemorrhage involving 30% of the lung substance.

(Taken from Dunn, 1965)
Problems Due to Evolved Gas Within the Body. During prolonged exposure to atmospheres that contain physiologically inert gases (nitrogen, hydrogen, helium, argon, xenon, and krypton), the body fluids (water and fat) contain amounts of these gases in solution proportional to the partial pressure of the gas in inspired air and the solubility of the gas in water and fat at body temperature. If the body is subsequently exposed to a much lower barometric pressure, inert gases tend to come out of solution (the phenomenon of effervescence). Oxygen, carbon dioxide, and water vapor diffuse rapidly into evolved bubbles of inert gas. Such bubbles, if they form in tissues, may produce pain, especially around the joints. Bubbles within fat cells may cause rupture of the cell walls, allowing fat to enter the circulation. If bubbles form within blood vessels, they are carried to the small terminal vessels of the body (especially the lungs) where they lodge, cutting off the blood supply of the tissues behind them. The symptoms caused by evolved gas are known collectively as decompression sickness.

This disorder is a potential problem in divers who ascend to the surface of the water after minutes or hours at depth, in caisson workers who are decompressed at the end of each working day, and in aviators or astronauts who are exposed to low barometric pressures after reaching equilibrium at higher pressures.

Decompression Sickness. Decompression sickness in its various forms is much more common in divers and caisson workers than in aviation personnel. In
the latter context, it has been reported at altitudes as low as 8000 feet (10.9 psia) in pilots who took off shortly after a period of scuba diving at modest depths. This problem and its prevention are discussed by Edel and coworkers (1969). Decompression sickness has been reported at altitudes of 17,000 feet (7.64 psia) without previous underwater exposure; one fatality has occurred after exposure to 18,000 feet (7.3 psia). Despite these isolated cases, the disorder is uncommon below about 30,000 feet (4.4 psia).

The symptoms of decompression sickness are rarely observed during the first few minutes of exposure to low pressure. Thereafter, the rate of appearance of symptoms is a function of exposure time (figure 1-20). Several factors influence the incidence of decompression sickness at high altitude. Among the most important is exercise (figure 1-21). Other factors which are strongly positively correlated are age and body weight (especially body fat mass) (figure 1-22). There is evidence that cold also increases the incidence of decompression sickness.

![Figure 1-20](image)

Figure 1-20. Rate of appearance of symptoms of decompression sickness as a function of exposure time under standard conditions. Histogram represents observed data; curve overlying it is derived from a formula for bubble formation. (Redrawn from Nims, 1951, cited by Fulton, 1951)

While joint pains (bends) are by far the most common manifestation of the disorder, other more serious symptoms are also observed. The relative incidence of these manifestations in two large series of observations is shown in table 1-5.

There is little doubt that the cause of decompression sickness is bubbles of gas evolved from solution in the body fluids. There are probably other related factors, however, having to do with the circulation of blood to various regions of the body. Useful general references which treat the subject in detail are Nims (1951), Anderson (1965), and Fryer (1969).

Protection Against Decompression Sickness. Since the appearance of decompression sickness is highly correlated with the quantities of inert gases in the body in relation to their solubility in body fluids, one effective means of decreasing the incidence of this disorder is to affect partial elimination of these
Figure 1-21. Effect of muscular exercise on appearance of symptoms of decompression sickness at 38,000 ft (3 psia). Number of subjects varied from 53 to 139. Standard exercise was 10 step-ups onto a 9 in stool in 30 sec, repeated every 5 min. (Drawn from Henry, 1956)

Figure 1-22. Proportional incidence of bends as a function of body weight in 44,181 trainees undergoing altitude chamber training during World War II. (Data of Motley et al., summarized by Adler, 1964)
inert gases prior to or during ascent. The quantity of inert gas in solution in the human body at equilibrium is a function of the partial pressure of that gas in the inspired air and the solubility of the gas in water and in fat. When the inert gas is removed from the inspired gas mixture, the gas will be cleared from the body (washed out) at a rate which depends on a number of factors. Among these are the ventilation volume and the cardiac output, both of which are elevated during exercise. Inert gas in the lungs is diluted and washed out very quickly. Blood coming to the lungs is also cleared relatively rapidly. The clearance of gas from the various tissues of the body proceeds at a rate proportional to the blood flow through the tissues, the solubility of the gas in water versus that in oil, and tissue-blood vessel geometry.

Table 1–5
Incidence of Decompression Sickness in High Pressure Environments and at High Altitude

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Incidence (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bends (alone or with other symptoms)</td>
<td>33.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS symptoms</td>
<td>2.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chokes</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Data of Keays, in Adler (1964) for 557 000 work shifts in 10 000 caisson workers.

**Data of Berry (1958) for 51 580 man-exposures in altitude chamber training flights. Number of subjects is not specified, but the number of exposures per man was probably one in nearly all cases.

Nitrogen is very soluble in fat and less soluble in water. In contrast, helium is only slightly soluble in body fluids. Nitrogen is cleared from the body rather slowly, helium much more rapidly. Elimination of either gas is facilitated by exercise. This is illustrated in figure 1-23.

As noted above, inert gas may be eliminated from the body by breathing air free of that gas. Most studies of decompression sickness have utilized 100 percent oxygen as the inspired gas during the nitrogen washout period. The effect of such preoxygenation (actually preexposure denitrogenation) is illustrated in figure 1-24. In all cases, after a control period at ground level, subjects were taken to 38 000 feet breathing oxygen, at which altitude they performed five knee bends every 3 minutes until the appearance of joint pains, presumably caused by extravascular bubble formation. The protective effect of nitrogen washout is in part a function of the duration of preoxygenation prior to exposure to altitude, but protection is not entirely proportional to the extent to which body nitrogen stores are depleted. Occasional cases of decompression sickness are seen even after many hours of preexposure denitrogenation.
Figure 1-23. N₂ and He washout by O₂ breathing at sea level, with and without exercise. (Drawn from data of Behnke, 1945; Balke, 1954; and Roth, 1959; reprinted by permission of Williams & Wilkins Co., Baltimore, Maryland)

Figure 1-24. Effect of N₂ washout (effected by breathing O₂ for 30 to 120 min at sea level or 18 000 ft) on appearance of bends during subsequent exposure at 38 000 ft with exercise. (Drawn from data of Balke, 1954; and Marbarger, 1957)
The washout rates of nitrogen and helium were illustrated in figure 1-23. Since both of these gases (as well as neon) have been suggested as atmospheric constituents for long-term space missions, it is well to mention that there are appreciable differences between the two as regards the decompression sickness which can occur when they are used. Figures 1-25 and 1-26 indicate that following decompression from 7.0 to 3.5 psia, bends symptoms appeared earlier with helium than with nitrogen, and required greater increases in pressure before relief of symptoms occurred (Beard et al., 1967). This is similar to the experience in diving, in which both gases have been used extensively. Even though the blood and tissue fluids contain less helium than nitrogen after saturation at any pressure, exposure to a lower pressure where bends can occur is more likely to lead to symptoms, and the symptoms are likely to be more severe, with helium. This is presumably because of helium's relative insolubility in body fluids as compared with nitrogen.

**Figure 1-25.** Time of onset of bends during standard work at 3.5 psia following prolonged exposure to He-O$_2$ at 7 psia (24 cases of bends in 106 flights) or N$_2$O$_2$ at 7 psia (21 cases of bends in 119 flights). Subjects breathed 100% O$_2$ while at 3.5 psia. (Taken from Beard et al., 1967)

Treatment of Decompression Sickness. The treatment of decompression sickness consists primarily of measures designed to decrease the size of bubbles as much as possible and to hasten their dissolution. The first is accomplished by recompression or overcompression (a bubble, once formed, will behave according to Boyle's law as the pressure on it is increased; it will not disappear upon return to the pressure from which the experiment began). Dissolution of the bubbles is thought to be enhanced by treatment with 100 percent oxygen, if the treatment is carried out at 3 atm absolute, or less, or with the highest safe oxygen tension when higher total pressures are used (Mciver, 1966).
Melver and coworkers (1967) have pointed out in this regard that by using both maximum space cabin pressure and maximum differential suit pressure, it is possible to provide a limited degree of overcompression in 100 percent oxygen for treatment of decompression sickness occurring during space flight. Their studies indicate the shortcomings of this approach, but they also indicate that it would be at least partially effective.

References


Adler, H. F. Dysharism. USAF SAM Review 1-64, School of Aviation Medicine, Brooks Air Force Base, Texas, 1964.


Balle, B. Rate of gaseous nitrogen elimination during rest and work in relation to the occurrence of decompression sickness at high altitude. USAF SAM Project No. 21-1201-0014, Report No. 6, School of Aviation Medicine, Brooks Air Force Base, Texas, 1954.


Bryan, A. C. Personal communication, 1961.


Coney, H. W., Banerof, R. W., & Cooke, J. P. Residual pathologic changes in the central nervous system of a dog following rapid decompression to 1 mm Hg. USAF SAM TR-66-203, School of Aviation Medicine, Brooks Air Force Base, Texas, 1966.

Cooke, J. P. Sound transmission in helium and various gases at low pressure. USAF SAM TDR-64-43, School of Aviation Medicine, Brooks Air Force Base, Texas, 1964.


Dunn, J. E. Experimental animal decompressions to less than 2 mm Hg absolute: Pathologic effects. USAF SAM TR-65-48 B, School of Aviation Medicine, Brooks Air Force Base, Texas, 1965.


Rawlins, J. Personal communication, 1970.


Welch, B. E., et al. The study of man during a 56-day exposure to an oxygen-helium atmosphere at 258 mm Hg total pressure: Thirteen reports by various participating investigators. Aerospace Medicine, 1966, 37, 449-462, 552-608.


CHAPTER 2
ATMOSPHERE

by

Charles E. Billings, M.D.
The Ohio State University

The composition and pressure of the gaseous environment in which man lives are critical in life processes. Chapter 1 described the effects of barometric pressure per se. In this companion chapter, consideration is given to the properties of elements and compounds which make up or may be added to a gaseous environment suitable for the human. Both abundant and rare gases are discussed, since virtually all the inorganic gases found in earth’s atmospheric envelope have been used or considered for use in life support systems. Oxygen is considered first since it is the one atmospheric constituent whose presence is absolutely necessary for survival. Carbon dioxide is considered next. Although its presence in the environment is not necessary for human life, it, too, is involved in human metabolism and is produced in considerable quantities by man. The remainder of the chapter is devoted to nitrogen, the noble gases, and a brief consideration of other gaseous compounds.

General Considerations

Nearly all the oxygen and carbon dioxide in the human body are present as loosely-bound chemical compounds. These gases enter and leave the body (mostly through the lungs) by diffusion in response to gradients between their partial pressures in the body fluids and in alveolar gas. In the absence of a pressure gradient either in the lungs or in the body tissues, no net flow of either gas can occur. Carbon dioxide is an extremely diffusible gas in tissues made up largely of water; oxygen is less easily diffused.

Figure 2-1 shows the partial pressures (tensions) of oxygen in the environment, in the airways during inspiration, in alveolar gas, in the arterial blood as it leaves the lungs, and in the tissues, where the gas is transferred to its ultimate utilization sites. Similarly, carbon dioxide tensions are shown in the tissues, where carbon dioxide is produced by the combustion of foodstuffs, in the

Reviewed by Christian J. Lamberts, M.D., University of Pennsylvania Medical Center.
venous blood which carries it to the lungs, and in the alveolar air and arterial blood.

![Diagram of partial pressures of O2 (above) and CO2 (below) in air at sea level and at various points within the body.](image)

Figure 2–1. Partial pressures of O2 (above) and CO2 (below) in air at sea level and at various points within the body. Drop in PO2 at (1) is due to saturation of incoming air with water vapor; at (2) to presence of CO2 in alveolar gas; at (3) to limitations in diffusing capacity of O2; at (4) to extraction of O2 from arterial blood. The value shown for capillary blood is a mean. Venous blood in man at rest has a PO2 about half that of arterial blood. All values are approximate. CO2 is 20 times as diffusible as O2. Venous blood is in virtual equilibrium with tissue; arterial blood is in equilibrium with alveolar air.

Since all gases in the body are saturated with water vapor, the sum of partial pressures of components of the gas mixture must always be less than the ambient environmental pressure by roughly 47 mm Hg (the partial pressure of water vapor at 37°C mean body temperature). To re-express Dalton’s law in these terms,

\[ P_B - P_{H_2} = P_{O_2} + P_{CO_2} + P_{N_2} + P_A + \ldots \]

where \( P_B \) is barometric pressure and \( P_A \), etc., the partial pressures of the various gases.

The effect of saturation can be seen in figure 2–1: as air enters the upper airways, the partial pressures of oxygen and nitrogen drop slightly due to the addition of water vapor to the gas mixture.
It is important to keep in mind that it is the partial pressures, rather than the concentrations, of these substances which govern their movement in the body. As an example, the concentration of carbon dioxide in alveolar air at sea level is roughly 5.3 percent (40 mm Hg partial pressure at a barometric pressure of 760 mm Hg). At a pressure altitude of 39,000 feet (147.5 mm Hg), its concentration at the same partial pressure is 27.1 percent.

All gases present in the atmosphere are also found in solution in the body fluids. The quantity of any gas in the body at equilibrium with its environment is a function of the partial pressure of that gas in the lungs and its solubility in water and fat. Roth (1967) provides a detailed discussion of this topic.

The human body utilizes oxygen in the combustion of fats, sugars, and proteins in the process known as metabolism. The end products of its metabolic processes are carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogenous compounds, principally ammonia and urea. The molar ratio of carbon dioxide produced to oxygen consumed varies from 0.7, when fat is burned, to 1.0 for sugar. Since other gases in the environment are not known to participate in metabolic reactions, they are often called inert. There is some doubt whether this appellation is appropriate, but it is commonly encountered in medical and biological literature. It should be noted that this use of the term refers only to the role of these gases within the body. Hydrogen, for instance, is said to be a physiologically inert gas, despite its chemical reactivity.

**Oxygen**

The presence of molecular oxygen in the environment is absolutely essential for survival. The stores of molecular oxygen in the human body are extremely limited, amounting to little more than a liter of gas at sea level. The brain and associated sensory apparatus (especially the retina of the eye) have the highest oxygen uptake per unit mass of any system of the body; this system amounts to only 2 percent of the body’s mass, yet uses 20 percent of the oxygen consumed at rest. Since there is no means whereby the brain can store oxygen or glucose, its only energy source, it is totally dependent on the continuous delivery of adequately oxygenated arterial blood. Deprivation of blood, oxygen, or glucose for more than a few seconds leads to unconsciousness, convulsions, and, thereafter, death of nervous tissue. This is dramatically demonstrated in rapid decompression to a virtual vacuum, described in chapter 1.

Since the partial pressure of oxygen in alveolar air determines its partial pressure in the blood, and, therefore, the quantity of the element carried by hemoglobin, this variable has been studied in some detail. Blockley and Hanifan (1961), in an extensive review of hypoxia following rapid decompressions, have estimated that acute impairment of brain function occurs within about 13 seconds whenever the alveolar oxygen tension drops below a critical level. The severity of impairment and the extent of change in brain electrical activity are proportional to the integral of oxygen tension depression below 30 mm Hg with respect to time (Ernsting, 1961b, 1969). This is illustrated in figure 2-2.
Figure 2.2. Top: time course of alveolar \(O_2\) tension when subject breathing air at 8000 ft is rapidly decompressed to 44 000 ft. \(O_2\) was provided either 2 sec or 8 sec after the onset of decompression. \(O_2\) desaturation integrals for the two conditions are crosshatched. Bottom: performance decrements resulting from decompression. (Redrawn from data of Ernsting, 1969)

When no oxygen is available for metabolism, as following decompression to a vacuum, the term anoxia is used. Anoxia always results in near-immediate unconsciousness, convulsions, and paralysis. If prolonged for more than 90 to 180 seconds, anoxia is almost invariably fatal. The condition caused by a relative lack of oxygen in the body is called hypoxia. Depending on its severity, the effects of hypoxia can range from symptoms as severe as those of anoxia to very subtle effects, detectable only by searching examination of the highest functions of the central nervous system. This is illustrated in figure 2-3. As arterial oxygen tension falls, progressive central nervous system impairment occurs. This is indicated on the chart by zones of increasing density. These changes occur in resting subjects who are not fatigued or otherwise stressed. The oxygen saturation of the arterial blood is shown as a function of oxygen tension (the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve). A range of saturations is shown because temperature and acidity also influence the saturation values.

The lowest barometric pressure at which any sort of purposeful activity can be carried on was discussed in chapter 1. It was defined as a pressure sufficient to permit a reasonable partial pressure of oxygen in the alveolar air, with regard
to the obligatory water vapor pressure at that site of about 47 mm Hg, and the inevitability of a certain partial pressure of carbon dioxide, which is discussed below. The optimal carbon dioxide tension is about 40 mm Hg. At barometric pressures greater than about 87 mm Hg (an altitude equivalent of 50,000 feet), then, at least some oxygen can be made available. Extensive studies of hypoxia at altitudes between 18,000 feet (PB 380 mm Hg) and 50,000 feet have been related primarily to maintenance of consciousness in acutely exposed subjects. It has been found that healthy individuals at rest rarely lose consciousness below about 18,000 feet. Above that altitude, as indicated in figure 2-3, the duration of exposure before consciousness is lost is related to altitude and thus to the severity of the hypoxia produced.

**Approximate Altitude Breathing Air (Thousands of Feet)**

Since it is often difficult to assess exactly when total consciousness is lost, the concept of “time of useful consciousness” has evolved. Useful consciousness, as it is usually evaluated, represents the ability of a test subject to continue performing some purposeful act. The time of useful consciousness during an acute exposure to an hypoxic environment represents, therefore, an approximation of the time during which a subject may be expected to be sufficiently alert to ascertain the cause of the hypoxia and take effective action to protect himself or remove himself from the environment.

The time of useful consciousness varies according to the way in which the hypoxic environment is produced and according to the circumstances prevailing before the hypoxic exposure. If a subject breathing oxygen at altitude removes

![Figure 2-3. O₂ saturation in arterial blood as a function of alveolar O₂ tension in relation to altitude and to some reported symptoms of hypoxia. (Sources: USAF Flight Surgeon's Manual, 1968; Boothby, 1954; from Human factors in air transportation, McFarland. Copyright 1953 by McGraw-Hill Book Company. Used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company)]
his oxygen mask or becomes disconnected from his oxygen supply, the partial pressure of oxygen in the lungs drops with each succeeding breath of air, the decrease being dependent on the lung volume, the dilution of that volume by each breath's volume, and the altitude. In contrast, if a subject breathing air at low altitude is suddenly decompressed, the partial pressure of oxygen in his lungs drops immediately to a level which is dependent only on the final altitude. Venous blood is immediately exposed to low oxygen tension in the alveoli; the effects of hypoxia become evident as soon as inadequately oxygenated blood reaches the brain. Times of useful consciousness are much shorter than following oxygen mask removal at altitude. These times are shown in figure 2-4 for rapid decompressions to various altitudes of subjects breathing either air or oxygen prior to decompression.

![Time of Useful Consciousness Diagram](image)

**Figure 2-4.** Minimum and average duration of effective consciousness in subjects following rapid decompression breathing air (lower curve) and O2 (upper curve). At altitudes above 20,000 to 23,000 ft, unacclimatized subjects breathing air lose consciousness after a variable period of time. (Source: Blockley & Hanifan, 1961)

The appropriate protective action following a decompression in an aircraft is to don an oxygen mask. The ranges of times required to perform this action are shown in figure 2-5 for airline pilots studied in flight and for naive subjects studied in an altitude chamber. The rate of decompression for the airline pilots was 500 feet per second (fps) to a final altitude of 30,000 feet. The pilots had had training in decompression emergency procedures within a year prior to the exposures (Bennett, 1961). In the naive subject group, 60 young males were exposed to 10-second decompressions from 8000 to 30,000 feet (Hoffler & coworkers, 1963), and 10 male and female subjects were exposed to 5000 to 20,000 feet decompressions (Chalm & coworkers, 1963). None of the naive subjects had been previously exposed to rapid decompressions. The only induced means was a standard airline passenger briefing.
Atmosphere

Figure 2-5. Mask-donning behavior related to time of useful consciousness. Subjects comprised 42 airline pilots (---) and 100 naive subjects (---). Exponential curve (see figure 2-4) represents average times of useful consciousness for subjects breathing air prior to decompression. (Data of Bennett, 1961; Hoffler & coworkers, 1968; Chisolm & coworkers, 1969, calculated by Blockley & Hanifan, 1961)

Any diluent gas which is present in a breathing system will influence the immediate usefulness of that system following a rapid decompression. This is shown in figure 2-6, which demonstrates the effect of oxygen hose volume on tracheal (upper airway) oxygen tension following rapid (1 second and 9 second) decompressions from 8000 to 40 000 feet. In the case illustrated, a diluter-demand regulator delivered 38 percent oxygen at 8000 feet and 100 percent oxygen at 40 000 feet. Pure oxygen is delayed in reaching the subject's lungs because of the volume of air-oxygen mixture in the hose at the time of decompression.

Even the very severe decompressions discussed in chapter I may not produce irreversible brain damage. However, the degree of brain dysfunction acceptable for pilots is considerably less than for passengers. Also, variations in individual tolerance for hypoxia make it risky to allow more than an unavoidable minimum of severe hypoxia to occur. Recent studies related to the development of a supersonic transport aircraft have resulted in the elucidation of criteria for "safe periods of unconsciousness" for passengers in such aircraft. It must be recognized, however, that persons with impaired brain circulation, the elderly, and certain others are far less tolerant of hypoxia than the healthy subjects who form the basis of the curves shown in figures 2-3 and 2-4. Taking into account
the behavioral variation shown in figure 2-5, it would appear essential to attempt to prevent the untoward hypoxic effects of decompression.

![Graph](image)

Figure 2–6. Effect of O₂ hose volume on tracheal O₂ tension following rapid decompression (Drawn from data of Ernsting, 1961a; reprinted by permission of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office)

At very high altitudes, even immediate mask donning will not prevent mental impairment following decompression of a subject who breathed air before the event. Ernsting, McLardy, and Roxburgh (1960) and Blockley and Hanifan (1961) have estimated the concentrations of oxygen which must be breathed prior to decompression if such impairment is to be avoided. These are shown in figure 2-7. In a cabin pressurized to 8000 feet (565 mm Hg), it is estimated that the critical alveolar oxygen partial pressure is 33 mm Hg. This calculation assumes that 100 percent oxygen is immediately supplied (under positive pressure at final altitudes above 45 000 feet). It should be noted in this context that studies by Barron (1965) of decompressions to 45 000 feet suggest that no combination of maneuvers aside from prebreathing oxygen-enriched air will prevent at least some transient hypoxic effects at that altitude. This is also suggested in figure 2-4.

Examination of the oxygen saturation curves in figure 2-3 indicates that near-normal blood oxygen levels, and thus essentially normal function, can be maintained with alveolar oxygen tensions as low as 50 to 60 mm Hg. It follows from this that a barometric pressure of 140 to 150 mm Hg will be sufficient to allow proper alveolar oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions to be maintained if no other gases are present in the respiratory tract. These barometric pressures are encountered at 39 000 to 40 000 feet. Human subjects, however, are capable of breathing against a limited degree of continuous positive pressure, although this is not accomplished without a physiological penalty (Ernsting, 1965, 1966). The elevation of total pressure within the chest causes a diminution in the volume of blood returning to the heart and thus a decrease in the heart's output.
Despite the limitations of the technique, it is possible to maintain total lung pressure, and therefore alveolar oxygen tension, at minimal adequate levels up to altitudes of roughly 50,000 feet by provision of continuous positive pressure oxygen. At this altitude (Pb 87 mm Hg), a pressure of 60 mm Hg is required to maintain a P O₂ in the lungs of 60 mm Hg. It has been found, however, that a continuous positive pressure of 30 mm Hg is about the maximum which can be tolerated by trained subjects for even a short period of time without the application of counterpressure on the chest (which increases stagnation of blood in the abdomen and the extremities). The use of positive pressure at these altitudes, therefore, is clearly a short-term emergency measure. It is for this reason that overall pressure garments become mandatory at altitudes much above 50,000 feet.

At altitudes below about 20,000 feet (Pb 350 mm Hg), human survival and function at some meaningful level is possible without added oxygen. This is possible because higher life forms have a considerable ability to adapt themselves, or become acclimatized, to hypoxia. Consideration of this topic is beyond the scope of this chapter. It should be said, however, that people vary considerably in their tolerance for chronic, or long-term, hypoxia, as they do for acute exposures. Some persons will become acutely ill after several hours at altitudes as low as 12,000 feet (Pb 480 mm Hg), whereas others encounter less difficulty at altitudes as high as 18,000 feet (Pb 380 mm Hg).
Virtually everyone will develop some symptoms of acute altitude sickness (shortness of breath, headaches, insomnia, impaired ability to concentrate or perform complex tasks, and sometimes nausea and vomiting) after exposure to air at altitudes of 11,000 to 12,000 feet for periods longer than 8 to 24 hours. In most people, these symptoms decline in frequency and severity over a period of 2 to 5 days (figure 2-8). Ability to perform muscular work is moderately or severely impaired, and this impairment persists for long periods of time (figure 2-9).

Figure 2-8. Proportion of subjects reporting symptoms of acute altitude sickness (headache, nausea, lightheadedness, fatigue, shortness of breath, or insomnia) during each of 20 days of continuous exposure at an elevation of 12,500 ft (3800 m, 475 mm Hg). (After Billings & coworkers, 1969; reprinted by permission of the Archives of Environmental Health, 1969, 18, 987-995)

Hypoxic symptoms are less pronounced at lower altitudes or for shorter periods of exposure. They exist, nonetheless, and may be important under certain circumstances (figure 2-3). Visual thresholds have been shown to increase at altitudes above 4000 feet, probably because of the very high oxygen requirements of the light-sensing cells in the eye. Impairment of ability to learn new complex tasks has been demonstrated at 8000 feet (P _H 565 mm Hg) (Ledwith & Denison, 1964); impairment of recent memory, judgment and ability to perform complex calculations are seen at altitudes in the neighborhood of 10,000 feet (P _H 520 mm Hlg) (McFarland, 1953).

Man at sea level is rarely exposed to partial pressures of oxygen greater than 170 mm Hlg. Oxygen has been used as a therapeutic agent almost since its
discovery, however, and it was thought for a considerable time that gas mixtures
containing several times the usual sea level concentration of 20.9 percent were
totally without harmful effects. It is now known that this is not the case,
even though it is not certain that 160 mm Hg is the optimal partial pressure under
all circumstances.

![Diagram](image-url)

Figure 2-9. Impairment of capacity for muscular work by acute and chronic hypoxia. (Data
from various sources, collated by Ceretelli, 1967, whose graph has been adapted for use here)

Too high a partial pressure of oxygen is not well tolerated by man, though
our species is more tolerant than many species of experimental animals. The
toxicity of oxygen at above-normal partial pressures is a time-dependent
function whose characteristics are shown in figure 2-10. At pressures above
1 atm, central nervous system signs predominate (nausea, dizziness, faintness,
and convulsions). At around 1 atm, respiratory symptoms are common. These
symptoms are seen with longer periods of exposure at pressures as low as
200 mm Hg, although they are uncommon below about 250 mm Hg. At
pressures of oxygen only slightly higher (253 mm Hg or 5 psia) than normal sea
level PO2 changes in red blood cell fragility and cell wall permeability have been
reported (Berry, 1967). Whether oxygen per se is toxic at pressures in the range
of 180 to 250 mm Hg, or whether the absence of a diluent gas is responsible for
toxic manifestations, is not certain.

At higher oxygen tensions (250 to 750 mm Hg), signs of lung irritation are
noticed after 12 to 72 hours of exposure. It is also known that oxygen tensions
in this range can cause blindness in newborn and premature infants (the
condition called retrolental fibroplasia). On the other hand, many thousands of adult patients have been given oxygen in this pressure range for relatively long periods of time without apparent harm. While some patients have had diffusion defects such that elevated alveolar oxygen tensions merely maintained normal blood gas tensions, others have not. Ernsting (1961a) has demonstrated significant defects in diffusing capacity in man after 3 hours of exposure to 99 percent oxygen at sea level.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 2-10. Approximate time of appearance of signs and symptoms of O₂ toxicity as a function of P0₂. (Adapted from Welch & coworkers, 1963; Bean, 1945; Roth, 1964)

During exercise, supplemental oxygen causes a perceptible decrease in ventilation volume (Nielsen & Hansen, 1937); this may be considered a beneficial effect. Many pilots have described alleviation of fatigue when they placed themselves on supplemental oxygen for a short time before landing, especially at night. This is difficult to quantitate or even to verify, but the effect may be a real one (Roth, 1964).

Oxygen at partial pressures greater than 760 mm Hg (14.7 psia, 1.0 atm) has been used sporadically as a therapeutic agent. Only in recent years, however, have controlled studies been performed to evaluate its effects. The usefulness of oxygen in the treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning is beyond question; it is helpful in the treatment of gas gangrene, caused by a bacterium which cannot survive in the presence of high oxygen tensions. Its usefulness in treating tetanus (lockjaw), caused by a similar organism, is less certain. High oxygen tensions potentiate the effects of ionizing radiation; hyperbaric oxygen in combination with radiation therapy is used in treating certain advanced cancers. Its beneficial
effects in most of the other conditions in which it has been tried are questionable (Boerema, 1964).

Pure oxygen is used by Navy divers breathing from closed-circuit oxygen equipment when they wish to avoid leaving a trail of expired gas bubbles on the surface. Since oxygen at pressures greater than about 2 atm absolute can cause convulsions, however, the depths and times at which divers can use such equipment are very limited. As with hypoxia, individual susceptibility to hyperoxia varies widely. Performing physical work while breathing oxygen at high pressures decreases tolerance markedly. The risk of oxygen convulsions appears to be minimal in resting men exposed in a dry chamber to as much as 3.0 atm oxygen for 1 hour; oxygen pressures higher than this increase the risk considerably (Bennett, 1969). The risk is substantially greater under water in working subjects, especially if the water is cold. Figure 2-11 shows the limits currently imposed by the U.S. Navy (1970).

![Figure 2-11](image)

Figure 2-11. Navy published limits for divers using O₂ under water. Symptoms resulting from excessive exposure are shown. Limits assume moderate activity and minimal CO₂ tensions in the diver's breathing apparatus. (Redrawn from U.S. Navy Diving Manual, 1970)

Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide is neither a necessary nor a desirable constituent of man's gaseous environment. Though man is normally exposed to low concentrations of this gas at sea level (on the order of 0.03 percent), it is quite certain that he can live indefinitely in an atmosphere entirely free of the gas, for he produces and excretes more than enough to meet his physiological needs.
Most of the 400 to 800 liters (15 to 30 ft\(^3\)) of carbon dioxide produced by an active man each day is excreted through the lungs as gaseous carbon dioxide; the remainder appears in the urine as bicarbonate ion, combined with basic elements, primarily sodium. Carbon dioxide is very soluble in water, with which it combines to form a weakly dissociated acid. The carbonic acid–bicarbonate buffer system is a major factor in the maintenance of the body's acid-base balance.

At and near sea level, man's breathing is controlled primarily by the amount of carbon dioxide he produces. Respiratory centers in the brain are exquisitely sensitive to very small changes in carbon dioxide tension and hydrogen ion concentration in the arterial blood. Carbon dioxide added to inspired air is a powerful respiratory stimulant; in higher doses, it stimulates heart rate as well (figure 2-12). Increases in arterial blood carbon dioxide tension also cause marked relaxation of the blood vessels in the brain; brain blood flow increases considerably. Figure 2-13 indicates the effects of both acute and prolonged exposures to carbon dioxide–air mixtures at 1 atm. In acute exposures, the boundary between "no effect" and "distracting discomfort" is narrow. In the area marked Zone II in the graph at the left side of figure 2-13, symptoms include small threshold hearing losses and a perceptible doubling in depth of respiration. In Zone III, mental depression, headache, dizziness, nausea "air hunger," and decreased visual discrimination are experienced. Zone IV represents marked deterioration leading to dizziness and stupor, with inability to take steps for self-preservation. The final state is unconsciousness. The bar graph at the right of the figure shows that for prolonged exposures of 40 days, concentrations of carbon dioxide in air less than 0.5 percent (Zone A) cause no known biochemical or other effect; concentrations between 0.5 and 3.0 percent (Zone D) cause adaptive biochemical changes which may be considered a mild physiological strain; and concentrations above 3.0 percent (Zone C) cause pathological changes in basic physiological functions.

At partial pressures above about 60 mm Hg, the gas is a potent narcotic; it depresses brain function, elevates convulsion thresholds and causes respiratory depression. Very high partial pressures of this metabolite are fatal, probably because of the profoundly acidic blood and body fluids which are produced (Marshall, 1961).

Since man produces carbon continually at rates which vary from 0.2 to as high as 5 liters per minute (0.007 to 0.18 cubic feet per minute), this gas must be removed promptly from a closed environment, either by venting and replacement (as is done in pressurized aircraft) or by chemical or physical scrubbing (the methods used in spacecraft and certain submarines). The changes in gas composition in a sealed space containing a man are illustrated in figure 2-14. In the top part of this figure, the long straight line indicates oxygen depletion and carbon dioxide accumulation when no corrective measures are used. At 3.1 hours, when \(P_{O_2}\) has decreased to 108 mm Hg and \(P_{CO_2}\) has increased to 30 mm Hg (4 percent), respiratory volume has doubled. Curves emanating from this point indicate effects of adding pure oxygen, absorbing carbon dioxide, and ventilating with air and clearing carbon dioxide with absorber handling (12 liters of air/min/man). The dotted curve shows effects of using the same carbon dioxide absorber from the outset.
Figure 2-12. Immediate effects of increased CO₂ on pulse rate, respiration rate, and respiratory minute volume for subjects at rest. Hatched areas represent one S.D. on each side of the mean. To convert percentage of CO₂ to partial pressure, multiply percent by 760 mm Hg. (Adapted from Schacter et al., 1952; Dryden et al., 1956)
The bottom part of figure 2-14 presents a series of lines indicating uncontrolled change for several cabin volumes. (Here too, RQ = 0.8 and oxygen consumption rate equals 300 cm$^2$/min.) The dots on the lines indicate the time in hours to reach a critical oxygen level of 100 mm Hg. Lower values for carbon dioxide for smaller free volumes, when oxygen is 100 mm Hg, result from relatively greater tissue storage of carbon dioxide. This effect is lessened in longer exposures in larger free volumes.

A number of studies have shown that psychomotor performance is impaired by moderate increases in arterial carbon dioxide tension. This is indicated in figure 2-15. In this figure, the zones above the line marked "normal alveolar CO$_2$" indicate increasing hypercapnea, limited by a zone of carbon dioxide narcosis. Below this dashed line, marked as zones of increasing hypocapnea, are lower levels of alveolar carbon dioxide, which commonly result from excessive respiratory ventilation. Low levels of alveolar P$_O_2$ (severe hypoxia and hypoxic collapse) combine with hyper- and hypocapnea to affect performance as indicated.
While a carbon dioxide tension of 22 mm Hg in the inspired air has been considered to be the maximum safe (though not innocuous) level for exposures lasting up to a month, comparatively few such tests have been conducted. It is not certain that such levels will be safe for the much longer sealed cabin exposures now being contemplated; this is an area which needs further research. Recent data suggest that tensions of 11 mm Hg (1.5 percent carbon dioxide at 750 mm Hg barometric pressure) for 42 days induce physiological changes which may be harmful under conditions of prolonged weightlessness (Ellingson, 1970).

It is also possible for blood carbon dioxide tensions to reach dangerously low values, usually as the result of ventilation in excess of need. Hyperventilation, as it is called, results in a decrease in alveolar carbon dioxide tension. The increased pressure gradient between alveolar air and the incoming venous blood leads to the removal from the blood of more carbon dioxide than is being produced in the tissues.

Otis (1946), Balke (1956), and others have shown that moderate, induced hyperventilation is associated with impaired performance of psychomotor tasks (figure 2-15). Balke (1957) has also demonstrated moderate to severe hyperventilation in pilots during transition to complex jet fighter aircraft. Aircraft accidents are thought to have resulted from severe hyperventilation, which not infrequently accompanies fear or panic.

Figure 2-15. Relationship of alveolar O₂ and CO₂ composition to performance. (Adapted from Otis & coworkers, 1946, with additional data from Balke, 1956)
Severe hyperventilation results in lightheadedness, feelings of numbness, tingling, markedly impaired performance, involuntary tetanic contractions of the skeletal muscles and, ultimately, in impaired consciousness. Unfortunately, the person who begins to hyperventilate as the result of fear tends to become more and more frightened by these bizarre symptoms; his fear, in turn, may increase his hyperventilation. It may also be difficult for even an experienced person to differentiate the symptoms of hyperventilation from those of hypoxia (Wayne, 1958), and it should be noted that moderate degrees of hypoxia in themselves provoke a degree of hyperventilation.

The Inert Gases

In this section are discussed the various gases generally considered to be physiologically inert: nitrogen, helium, neon, argon, krypton, and xenon. An introduction which describes their common attributes is followed by brief discussions of their individual characteristics. Table 2-1 summarizes certain important physical and biochemical properties of these elements.

Metabolic Role of Inert Gases

Perhaps the first serious doubts as to whether this group of elements was truly inert were cast by Cook, who performed studies on a variety of species to evaluate possible effects of helium. These are summarized in reviews by Cook and Leon (1959) and by Cook (1961). While many of the results reported in early studies could be accounted for by the high thermal conductivity of helium, producing high rates of heat loss in the organisms under study, others could not. It has been found that both oxidative and nonoxidative metabolic reactions are affected, though the exact biochemical sites of the effects have not been determined.

Schreiner and coworkers (1962) have also presented data suggesting that growth rates of certain molds are affected predictably by the "inert" gases in which they are cultured. Figure 2-16 summarizes their findings.

Allen (1963) attempted to grow chicken embryos in the absence of nitrogen, to determine whether nitrogen gas was required for the development of mammals. He found profound retardation of embryonic development in fertile eggs incubated in a number of environments deficient in nitrogen (figure 2-17). These results have been confirmed in part by others, though some workers feel they can be explained by factors other than an absence of nitrogen. The question remains an open one at this time. The few human studies which have been performed thus far have shown no effects which can be attributed to a metabolic effect of these gases, though the experiments have been of short duration.
Table 2–1
Physical and Biochemical Properties of Inert Gases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT</th>
<th>Helium</th>
<th>Nitrogen</th>
<th>Neon</th>
<th>Argon</th>
<th>Krypton</th>
<th>Xenon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>N₂</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Kr</td>
<td>Xe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomic number</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular weight</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>28.00</td>
<td>20.18</td>
<td>39.94</td>
<td>83.80</td>
<td>131.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density at 0°C, 1 atm, gm/l</td>
<td>0.1784</td>
<td>1.251</td>
<td>0.9004</td>
<td>1.784</td>
<td>3.708</td>
<td>5.851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity at 0°C, 1 atm, micropoise</td>
<td>194.1</td>
<td>175.0</td>
<td>311.1</td>
<td>221.7</td>
<td>249.6</td>
<td>226.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal conductivity at 0°C, 1 atm, cal/o°C-cm-sec</td>
<td>34.0 x 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>5.66 x 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>11.04 x 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>3.92 x 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>2.09 x 10⁻⁵</td>
<td>1.21 x 10⁻⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunsen solubility coefficients:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in water at 38°C</td>
<td>0.0086</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>0.0097</td>
<td>0.026</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>0.085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in olive oil at 38°C</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>0.061</td>
<td>0.019</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in human fat at 37°C</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>0.062</td>
<td>0.020</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil:water solubility ratio</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>4.69</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>5.38</td>
<td>9.56</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Roth, 1967)
Figure 2-16. Relation of growth rates of *Neurospora crassa* molds to molecular weights of gases of the helium group in the environment. Significant effects (P<0.01) were associated with different inert gases. (Schreiner, 1962; copyright 1962 by the American Association for the Advancement of Science)

Figure 2-17. Proportion of chick embryos showing arrested vascular development, or no signs of development, after 96 hr of incubation in various gas mixtures. (Redrawn from data of Allen, 1963)
Toxic Effects of Inert Gases

It has been known for many years that divers breathing air at considerable depths were prone to a disorder commonly called "raptures of the deep." The symptoms (elation, euphoria, deficient judgment, impaired motor coordination, diminished perception of pain and discomfort) are rather similar to those caused by alcohol. They have been variously attributed to high oxygen tensions, to carbon dioxide retention caused by inadequate ventilation of the lungs, and to nitrogen. It seems very probable that nitrogen is in fact the causative agent, though carbon dioxide retention may occur during work at depth and this gas is a potent narcotic, as noted earlier (Roth, 1967).

Later studies have indicated that xenon, krypton, argon, and, probably, helium all have narcotic potential in man and other mammals. Xenon at partial pressures of 0.8 atm (600 mm Hg, 11.75 psia) has been used as an anesthetic agent in human surgery (Callen, 1951). Argon has been shown to be a potent narcotic at a tension of 3.2 atm (1950 mm Hg, 47 psia) (Behnke, 1939). Though the nitrogen in air exerts minor effects on human performance at barometric pressures as low as 2.5 atm absolute, the usual threshold is considered to be 4 atm, and serious symptoms are not ordinarily seen at pressures less than 7 atm (200-foot depth in sea water).

Recent studies by Bennett and Elliott (1969) have suggested that although the narcotic potential of helium is much less than that of any other inert gas, it does have some degree of potency at pressures in the range of 25 atm absolute. It thus appears that all of the inert gases are capable of exerting narcotic effects, though the mechanisms are not well understood. These narcotic effects, together with possible metabolic effects, may well be limiting factors in man's ability to tolerate long exposures at very high barometric pressures.

Role of the Inert Gases in Decompression Sickness

It was indicated in chapter 1 that the incidence of decompression sickness was materially reduced if inert gases, whether nitrogen, helium, or others, were washed out of the body prior to ascent. While this is often possible prior to ascent in aviation and space operations, the toxicity of oxygen prevents its use prior to ascent from depths greater than about 66 feet of water (3 atm absolute). Detailed discussion of the role of inert gases in decompression sickness is beyond the scope of this chapter; several excellent reviews are available (Roth, 1967; Bennett & Elliott, 1969).

Considerable research is in progress to define more clearly the limits of decompression tolerance in man after saturation exposures to various environments. This work will find applications both in space operations in which multiple-gas environments are used and in the long-term underwater habitability studies being carried out by several nations. The three gases which have been seriously considered as diluents for oxygen in such applications are helium, nitrogen, and neon. With respect to decompression
sickness, helium has certain theoretical advantages over nitrogen. Empirical data, however, are far from clear as to its practical advantages, particularly for space operations. In diving, the problem of nitrogen narcosis forces its replacement at depths below 200 to 250 feet. Preliminary studies suggest that neon may have advantages over either nitrogen or helium; confirmation of this awaits further research.

Hydrogen has been used in one series of dives at considerable depths; while it is not explosive when oxygen concentrations are less than 4 percent, theoretical considerations suggest that it may be no better than helium or perhaps even nitrogen with respect to decompression sickness.

**Space-Occupying Role of Inert Gases**

If a closed pocket of gas occurs or is created in the human body, the oxygen and carbon dioxide in the pocket are absorbed relatively rapidly; inert gases are also absorbed, but much more slowly because they are less soluble in blood (Makley & Billings, 1968). This has important implications when pure oxygen is breathed. During descent in an aircraft, it is necessary to ventilate the middle ear to relieve pressure differentials across the eardrum (see chapter I). If the breathing gas is oxygen, the middle ear contains a high concentration of that gas after descent. The rapid absorption of oxygen over the next several hours can lead to symptoms identical to those which occur when a pressure differential arises during descent. This condition, called "delayed" or oxygen barotitis, is a common problem in military pilots.

It has also been found that during high-G maneuvers in fighter aircraft, small segments of the lungs can act like closed pockets of trapped gas. If oxygen and carbon dioxide are the only gases present in these segments, they are absorbed rapidly, causing collapse of small portions of the lung, and often chest pain and coughing. This condition, oxygen atelectasis, was described by Ernsting (1960) and has been studied in detail by Green and Burgess (1962).

Prevention of both these conditions is simple under conditions which permit the addition of an inert gas to the breathing mixture. The inert gas occupies space, and, since it is absorbed slowly, collapse is less likely to occur.

**Other Considerations**

If man must perform hard physical work, with attendant high ventilation rates, the density of the gas mixture will be important, particularly at high barometric pressures. The usefulness of helium in this regard has already been discussed. Another factor related to the physical characteristics of the breathing gas, however, is speech intelligibility. This is not an important problem at subatmospheric pressures, though it has been demonstrated that sound pressure levels are attenuated differentially by different gases at pressures below 1 atm (Cooke, 1964; Cooke & Beard, 1965).
At pressures encountered in diving operations, speech in helium-oxygen gas mixtures may become quite unintelligible. In some circumstances, it has been found necessary to add small amounts of nitrogen or neon to the breathing (Wathen-Dunn, 1967). Electronic processing has also been attempted in an effort to improve communications.

Thermal control is another area in which the inert gas plays a role. Since this appears to be a problem only when helium is used, it is discussed under that heading.

Finally, mention should be made of the last member of the family of noble gases, radon. Since it is intensely radioactive, it has been excluded from discussion here and from consideration for any role in life support systems.

Nitrogen

The work of Allen (1963) has raised the possibility that nitrogen in its elemental form may be necessary for mammalian growth and development. If this is true (and there are no other data which unequivocally support his contention), it is certainly true also that only small amounts of gaseous nitrogen are necessary for unimpaired functioning of adult human subjects. The helium-oxygen studies of Adams and coworkers, cited in chapter 1, involved nitrogen partial pressures as low as practicable, averaging 2 mm Hg for 56 days of exposure; other studies have been conducted for shorter periods at even lower nitrogen tensions without symptoms referable to the absence of the gas.

It also seems clear that partial pressures of nitrogen of at least 1200 mm Hg (found in air at 2 atm absolute) are not harmful for prolonged exposure. As noted previously, substantially higher pressures are required before frank symptoms of nitrogen intoxication appear, and there is evidence that some degree of adaptation to nitrogen narcosis is possible. Nonetheless, the partial pressures of nitrogen encountered at 200 feet depth, 4200 mm Hg, are clearly toxic to human subjects.

Helium

Studies of molds grown in helium-oxygen at a total pressure of 120 atm absolute (1764 psia) have shown that growth and metabolic activity are impeded. Interestingly, it appears that at this high pressure, helium depresses growth more than nitrogen, a reversal of the situation encountered at sea level (figure 2-16). Mice demonstrate narcotic effects of helium at 54 atm (794 psia), and the work of Bennett (1969) suggests that the threshold for narcotic effects in man may approximate 34 atm (500 psia). Nonetheless, with the possible exception of hydrogen, helium is the diluent gas best tolerated by man at very great depths.

The thermal conductivity of helium, six times that of nitrogen, does pose substantial problems. Figure 2-18 shows this parameter for various proportions of several inert gases with oxygen. Soviet and U.S. studies, among others,
have demonstrated that air temperatures must be 4 to 5°F higher for comfort of resting subjects in helium-oxygen environments; zones of thermal comfort are somewhat narrower (table 2-2). This may be a particular problem in undersea work; work temperatures are usually well below comfort levels and the gas mixture in underwater habitats is almost invariably saturated with water vapor. Substantial increases in environmental temperatures may be required for comfort (Raymond, 1967).

![Figure 2-18. Thermal conductivity of binary gas mixtures containing O₂ at 30°C. (After Srivastava & Barua, 1960)](image)

**Table 2-2**

Temperature Indicated to be Comfortable by Subjects in Space Cabin Simulator Experiments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barometric Pressure</th>
<th>Gas Tension (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Selected Temperature (°F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>psia</td>
<td>O₂</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(From data of Welch, cited by Roth, 1968)
The problem of speech intelligibility has been studied intensively. Soviet workers have found an increase of about 0.7 octave in the fundamental frequency of the human voice at 1 atm in 80 percent helium-20 percent oxygen (Dianov, 1964). Similar findings are reported by U.S. groups (Sergeant, 1963).

Neon

Roth (1967), in his extensive review of inert gases for use in space vehicle atmospheres, concluded that "neon appears to offer some advantages over helium and nitrogen as an inert gas diluent..." This conclusion was reached on theoretical grounds, primarily because of the potential problem of decompression sickness, though it was pointed out that in all other areas as well, neon appears to be as good as or slightly better than nitrogen or helium.

There is, unfortunately, a shortage of data on human exposures to neon-oxygen mixtures. Bennett (1967) and Bennett and Elliott (1969) report the conduct of many short studies with the gas, some on humans; Weiss and coworkers (1968) have conducted longer studies on other mammals. On the basis of very incomplete data, it does not appear that the gas has toxic effects which would preclude its use in either space operations or in underwater work at moderate depths, where it can lessen problems in communications and heat loss without appreciably increasing the risk of inert gas narcosis or decompression sickness during reascent.

Argon, Krypton, and Xenon

It has been pointed out that argon is appreciably more narcotic than nitrogen, which severely limits its usefulness in underwater work. In addition, however, its use is associated with a substantially higher incidence of decompression sickness than either helium or nitrogen in animals (Behnke, 1939). These two considerations make it unlikely that the element would be seriously considered for use as the diluent gas in closed life support systems. It should be mentioned, however, that it has been proposed, and used, in ascents after very deep dives in an attempt to promote release of other inert gases from the tissues. Such specialized uses are beyond the scope of this discussion; a description of the technique has been published by Keller (1965).

The narcotic potency of krypton and xenon, together with much more severe potential for decompression sickness, precludes them from consideration for life support systems. It has been mentioned that xenon has been used as an anesthetic agent, and in this area it may have certain advantages if the problem of its cost can be overcome. Radioactive isotopes of both gases are used in studies of lung and circulatory physiology in animals and humans.

Other Gaseous Compounds

Carbon monoxide is generated in small amounts by most organisms. It results from the incomplete oxidation of foodstuffs. This compound is
discussed more fully in chapter 10, Toxicology; it is mentioned here only because of its physiological occurrence in closed ecological systems containing man or animals.

Methane and other gaseous products evolved in the course of digestion and bacterial action in the gut have varying toxicities. However, few studies involving long-term continuous exposure of man have been conducted.

Finally, sulfur hexafluoride, a physiologically inert gas with a molecular weight of 146.1, has been used in combination with oxygen in studies of the effects of high gas density on respiration. The density of a 79 percent sulfur hexafluoride-21 percent oxygen mixture is 4.2 times that of air at the same pressure. The toxicity of its breakdown products militates against the use of sulfur hexafluoride in other than experimental situations, where it can be quite useful.

References


Barron, C. I., & Cook, T. J. Effects of variable decompressions to 45 000 feet. Aerospace Medicine, 1965, 36, 425-430.


Cook, J. P. Sound transmission in helium and various gases at low pressures. USAF SAM TDR-64-43, School of Aviation Medicine, Randolph Air Force Base, Texas, 1964.

Cullen, S. C., & Gross, E. G. The anesthetic properties of xenon in animals and human beings, with additional observations on krypton. *Science*, 1951, 113, 580-582.


CHAPTER 3
TEMPERATURE

by

P.J. Berenson, Ph.D.

and

W.G. Robertson, Ph.D.

AiResearch Manufacturing Company

Human life can be maintained in environments ranging from Arctic cold, where the problem is to minimize heat loss and maximize heat production, to furnace-like heat, where the problem is to maximize heat loss. The spectrum of human response to temperature is broad, ranging from complete thermal comfort to the extremes of pain-limited exposures. The critical variable is exposure time, which may range from seconds in pain-limited situations to a lifetime. Thermal tolerance times can be increased by properly chosen clothing.

Within a period ranging from minutes (emergency situations) to days and weeks, differences between individuals and groups in response to thermal extremes are enormous, largely because of varying preceding experiences, or "acclimitization." Synthesis of available experimental data is extremely difficult in the absence of a reliable quantitative scale upon which to identify individual differences. Consequently, variations are emphasized in this chapter to illustrate how selection and training can influence response to any particular environment-activity-clothing combination. The conservative solution to the use of these data is the choice of the least resistant and least trained individuals.

The problems of comfort in heat stress are emphasized here, with less emphasis placed upon those problems associated with cold exposures. The chapter begins with a discussion of the physiological parameters related to human thermal interactions and closes with some data concerning thermal protective clothing. The terms and symbols used throughout this chapter are defined in the Glossary which precedes the References section at the end of the chapter.

Reviewed by A. Pharo Gagge, Ph.D., John B. Pierce Foundation. Appendix authored by the reviewer.
Physiological Parameters

The primary physiological parameters related to human thermal interactions are sweat rate, skin surface temperature, and body internal temperature; only small changes in the latter two can be tolerated without discomfort. Some latent heat rejection by evaporation occurs due to respiratory water loss, but most occurs at the skin surface, where water is deposited by the sweat glands and by diffusion through the skin. The remaining energy, termed sensible heat, is transferred to the atmosphere by a combination of convection and radiation heat transfer. All heat rejected at the skin’s surface is transported from the deep body tissues by the flow of the blood.

Thermoregulatory Mechanisms

One of the heat-regulating mechanisms of the body involves control of the flow of blood to the skin by the constriction and dilation of the peripheral blood vessels. This vasoregulatory mechanism attempts to control sensible heat rejection from the body to maintain internal body temperature at a nominal value of 98.6°F (27°C). This mechanism, which is controlled by a combination of internal and skin temperatures, is capable of providing a factor-of-ten variation in sensible energy transfer between the body core and the surface (Robinson, 1963). Thus, under cold conditions, the body attempts to reduce the heat dissipation rate by reducing the flow of blood to the cold skin by constriction of the peripheral blood vessels. Under hot conditions, vasodilation, which occurs with the onset of active sweating, takes place and the blood flow to the hot skin is increased. Although the vasoregulatory mechanism is an important safeguard, it has little effect on thermal comfort analysis. Experiments indicate that at the limits of vasoregulation, the vasomotor system is capable of exerting a stabilizing effect on rectal and skin temperatures for a finite period (Winslow, Herrington, & Gagge, 1937). The period of stabilization is reduced as the severity of thermal stress is increased.

For each individual, there is an internal set-point temperature at which he is comfortable; the variation in the set point between individuals is approximately ±0.5°F (±0.3°C). At internal temperatures above the set point, vasodilation and active sweating occur; at internal temperatures below the set point, vasoconstriction and increased metabolism due to shivering occur. Because shivering and sweating are a function of both internal and skin temperatures, it is desirable to maintain the internal temperature below the set point to avoid sweating; at the same time, it is necessary to avoid excessively low skin temperatures that will produce shivering and a cold sensation. According to Kerslake (1962), a mean skin temperature of approximately 91.4°F (33°C) is near optimum; mean skin temperatures higher than 94°F (34.5°C) cause active sweating, and mean skin temperatures lower than 86°F (30°C) are associated with metabolic heat generation by shivering.

The eccrine sweat rate is dependent on the cranial internal temperature only for skin temperatures above 91.4°F (33°C); it is suppressed by reduced skin temperature at skin temperatures lower than 91.4°F (33°C) (Benzinger, 1961).
Because the relationship between the body skin temperature and internal temperature is determined by the external heat transfer characteristics, for particular environmental conditions, the eccrine sweat rate can be given as a function of skin temperature alone.

**Skin Properties**

Relevant properties of the skin are listed in table 3-1. Skin temperature is an important factor in body thermal control, although the heat rejection rate over which it is effective is small relative to that exercised by the sweat mechanism. The latter can generate water at a maximum rate corresponding approximately to 3000 BTU/hr (880 W or approximately 22gm/min for the average sized man). It can be determined that the sensible (radiation plus convection) energy rejection rate from the body will normally vary by approximately 20 BTU/hr (10 W) for each °F (°C) change in skin temperature. Therefore, in going from a comfortably cool skin temperature of 90°F to a comfortably warm skin temperature of 93°F, the heat rejection rate is increased by only 60 BTU/hr (17.5 W).

**Regional Requirements**

As shown in figure 3-1, different areas of the body have varying thermal characteristics and requirements. To be comfortable, the body must be maintained under conditions producing no eccrine sweating. A certain amount of moisture, however, will be removed from the body by insensible water loss, by diffusion through the skin and by respiration. The data in figure 3-1 show that the insensible water loss by diffusion varies greatly over the surface of the body and with the individual; most of the loss is from portions of the body that are generally unclothed.

Insensible water loss is a continuing nonadaptive process and results in loss of body heat under virtually all environmental conditions. The irreducible insensible water loss from skin and lungs is 0.06 of 1 percent of body weight per hour. The lower limit for insensible water loss from the skin alone at one atmosphere and Ta=68°F (20°C) is approximately 10 gm/sq m-hr. At air temperatures above 68°F (20°C) the rate of insensible water loss increases linearly to a value of about 25 gm/sq m-hr at Ta = 79°F (26°C). Below the sweating threshold, about 40 percent of the moisture loss is from the palm, sole of the foot, and head (about 13 percent of the total body surface.)

At air temperature between 79° (26°C) and 93° (34°C) on Earth, there is an increase in water loss as additional regional areas of the body begin to sweat. The progression of recruitment is generally from the extremities toward the central regions of the body and headward, and is subject to effects of training. In this temperature range and at rest, the onset of sweating produces water loss at rates of 40 to 60 gm/sq m-hr for all regions of the body. At ambient temperatures higher than 93°F (34°C), the increment in sweat rate increases linearly at the rate of 12 to 15 gm/sq m-hr-°C in well-trained subjects at rest. With full sweating, the trunk and lower limbs provide 70 to 80 percent of the total moisture perspired (Hertzman, Randall, Peis et al., 1951, 1952). Tables 3-2, 3-3 and 3-4 summarize the order of recruitment, mean regional evaporative rates, and regional fractions of total evaporation, respectively.
### Table 3–1
Properties of the Skin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approximate values of the physical dimensions of whole skin for the “average man” of 5 ft 9 in.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>8.8 lb</td>
<td>4 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface area</td>
<td>20 sq ft</td>
<td>1.8 sq m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>3.7 qt</td>
<td>3.6 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water content</td>
<td>70 to 75 percent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific gravity</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thickness</td>
<td>0.02 to 0.2 in.</td>
<td>0.5 to 5.0 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approximate values for thermal properties of skin</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heat production</td>
<td>720 kcal/day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conductance (k)</td>
<td>9 to 30 kcal/sq m·hr·°C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal conductivity (k)</td>
<td>(1.5 to 3) x 10⁻³ cal/cm·sec·°C</td>
<td>at 23 to 25°C ambient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffusivity (λ/μ)</td>
<td>7 x 10⁻¹⁰ cal/cm²·sec (surface layer 0.26 mm thick)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal inertia (k·pc)</td>
<td>90 to 400 x 10⁻⁶ cal/cm²·sec·°C²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat capacity</td>
<td>~ 0.8 cal/g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Skin temperature and thermal sensation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pain threshold for any area of skin when mean weighted skin temperature is</th>
<th>The typical sensation is</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>above 95°F (35°C)</td>
<td>unpleasantly warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93°F (34°C)</td>
<td>comfortably warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below 88°F (31°C)</td>
<td>uncomfortably cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86°F (30°C)</td>
<td>shivering cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84°F (29°C)</td>
<td>extremely cold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When the hands reach</th>
<th>When the feet reach</th>
<th>They feel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>68°F (20°C)</td>
<td>76°F (25°C)</td>
<td>uncomfortably cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59°F (15°C)</td>
<td>66°F (19°C)</td>
<td>extremely cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50°F (10°C)</td>
<td>55°F (13°C)</td>
<td>painful and numb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Approximate optical properties of skin

| Emissivity (infrared) | ~ 0.99 |
| Reflectance (wavelength dependent) | Maxima 0.6 to 1.1μ |
| Transmittance (wavelength dependent) | Maxima 1.2, 1.7, 2.2, 0.6, 1μ |
| Solar reflectivity of surface |  |
| Very white skin | 42 percent |
| 5 "white" subjects | 28 to 40 percent, average 34 percent |
| 6 "colored" subjects | 19 to 24 percent, average 21 percent |
| Very black skin | 10 percent |
| Solar penetration—very white skin |  |
| 45.5 percent passes 0.1 mm depth |  |
| 59.6 percent passes 0.2 mm depth |  |
| 62.0 percent passes 0.4 mm depth |  |
| 19.0 percent passes 1.0 mm depth |  |
| 10.2 percent passes 2.0 mm depth |  |

#### Solar penetration—very dark skin

| 75 percent passes 0.1 mm depth |
| 40 percent absorbed in the melanin layer |
| 35 percent passes 0.2 mm depth |
Figure 3–1. Regional cooling requirements of the human body in air at sea level at rest. (After Berenson, 1965, from data of Kerslake, 1964)

Table 3–2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Usual (But Not Invariable) Order of Recruitment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dorsum foot</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral calf</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial calf</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral thigh</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial thigh</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsum hand</td>
<td>7 or 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>8 or 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulnar forearm</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial forearm</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial arm</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral arm</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Randall and Hertzman, 1953)
Table 3-3
Increments in Mean Regional Evaporative Rates
With Rise in Environmental Temperature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Evaporative Rate, °C</th>
<th>Increment in Evaporative Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T&lt;sub&gt;a&lt;/sub&gt; 29</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>86.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thigh</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>58.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>60.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>37.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>21.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arm</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheek</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forehead</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>60.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Hertzman et al., 1952)

Table 3-4
Regional Fractions of Total Cutaneous Evaporation
Expressed as Percentage of Total

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Air Temperature, °C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arm</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk</td>
<td>22.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thigh</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palm</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sole</td>
<td>14.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Hertzman et al., 1952)

The maximum attainable perspiration rate of the human body is approximately 30 gm/min for an average sized man, which could provide maximum evaporative cooling rate of 1200 watts. At these rates, however, even with adequate consumption of water and electrolytes, the sweating mechanism fatigues in 3 to 4 hours and perspiration rates decrease significantly. This fatigue is a function of skin wetness. The maximum effective perspiration rate that can be sustained is extremely variable depending on the individual and his degree of acclimatization.
Temperature

Energy Balance Equation

Heat is transferred between man and the environment through four avenues: radiation, convection, conduction, and vaporization. The body also stores energy in the tissues and body fluids. Thermal interactions between the human body and the environment can be examined in terms of the energy balance equation. This equation balances the normal energy gains and losses and can be expressed as follows (Blockley, McCutchan, & Taylor, 1954):

\[ \dot{Q}_{sr} + \dot{Q}_{m} - W = \pm \dot{Q}_e \pm \dot{Q}_c \pm \dot{Q}_v + \dot{Q}_k + \dot{Q}_e \]  
(1)

For a steady-state thermal condition, the rate of heat storage rate is zero (\(Q_s = 0\)). The conductive heat transfer mode is usually quite small and can be neglected in most instances (\(Q_k = 0\)). Finally, if the body is shielded from direct solar radiation, the term (\(Q_{sr}\)) can be omitted from the expression.

With these simplifications, the energy equation can be expressed as:

\[ E_m \cdot W = \pm Q_e + Q_c + Q_v \]  
(2)

and the system can be analyzed quantitatively after these terms have been adequately defined.

Metabolism (\(\dot{Q}_m\)) is the sum of the basal metabolic rate plus an incremental increase in heat energy due to gravity and/or stress. Values of metabolism for various activities are presented in chapter 18, Work, Heat and Oxygen Cost. The most common activities require a metabolism between 300 and 1000 BTU/hr or 90 and 300 watts.

In the steady-state condition required for long-duration comfort, the metabolic energy is dissipated by the work accomplished and by heat rejection to the atmosphere. Because man is relatively inefficient in converting metabolic energy into useful work (the maximum work output being approximately 20 percent of the metabolism) (Fahnestock et al., 1963), most of the metabolic energy must be lost to the environment by heat rejection.

Radiation heat transfer (\(Q_r\)) occurs as a result of the temperature difference between the human body and the walls of the surroundings. Convection heat transfer (\(Q_c\)) occurs as a result of the temperature difference between the body and the gas atmosphere. Evaporation heat transfer (\(Q_v\)) results from the vaporization of moisture at the surface of the skin. Respiratory heat transfer (\(Q_r\)) is the heat loss (including vaporization of water) from the lungs because of respiration.

Determination of the thermal status of the human body in space operations requires analysis of a large number of variables. The effect of many of these
variables has no simple mathematical solution and must be derived from experimental data. Even then, the results must be treated with caution when applied to the small population represented by a flight crew. Individual metabolic rates, health variations, tolerances, and motivation can cause wide deviations from predicted states and performance.

In general, all the variables can be collected under three major classifications: environment, body state, and clothing, as shown in table 3-5.

Since many of the variables are interdependent, solution of the complete energy balance equation becomes largely an iterative process modified by heavy reliance on reasonable assumptions and experimental results. Maintaining a thermal balance requires the regulation of environmental parameters to maintain man in a state of thermal equilibrium (or compensable quasi-equilibrium) at all anticipated levels of activity to ensure adequate performance and preclude irreversible physiological effects.

Heat Transfer Equations

Heat Conduction Through Clothing

The dry heat transfer from the skin to the outer surface of the clothed body is a complicated phenomenon involving internal convection and radiation processes in intervening air spaces, and conduction through the cloth itself. To simplify calculations, the following relationship between clothing surface temperature, \( T_c \), and skin temperature, \( T_s \), considers a simple conduction process through clothing of thickness, \( L \):

\[
T_c = T_s - \frac{L \cdot Q}{k \cdot A_c} \tag{3}
\]

The value \( L/k \) is known as the clothing or Clo value. The reference point for the Clo value is taken as a man in a suit with no gloves, or light gloves, and leather footgear with light socks. This is known as 1 Clo and corresponds to a value for \( L/k \) of 0.88°F-sq ft-hr/BTU or 0.155°C·m²/W. The Clo value ranges from four for artic equipment to zero for the unclothed subject, as shown in table 3-6 (Fanger, Nevins, & McNall, 1968). A value of 0.6 Clo is often used because it is typical of light indoor clothing.

The effective Clo value for a person seated in a padded chair (or lying down) might be substantially larger than the Clo value for a standing person in the same clothing ensemble. The 1 Clo value is as high as can be expected in a shirt-sleeve environment. More typical values would be 0.25 Clo for the underwear worn by project Gemini astronauts. The heat loss from the skin surface is inversely proportional to \( (I_a + I_{cl}) \) where \( I_a \) is the insulation of the ambient air and \( I_{cl} \) is the intrinsic insulation of the clothing itself. The effect of helium in reducing the Clo values of different garments has not been studied. Preliminary studies confirm that Clo values tend to vary inversely with the thermal conductivity of the atmosphere.
### Table 3-5
Variables Required for Prediction of Body Thermal Status (Roth, 1968)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment</th>
<th>Internal [Induced]</th>
<th>Body State</th>
<th>Clothing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solar radiation (Q_{sr})</td>
<td>Wall temperature (T_w)</td>
<td>Metabolic rate (E_m)</td>
<td>Thermal resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth radiation (Q_{er})</td>
<td>Atmospheric temperature (T_a)</td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Vapor permeance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lunar radiation (Q_{lr})</td>
<td>Atmospheric pressure (P)</td>
<td>Posture</td>
<td>Wind permeability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow cones (day/night)</td>
<td>Atmospheric velocity (V)</td>
<td>Area of body (A_b)</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric composition</td>
<td>Absolute humidity (A_d)</td>
<td>Skin temperature (T_s)</td>
<td>Color emissivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle velocity (if &gt; C/7); (C)/velocity of light</td>
<td>Atmospheric composition</td>
<td>Rectal temperature (T_r)</td>
<td>absorptivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle attitude or orientation</td>
<td>Diffusivity (D_v)</td>
<td>Mean body temperature (T_B)</td>
<td>Wicking efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle altitude</td>
<td>Specific heat (C_p)</td>
<td>Respiration rate (V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surface area (surroundings)</td>
<td>Insensible water loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shape emissivity factor (F_{cw})</td>
<td>Sweat rate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crew operating mode</td>
<td>Wetted area (C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity/work efficiency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Internal (Induced)</td>
<td>Body State</td>
<td>Clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stress Factors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-loads (weightlessness)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxicity (CO$_2$, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation effects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decompression (emergency)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychological (nervous, anxiety)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical condition</td>
<td>Degree of heat stress resistance (acclimatization)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water/electrolyte balance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Radiating area of body ($A_r$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Area of body irradiated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Effective skin absorbance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3–6
Data for Different Clothing Ensembles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clothing Ensemble</th>
<th>Intrinsic Clo</th>
<th>$A_c/A_b$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nude</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light working ensemble: jockey shorts, wool socks, cotton work shirt and work trousers; shirt tail out, neck open</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Army “fatigues,” man’s lightweight underwear, cotton shirt and trousers, cushion sole socks, and combat boots</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical American business suit</td>
<td>0.7 to 1.0</td>
<td>1.1 to 1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light outdoor sportswear: cotton shirt, trousers, T-shirt, shorts, socks, shoes, and single-ply poplin (cotton and dacron) jacket</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy traditional European business suit: light cotton underwear with long legs and sleeves, shirt, woolen socks, leather shoes, tweed suit with trousers and fully lined jacket and vest</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.15 to 1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Army standard cold-wet uniform: cotton-wool undershirt and drawers, wool and nylon flannel shirt, wind resistant, water repellent trousers and field coat, cloth mohair and wool coat liner, and wool socks</td>
<td>1.5 to 2.0</td>
<td>1.3 to 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy wool pile ensemble (polar weather suit)</td>
<td>3 to 4</td>
<td>1.3 to 1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Each clo of clothing insulation increases the ratio $A_c/A_b$ by factor $(1 + 0.15 l_d)$. Recent studies at Kansas State University (1972) may raise the factor 0.15 to 0.26. (Fanger, 1968).
The effective ClO values (i.e., $l_{a1} + l_{q1}$) in a 7 psia 50 percent oxygen: 50 percent helium environment, therefore, would probably be 0.015: 0.017, or about 0.56 that of sea level air (Roth, 1967). The clothing surface area may be 50 percent greater than that of man (Nelson et al., 1947), although probably not all of the increased area is available for heat transfer. Table 3-6 presents typical ratios of the clothing surface area to the skin area.

Radiation Heat Transfer

The analysis of radiation heat transfer between an astronaut and his surroundings is complicated by a number of factors. These include:

1. Ability of the crew to move around and change position
2. Arrangement and surface temperatures of the various equipment enclosures
3. Localized differences in temperature of the cabin walls and size and location of windows.

The problem can be greatly simplified by theoretically collecting all equipment and structures into an equivalent enclosure at a mean radiation temperature. The following equation applies to a man in an enclosure at a single effective radiation temperature (McAdams, 1954). The man was assumed to be radiating heat at a single mean temperature equal to the temperature of the outer surface of the clothing.

$$\dot{Q}_r = \sigma F_{cw} \left( T_c^4 - T_w^4 \right) A_r$$  \hspace{1cm} (4)

Assuming that source and sink are gray bodies, the following equation, which includes the effect of geometric configuration, can be used for the radiation shape factor of a completely enclosed body (McAdams, 1954):

$$F_{cw} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{A_r}{\varepsilon_c \left( \frac{1}{\varepsilon_w} - 1 \right)}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (5)

The emissivity of human skin in the infrared range is approximately 0.99. The emissivity of clothing and skin at body temperature generally is assumed to be 0.95. The emissivity of surroundings ($\varepsilon_w$) will depend on the proportion of high and low emission surfaces subtended by the body. The range of emissivities will vary from 0.2 (for oxidized aluminum) through 0.9 (for transparent plastics and oil painted surfaces) to 0.95 for an adjacent crew member, also in shirtsleeves.
The effective radiation area of the body, \( A_r \), will be less than the total exposed surface area of skin and clothing because some portions of the body are partially shielded from the surroundings. The measured ratio between the effective radiation area and the total surface area are given in figure 3-2 for different positions (Guibert and Taylor, 1952).

![Figure 3-2. Body radiation area for various body positions.](image)

If man is in an enclosure much larger than himself, the ratio \( A_r/A_w \) in equation 5 is small, and \( F_{cw} = \varepsilon_c \). Therefore, equation 4 becomes

\[
\dot{Q}_r = \sigma \varepsilon_c A_r \left( T_c^4 - T_w^4 \right)
\]

The radiation heat transfer coefficient is defined by the following equation:

\[
\dot{Q}_r = h_r A_r (T_c - T_w)
\]
Therefore, from Equation 4

\[ h_r = \frac{\sigma F_{cw}(T_c^4 - T_w^4)}{T_c - T_w} \]  

(8)

Values of the radiation heat transfer coefficient are presented in figure 3-3 for \( F_{cw} = 0.9 \).

---

![Figure 3-3. Values of the radiation heat transfer coefficient.](image)

In addition to determining the mean radiant temperature of the surroundings, it is important to consider local effects. A man located between warm and cold surfaces at a neutral atmospheric temperature and apparently comfortable may experience pain and stiffness in the muscles exposed to the cold surface after a prolonged period of time, especially after sleep.

**Forced Convection Heat Transfer**

The rate of heat transfer by convection can be written:

\[ \dot{Q}_c = h_c A(T_c - T_d) \]  

(9)
The convective heat transfer coefficient, $h_c$, is a complicated function of fluid flow, thermal properties of the fluid, and the geometry of the body. Because there has been some variance between the values used by different groups in relating the $h_c$ of man to the atmospheric gas velocity, selecting the appropriate heat transfer coefficient is a difficult problem. A discussion of the implications of different coefficients used in the analysis of forced convection about the human body was published by Kerslake, (1963).

Figure 3-4 represents a summary of several approaches to forced convective heat transfer coefficients (convective film coefficients) for man in an environment containing air at 1/2 atm. The first three curves represent the $h_c$ values obtained from empirical studies of humans. These are compared with four theoretical curves: (1) a cylinder in longitudinal flow, (2) a cylinder 10 inches in diameter in crossflow, (3) a flat plate with flow perpendicular to it, (4) a cylindrical model of man in crossflow (figure 3-5). The value of $h_c$ for the cylindrical model of man corresponds closely with those obtained by Nelson (1947) and are equivalent to $h_c$ for crossflow about cylinders 5 inches in diameter.

The following equation, derived from the heat transfer correlation for fluids flowing perpendicular to cylinders, estimates the forced convection heat transfer coefficient for all gas mixtures (Berenson, 1965):

$$ h_c = 0.021 k_c \sqrt{PV} $$ (10)
where \( P = \text{psia}, V = \text{ft/min}, \) and

\[
k_c = \text{a factor that depends on the transport properties of the gas mixture. For } O_2 - N_2 \text{ mixtures, } k_c = 1; \text{ for other gases,}
\]

\[
k_c = \frac{k_{\text{mix}}}{k_{\text{air}}} \left( \frac{M_{\text{mix}}}{M_{\text{air}}} \times \frac{\mu_{\text{air}}}{\mu_{\text{mix}}} \right)^{0.5} \left( \frac{P_{\text{mix}}}{P_{\text{air}}} \right)^{0.33} \quad (11)
\]

For example, a 50-percent oxygen-helium atmosphere at 7 psia, \( k_c = 1.6. \)

Figure 3-5. Cylindrical model of man. (After Parker et al., 1965)

Figure 3-6 shows the effect of gas velocity on the convection heat transfer coefficient based on the cylindrical model of man for various helium-oxygen and nitrogen-oxygen atmospheres. The partial pressure of oxygen at 170 mm Hg is near the sea level equivalent and is held constant with the diluent gas ranging from 0 to 400 mm Hg.

The values for neon mixtures will lie between those for helium and nitrogen. It is clear from comparing the physical properties of the gases that
for different mixtures of oxygen-nitrogen there is little sensitivity of \( h_c \) to percent composition of gas.

\[
\frac{h_c D}{k} = \text{const.} \left( \frac{\rho V D}{\mu} \right)^{0.5} \left( \frac{C_p \mu}{k} \right)^{0.33} \quad (12)
\]

The only difference between the equations is the value of the empirical correlating constant. As shown in figure 3-4, there is a variation of ±50 percent between the various correlations.
Free Convective Heat Transfer

In the presence of a gravitational field such as on the Earth, planetary surfaces, or rotating space stations, free convection is possible and is the preferred mode of cooling because no additional fan energy need be expended. General free-convection heat transfer equations yield the following simplified equation for free-convection cooling in nitrogen-oxygen mixtures (Berenson, 1965).

\[ h_c = 0.06 \left[ \rho_2 g (T_c - T_a) \right]^{0.5} \]  

Mixed free and forced convection environments can be handled by McAdams’ rule, which states that both the free and forced convective heat transfer coefficients are calculated and the higher of the two values used (McAdams, 1954). The critical forced convection velocity \( V_{\text{crit}} \), where the forced convection heat transfer coefficient is equal to the free convection coefficient, can be calculated for oxygen-nitrogen mixtures by equating equations 10 and 13.

\[ V_{\text{crit}} = 8.3 \left[ g (T_c - T_a) \right]^{0.5} \text{ ft/min} \]  

If the forced convection velocity is less than the critical value, free convection is the dominant heat transfer process.

Forced Convection Evaporation

The rate of heat transfer by evaporation can be written (Berenson, 1965):

\[ Q_e = h_D h_{fg} AC \left( \frac{P_s - P_a}{RT_s} \right) \_H_2O \]  

The mass transfer coefficient, \( h_D \), is a complicated function of fluid flow, fluid properties, and body geometry. The mass transfer coefficient can be calculated from the heat transfer coefficient, \( h_c \), by using the heat-mass transfer analogy with the following result (Eckert & Drake, 1959):

\[ h_D = \frac{h_c \Pr^{2/3}}{\rho C_p Sc^{2/3}} \]
The following equation for the evaporation heat loss results from combining equations 10, 15, and 16 (Berenson, 1965).

\[
Q_e = 0.126 \, \text{CAT}_{\, a} \, k_e \left( \frac{V}{P} \right)^{0.5} \left( P_s - P_a \right)
\]  

(17)

where \( V \) = ft/min
\( P \) = psia
\( k_e \) = a fluid property parameter that depends on the diffusivity of water vapor in the gas mixture and on the transport properties of the gas mixture itself. For air, \( k_e = 1 \). For other gases,

\[
k_e = (k_D)^{0.67} \left( \frac{M_{\text{mix}}}{M_{\text{air}}} \times \frac{\mu_{\text{air}}}{\mu_{\text{mix}}} \right)^{0.17}
\]

(18)

The diffusion coefficient for water in helium is 3.5 times that for water in air. For the case where the water is diffusing into a mixture of helium and oxygen, diffusivity relative to air, \( k_D \), is found from

\[
k_D = \frac{1}{\text{MOL FRACT. He} + \frac{\text{MOL FRACT. O}_2}{3.5}}
\]

(19)

For example, for the 50 percent oxygen atmosphere in helium at 7 psia, \( k_D = 1.554 \). Therefore, for the \( k_e \) values calculated for the oxygen-helium atmosphere containing 50 percent oxygen,

\[
k_e = (1.554)^{0.67} \left( \frac{18}{29} \times \frac{12.10}{13.47} \right)^{0.17} = 1.219
\]

The exponent of \( V \) in equation 17 is 0.5. Some empirical data yielded an exponent of 0.63 (Clifford et al., 1959). In view of the other assumptions that must be made regarding clothing and body positions, the uncertainty introduced by this difference is not serious. In fact, the calculated values of maximum evaporative loss (\( C = 1 \)) give predicted results only 10 percent higher than actually measured (Clifford et al., 1959; Webb, 1967). Since the rate of evaporation and the diffusion coefficient for water vapor are inversely
proportional to pressure, latent cooling capacity increases with decreasing (total) pressure (Taylor & Buettner, 1953).

Curves illustrating the general magnitude of the pressure, dew point, and gas stream velocity effects predicted by equation 17 are presented in figure 3-7. In the temperature range under consideration for space cabins, the temperature and the dew point have relatively little effect as compared to gas stream velocity and ambient pressure.

![Figure 3-7. Maximum evaporation rate at rest in oxygen-nitrogen mixtures. (Berenson, 1965)](image)

It is likely that the body does not become fully wetted with sweat until the sweat rate is about twice the maximum evaporative capacity. Loss of sweat by dripping probably begins when the sweat rate is about 1/3 of the maximum evaporative capacity (Kerslake, 1963). The effect of body position and geometry on the constants of these equations cannot be overemphasized. The effect of clothing also is an important factor in determining evaporation rates (Blockley et al., 1954).

**Free Convection Evaporation**

A free convection evaporation cooling equation also can be developed using the heat-mass transfer analogy. For example, combining equations 13,
15, and 16 yields the following equation for the free convection evaporation rate in oxygen-nitrogen mixtures (Berenson, 1965):

\[ Q_e = 1.3A \frac{C_T a}{P} (P_s - P_a) \left\{ P_b \left(0.005 P (T_e - T_a) + 1.02(P_s - P_a)\right)\right\}^{0.2} \]  

(20)

**Respiratory Heat Loss**

Heat loss due to respiration varies directly with metabolic rate and is influenced by atmospheric composition (including carbon dioxide and water vapor content) and pressure. Because the respiratory tract is a very efficient saturator of inspired air, heat gain to the body through respiration will not occur until atmospheric temperature approximates 185°F (McCutchan & Taylor, 1951).

Heat loss from the lungs approximates 10 percent of the metabolic rate (7 to 8 kcal/hr) in the neutral zone (Hardy, 1964). Definitive data are available for determining respiratory heat loss for the atmospheric compositions and pressures of interest in space flight environments, especially those of the space suit (Bryan, 1964; Webb, 1955; Wortz et al., 1966).

After determining the pulmonary ventilation rates corresponding to a specific activity level and stress factors such as hypoxia, hypercapnia, or anxiety, the heat loss due to respiration can be calculated by determining the sensible heat required to raise the inspired atmosphere to expiration temperature and adding the heat of vaporization increment for the moisture lost to the inspired air from the respiratory tract.

One expression for calculating respiratory heat loss is (Wortz et al., 1966):

\[ Q_v = \dot{V} \rho C_p (T_e - T_i) \div 0.58 (W_e - W_i) \text{ (cal/hr)} \]  

(21)

where \( \dot{V} \) = volume of atmosphere breathed per hour (liters/hr)  
\( \rho \) = density of the atmosphere (gm/liter)  
\( C_p \) = specific heat of atmosphere (kcal/Kg-°C)  
\( T_e \) = temperature-expired atmosphere (°C)  
\( T_i \) = temperature-inspired atmosphere (°C)  
0.58 = heat of vaporization H2O (kcal/gm)
$W_e$ = weight of water in expired atmosphere (gm)
$W_i$ = weight of water in inspired atmosphere (gm)

A more simplified approach is also available (McCutchan & Taylor, 1951).

**Thermal Comfort**

**Comfort Criteria**

Comfort zones have been defined in the literature in terms of skin temperature, sweat rates, and various indexes that relate environmental parameters to subjective impressions of comfort or measured values of selected physiological variables. For the same conditions and individuals, the established boundaries for thermal comfort, performance, and tolerance as described by the various design indexes may be completely consistent. Variations in activity, wearing apparel, individual health and acclimatization, and thermal exposure immediately prior to making a determination of comfort, however, will operate to shift the zones and introduce inconsistencies in results (Gagge, 1966).

A large amount of literature is available concerning human comfort and physiology under a wide range of conditions in the Earth environment. Examples of comfort indexes established in the past are the British Comfort Index (Dunham et al., 1946), ASHRAE (American Society of Heating and Air Conditioning Engineers) Effective Temperature, and Operative Temperature (cited in Webb, 1964). Unfortunately, because of important differences in gravity and pressure found in space environments, most of these data are not directly applicable to the design of spacecraft thermal control systems. The following comfort criterion is generally applicable.

Krantz (1964) describes a comfort design criterion developed by Winslow et al. (1937), based on percentage utilization of the maximum evaporative cooling capacity. It was found that on the hot side of comfortable conditions, sweat production was definitely related to the sensation of discomfort; on the cold side, skin temperature below 90°F produced a cool feeling. As shown in table 3-7 the sensation of comfort was related by Winslow et al. (1937) to the percent of the body covered by moisture.

The comfort design method described by Krantz (1964) involves analysis of the environmental conditions to estimate the radiation and convection heat transfer from the body. The metabolic rate necessary to sustain the activity level is estimated. The difference between the metabolic rate and the radiation and convection heat loss, therefore, is the required evaporative cooling. The environmental design conditions are then evaluated with respect to the maximum evaporative cooling capacity; if the required evaporative cooling represents from 10 to 25 percent of the maximum, the environment is in the comfortable range. If it is outside this range, some of the
environmental design factors (gas temperature, ventilating gas velocity, or wall temperature) should be changed to provide a comfortable environment. Although this concept is simplified and has not been proven for all values of total sweat output and atmospheric conditions, it is plausible and can be generally applied.

Table 3–7
Evaporative Capacity Comfort Criterion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percent of Maximum Evaporative Capacity</th>
<th>Comfort Level</th>
<th>Skin Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to 10</td>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>&lt;89°C 31.7°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 to 25</td>
<td>Comfortable</td>
<td>90 to 92°F 32.2°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 to 70</td>
<td>Tolerable</td>
<td>93 to 94°F 33.9°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 to 100</td>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>&gt;95°F 35°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 100</td>
<td>Dangerous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With resting, unclothed subjects, approximately 10 percent of the maximum evaporative capacity is provided by insensible moisture loss from the body by respiration and by diffusion through the skin. This moisture loss is not subject to thermoregulatory control, and an indicated evaporative cooling requirement less than this amount represents overcooling of the body. With normally clothed subjects the insensible moisture loss is 5 percent of the maximum evaporative capacity. These losses are, of course, a function of the metabolic output and respiratory rate. Recent unpublished data from the NASA Manned Spacecraft Center, Houston, suggest that the minimum latent heat loss by evaporation, $Q_{e\ min}$, is given by the following equation:

$$Q_{e\ min} = 0.125 \ E_m + 50 \text{ (Btu/hr)}$$

This fact alters previous approaches to setting the cold-comfort boundary using $C = 0.1$ as a criterion.

In summary, the thermal comfort design objectives are that body storage be zero, evaporative heat losses be limited to insensible evaporation of moisture produced only by respiration and diffusion through the skin without the activity of sweat glands, and that body and skin temperatures be maintained near normal values of 37°C (98.6°F) and 33° to 34°C (91.5° to 93.5°F) for a resting subject. During exercise each multiple increase in resting metabolism decrease the skin temperature for comfort by approximately 1°C and the rectal temperature rises by 0.2°C but the mean body temperature for comfort remains essentially the same during rest and exercise.
Comfort Zones

Because of the dearth of empirical data on comfort zones in uncommon gas environments, several attempts have been made to predict these values. Figures 3-8 and 3-9 represent typical results of one approach using equations 6, 10, 13, 17, and 20 to estimate the comfort zone in oxygen-nitrogen mixtures for various combinations of forced vs free convection, Clo values, etc. (Berenson, 1965). Comfort was established from the ratio of required evaporative cooling to predicted maximum evaporative capacity, $C$, using the criterion of Table 3-7 with the exception that equation 22 was used to calculate the lower boundary of the comfort zone. In addition, the skin temperature was constant at 91.4°F instead of varying with $C$ in the manner shown in Table 3-7.

Unfortunately, there are few empirical data to substantiate these curves. Preliminary studies tend to corroborate some of these predictions for different oxygen-nitrogen environments (Bonura & Nelson, 1967; Secord & Bonura, 1965; Roth, 1968). In addition, the predictions of this approach agree with the ASHRAE data (Berenson, 1965).
Figure 3-9. Lunar free-convection comfort zones as related to exercise rate in the nude.
(Modified from Berenson, 1965)

For cabins with oxygen-helium mixtures, other heat flow constants must be used to determine comfort zones (see equations 10 and 17). Empirical comfort temperatures in different gas mixtures have not been systematically obtained. Comfort temperatures have been recorded only as the average cabin temperature set over periods of several weeks by subjects who had control over the thermostat within the cabins (Roth, 1968). These temperature settings for subjects in surgical clothes, which have about 0.5 Clo in air, are presented in table 3-8. These data include varied numbers of different subjects being studied under each gas mixture. No windspeed measurements were taken during these studies, however, the velocity was probably negligible.

Other studies found comfort temperatures in $\text{He-O}_2$ at higher levels (Bonura & Nelson 1967; Secord & Bonura, 1965). In these studies, the average temperature settings during a varied work-rest cycle with 0.7 Clo were 78° F for nitrogen-oxygen at 7 psia and 83° F for helium-oxygen at 5 psia.

Table 3-9 presents additional data on Earth comfort zone boundaries for men at rest in reduced pressure $\text{N}_2$-$\text{O}_2$ and $\text{He-O}_2$ atmosphere (Fanger et al., 1968). Gas velocity was varied from 20 to 80 ft/min with little effect on the comfort zone boundaries.
Table 3–8
Temperatures Selected by Subjects in Space Cabin Simulators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3.7 psia</th>
<th>5 psia</th>
<th>5 psia</th>
<th>7.3 psia</th>
<th>7.3 psia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O₂, 100 Percent</td>
<td>O₂, 100 Percent</td>
<td>P₂, 175 mm Hg</td>
<td>P₂, 150 mm Hg</td>
<td>P₂, 165 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Temperature, °F</td>
<td>69.3</td>
<td>70.9</td>
<td>74.7</td>
<td>75.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Welch, 1966)

Table 3–9
Comfort Zones as a Function of Atmospheric Pressure and Composition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gas mixture</th>
<th>Atmosphere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He - O₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure</td>
<td>5 psia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clo valve</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper limit</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower limit</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Data of Fanger et al., 1968)
Heat Stress

Space operations require an understanding of man's responses to thermal stress and his capacity to tolerate heat. Extensive data are required in addition to those presented previously on comfort zones to reach even an index of man's response to thermal loads. The dependent variables that must be considered include body temperatures, sweat response, pain and discomfort thresholds, body stress, and psychomotor performance.

Body Temperatures

The body temperatures used in thermal analyses are body core temperature ($T_r$), skin temperature ($T_s$), and mean body temperature ($T_b$).

**Body Core Temperature ($T_r$).** Internal body or deep body core temperature is an important factor in the thermoregulation of the body. Rectal temperature ($T_r$) is considered a reasonable measure of deep core temperature and is easily obtained. Core temperature remains remarkably constant at a mean of 37°C or 98.6°F as long as the body is in thermal equilibrium. Internal body temperature is to some extent a function of the external environment, but is less so than skin temperature. Even under conditions where thermal adequacy is provided, there is a tendency for increased core temperature at higher metabolic rates.

Changes in core temperature can affect the rate of reaction of the various biochemical reactions that make up the metabolic processes of the body. This effect is called the $Q_{10}$ effect and results from the temperature dependence of the chemical reaction rates which provide metabolic energy. That is, at temperatures above approximately 98°F, there will be approximately a 7 percent increase in metabolic rate per °F increase in internal body temperature. Similarly, at temperatures less than 98°F, there will be a corresponding decrease in metabolic rate due to a decrease in the chemical reaction rate. The $Q_{10}$ effect is important in considering the thermal tolerance limits for human endurance. If the body is unable to adjust suitably to the environment and the internal temperature falls outside the control range, the $Q_{10}$ effect results in a more severe condition, by decreasing metabolic heat output under cold conditions, and by increasing metabolic heat output during hot conditions.

**Skin Temperature ($T_s$).** Skin temperature is primarily a function of the thermal environment of the body and the resulting heat exchange with the ambient. Decreasing environmental temperatures result in reduced skin temperatures; decreasing ambient pressure leads to increased skin temperatures. The following expression (equation 23) is used to derive a mean skin temperature, which can then be used in computing mean body temperature (equation 24) and energy balance (equation 1).

\[
T_s = 0.12 T_{\text{back}} + 0.12 T_{\text{chest}} + 0.12 T_{\text{abdomen}}
+ 0.14 T_{\text{arm}} + 0.19 T_{\text{thigh}} + 0.13 T_{\text{leg}}
+ 0.05 T_{\text{hand}} + 0.07 T_{\text{head}} + 0.06 T_{\text{foot}}
\] (23)
Mean Body Temperature ($T_b$). Mean body temperature is derived from the weighted sum of the rectal and mean skin temperatures. The weighting varies as a function of ambient temperature (Stolwijk & Hardy, 1966). For ambient temperatures of less than 30°C (Burton, 1946):

$$T_b = 0.67 T_r + 0.33 T_s$$  \hspace{1cm} (24)

For zone of evaporative regulation temperatures ($T_a > 28^\circ C$, 85°F), the weighting is 1:4 for $T_s$: $T_r$ or 1:9 for $T_s$: $T_{es}$ (esophageal). Mean body temperature is used primarily as a determinant of heat storage or vice versa.

Heat Stress and Water Loss from the Body

The response of body core (rectal) temperature to heat stress induced by ambient conditions and metabolic loads is shown in figures 3-10 and 3-11. Note in figure 3-10 that for each level of work, there appears to be a characteristic internal or core temperature at equilibrium which is unaffected by the environment so long as the neutral boundary condition, is not exceeded. As the figure shows, the characteristic internal (rectal) temperature for a particular work load varies between groups; both physical training and training for work in the heat (acclimatization) produce lower values. Superficial differences between ethnic groups appear to be due to habit patterns and experience relative to working under hot conditions. Figure 3-11 clearly illustrates the effect of heat training (acclimatization) on the equilibrium rectal temperature, and the small, probably insignificant, effect of training on the location of the neutral boundary. Note that in the neutral zone, heat-trained men working at 1600 BTU/hr maintain body temperatures as low as or lower than novice workers working at 700 BTU/hr. However, when both groups are in the stress zones for their respective work levels, the difference between their mean body temperatures is 1.5°F. For comparison, new men working at 1600 BTU/hr have temperatures 1.5°F higher than similar men working at 700 BTU/hr, when both are in their neutral zone of environments. The figure plots mean thermal rectal temperature against effective temperature, which has been defined by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE) as "an arbitrary index which combines into a single value the effect of temperature, humidity, and air movement on the sensation of warmth or cold felt by the human body. The numerical value is that of the temperature of still, saturated air which would induce an identical sensation."

Man's responses in atmospheres other than air at sea level are under evaluation (Epperson et al., 1966).
Temperature

Figure 3–10. Variations in rectal temperature at sea level as a function of activity. (After Blockley, 1964: adapted from Hanifan et al., 1963, based on data from Lind, 1963; Strydom & Wyndham, 1963; & Wyndham et al., 1954)

Figure 3–11. Rectal temperature and stress zones for work in heat at sea level. Data from 460 individuals, 2 work rates, and 15 different humid environments. Vertical lines separate “neutral” (environment-independent) and “stressful” (environment-driven) zones before and after training. (After Blockley, 1964, drawn from data of Wyndham et al., 1954)
Sweating and Respiratory Water Loss. In normal man, heat stress can be evaluated by the rate of water loss from the body. Analyses of evaporative heat exchange under various conditions were presented above. In addition to these data, which are applicable to space operations, figures 3-12 to 3-14 represent the sweat production rates to be expected under survival conditions on Earth. Figure 3-12 shows how loss of water through the skin by diffusion is influenced by the vapor pressure gradient, the skin temperature, and the barometric pressure. A high skin temperature is shown to be related to a high diffusion loss. Warm skin free of sweat was produced in the experiment illustrated by a high dosage of atropine. The graph also shows that diffusion is increased as barometric pressure is lowered. Figure 3-13 shows the effects of various environmental conditions on sweat production. Note in figure 3-13(a) that the relationship of skin temperature to sweat production is highly variable under various environmental conditions. In figure 3-14 data are plotted for six experiments on one subject, who was "fully acclimatized," of "better than average stamina," who marched at 3.5 mph up a 2.5 percent grade, at 100°F and 20 mm Hg, with a 10-minute rest every hour. The more water he drank, the lower was his rectal temperature. Other experiments with nude subjects resting at 110°F and vapor pressure of 25 mm Hg have shown that they were able to maintain equilibrium only if they replaced water continuously. It may be concluded that failure to replace completely the water lost in sweat, hour by hour, leads to elevation of body temperature and excessive physiological strain. Thirst or the desire to drink is unreliable as an indication of the requirement for water intake to make up for heavy sweating. Other work has shown that replacement of salt at regular mealtimes is adequate in contrast to the situation illustrated in figure 3-14 for water.

![Graph 3-12](image)

Figure 3-12. Insensible water loss from the skin as a function of absolute humidity, skin temperature, and barometric pressure. (After Blockley, 1964, drawn from data of Brebner et al., 1956; Hale et al., 1958; Webb et al., 1957; Zollner et al., 1955)

Figure 3-15 represents the sensitivity of water loss through respiration to a metabolic rate and ambient pressure and dew point (Wortz, 1966). Rates of nonthermal sweating are about 80 to 220 gm/hr from covered areas and 20 to 40 gm/hr from the rest of the skin (Webb, 1967). This can be increased by psychogenic stimuli of many types (Webb, 1967).
Figure 3-13. Water loss by sweating under different environmental conditions. A: sweat rates during various laboratory procedures; B: sweating and evaporative heat loss varying with air temperature and activity level. (After Blockley, 1964; adapted from a. MacPherson, 1960; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office; Robinson et al., Taylor & Buettner, 1953; and Webb et al., 1957; b. Thompson Ramo Wooldridge, Inc, 1961)
Heat Stress Indexes. In the noncompensable zones of thermal control, performance and tolerance have an inverse exponential relationship with exposure time. Figure 3-16 reflects the general time-tolerance relationship for extremes of ambient air temperature under sea level conditions.
Figure 3-16. Approximate human time-tolerance temperature with optimum clothing. (After Breeze, 1961)

Figure 3-17 shows the physiological impairment that may be anticipated due to extremes of body temperature. The tolerance limits reflect the borders of physiological collapse to be used for rough evaluation of situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>°F</th>
<th>°C</th>
<th>Upper Limit of Survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Heat Stroke, Temperature Regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Brain Lesions, Seriously Impaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Fever, Hypothermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Fever, Hypothermia, Temperature Regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Impaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Temperature Regulation, Lost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3-17. Human body temperature extremes defining zones of temperature regulations. (After Breeze, 1961)
Under conditions of heat stress, the mode of evaporative heat loss cannot completely compensate for the difference between total heat load and heat lost through other modes. This lack may be attributable to failure to achieve a sufficiently high perspiration rate or by failure to achieve a sufficiently high evaporation rate. Even though the perspiration rate is adequate to maintain thermal balance, conditions of high humidity and/or low ventilation may limit evaporation rates to values below that required for adequate cooling.

Some environmental correlates of comfort and stress were discussed previously. The more physiologically determined indexes will now be reviewed. A more detailed critique of the physically and physiologically determined heat stress indexes is available (MacPherson, 1962).

The Belding-Hatch Heat Stress Index (HSI). The Belding-Hatch (1955) heat stress index is defined as the ratio of evaporation rate required for energy balance to maximum perspiration rate safely attainable for prolonged periods—both expressed in liters (of sweat) per hours, or:

\[ HSI = \frac{E}{E_{\text{max}}} \times 100 \]  

(25)

The criteria on which the heat stress index is based are:

a. Body heat storage will not exceed the limit represented by a mean skin temperature of 95°F, and
b. \( E_{\text{max}} \) will not exceed 1 liter/hr; equivalent to 2400 Btu/hr (400 kcal/hr).

Figure 3-18 and table 3-10 can be used as indicated to estimate the physiological and general function impairment of an 8-hour exposure at sea level to several stressful thermodynamic parameters.

The P4SR Index. The sweat rate can be used as a predictor of thermal stress in another way. The predicted 4 hour sweat rate (P4SR) uses only the rate of sweating as a criterion of heat stress in environments that are hot enough to cause sweating (Wyndham, 1952). On the basis of British experimental work, empirical nomograms have been developed for predicting the probable amount of sweat in liters that would be secreted over a 4-hour period by fit, acclimatized men under different environmental conditions (Smith, 1955). A P4SR nomogram is shown in figure 3-19.

The group of curves marked S1 and S2 in the center of the nomogram, running downwards from right to left, constitute the scale from which the basic 4-hour sweat rate (B4SR) is read. If the predicted 4-hour sweat rate (P4SR) is required for men sitting in shorts, the calculation is very easy as the P4SR is the same as the B4SR. All that is necessary is to join the appropriate point on the dry-bulb scale to the wet-bulb temperature on the wet-bulb scale corresponding to the air movement. The P4SR is given by the point where this line intersects the curve on scales S1 and S2 corresponding with the air movement.
Figure 3–18. Flow charts for determining heat stress index values at sea level conditions.
(After ASHRAE, 1965)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index of Heat Stress at °F</th>
<th>Physiological and Hygienic Implications of 8-hr Exposures to Various Heat Stresses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-20</td>
<td>Mild cold strain. This condition frequently exists in areas where men recover from exposure to heat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-10</td>
<td>No thermal strain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Mild to moderate heat strain. Where a job involves higher intellectual functions, dexterity or alertness, subtle to substantial decrements in performance may be expected. In performance of heavy physical work, little decrement expected unless ability of individuals to perform such work under no thermal stress is marginal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Severe heat strain, involving a threat to health, unless men are physically fit. Break-in period required for man not previously acclimatized. Some decrement in performance of physical work is to be expected. Medical selection of personnel desirable because these conditions are unsuitable for those with cardiovascular or respiratory impairment or with chronic dermatitis. These working conditions are also unsuitable for activities requiring sustained mental effort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Very severe heat strain. Only a small percentage of the population may be expected to qualify for this work. Personnel should be selected (a) by medical examination and (b) by trial on the job (after acclimatization). Special measures are needed to assure adequate water and salt intake. Amelioration of working conditions by any feasible means is highly desirable and may be expected to decrease the health hazard while increasing efficiency on the job. Slight &quot;indisposition&quot; which in most jobs would be insufficient to affect performance may render workers unfit for this exposure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>The maximum strain tolerated daily by fit, acclimatized young men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>(After ASHRAE, 1965)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 3–19. Nomogram for the prediction of 4-hour sweat rate (P4SR) at sea level. (After MacPherson, 1960; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty’s Stationery Office)

The P4SR also may be calculated by the following three stages: In the first stage, the wet-bulb temperature may require modification depending on the amount of radiation, the metabolic rate, or the character of clothing. In the second stage, the nomogram is used to obtain the B4SR and in the third stage, the P4SR is obtained by adding certain constants to the B4SR depending
on the metabolic rate (see wet-bulb equivalent of metabolic rate in inset) and clothing. A P4SR of 4.5 liters was provisionally adapted as the upper limit of tolerance for physically fit men. Details regarding the three-stage modification are available (MacPherson 1960).

The P4SR, although derived under rather different conditions than expected in space flight, offers some possibilities if suitably extended (Webb, 1964). It was originally based on several types of experimental data taken on heat-acclimatized young men in Singapore and in environmental chambers. It is unsafe to use it as a means of predicting sweat rate, however, unless all the conditions are similar to those originally used. When used with care, the P4SR does allow prediction of thermal effect in a number of different situations (Blockley, 1965). The limitations are chiefly those of a narrow range of activity (up to 250 kcal/sq m-hr or five times the sitting subject rate) limited clothing combinations, and the fact that all the subjects were heat acclimatized. The P4SR is not recommended for predicting sweat. It can be used, however, for comparing environments in terms of thermal stress, to be followed by experimental evaluation of the environments, with sweat production being taken as one dependent variable (Gillies, 1965).

**Human Performance During Heat Stress**

*Tolerance Time in Heat.* The maximum tolerance time ($\Theta_t$) for heat gain that represents an emergency maximum for thermal stress is inversely proportional to the heat storage.

\[
\Theta_t = \frac{3300}{Q_s} \text{ min or } \frac{55}{Q_s} \text{ hr} \tag{26}
\]

where $Q_s$ is calculated using equation 1.

The tolerance and general performance limits as a function of time and body heat storage are shown in figure 3-20. The heat storage at tolerance is inversely related to the rate of heat storage (Goldman et al., 1965). Recent evidence indicates that men actively exercising in space suits can store up to 1000 BTU in actively working muscle (Wortz, 1967). This storage must be considered during any analysis of tolerance times in exercising subjects.

Figure 3-21 indicates the conservative nature of earlier tolerance limits. The dashed lines in the figure and points 1, 2, 3, and 4 represent more recently established tolerance time levels. The tolerance limit at high temperature is based on faintness, dyspnea, nausea, and restlessness as an endpoint. Because these levels are nearly double the limits established by earlier workers, engineers designing in terms of earlier tables probably were more restricted than necessary or enjoyed a wide margin of safety even in the response of the most sensitive occupants. The ranges represented by these tables also reflect individual differences between subjects as well as differences in motivation. The dashed lines probably represent the capabilities of highly motivated spacecrews in top physical condition.
Figure 3–20. Performance and tolerance limits; transient zone. (After Blockley et al., 1954)

Figure 3–21. Maximum tolerance environments according to duration of exposure for sitting, clothed subjects under sea level conditions in aircraft design. (After Trumbull, 1956)
Figure 3-22 uses the reference operative temperature to determine performance and tolerance limits. There are high correlations between the final skin temperature, rate of rectal temperature rise, and rate of heart rate increase as linear functions of the Oxford index (Goldman, 1965).

\[ \text{TOR} = \text{Operative temperature at 0.79 in. Hg vapor pressure} \]
- Heavy pursuitmeter test
- Mixed test battery
- Working men
- Wireless telegraphy test
- Visual vigilance test
- Resting men

Figure 3–22. Performance and tolerance limits in the quasi-compensable zone for lightly dressed men. (After Blockley et al., 1954)
**Performance Under Heat Stress.** Performance begins to deteriorate in any given condition at about 75 percent of the physiological tolerance limit. Although highly motivated individuals may be capable of exceeding normally established performance and tolerance limits (Teichner, 1961), excessive penalties in recovery time may be required if normal limits are exceeded. Even though no other stresses are anticipated or evident, it is suggested that 75 percent of the average tolerance limit level not be exceeded until the significance of deconditioning that occurs during space flight is better understood. Figures 3-23 and 3-24 reflect performance decrements as a function of ambient and effective temperature.

![Graph](image_url)

Figure 3–23. Combined performance averages for 11 wireless telegraph operators under conditions of extreme heat. (Roth, 1968)

Table 3-11 summarizes the physiological response increases and decreases in environmental temperature (Spector, 1956). The debilitating effects of heat have received much attention (Lind, 1963).

Table 3-12 classifies the symptoms to be expected from the debilitating effects of heat.
Acclimatization to Heat. Acclimatization can alter the response of humans to heat loads. Figures 3-25 and 3-26 represent the improvement in function that is possible through heat acclimatization. Figure 3-25(a) shows results obtained with the standard acclimatization procedure used in South African gold mines to prepare laborers recruited from remote villages for work in saturated environments underground. The duration of the daily work period was 5 hours, and the work, shoveling rock. For the first 6 days, the effective temperature was 84°F; for the next 6 days, the E.T. was 89.5°F and the amount of rock shoveled was increased. Note in the graph the fall in rectal temperature. The curves are means for over 100 men, and the bar shows ±1 S.D. during each of the 6-day work periods. In figure 3-25(b) results are shown for a heat acclimatization technique used at the U.S. Army Laboratories at Natick. In this experiment, men marched at 3.5 mph for 100 minutes each day in an environment of 120°F dry-bulb, 80°F wet-bulb, 200 ft/min air velocity (E.T. 89°F, vapor pressure 15 mm Hg).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Increase of Environmental Temperature</th>
<th>Decrease of Environmental Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Single Exposure Response</td>
<td>Single Exposure Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>General 15° to 20°C Increase</td>
<td>General 15° to 20°C Decrease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Repeated or Continued Exposure</td>
<td>Repeated or Continued Exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood volume</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Decrease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac output</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food intake</td>
<td>Decrease</td>
<td>Variable Decrease</td>
<td>Increase Variable Increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>5/min Return toward normal</td>
<td>Increase -5/-10 Increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat production</td>
<td>Decrease</td>
<td>Slight decrease</td>
<td>Increase 50 to 100 cal² Increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual skill</td>
<td>Deteriorates</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packed cell volume</td>
<td>Slight decrease</td>
<td>-2 to 3 percent Decrease</td>
<td>Slight increase 2 to 3 percent Increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal temperature</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
<td>Decrease -15° to -20° Decrease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin temperature</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
<td>Increase +15° to +20° Return toward normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output of urine</td>
<td>Decrease</td>
<td>-200 to 300³ Sustain low level</td>
<td>Increase 230 to 500³ Sustain high level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood flow ²</td>
<td>Decrease</td>
<td>Return toward normal</td>
<td>Increase Return toward normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water intake</td>
<td>Increase</td>
<td>400³ Sustain high level</td>
<td>Decrease -400³ Sustain low level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. No change or slight increase.
2. Per sq m/hr.
3. ml/da.
4. Visceral
(After Spector, 1956)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Prevention</th>
<th>First Aid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heat cramps</td>
<td>Excessive loss of salt in sweating with</td>
<td>Pain and muscle spasm; pupillary constriction with each spasm. Body</td>
<td>Normal diet and fluid intake</td>
<td>Rest, administer salt and water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inadequate replacement</td>
<td>temperature normal or below normal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat exhaustion</td>
<td>Cardiovascular inadequacy; dehydration</td>
<td>Giddiness, headache; fainting; rapid and weak pulse, vomiting; cold,</td>
<td>Frequent and early replacement of water, frequent</td>
<td>Rest in shade in recumbent position. Administer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pale, clammy skin; small rise in body temperature.</td>
<td>pauses.</td>
<td>fluids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat stroke</td>
<td>Failure of temperature regulatory center, due to</td>
<td>High body temperature; irritability, prostration, delirium; hot, dry,</td>
<td>Adequate pacing of activity, avoidance of severe</td>
<td>Alcohol spray bath or immersion in cold water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>excessively high body temperature.</td>
<td>flushed skin. Sweating diminished or absent.</td>
<td>effort by unacclimatized men in hot environment.</td>
<td>Medical emergency requiring a physician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Buskirk & Bass, 1957)
Figure 3-25. Acclimatization to heat. A: results of standard procedure used to acclimatize laborers for work in saturated environments underground; B: results of a U.S. Army Natick Laboratories technique. (After Blockley, 1964, adapted from a. Wyndham et al., 1954; b. Lind & Bass, 1963)
Figure 3-26. Improvement in function from heat acclimatization demonstrated by two studies. (A: after Blockley, 1964, adapted from Robinson et al., 1943; B: after Blockley, 1964, adapted from Hanifan et al., 1963; Eichna et al., 1950; Horvath & Shelly, 1946)
In figure 3-26(a), the results of a heat acclimatization experiment involving two subjects are shown. Subjects walked at 3.5 mph on a 5.6 percent grade in a room at a temperature of 104°F and a vapor pressure of 13 mm Hg (E.T. 84°F). Subject S.R. was acclimatized by 23 exposures between February 20 and March 20. After March 20 his only exposures were on April 16 and 26. Subject W.H. was acclimatized by 11 exposures between March 24 and April 8. After April 8, his only exposures were on April 22 and 29. On the first exposure, the experiment was terminated by the collapse of the subjects at 90 min. After acclimatization, the men were still maintaining equilibrium with ease after 4.5 hr. Acclimatization to heat is shown by the lowering of body temperatures and heart rates. Figure 3-26(b) is a diagrammatic presentation of mean results from two studies of the heat acclimatization phenomenon. Subjects in both groups were drawn from the same Army population at Fort Knox, Kentucky. The two studies are related by means of a parameter combining the sweat rate (expressed as its caloric value if evaporated) and metabolic rate. The slope of the straight lines in the diagram represents an estimate of the sensitivity of the sweat response to increases in temperature of the peripheral tissues or blood (expressed as a function of surface temperature and metabolic heat output). It can be seen that when men are unclothed and the air is dry, sweat rate changes but little, but the skin temperature needed to produce that amount of sweat becomes steadily lower in successive exposures when the climate is humid, and evaporation is impeded by clothing; the skin temperatures does not change much on successive days, but the quantity of sweat produced at that temperature is enormously increased as acclimatization progresses.

The value of the shorter exposure period technique in preparing men to work for long periods such as 5 hours or more in the heat is the subject of considerable controversy. Newer techniques pioneered by Fox (1964) in England concentrate on raising core temperature to the same fixed level each day, so that thermal strain, rather than the stress, remains constant throughout the acclimatization process. Under these conditions, improvement continues for longer periods and to greater levels than the standard exposure techniques. Heat acclimatization may not be as important in hot, wet environments where increased evaporative cooling cannot be produced even if there is an increased sweat secretion, since no increase in the internal thermal gradient between core and skin temperature can be achieved (Goldman, 1965).

Skin Pain and Heat Pulses. Tables 3-1 and 3-13 and figure 3-27 show the pain thresholds for the skin from conductive, radiant, and convective heating. In general, the pain threshold is reached when the skin reaches a temperature of 45°C. A skin temperature of 46°C is intolerably painful. For small skin areas the curve shown in figure 3-27 becomes asymptotic at about 18 BTU sq ft/min. At this level and below, the blood supply to the skin is carrying off the heat as fast as it arrives, and heat is stored in the body. How long this can go on with the total body exposed is not established. A rise in skin temperature of 0.008°C will evoke a sensation of warmth in 3 seconds and a decrease in skin temperature of 0.007°F will produce a cold sensation. The face and the neck are the most sensitive to thermal stimuli and the backs of the hands are next (Hardy 1954).
# Temperature

## Table 3-13

Pain from Conductive Heating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body Area</th>
<th>Clothing worn</th>
<th>Metal Surface Temperature, °F</th>
<th>Average Tolerance Time, sec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hand</td>
<td>Bare skin</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>10 to 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kneecap</td>
<td>Bare skin</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fingertip</td>
<td>AF/B-3A leather gloves</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand - pal</td>
<td>AF/B-3A leather gloves</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm</td>
<td>SAC alert suit</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper arm</td>
<td>SAC alert suit</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttocks</td>
<td>SAC alert suit plus Brynje underwear</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>70.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-thigh</td>
<td>SAC alert suit plus Brynje underwear</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>21.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knee cap flexed</td>
<td>SAC alert suit plus Brynje underwear</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf muscle</td>
<td>SAC alert suit plus Brynje underwear</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper arm</td>
<td>MD-3A wool-nylon antie xposure suit</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm</td>
<td>MD-3A suit</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palm of hand</td>
<td>Aluminized asbestos glove</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back of hand</td>
<td>Aluminized asbestos gloves</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small body area</td>
<td>Aluminized asbestos glove</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small body area</td>
<td>Aluminized asbestos glove</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: Light touch pressure (less than 1 psi) applied to heated metal surface. Bow and knee sometimes received second-degree burns without pain. (After Blockley, 1964)
Figure 3-27. Pain from radiant and convective heating. A: strong skin pain produced by sources ranging from intensity of nuclear weapon flash (approximately 100 BTU/sq ft/min) to slow heat pulse associated with reentry heating, where the heating is partly convective. (After Blockley, 1964; adapted from Buettner, 1952; Hardy, 1954; Kaufman et al., 1961; Stoll & Greene, 1959; Webb, 1963). B: dividing line between painful and nonpainful heating for air at various temperatures vs the heat transfer coefficient, which depends on air density, air velocity, and surface areas and shapes. (After Blockley, 1964)
The ability of the body to withstand high heat pulses is shown in figure 3-28. Figure 3-28(a) and (b) show the pulse responses and average skin temperatures of subjects exposed to three different severe heat exposure transients which come close to both the pain limit and the heat storage limit. Each curve represents the average data from five or six subjects. Clothing consisted of a standard flying overall worn over long underwear with an insulation value of 1 Clo. Figure 3-28(c) shows the increase in tolerance times for subjects exposed to a heat pulse where wall temperature was increased at 100°F/min, and the subjects wore clothing affording various degrees of protection. With subjects wearing heavy aluminized overalls, wall temperature increase was stopped at 500°F and that temperature held until tolerance was reached. Adding ventilation with air at about 85°F allowed these exposures to last beyond 20 min. Figure 3-28(d) graphs tolerance time for man in a hot environment. The time scale indicates prepain time for exposure of the skin to radiant heat, and escape time for the curve marked "body." The latter refers to a lightly clad man with his face exposed. The temperature scale denotes room temperature for the body curve and radiation temperatures for curves referable to the skin. The curve marked warm dry refers to experiments with an initially dry skin, and a skin temperature initially of about 30°C. A tourniquet was applied to obtain the data marked without circulation. The cold wet curve utilized skin exposed wet at an initial skin temperature of about 15°C. The clothed skin curve was obtained using skin covered with 1 cm insulating cloth with an initial skin temperature near 30°C.

A computer program is available for evaluation of time-temperature histories of the skin at different depths following heat pulses (Weaver, 1967).

Cold Stress

Shivering ensues when heat losses to the environment exceed the metabolic energy being produced by the body and body and skin temperatures reach critical values. The shivering reaction increases skeletal muscle activity (without doing measurable work) and results in an increase in metabolic heat production. A two-fold increase in metabolism due to shivering has been observed after exposure to an ambient temperature of 41°F (5°C) for more than one hour. A fivefold increase in metabolism due to shivering is considered to be the maximum attainable (Bulldard, 1963). Although shivering may add enough to metabolic heat production to prevent further heat loss, it is never sufficient to replace heat already lost. The shivering response may be triggered by the rate of decrease in temperature and not the temperature of the body per se (Burton, 1946).

Cold Stress Tolerance

The effective loss of about 80 kcal/sq m or 31 BTU/sq ft has been taken as the maximum heat loss a person can tolerate with severe discomfort (Spector, 1956). The heat available for loss can be taken as 0.75 $E_m + 80$ kcal/sq m, where $E_m$ is the metabolic rate in kcal/sq m-hr. Sleep of unacclimatized Caucasians will be disturbed at 50 percent of this loss rate. The lowest ambient temperature at sea level that can be tolerated for prolonged thermal equilibrium is a function of the exercise rate, insulation, wind speed, and several other variables.
Figure 3–28. Tolerable heat pulses. (Part c is adapted by Blockley, 1964, from data of Kissen & Hall, 1963; Kaufman, 1963; Webb, 1963; Part d is after Buettner, 1952, based on data of Blockley & Taylor, 1948, and Pfeiderer & Buettner, 1940)
Figure 3–28. Tolerable heat pulses. (Part c is adapted by Blockley, 1964, from data of Kissen & Hall, 1963; Kaufman, 1963; Webb, 1963; Part d is after Buehler, 1952, based on data of Blockley & Taylor, 1948, and Pfeiferer & Buehler, 1940) — Continued
An empirical expression for the total cooling power of the environment, disregarding evaporation, is called windchill (Iampietro et al., 1958):

\[
K_c = (V \times 100 + 10.45 - V) (33 - T_a)
\]

where \(K_c\) = windchill, that is, total cooling in kg-cal/sq m/hr

\[
V = \text{wind velocity in m/sec} \\
T_a = \text{air temperature in °C}
\]

Although \(K_c\) is not representative of human cooling and is probably not very closely representative of physical cooling either, windchill has come into common use as a single-valued index of the severity of the temperature-wind combinations. As such, it provides a descriptive quantity against which human cooling phenomena can be evaluated. A nomogram, giving rapid approximations of windchill, is provided as figure 3-29. In outdoor cold weather, the wind velocity has a profound, sometimes decisive, effect on the hazard to men who are exposed. The windchill concept provides a means for quantitative comparison of various combinations of temperature and windspeed. For example, note in the nomogram -50°F with an air movement of 0.1 mph has the same windchill value, and therefore is predicted to produce the same sensation on exposed skin, as -15°F with a wind of only 1 mph or +14°F with a wind of 5 mph. The windchill index does not account for physiological adaptations or adjustments and should not be used in a rigorous manner. It is based on field measurements by Paul Siple during World War II of the rate of cooling of a container of water.

When the rate of body heat production is greater than the windchill, excess heat is removed by evaporation; under bright, sunny conditions, the nomogram values should be reduced approximately 200 kg-cal.

For ocean recovery in winter months, the rate of cooling in water is important. Figure 3-30 is a nomogram for estimating tolerance time to cold water immersion (Smith et al., 1962). The nomogram was devised to relate the many factors involved in estimating tolerance in cold water, where one knows or can assume: water temperature (\(T_w\)); insulation of clothing and tissue (\(I_t\)); metabolic heat production per unit surface area (\(M/A\)); the immersed surface area (\(A\)); body mass (\(m\)); and exposure time (\(t\)). As shown by the dotted example line (for a nude man in water at 4°C, a metabolic rate of 400 kcal/sq m-hr, an immersed surface area of 1.75 sq m, a body mass of 75 kg, and an exposure time of one hour) the nomogram predicts: heat loss to the environment \(H_e/A\); heat debt per unit surface area (\(D/A\)); heat debt (\(D\)); changes in mean body temperature (\(d\theta\)); and mean body temperature (\(\theta\)).
Temperature

Figure 3-29. Windchill nomogram.
(After Blockley, 1964; adapted from Siple & Passell, 1945)

Figure 3-30. Nomogram for estimating tolerance times to cold water immersion.
(Adapted from Smith & Hames, 1962, by Gillies, 1965 and Blockley, 1964)
Figure 3-31 is a graphic presentation of practical experience in cold water tolerance with routine flight clothing and antiexposure suits. The "voluntary tolerance, flight clothing" zone in figure 3-31(a) shows the average results from numerous experimental studies, including a recent one using a diver's "wet suit" in conjunction with a flight suit and long underwear. Such experiments are typically terminated when the subject declines to accept the discomfort any longer, or reaches a skin temperature below 50°F. The second limit shown, pertaining to men protected by potentially waterproof garments, reflects the fact that hands and feet cannot be adequately insulated and remain functional. Nude men in 75°F water reach, within 12 hours, one or another tolerance limit (rectal temperature below 95°F, blood sugar below 60 mg/100 ml, or muscle cramps). The extent to which real survival time would exceed this limit is difficult to predict, due to the importance of injury, equipment available, and such psychological factors as belief in the possibility of rescue. An analysis of over 25,000 personnel on ships lost at sea during 1940-44 showed that of those who reached liferafts, half died by the sixth day if the air temperature was below 41°F (5°C); survival time increased with increasing air temperature. Figure 3-31(b) indicates life expectancy for individuals immersed in cold water wearing no protective clothing.

Figure 3-32 shows the time to reach critical core and skin temperatures after exposure to cold water in several types of exposure suits. A criterion of 76°F is based on the general observation of extreme discomfort when this point is passed. In most of the experiments summarized here, some subjects requested termination of the exposure at or near the time when the group average reached this point. Note for comparison the data point for nude exposure to water at 48°F. The value of exercising in cold air and the lack of an advantage in cold water is evident.

Recent developments in isotopic heating devices make practical the use of exposure garments heated for long periods of time (Sanders, 1966).

In cold air, injury to the extremities is often a limiting factor in human performance (Bullard, 1963). Figure 3-33 indicates the power required to attain given skin temperatures of hand and foot in electrically heated gloves and seals with subjects in an air temperature of -40°F in a 10 mph wind. The body core in these experiments was wound in a U.S. Army Quartermaster 4.3 Clo cold-dry standard clothing ensemble. Performance is severely hindered if the temperature of the fifth finger falls below 55°F (Clark, 1961).

Figure 3-34 presents a typical physiological response of a body immersed in cold water and rewarmed. The pathophysiology and treatment of hypothermia and cold injury in space operations were recently reviewed by Busby (1967).
Figure 3-31. Survival in cold water. A: voluntary tolerance to cold water; B: life expectancy with no exposure suit. (After Blockley, 1964; adapted from Beckman & Revees, 1966; Damato & Radliff, 1964; Hall et al., 1953; McCance et al., 1956; Molnar, 1964; U.S. Navy, 1948; Barnett, 1962)
**Figure 3-32.** Clothing tests in cold air and water. A: time to reach critical skin temperature in cold air and water. (After Blockley, 1964; adapted from Barnett, 1962) B: estimated survival times in cold water with latest survival clothing. (After Milan, 1965)

**Figure 3-33.** Hand and foot temperatures maintained as a function of power used for auxiliary heated gloves and socks. (After Goldman, 1965)
Figure 3-34. Changes in body and skin temperature of subject immersed in water at 6°C (43°F) for 52 min; water was then warmed to 39°C. (Note sharp fall of gastric, oral, and rectal temperatures initially on warming.) (After Behnke & Yaglou, 1951)

Performance in the Cold

Skilled motor performance shows a progressive loss with continued cold exposure (Trumbull, 1956). Tactual sensitivity is markedly affected by lowered skin temperature. A numbness index has been developed based on the ability of the individual to discriminate the separateness in space of two straight edges on which the finger is placed (V-test or two-edge limen) (Mackworth, 1946). Figure 3-35 shows the great difference in the size of gap required to detect the presence of the gap under varying conditions of air temperature and windspeed.

General performance also is altered by cold in a complex way. Figure 3-36 shows the effects of various combinations of air temperature and velocity (and thus windchill) on the manual dexterity of soldiers. Except as indicated, complete Arctic uniforms were worn. During the test trials, the subjects removed the heavy arctic gauntlet and performed with only the wool trigger-finger insert. The results are based on a total of 530 soldiers sorted into the various subgroups of the experiment. It may be seen that performance time increased in direct proportion to the windchill and that mean skin temperature and digital temperature were roughly inversely proportional to windchill. The rate of cooling is an important factor (Clark et al., 1960). There is clearly a relationship
between performance and the skin temperatures; however, analyses of these data and those of figure 3-37 indicate that the direct dependence of performance on finger and skin temperatures may be relatively small and that other factors of a psychological or physiological nature may be of equal or possibly greater importance.

Figure 3-35. Comparison of two-edge and two-point thresholds as a function of skin temperature in air at sea level. (After Mills, 1957)

Total body cooling is not as significant a factor as finger temperature in dexterity tests (Gaydos, 1958); cooling of the hand decreases finger flexibility (LeBlanc, 1956).

The reaction speed of men to simple visual signals also is affected by the cold (Teichner, 1958). The relative loss is not as great as that of tactual sensitivity, but it is greater than that of manual dexterity. Figure 3-38 shows a comparison of these three phenomena for appropriately dressed, but unacclimatized men in terms of the percentage loss relative to optimum thermal conditions. It is reasonable to expect losses in a cold environment for all types of performance that depend on any of these functions, as well as tasks of eye-hand coordination (Teichner, 1954) and intellectual tasks requiring fast reactions such as the cold test (Horvath, 1947). Nothing has been reported to indicate that intellectual tasks not requiring fast reaction times, motor skills, or tactual sensitivity are affected by cold exposure, at least short of the accumulation of a serious heat debt.
Acclimatization to Cold

Recent evidence indicates that under cold conditions, increased voluntary caloric intake and other compensatory processes result from the increased energy expenditures associated with field activities (Davis, 1963) instead of from the low temperature as such.
Figure 3–37. Percent decrement in performance as a function of ambient temperature at sea level. (After Dusek, 1957)

Figure 3–38. Minimum effects of the cold on selected functions. Each curve is an estimated percentage loss of the indicated type of performance for appropriately dressed but unacclimatized men. A: tactile sensitivity of the bare hand; B: simple visual reaction time; C: manual skill. (After Teichner, 1958; copyright 1957 by the American Psychological Association and reprinted with their permission)
Whatever the direct cause, the result contributes to a beneficial increase in heat production, vasomotor and renal control. The major known physiological changes produced in the cold were shown in table 3-11. This table indicates that acclimatization takes the form of increased levels of some functions and the return to normal of others. The value of using cold acclimatization to increase the performance and survival capabilities of astronauts during emergencies, in such missions as lunar night operations, has not been established.

Clothing

The effects of clothing on thermal transfer from the body must be considered for all conditions of space flight. The basic principles of thermal physiology involved with the effects of wearing clothing have been discussed in this chapter. Other factors, however, need to be considered (Blockley, 1954, 1964; Burton, 1955; Newburgh, 1949; and Roth, 1966).

Insulation Values

The addition of clothing to the body surface reduces the quantity of heat that can be lost by evaporation because of the increased resistance to diffusion of water vapor. At the same time it reduces the quantity of heat gained or lost by the body by radiation and convection.

Two properties of clothing must be evaluated to determine the effect of clothing on thermal balance: these are thermal resistance \( R_g \) and vapor resistance \( R'_e \). Thermal resistance is the resistance of a particular clothing assembly to flow of heat. It is generally expressed in Clo units (see discussion after equation 3).

The total insulation value of a clothing assembly to the man must include the insulation of any gas layer trapped between clothing layers. Calculation of the total insulation value of newly designed garments and fabrics requires the knowledge of the equivalent thickness of the still-air layer \( R' \), which is equal to the sum of the clothing thickness \( R'_g \) as a still-air equivalent and the film thickness of the still-air layer \( R'_e \):

\[
R' = R'_g + R'_e
\]  

Values for \( R'_g \) for standard fabrics are shown in table 3-14. If fabric thickness is known, the following relationship can be used:

\[
\frac{R'_g}{L} = \frac{\text{equivalent air thickness}}{\text{fabric thickness}}
\]
If thermal resistance in Clo units is known, the relationship shown in equation 30 can be used.

\[
\frac{R'_g}{R_g} = \frac{\text{vapor resistance (in. of air)}}{\text{thermal resistance (Clo units)}} = \frac{0.5 \text{ in. of air}}{\text{Clo}} = \frac{1.2 \text{ cm of air}}{\text{Clo}} \quad (30)
\]

Vapor resistance \((R'_g)\) depends on the vapor diffusion of evaporated water, weave and thickness of the fabric material, thickness of the air layers between the garments, and nature of the gaseous environment. While the rate of vapor transfer across near isothermal air layers is directly proportional to thickness, bellows action and resulting convection suggest use of the same maximum effective thickness for vapor transfer as for heat transfer, that is \(R'_c = 0.3 \text{ in.} \) (0.75 cm). The values of \(R'/L\) in table 3-14 are a convenient estimate of the vapor resistance of similar fabrics.

After thermal resistance and vapor resistance of the garment assembly are determined, the boundary for heat transfer with the environment may be shifted from the skin of the body to the surface of the clothing. With clothing as the boundary, \(T_c\) is substituted for \(T_s\) in all expressions for heat transfer.

**Ventilated Suits**

Suit convective heat removal is computed from the mass flow of ventilating air and the difference between inlet air temperature and the desired surface temperature (Blockley, 1964).

\[
Q = 0.24 \,(90 - T_{in})w \quad \text{Btu/hr} \quad (31)
\]

The cooling capacity of Apollo prototype ventilated suits as a function of gas flow at several internal suit pressures is shown in figure 3-39. The partition of cooling into sensible and latent loads is indicated. The capacity of Apollo prototype ventilated suits to handle different metabolic loads is shown in figure 3-40.

**Liquid-Cooled Suits**

For work loads greater than 600 BTU/hr, liquid cooling must be added. The broken line in figure 3-39 represents projected capacity for liquid cooling cascade addition to ventilated suits. Total liquid loop suits have been used to extract heat in a warm environment and heat the body in a cool environment (Burton, 1966; Lang, 1965).
### Table 3-14

Vapor Resistance of Fabrics ($R'_{g}$)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fabric</th>
<th>Weight (oz/sq yd)</th>
<th>Thickness (cm)</th>
<th>Resistance ($R'$) (cm air)</th>
<th>$R'/L$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cottons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton net</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton twill (3 by 1 in.)</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>0.097</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton twill (5 by 1 in.)</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>0.112</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton twill (2 by 1 in.)</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>0.069</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton poplin</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>0.039</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton oxford</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>0.081</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton balloon cloth</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotton &quot;jungle cloth&quot;</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>0.107</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy cotton</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>0.076</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close-weave cotton (Shirley L-30)</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>0.051</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wools</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double-face wool pile</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wool twill (2 by 2 in.)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.173</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsted serge</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>0.056</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wool serge</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nylons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spun-nylon fabric</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>0.046</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nylon poncho cloth</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five-end nylon sateen</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filament nylon fabric</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain weave nylon</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.020</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rayons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscose rayon (2 by 2 in. twill (filament)</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetate rayon satin (filament)</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glass</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass fabric</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain weave glass fabric</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>0.030</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Blockley et al., 1954)
Figure 3-39. Pressure suit ventilating gas cooling.
(After Burris et al., 1963)

Figure 3-40. Heat removed from an International Latex prototype Apollo suit pressurized at 3.5 psia above ambient with airflow at 15 ft \( \frac{3}{2} \) min (AiResearch Manufacturing Company, Garrett Corporation, 1964)
If the cooling requirement for a given thermal situation is accurately known, the appropriate line in figure 3-41 gives a family of suitable inlet temperature and flow combinations to meet the requirement. The inlet temperature coordinate has a lower limit of 32°F because, for all practical purposes, pure water can exist only in liquid form above this temperature and because of the possibility of causing local frostbite. The upper limit of inlet temperature has been set at 113°F because temperatures above this are liable to burn the skin. Mass flow coordinates extend up to 150 lb/hr because this is about the maximum flow capacity of the present suit. The suit should be capable of absolute maximum cooling rates of 1930 BTU/hr and heating rates up to 700 BTU/hr at a flow of 150 lb/hr. If the cooling requirement is accurately known, the unit performance indicated in figure 3-41 should specify inlet temperatures to about 2°C or 3.2°F.

![Figure 3-41. Suit performance for liquid-cooled suit. (After Burton, 1966)](image_url)

The recommended distribution of tubing in a typical water-conditioned suit for use at rest required to give no local overcooling is shown in table 3-15 (Burton, 1965). Unfortunately, severe exercise may alter this distribution.

Data on the latency of cooling after exercise loads recently have been gathered and are most useful for design of thermal regulators for liquid suits (Webb, 1967). Figure 3-42 compares the equilibrium rectal temperatures attainable at different metabolic rates.

Figure 3-43 presents the shivering and sweating thresholds for subjects in Apollo prototype liquid-cooled suits. Extravehicular suits must be designed to remove at least 2000 BTU/hr (500 kcal/hr) of heat and remain within these thresholds (Lang, 1965).
Table 3–15
Recommended Distribution of Tubing in Water-Conditioned Suit at Rest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Percentage of Tubing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/2 head</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arm</td>
<td>16.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 back</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 chest</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calf</td>
<td>18.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thigh</td>
<td>25.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttock</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 abdomen</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Burton & Collier, 1965)

Figure 3-42. Plot of rectal temperatures at equilibrium (energy balance) vs work level, incorporating data from many sources. (Shaded area is an envelope of data from five sources.) (Webb, 1964; after Webb & Annis, 1965)
Conductive Heat Transfer

Liquid cooling garments require that physiological constraints to conductive cooling modes be quantifiably identified. These constraints include sensitivity to thermal and pressure gradients on the skin surface, tube to skin contact resistance, skin resistance, temperature ranges (for comfort) of body parts, and the effects of hair and perspiration on conductive exchange.

Unfortunately, the liquid-cooled space suit is worn under exercise conditions where skin comfort temperatures, thermal conductances to deeper subcutaneous structures, and similar factors are quite different from the resting conditions (Webb, 1966). The characteristics of the skin in thermal comfort cannot be used under the unusual environmental condition of exercise in a liquid-cooled suit. Specific data are needed on the determinants of skin comfort under such conditions. Figure 3-43 is a good example of the type of data needed.

To determine heat conduction in the steady state, the following equation may be used:

\[
\frac{Q_k}{A} = \frac{k}{L} (T_1 - T_2)
\]  

(32)

In the resting condition, the thermal constant for conducting heat from the interior of the body to the skin (tissue conductance only) is:

\[
k = 1.5 \pm 0.3 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kcal/cm-sec-}^\circ\text{C (at 23}^\circ\text{C to 25}^\circ\text{C ambient)}
\]
At full vasoconstriction, when tissue conductance is 9 to 10 kcal/sq m-hr°C, the value for conductance corresponds to a tissue layer 1.8 to 2.2 cm thick. At the limit of vasodilation, thermal conductance is increased to values of 28 to 30 kcal/sq m-hr°C. Although values above and below these limits have been reported in the literature, many of the subjects may have become acclimated by the tests and, accordingly, their values of conductance would exceed the norm. A change from full vasoconstriction to full vasodilation lowers thermal resistance of the body approximately the equivalent of 1 Clo unit.

Equivalent thermal conductance between adjacent radial layers of head, trunk, and extremities has recently been suggested. Assuming the thermal conductivity of tissue of 36 kcal-cm/sq m-hr°C, physiologically effective masses and heat capacitance of different body compartments also have been calculated. The effectiveness of vascular convective heat transport can be measured quantitatively by deriving values of thermal conductance for the peripheral tissues of the body (Stolwijk, 1966). Cardiovascular changes, such as shunting during exercise, considerably complicate such calculations and, unfortunately, are key factors in operational situations.

In general, it can be concluded that as a physical thermal transfer system, conductive cooling can be adequate to maintain essential thermal equilibrium. It is essential, however, that the heat exchanger in contact with the skin operate at high enough temperatures to preclude vasoconstriction and guarantee adequate transfer of heat from the deep core to the skin to the heat exchanger. Current designs are not adequate to maintain man in the comfort zone during exercise at high metabolic rates.

GLOSSARY

Nomenclature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>BE Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A <em>b</em></td>
<td>area</td>
<td>sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A <em>c</em></td>
<td>surface area of body</td>
<td>sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A <em>r</em></td>
<td>surface area of clothed body</td>
<td>sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A <em>w</em></td>
<td>radiating area of body</td>
<td>sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A <em>w</em></td>
<td>area of wall</td>
<td>sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>wetted area/A_b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C_p</td>
<td>specific heat at constant pressure</td>
<td>Btu/lb°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>diameter or significant dimension</td>
<td>ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D_v</td>
<td>vapor diffusivity</td>
<td>sq ft/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_r</td>
<td>evaporative water loss</td>
<td>lb/sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_m</td>
<td>metabolism</td>
<td>Btu/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>BE Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F_{cw}$</td>
<td>shape-emissivity factor</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>fraction of earth gravity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>mass velocity ($G$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_c$</td>
<td>convection heat transfer coefficient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_b$</td>
<td>mass transfer coefficient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_r$</td>
<td>radiation heat transfer coefficient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_{rb}$</td>
<td>radiant conductance (blackbody)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_{fg}$</td>
<td>heat of vaporization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$k$</td>
<td>thermal conductivity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>thickness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>molecular weight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>atmospheric pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_o$</td>
<td>standard barometric pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>water vapor pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_a$</td>
<td>atmospheric water vapor pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_s$</td>
<td>water vapor pressure at the skin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_c$</td>
<td>convection heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_e$</td>
<td>evaporation heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_g$</td>
<td>garment cooling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_{m}$</td>
<td>metabolic heat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_r$</td>
<td>radiation heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q_s$</td>
<td>storage rate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_{sr}$</td>
<td>solar heat transfer to man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_k$</td>
<td>conductive heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\dot{Q}_v$</td>
<td>respiratory heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>total heat transfer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Gas constant</td>
<td>ft-lb/lb-°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>thermal resistance of clothing</td>
<td>sq ft-°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R'</td>
<td>vapor resistance in terms of the equivalent thickness of still air</td>
<td>ft still air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R'</td>
<td>clothing vapor resistance</td>
<td>ft still air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_a$</td>
<td>atmospheric temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_b$</td>
<td>weighted mean body temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_E$</td>
<td>effective temperature</td>
<td>°F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Symbols and Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>BE Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$T_c$</td>
<td>clothing surface temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_o$</td>
<td>operative temperature</td>
<td>°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{or}$</td>
<td>reference operative temperature</td>
<td>°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_r$</td>
<td>rectal temperature</td>
<td>°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_s$</td>
<td>weighted body skin temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_v$</td>
<td>garment ventilating temperature</td>
<td>°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_w$</td>
<td>average wall temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_f$</td>
<td>film temperature</td>
<td>°R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$u$</td>
<td>internal energy per unit mass</td>
<td>Btu/lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$U$</td>
<td>overall heat transfer coefficient</td>
<td>Btu/hr-sq-ft-°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V$</td>
<td>velocity</td>
<td>ft/hr or ft/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$W$</td>
<td>respiration rate</td>
<td>liters/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>mass flow rate</td>
<td>lb/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$W$</td>
<td>work rate</td>
<td>Btu/hr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Greek Symbols

- $\omega$: solar absorptivity of skin or garments
- $\epsilon$: emissivity of skin or garments
- $\epsilon_C$: emissivity of clothing
- $\epsilon_W$: emissivity of wall
- $\theta$: time of exposure
- $\theta_e$: tolerance time
- $\mu$: viscosity
- $\rho$: density
- $\sigma$: Stefan-Boltzman constant

### Dimensionless Groups or Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nu</td>
<td>$h_d \frac{d}{k}$</td>
<td>Nusselt number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>$C_p \frac{\mu}{k}$</td>
<td>Prandtl number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>$\frac{V_d}{\mu}$</td>
<td>Reynold number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sc</td>
<td>$\frac{\mu}{D \sigma}$</td>
<td>Schmidt number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References

Beckman, E. L., & Reeves, E. Physiological implications as to survival from immersion in 75°C water. Aerospace Medicine, 1966, 37, 1136-1142.
Breeze, R. K. Space vehicle environmental control requirements based on equipment and physiological criteria. ASD-TR-61-161(Pt. 1), Aeronautical Systems Division, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1961.


Taylor, C. L., & Buettner, K. The evaporative effect on human perspiration. WADC-TR-53-345, Wright Air Development Center, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1953.


Selected and Recent Books


APPENDIX

A TWO-NODE Model of Human Temperature Regulation in FORTRAN

by A. P. Gagge

The following is an Annotated FORTRAN Program which includes the most recent concepts of the regulation of body temperature during rest and exercise and during the transient and steady states. The general principles described are presented in NASA Report CR-1855, A Mathematical Model of Physiological Temperature Regulation in Man by J. A. J. Stolwijk (1971). The present model (A. P. Gagge, J. A. J. Stolwijk and Y. Nishi, ASHRAE TRANSACTIONS, Vol. 77, Part I, 1971) is a simplified version, which considers the control of body temperature to be accomplished primarily by the mean skin temperature and a central core temperature; the latter may be measured either in the rectum or in the esophagus. The present model also includes an analysis of the seven independent environmental factors necessary to make a complete partition of the heat exchange. Definitions are indicated for the new Effective Temperature (ET*) of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, as well as the new Standard Effective Temperature (SET*), by which it is possible to compare on a commonly experienced temperature scale the expected physiological heat stress caused by use of clothing, by radiant heat, by air movement and by barometric pressure. Modifications of the model for water immersion are also indicated.

The independent variables are:

- MR = metabolic rate in W/m²
- WK = work rate accomplished in W/m²
- CLO = intrinsic clothing insulation in clo units [0.155 m²°C/W]
- GHK = linear radiation exchange coefficient in W/m²°C
- OHC = convective heat transfer coefficient in W/(m²°C) at sea level
- BARO = barometric pressure (mm Hg)
- TA = ambient air temperature °C
- TR = mean radiant temperature °C
- PPHG = ambient vapor pressure in mm Hg and may be found from wet bulb (TWET) or dew point (TDP) measurements

and varies with both air movement (VELA) and activity (VEL) (see Nishi and Gagge, 1971)

The dependent variables are:

- TSK = temperature of skin shell (≈ Tsk) in °C
- TCR = central core temperature (≈ rectal or esophageal) in °C
- ALPHA = ratio of mass skin shell to mass central core (N.D.)
- SKBF = skin blood flow in l/(m²·hr)
- EV = total evaporative heat loss in W/m²

Characteristics of an average Man

- 70. = body weight in kg
- 1.8 = body surface in sq. meters
- 0.72 = ratio of body's radiating area to total surface area
- 5.28 = minimum skin conductance in W/(m²°C)
- 6.3 = normal skin blood flow in l/(m²·hr)
The assigned coefficients are:
1.163 = specific heat of blood in W.hr/(l°C)
0.68 = latent heat of water W.hr/g
0.97 = specific heat of body in W.hr/(kg°C)
2.2 = Lewis Relation at sea level in mm Hg
760. = sea level barometric pressure in mm Hg
5.67E-08 = Stefan-Boltzmann Constant in W/(m².K⁴)

Initial Conditions (TIM = 0) are those for physiological thermal neutrality:

- TSK = 34
- TCR = 37
- CHR = 5.0
- CTC = CHR+CHC
- SKBF = 6.3
- ALPHA = 0.1
- EV = 5.0

For sedentary case (1 met):
- MR = 58.2
- RM = MR
- WK = 0
- CHC = 2.9

For exercise:
- CHC = 5.4 (bicycle ergometer at 50 RPM)
- CHC = 6.0 (60 RPM)
- CHC = 8.60*VEL**0.531 (treadmill walking for VEL in m/sec; still air)
- CHC = 8.60*VEL**0.531 + 1.96*VELA**0.86 (where VELA is a head wind in m/sec)

Initial Definitions

Respired Evaporative Heat Loss (ERES) (Fanger, 1970)
ERES = 0.0023*RM*(44.-PPHG)

Respired Convective Heat Loss (CRES) (Fanger, 1970)
CRES = 0.0012*RM*(34.-TA)

Burton Clothing Efficiency Factor (FCL)
FCL = 1./(1.0.155*CTC*CLO)

Operative Temperature (TO)
TO = (CIIR*TR_CHC*TA)/CTC

The above definitions are entered by READ and DO statements

The Simulation Program for Human Temperature Regulation
starts here:

100 CONTINUE

Clothing Surface Temperature
TCL = TO+FCL*(TSK-TO)

Factor (FAACL) increases radiation area of body by 15%/clo (Fanger, 1970)
FAACL = 1.40*35/CLO

The coefficient CHR varies with TSK or TCL during regulation
CHR = 4.*5.97E-08.*(TCL+TO)/2.*273.3)**3.*FAACL.*0.72

CTC = CHR+CHC
FCL = 1./(1.0.155*CTC*CLO)

Heat Flow (HFSK) from skin shell to environment at TO
HFSK = (5.28+1.163*SKBF)*(TCR-TSK)-DRY-(EV-ERES)

Thermal Capacity of body core (TCCR)
TCCR = 0.97*(1.-ALPHA)*70.

Thermal Capacity of skin shell (TCSK)
TCSK = 0.97*ALPHA*70.

Change in core temperature (DTCR) caused by HFCR
DTCR = (HFCR*1.5)/TCCR
Change in skin shell temperature caused by HFSK

$$DTSK = \frac{(HFSK \times 1.0)}{TSK}$$

Iteration to simulate regulation will be at one minute intervals

or by DTSK and DTCR not greater than $\pm$ 0.1°C.

$$DTIM = \frac{1}{60}, \quad U = ABS(DTCSR)$$

$$IF(U-0.1) \geq 10, \quad 10 \quad DTIM=0.1/(U*60.)$$

$$5 \quad DTIM \geq 1.0, \quad 110 \quad DTIM=0.1/(U*60)$$

110 CONTINUE

TIM is in hours

$$TIM = TIM + DTIM$$

$$TSH = TSK + DTSK \times DTIM$$

$$TCR = TCR + DTCR \times DTIM$$

Definition of the Control Signals (SKSIG, CRSIG)

from skin shell: *cold* (COLD); *warm* (WARMS)

$$SKSIG = TSK - 34.0$$

IF(SKSIG) 15, 15, 20

15 COLD = -SKSIG

20 WARMS = 0.0

GO TO 25

25 CONTINUE

from body core: *cold* (COLDC); *warm* (WARMC)

$$CRSIG = TCR - 37.0$$

IF(CRSIG) 30, 30, 35

30 COLDC = -CRSIG

35 WARMC = 0.0

GO TO 40

40 CONTINUE

Control of Skin Blood Flow (STRIC-vasoconstriction; DILAT-vasodilation)

$$STRIC = 0.5 \times COLD$$

$$DILAT = 150 \times WARMC$$

The coefficients 0.5 and 150.0, which change during acclimatization, may vary

$\pm$ 50% without significantly changing resulting thermal equilibrium but they do
affect time to equilibrium.

$$SKBF = \frac{(6.3 + DILAT)}{(1.0 \times STRIC)}$$

Sweating is controlled both by the mean body temperature (Snellen, 1966) and the
peripheral skin temperature (Nadel, Ballard and Stolwijk, 1971)

$$REGSW = 258 \times (1.0 \times SKSIG) \times (1.0 - ALPHA \times CRSIG) \times EXP(SKSIG/10.7)$$

IF(REGSW) 45, 45, 50

45 REGSW = 0

50 CONTINUE

The evaporative heat loss caused by sweating (ERSW)

$$ERSW = 0.6 \times REGSW$$

The Nishi Permeation Efficiency Factor (FPCL) for clothing

$$FPCL = 1.0 / (1.0 + 0.143 \times CLO)$$

The $E_{max}$ of the body skin surface

$$EMAX = 2.2 \times CHC \times SVP(TSK) \times FPHG \times FPCL$$

SVP is a FUNCTION relating saturated vapor pressure to temperature T

Skin wettedness due to sweating (PRSW)

$$PRSW = ERSW / EMAX$$

Total skin wettedness (PWET)

$$PWET = 0.05 \times PWET + 0.95 \times PERSW$$

Skin diffusion (EDIF)

$$EDIF = PWET \times EMAX - ERSW$$
**Total evaporative heat loss (EV)**

\[ EV = \text{ER} + SE + \text{SW} + \text{DLX} \]

IF(PWET) > 60, 60, 65

65 EV = ERES + EMAX

EDIF = 0.0

PRSW = 1.0

**Unevaporated sweat (DRIP) in g/(m²·hr)**

\[ DRIP = \frac{(ERSW - EMAX)}{0.68} \]

60 CONTINUE

Change in skin blood flow affects ALPHAA causing skin shell to become thicker or thinner (Ashoff, 1956)

Hyperbole used to fit (ALPHAA, SKBF) at three points (0.0, 60), (0.1, 6.3), and (0.4, 1.0)

\[ \text{ALPHAA} = 0.04424 + 0.3509/(\text{SKBF}^{0.01386}) \]

Protection from cold by shivering (Stolwijk and Hardy, 1967)

RM = MR + 19.4 * COLD * COLDG

A time of exposure (TIME) of 0.25 hr or greater should be selected

Iteration now begins

IF(TIME > TIME) 100, 101, 101

101 CONTINUE

After exposure (TIME), the following dependent variables have now been evaluated by iteration: CHIR, CTC, FL, TSK, TCB, ROG, M, EMAX, ESW, EDIF, ER, DRIP, PRSW, PWET, ALPHAA, and a new RM, if shivering has occurred.

Rate of body heat storage (STORE) in W/m² and rate of change of mean body temperature (RTBM) in °C/hr at end of exposure TIME are:

\[ \text{STORE} = \text{RM} - CRES - WK - EV - DRY \]

\[ \text{RTBM} = \text{STORE} \times 1.8/(70.97) \]

For any environment:

The resultant dry and humid heat transfer coefficients are

\[ A = CTC \times FCL \]

\[ B = 2.2 + 1.92 \times CTC \times FPCL \]

The linear "dew" temperature is given by

\[ T_{DEW} = (25.3 + FPHI) / 1.92 \]

Operative Temperature (TO) is

\[ TO = (CHIR + B + HC \times TA) / CTC \]

Humid Operative Temperature (TOH) at end of time (TIME) is

\[ C = A \times PWET \times B \]

\[ TOH = (A \times TO + PWET \times B) / C \]

Calculation of new ASHRAE Effective Temperature (ET*)

\[ ET = TOH \]

80 DEWS = (25.3 + 0.5 * SVPTY) / 1.92

TOHS = (A * ET * PWET * B) / DEWS

ERROR = TOH - TOHS

IF ERROR > 70, 70, 75

75 ET = ET + 0.1

TO TO 80

70 CONTINUE

For the Sedentary Case only, when RM = 58.2 or 1 met:

The Standard Environment is defined by

\[ \text{CHCS} = 2.9 \]

\[ \text{CLOS} = 0.6 \]

\[ \text{CHR} = \text{CHR} \]

\[ \text{CGRS} = \text{CHR} + \text{CHCS} \]

\[ \text{FPIL} = 1/(1 + 0.135 \times \text{CTCS} \times \text{CLOS}) \]

\[ \text{FPCLS} = 1/(1 + 0.143 \times \text{CHCS} \times \text{CLOS}) \]

The standard resulting dry and humid heat transfer coefficients are

\[ AS = CTC \times FCLE \]

\[ BS = 2.2 + 1.92 \times CHCS \times FPCLS \]

Standard Operative Temperature (STO)

\[ STO = (A \times AS) / TO + (1 + A / AS) \times TSK \]
Standard Humid Operative Temperature (STOH)
CS = AS*PWET*BS
STOH = (C/CS)*STOH*(1-C/CS)*TSK

Calculation of Standard Effective Temperature (SET)
SET = STOH
90 TDEW5 = (25.3 + 0.5*SVP(SET)/1.92)
STOH5 = (AS*SET + PWET*BS*TDEW5)/CS
ERR = STOH - STOH5
IF (GBR) (80,85)
85 SET = SET + 0.1
GO TO 90
80 CONTINUE

Prediction of Warm discomfort DISC (positive)
DISC = 4.7*PSW

Prediction of Temperature sensation (TSENS) = warm, - cold
TSENS = -0.245*SET + 0.033*0.5*SVP(SET) - 6.471
See ASHRM Handbook of Fundamentals (1972) for sensory data.

Prediction of Cold DISCOMFORT (negative)
A TABLE function is used to relate DISC to TSK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TSK</th>
<th>28.0</th>
<th>28.5</th>
<th>29.0</th>
<th>29.5</th>
<th>30.0</th>
<th>30.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DISC</td>
<td>-4.6</td>
<td>-4.1</td>
<td>-3.6</td>
<td>-3.1</td>
<td>-2.6</td>
<td>-2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TSK</th>
<th>31.0</th>
<th>31.5</th>
<th>32.0</th>
<th>32.5</th>
<th>33.0</th>
<th>33.5</th>
<th>34.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DISC</td>
<td>-1.08</td>
<td>-1.25</td>
<td>-0.95</td>
<td>-0.7</td>
<td>-0.5</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The desired output statements now follow, END of Program.

The above program can be used with reasonable accuracy for exercise and work. The Standard Conditions may be set at any other desired value.

For environments different from sea level, the Lewis factor [2.2] is replaced by [2.2*760./BARO] and the sea level value for CHC by [CHC*(BARO/760.)**0.55], wherever they occur in the program.

In a water environment CHC = 0, and CHC values in range 70 - 150 W/(m²°C) should be used. Under these conditions, the Lewis factor [2.2] is set to zero as there is no evaporation.

In Fig. A-1, the model has been used to calculate loci of constant TSENS, TSK, DISC, PWET in terms of uniform TA and ambient vapor pressure in mm Hg. They are drawn for a sedentary normally clothed subject.

In Fig. A-2, the model has been used to calculate lines of constant physiological strain (SET*) for the same resting subject.

In Fig. A-3, the expected thermal responses of a sedentary subject to the new ET* or SET are indicated.
Figure A-1. Loci of constant $T_{sk}$, $w$, TSENS and DISC for a Standard Environment in terms of ambient vapor pressure and air temperature.

Figure A-2. Standard Operative Temperature or Dry Bulb Temperature ($T'_a$) in a Standard environment. The relative humidity lines apply to the uniform $T'_a$, not to $T_{so}$ when used on the abscissa.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ET* °C</th>
<th>Temperature Sensation</th>
<th>Discomfort</th>
<th>Regulation of Body Temp.</th>
<th>Health</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Very hot</td>
<td>Limited tolerance</td>
<td>Failure of free skin evap.</td>
<td>Increasing danger of heat stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>Very uncomfortable</td>
<td>Increasing vasodilation sweating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Warm</td>
<td>Slightly uncomfortable</td>
<td>No reg. sweating</td>
<td>Normal health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Slightly warm</td>
<td>Comfortable</td>
<td>Vasoconstriction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Slightly uncomfortable</td>
<td>Behavioral changes</td>
<td>Complaints from dry mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Slightly cool</td>
<td>Cool</td>
<td>Shivering begins</td>
<td>Impairment peripheral circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Very cold</td>
<td>Uncomfortable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>Uncomfortable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure A-3. Human thermal responses to the new Effective Temperature ET or SET. SET is the uniform ambient temperature at 50% relative humidity of an enclosure with air movement 0.15 m/sec or 30 fpm in which a clothed subject (0.6 clo) would exchange the same heat by radiation, convection, and evaporation as in the actual environment defined by TA, TR, PPHG, CHR, CHC, and BARO.
CHAPTER 4
SUSTAINED LINEAR ACCELERATION

by

T. Morris Fraser, M.Sc., M.D.
University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, Canada

By definition, acceleration is a rate of change and can occur in any or all of three related, but differing, maneuvers. Linear acceleration is the rate of change of velocity of a mass, the direction of movement of which is kept constant. Acceleration acting on a mass will produce a force exerting a pressure on the mass and causing it to move if movable or to deform if not.

Angular acceleration is the rate of change of direction of a mass, the velocity of which is kept constant. In this regard, the acceleration is directly proportional to the square of the velocity and inversely proportional to the radius of the turn. By common usage, where the axis of rotation is external to the body, as in an aircraft turn or a centrifuge, the acceleration is frequently termed "radial" acceleration, while the term "angular" is retained for situations where the axis of rotation passes through the body. Where the radius is long, the effects of radial acceleration on man approximate those of linear acceleration.

In its third form, acceleration occurs as a component of the attraction between masses. The resulting force is directly proportional to the product of the masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them. The proportionality constant is the gravitational constant g which represents an acceleration of 32.24 feet per second (fps) within the terrestrial field of reference. This is the accepted unit of measurement of acceleration.

When a mass is acted upon by the acceleration of gravity, the resulting force, acted vectorially, represents its weight. When the acceleration is other than gravitational, it interacts with gravity, if present, to produce a resultant which effectively increases the weight of the mass in the direction of the resultant. It is this effective increase in weight which, in one form or another, is largely responsible for the physiological and other changes found in the body exposed to sustained acceleration.

Reviewed by Randall M. Chambers, Ph.D., NASA Langley Research Center

149
In this regard, it must be remembered that the body is essentially a fluid system and reacts accordingly. Pascal, in the 17th century, showed that in ideal fluids at rest: (a) fluid pressure is equal in all directions, (b) pressures at points lying in the same horizontal plane are equal, and (c) pressure increases with depth under the free surface. This increase is equal to $\rho gh$ dynes/cm², where $\rho$ is the density of the fluid, $g$ the gravitational constant, and $h$ the depth. These laws apply to the vascular system and, after a fashion, to the body as a whole.

The descriptive nomenclature for acceleration used herein is the system defined in chapter 6, Impact.

Terminology for duration of acceleration depends on the fact that there is a difference in body response to accelerations of duration below and above approximately 0.2 second, related to the latent period for development of hydrostatic effects. Thus, abrupt acceleration is considered as ranging to 0.2 second, while sustained acceleration is prolonged beyond 0.2 second.

**Subjective Effects of Sustained Acceleration**

In the operational situation, it is unusual, if not impossible, for acceleration stress to occur in a simple form. One is rarely, if ever, exposed to a simple unvarying $+G_z$ stress. Instead, acceleration may vary in its resultant vector, magnitude, and type, and may be accompanied by complex oscillations and vibrations. For purposes of analysis, however, it is simpler to consider the response to a continuous resultant vector without additional complexities. The following compilation is derived from the study by Fraser (1966).

**Positive Acceleration Effects ($+G_z$)**

- $1 G_z$: Equivalent to the erect or seated terrestrial posture.
- $2 G_z$: Increase in weight, increased pressure on buttocks, drooping of face and soft body tissues.
- $2 1/2 G_z$: Difficult to raise oneself.
- $3 - 4 G_z$: Impossible to raise oneself, difficult to raise arms and legs, movement at right angles impossible; progressive dimming of vision after 3 to 4 seconds, progressing to tunneling of vision.
- $4 1/2 - 6 G_z$: Diminution of vision, progressive to blackout after about 5 seconds; hearing and then consciousness lost if exposure continued; mild to severe convulsions in about 50 percent of subjects during or following unconsciousness, frequently with bizarre dreams; occasionally paresthesias, confused states and, rarely, gustatory sensations; no incontinence; pain not common, but tension and congestion of lower limbs with cramps and tingling; inspiration difficult; loss of orientation for time and space up to 15 seconds postacceleration.
**Sustained Linear Acceleration**

**Negative Acceleration Effects (-G\(_z\))**

-1 G\(_z\): Unpleasant but tolerable facial suffusion and congestion.

-2 to -3 G\(_z\): Severe facial congestion, throbbing headache; progressive blurring, graying, or occasionally reddening of vision after 5 seconds; congestion disappears slowly, may leave petechial hemorrhages, edematous eyelids.

-5 G\(_z\): Five seconds, limit of tolerance, rarely reached by most subjects.

**Forward Acceleration Effects (+G\(_x\))**

2 - 3 G\(_x\): Increased weight and abdominal pressure; progressive slight difficulty in focusing and slight spatial disorientation, each subsiding with experience; 2 G\(_x\) tolerable at least to 24 hours, 4 G\(_x\) up to at least 60 minutes.

3 - 6 G\(_x\): Progressive tightness in chest (6 G\(_x\), 5 minutes), chest pain, loss of peripheral vision, difficulty in breathing and speaking, blurring of vision, effort required to maintain focus.

6 - 9 G\(_x\): Increased chest pain and pressure; breathing difficult, with shallow respiration from position of nearly full inspiration; further reduction in peripheral vision, increased blurring, occasional tunneling, great concentration to maintain focus; occasional lacrimation; body, legs, and arms cannot be lifted at 8 G\(_x\); head cannot be lifted at 9 G\(_x\).

9 - 12 G\(_x\): Breathing difficulty severe; increased chest pain; marked fatigue; loss of peripheral vision, diminution of central acuity, lacrimation.

15 G\(_x\): Extreme difficulty in breathing and speaking; severe vise-like chest pain; loss of tactile sensation; recurrent complete loss of vision.

**Backward Acceleration Effects (-G\(_x\))**

Similar to those of +G\(_x\) acceleration with modifications produced by reversal of force vector. Chest pressure reversed, hence breathing easier; pain and discomfort from outward pressure toward restraint harness manifest at about 8 G\(_x\); with forward head tilt cerebral hemodynamic effects manifest akin to -G\(_z\); distortion of vision at -6 to -8 G\(_x\); feeling of insecurity from pressure against restraint.
Lateral Acceleration Effects (±G_y)
(Little Information Available)

3 G_y:
Discomfort after 10 seconds; pressure on restraint system, feeling of supporting entire weight on clavicle; inertial movement of hips and legs, yawing and rotation of head toward shoulder; petechiae and bruising; engorgement of dependent elbow with pain.

5 G_y
(14.5 sec): External hemorrhage, severe postrun headache.

Table 4-1 shows the most common symptoms which occurred during +G_z and +G_x acceleration on the centrifuge of the U. S. Naval Air Development Center, Johnsville, Pennsylvania, during the period 1961 through 1965.

Table 4-1
Human Response to +G_z and +G_x Accelerations on a Centrifuge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vector</th>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Instances</th>
<th>Runs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+G_z</td>
<td>Grayout</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>2380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blackout</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>2380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Motion sickness</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>2380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+G_x</td>
<td>Chest pain</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>2557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Motion sickness</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>2557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dyspnea</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>2557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arrhythmia</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>2557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>17 cases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Headaches</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syncope</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Limb myalgia</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paresthesia</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(York et al., 1968)
Physiological Effects of Sustained Acceleration

The fundamental stimulus influencing the physiological effects of sustained acceleration arises from the effective increase in weight of the body, and particularly its fluid components, along the acceleration vector. This is illustrated in figure 4-1. The center sketch of the figure, illustrating the vascular effects at $+1 \ G_z$, indicates that with a mean arterial pressure of 120 mm Hg, the mean pressures at head and foot levels are calculated to be 96 and 170 mm Hg, respectively. At $+5 \ G_z$, while maintaining mean arterial pressure at heart level of 120 mm Hg, the theoretical pressure at the base of the brain will be zero, while at the feet it will be 370 mm Hg. Under these circumstances, the subject would be unconscious, and an additional venous pressure of 250 mm Hg would be required to return blood from feet to heart. In fact, unconsciousness does not necessarily occur at $+5 \ G_z$ because of physiological compensatory adjustments.

![Figure 4-1. Hydrostatic pressures in vascular system of a man in upright sitting position at 1 G and during headward acceleration at 5 G. (After Wood et al., 1963)](image)

During $+G_z$ acceleration with rates of onset from 1 to 2 G/sec, and of magnitude sufficient to produce loss of vision, there is an immediate decrease in blood pressure at head level, an increase in heart rate, a decrease in blood volume at the ear, and a decrease in the amplitude of the arterial pulse at ear level (Lindberg & Wood, 1963). Recovery of blood pressure and ear pulse begins before the acceleration episode is complete, indicating compensatory physiological adjustments. The fall in blood pressure at head level is proportional to the magnitude of the acceleration. Blood pressure at heart level, however, is maintained near normal and in fact may actually increase during exposures to the level of $+5 \ G_z$. These effects are illustrated in figure 4-2. Some of the general cardiovascular responses are tabulated in table 4-2.
Figure 4-2. Sequence of physiological events during exposure of normal subject to positive acceleration at +4.5 Gz for 15 sec. Note initial period of progressive failure: there are, in order of occurrence, decrease in blood pressure at head level, increase in heart rate, loss of blood volume in the ear, and failure of peripheral vision. This is followed by a period of compensation despite continuance of exposure. (After Lindberg & Wood, 1963; reprinted by permission of Academic Press, Inc. Copyright 1963 by Academic Press, Inc.)

Table 4-2
Cardiovascular Responses to +Gz Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CV Response</th>
<th>Percentage Increase (+) or Decrease (−)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+2 Gz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac output</td>
<td>−7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke volume</td>
<td>−24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>+14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean aortic pressure</td>
<td>+9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic vascular resistance</td>
<td>+17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Wood et al., 1961)

In the -Gz vector, the direction of the increased hydrostatic pressure is reversed. With the onset of acceleration, the arterial and venous pressure rise some 70 to 90 mm Hg as measured in the carotid artery and jugular vein (Gamble et al., 1949).
Gauer and Henry (1964), describing work carried out between 1947 and 1949, showed that the venous pressure developed under $-G_z$ acceleration, as measured in the supraorbital vein, depended on the degree of tilt of the head because of the geometrical relations of the vertical axes of the head and the eyes. Figure 4-3 illustrates the resulting effects at $-2\,\text{G}_z$ during rotation from the full prone to the full supine position.

![Figure 4-3. Venous pressures during exposure to $-G_z$ acceleration in different positions of body tilt. Light line and O = data obtained normally; heavy line = theoretically calculated pressures; broken lines = pressures obtained when rotating subject with tourniquets about legs to prevent reflux of blood. Venous pressure was measured in forehead vein. (After Gauer & Henry, 1964)](image)

Change in heart rate has been inconsistent in different studies. Browne and Fitzsimmons (1957), in an ECG study of 53 subjects with 366 exposures in the range of +3 to +5 $G_z$ for 15 seconds duration, found a progressive increase in pulse rate with increase in acceleration level.

Electrocardiographic changes under sustained acceleration are largely nonspecific and chiefly manifest as alterations in the electrical axis, along with some S-T segment and T-wave changes. Arrhythmias are not uncommon and occur under all vectors.

**Retinal and Visual Response**

Vision is markedly affected by alteration in hydrostatic pressure. The symptoms, namely, grayout or loss of peripheral vision and blackout or total loss...
of vision, manifest themselves at levels below those producing unconsciousness, since intraocular pressure is some 20 mm Hg higher than intracerebral pressure. Consequently, blood supply to the retina fails before failure of cerebral circulation (Andina, 1937).

Visual effects occur in all vectors but, because of the vertical position, are more common in the $G_z$ vectors. Because of the forward position of the eye with respect to the midline, the force experienced at the eye is not the same as that applied to the midline.

Duane (1954) obtained illustrations of the retina during $+G_z$ accelerations to blackout level. A correlation between visual change and change in the fundus oculi was established, as indicated in Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Subjective Response</th>
<th>Objective Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Loss of peripheral vision</td>
<td>Arteriolar pulsation – i.e., recurrent exsanguination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Blackout</td>
<td>Arteriolar exsanguination and collapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Return of central peripheral vision</td>
<td>Return of arteriolar pulsation and temporary venous distension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Duane, 1954)

Newsom and his colleagues (1968) conducted retinal photography and fluorescence angiography during 10-second plateaus of blackout from $+G_z$ acceleration in human subjects. Some of the findings are shown in Figure 4-4.

On exposure to $-G_z$ acceleration, local hydrostatic pressure is increased at the eyeball and gives rise to pain and a feeling of fullness. The occurrence of “red-out,” or reddening of the visual fields has been reported experimentally in centrifuge work (Ryan et al., 1950), but it is doubtful if it occurs consistently or operationally. It has been suggested that red-out is a distortion of vision caused by obstruction from the conjunctiva of the lower lid.

*Visual Thresholds.* The general range of visual threshold in relation to unconsciousness is shown in Table 4-4. There would appear to be a change in the absolute threshold of vision under acceleration, that is, the minimum light intensity at which a stimulus can be perceived. White (1960) showed that for a given stimulus intensity to be perceived as of equal intensity with a probability of 50 percent under increased acceleration, the actual intensity had to be increased according to the ratios shown in Table 4-5. Foveal and peripheral thresholds as a function of acceleration are illustrated in Figures 4-5 and 4-6.
Figure 4-4. Serial photographs of fundus of right eye in a human subject during blackout. Read from left, up, right, and down. (After Leverett, 1968, from work of Newson et al., 1968)

Table 4-4

Range of Visual Thresholds in Relation to Unconsciousness

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criterion</th>
<th>Mean Threshold (G)</th>
<th>Standard Deviation (G)</th>
<th>Range (G)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of peripheral vision</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>±0.7</td>
<td>2.2 - 7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackout</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>±0.8</td>
<td>2.7 - 7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unconsciousness</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>±0.9</td>
<td>3.0 - 8.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Cochran et al., 1954)

The effect of acceleration on brightness discrimination is shown in figure 4-7. The minimal detectable difference in intensity between a test patch and its lighted surround has long served as a test of visual sensitivity. The threshold difference has been found to be a function of basic energy level as well as contrast between the patch and its reference illumination. Thus, the greater the background intensity, the smaller the ratio between the patch and the background required for detection. The data compiled in the graphs in figure 4-7 illustrate an interaction between acceleration and the minimal discernible differential intensity (ΔI). The stimulus display used to collect the
data consisted of a background subtending 8°4' visual angle positioned 28 inches from the eye and viewed monocularly through a circular aperture 17.5 inches from the eye. The test patch, projected upon the background, subtended a 1°28' visual angle (Braunstein & White, 1962).

Table 4–5
Increase in Visual Stimulus Intensity* Required to Perceive a Stimulus as Equalling that at +1 G\textsubscript{z} (P = 50%)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acceleration (+G\textsubscript{z})</th>
<th>Required Increase in Stimulus Intensity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fovea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Expressed as a ratio of that at +1 G\textsubscript{z}.
(Data of White, 1960)

Figure 4–5. Threshold of foveal vision under +1 to +4G\textsubscript{z} acceleration.
(After White, 1960)
Figure 4-6. Threshold of peripheral vision under +1 to +4 G acceleration. (After White, 1960)

Figure 4-7. Relationship between brightness discrimination and background luminance under four levels of positive (+Gz) (top) and five levels of transverse (+Gx) (bottom) acceleration. (After Braunstein & White, 1962)
The effects of oxygen on brightness discrimination are illustrated in figure 4-8, from work by Chambers and Kerr (1962).

**Figure 4-8.** Brightness discrimination with different breathing gases at different acceleration levels. (After Chambers & Kerr, 1962)

**Visual Distortion.** In the $-G_x$ vector, distortion becomes marked at -6 to -8 $G_x$. Smedal and his colleagues (1963) showed that this was not due to corneal distortion in the bulging eye but was associated with intermittent watering occurring at about the -6 $G_x$ level.

**Visual Fields.** Limitation in the visual field under acceleration exposure is, of course, related to the occurrence of grayout. At about +4.5 $G_z$, the field is narrowed to an arc of less than 46°. Figure 4-9 indicates the effect of the retinal position of a signal on the acceleration response. In the study which the figure illustrates, 115 subjects were exposed to $+G_z$ acceleration with a light array above. Almost invariably, subjects lost the 80° light before loss of the 23° light. In 30 subjects, the 80° light loss occurred at a mean of 4.2 $G_z$, standard deviation 20.7 G. In the same subjects, the 23° light loss occurred at a mean of 4.5 $G_z$, standard deviation ±0.8 G. Central light loss occurred at 5.3 $G_z$, standard deviation 20.8 G.
Comparison of 80° Light Loss, 23° Light Loss, and 0° Light Loss

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Clear</th>
<th>80° LL</th>
<th>23° LL</th>
<th>CLL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mean (Gz level)</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range (Gz level)</td>
<td>2.3 - 5.1</td>
<td>2.7 - 5.7</td>
<td>2.9 - 6.4</td>
<td>3.6 - 7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard deviation</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of symptom-</td>
<td>mean (sec)</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean (sec)</td>
<td>1.9 - 17.0</td>
<td>1.9 - 11.9</td>
<td>2.1 - 23.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4-9. Effect of retinal position of a signal on the perception of light signals under acceleration. (From Zariello et al., 1958)

**Pupillary Reactions.** Pupillary dilation begins with loss of peripheral vision (Beckman et al., 1961). Accommodation is unaffected by acceleration (Smedal et al., 1963).

**Unconsciousness and Cerebral Function**

Loss of consciousness and complete impairment of cerebral function occur between +3 Gz and +8 Gz, the specific level depending chiefly on biological factors and duration and rate of onset. Figures 4-10 and 4-11 indicate the range of responses found. In the other vectors, the subject normally reaches a tolerance threshold of another sort before unconsciousness occurs. On return to consciousness, there is usually a short (5 to 15 second) period of confusion (Franks et al., 1945).

Convulsions with characteristic EEG changes are a common accompaniment of unconsciousness, having been found in 52 percent of 230 subjects (Franks et al., 1945). Sem-Jacobsen (1959, 1960) has recorded and photographed them in pilots in flight. Brent and coworkers (1960) have found that certain combinations of hyperventilation, hypoglycemia, and +Gz acceleration will produce convulsions in all subjects.
**Figure 4-10.** Time to unconsciousness as a function of rate of onset of positive acceleration ($G_z$). (After Stoll, 1956)

**Figure 4-11.** Time to unconsciousness as a function of varying rates of positive acceleration ($G_z$) onset, $G$ amplitudes, and exposure times. (After Stoll, 1956)

**Pulmonary Response**

A naturally occurring pressure gradient exists even at 1 $G$ between the apex and the base of the lung in the vertical subject and between the front and the back of the lung in the supine subject (Glaister, 1967; Wood, 1967; Rutishauser et al., 1967, and others). With increase in acceleration, there is an increase in perfusion of the pulmonary vessels in the dependent portions of the lung and a
decrease in the upper zone (Bryan & MacNamara, 1964, and other workers). Figure 4-12 shows the relationships at +3 Gz, while figure 4-13 shows the relationships at 0, +1, and +3 Gz. Individual relationships are shown in figure 4-14.

**Figure 4-12.** Theoretical pressure-flow relationships in vertical lung at +3 Gz; \( P_a \), mean pulmonary arterial pressure; \( P_v \) mean pulmonary venous pressure. Hydrostatic indifference plane is taken to be 5 cm below the lung hilum; arteriovenous pressure difference is assumed to remain constant at 10 cm water. (After Glaister, 1967; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty’s Stationery Office)

**Figure 4-13.** Distributions of ventilation (VA), perfusion (Q), and ventilation/perfusion ratio (VA/Q) down the lung at positive accelerations of +1, +2, and +3 Gz, averaged from four subjects. Mean position of diaphragm at each level of acceleration is also indicated. (After Glaister, 1967; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty’s Stationery Office)
Lung Volumes and Mechanics of Breathing. Respiratory rate increases almost linearly with acceleration. Minute volume increases initially, but levels off at about +8 G_x, when acceleration is applied in that vector. Tidal volume, although increasing initially up to about +5 G_x, or +8 G_x, decreases with still greater acceleration. Positive pressure breathing (30 cm H_2O) diminishes the changes in lung volumes resulting from acceleration, and, in particular, allows a relative increase in ventilation of the lower lung. This effect, however, is abolished by the increase in abdominal pressure induced by wearing an inflated G-suit (Glaister, 1965), as shown in table 4-6. Glaister (1961) also showed that there was no change in lung stiffness or air resistance, at least up to +3 G_z. This was confirmed up to +4 G_x by Watson and his colleagues (1960), who further demonstrated an increase in the resting relaxation pressure amounting to 5 mm Hg/G as illustrated in figure 4-15.

The oxygen cost of acceleration in the G_x vector was examined by Zechman and coworkers (1960) and by Glaister (1963). These investigators confirmed, with experiments at +2 to +3 G_z for 1/2 to 5 minutes, that at the lower levels of acceleration oxygen uptake does not increase during the exposure, and may even fall, although an oxygen debt is built up. This debt is, however, repaid on return to 1 G. These findings are summarized in table 4-7 and figure 4-16.

Arterial Oxygen Saturation. The effect of the changed ventilation/perfusion relationships is to produce a progressive decrease in arterial oxygenation with increase in acceleration. Figure 4-17, from the work of Wood et al. (1963), shows the average and range of changes in arterial oxygen saturation in four healthy men exposed to +G_x acceleration, as indicated, breathing air.

Alexander and his colleagues (1965) measured arterial oxygen saturation in a group of 25 pilots breathing air while exposed to +G_x accelerations representative of Apollo operations. The results are illustrated in figure 4-18.
Table 4–6
Effect of Positive-Pressure Breathing (PPB) on Mean Lung Volumes
During Increasing Forward Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accl. **</th>
<th>With PPB (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Vital Capacity</th>
<th>Tidal Volume</th>
<th>Inspiratory Reserve</th>
<th>Expiratory Reserve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(G)</td>
<td></td>
<td>cc</td>
<td>cc</td>
<td>cc</td>
<td>cc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>% of 1 G Value</td>
<td>% of 1 G Value</td>
<td>% of 1 G Value</td>
<td>% of 1 G Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3875 ± 343</td>
<td>781 ± 107</td>
<td>2333 ± 171</td>
<td>761 ± 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3642 ± 535</td>
<td>486 ± 56</td>
<td>2089 ± 343</td>
<td>1180 ± 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3121 ± 565</td>
<td>436 ± 45</td>
<td>1681 ± 397</td>
<td>1005 ± 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2391 ± 715</td>
<td>510 ± 122</td>
<td>947 ± 407</td>
<td>938 ± 271</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Each figure is the mean for four or five subjects.
**Studies done with an A–13A mask and 12 degree back angle.
(After Watson et al., 1960)
Figure 4-15. Static relaxation pressure-volume curves during control (+Gx) and +2, +3, and +4 Gx acceleration. All lung volumes were obtained at 1 G. (After Watson et al., 1960)

Figure 4-19 illustrates a similar experiment with subjects breathing 100 percent oxygen at 5 psi. It will be noted the rate of desaturation is slower and the rate of recovery is even more so.

Arterial desaturation is also evident on exposure to acceleration in the -Gx vector, although the severity is perhaps not so great. Figure 4-20, from the work of Smedal et al. (1963), indicates the results.

In the +Gz vector, the effects of arterial desaturation are overshadowed by other more dramatic responses, but Barr (1962) demonstrated its occurrence and further showed that the rate and degree of desaturation were increased by repeated exposures. Arterial desaturation has also been observed with acceleration in the -Gz vector (Gauer & Henry, 1964).

The "altitude equivalent," representing the extent of hypoxia commensurate with the intensity of +Gx accelerations, is shown in figure 4-21.

Renal Output

Reduction of urine secretion under applied +Gx acceleration, followed by an increased outflow on cessation of acceleration has been demonstrated in human subjects by Stauffer and Errobo-Knudsen (1953), with results shown in figure 4-22.
Table 4-7
Additional Oxygen Consumption (cc/min SPTD)
Required During 1 Min Forward (+G_x) Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>+6 G_x</th>
<th>+8 G_x</th>
<th>+10 G_x</th>
<th>+12 G_x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Extra</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Extra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>286</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>253</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mean ± SD: 287 ± 32, 46 ± 78, 290 ± 45, 188 ± 170, 274 ± 34, 310 ± 228, 306 ± 716

(After Zechman et al., 1960)
Figure 4-16. Effect of positive acceleration at +3 Gz for 3 min on pulmonary ventilation ($V_E$), respiratory rate (f), and tidal volume ($V_T$), at left; on $O_2$ uptake ($V_{O_2}$), CO$_2$ excretion ($V_{CO_2}$), and respiratory gas exchange ratio ($R$), at right. Period of acceleration is shaded. Horizontal lines give mean values for seven runs on five subjects, barred vertical lines indicate ±SD deviation of mean. (After Glaister, 1963; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office)

Figure 4-17. Average and range of changes in arterial $O_2$ saturation of four healthy men, recorded by cuvette and car oximeters during 3 min at +2.1, +3.7 and +5.4 Gz. (After Wood et al., 1963)
Figure 4–18. Means of arterial saturations in 25 subjects exposed to $+G_x$ acceleration breathing air at 14.7 psia, $\Delta V = 37,000$ fps. (After Alexander et al., 1965)

Figure 4–19. Means of arterial saturations in 25 subjects exposed to $+G_x$ acceleration breathing 100% $O_2$ at 5 psia, $\Delta W = 37,000$ fps. (After Alexander et al., 1965)
Figure 4-20. Comparison of $-G_x$ and $+G_x$ acceleration exposure on arterial saturation. (After Smedal et al., 1963)

Figure 4-21. Impairment of performance predicted for different $+G_x$ levels breathing air and oxygen at 5 psia, equated to performance at different altitudes. (After Teichner & Craig, 1966; data from many sources)
The underlying mechanism has been postulated as involving an increase in secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) as a result of stimulation of fluid volume receptors, or from change in glomerular filtration rate arising from hemodynamic effects on the renal artery. Increase in ADH levels has been noted in human subjects at $+2 \, G_z$ acceleration for 30 minutes (Rogge et al., 1967).

**Mechanical Impedance and Natural Frequency**

The fundamental resonant frequency of the human body sitting erect under normal gravitational conditions is approximately $5 \, \text{Hz}$ (Coermann, 1963). A sustained $+G_z$ acceleration stiffens the seated human body in the direction of the spine and increases the fundamental natural frequency to $7 \, \text{Hz}$ at $+2 \, G_z$ and $8 \, \text{Hz}$ at $+3 \, G_z$. During $+3 \, G_z$ acceleration, at vibrational frequencies up to about $5 \, \text{Hz}$, the body tends to respond as though it were a pure mass. The transmission factor decreases under $+G_z$ acceleration, especially at the $5 \, \text{Hz}$ resonance, but increases considerably above $6 \, \text{Hz}$. The damping coefficient of the erect sitting human remains unchanged at about $0.575$ during $+G_z$ acceleration. Some of the foregoing factors are illustrated in figure 4-23 from the work of Vogt et al., 1968.

**Tolerance to Sustained Acceleration**

Tolerance may be defined as the limit of man's capacity to endure the physical and emotional discomfort of a stressful environment. The limit may be difficult to define with certainty, and, in fact, may commonly be an arbitrary cutoff point imposed from without, rather than a subjective endurance
threshold. In $+G_x$ acceleration, the occurrence of grayout, blackout, or unconsciousness can be used as a standard. In $\pm G_x$ acceleration, dyspnea, pain, and discomfort tend to be self-limiting features not amenable to quantification.

**Human Acceleration Experience**

Figure 4-24 is a compilation by Fraser (1966) from numerous sources, of various human experiences in sustained acceleration. The curves are an estimation of the maximum voluntary tolerance of healthy, well-motivated men but must be considered maximum levels and not operational levels. Higher levels than those indicated in figure 4-24 have been tolerated but not in the form of an acceleration plateau, for example, $+20 \, G_x$ for a few seconds in the form of a haversine peak (Collins et al., 1956) and $+25 \, G_x$ for several seconds (Collins & Gray, 1959).

Figure 4-25 compares average $G$ tolerance for several axes (Chambers, 1963).

As contrasted with the average tolerance illustrated in the previous two figures, figure 4-26 demonstrates the upper limits of voluntary tolerance of a group of highly motivated test pilots, preconditioned to the effects of acceleration and suitably restrained.

**Rate of Onset**

Figure 4-27 illustrates the effect of different rates of onset on the response of 15 subjects to $+G_x$ acceleration (Stoll, 1956). From these data, a monogram was developed (figure 4-28) which, although empirical, indicates the expected duration before grayout at a given plateau and rate of onset.
Sustained Linear Acceleration

Figure 4-24. Human experience of sustained acceleration. Each datum point represents a plateau of acceleration, not an incidental peak. Curves estimate maximum voluntary tolerance in +G_z, -G_z and +G_x vectors using restraint harness, couches, or anti-G suits where applicable. Dotted lines are extrapolations on basis of other evidence. (After Fraser, 1966; data from many sources)

Figure 4-25. Comparison of average G tolerance in four vectors of sustained acceleration. (After Chambers, 1963)
Figure 4–26. Voluntary endurance of acceleration by highly motivated test pilots.
(After Chambers & Hitchcock, 1963)

Figure 4–27. Effect of rate of onset of acceleration on G tolerance.
(After Stoll, 1956)
Posture and Position

Figure 4-29 (Bondurant et al., 1958a) illustrates the effect on tolerance of various positions in the +G_x vector, while figure 4-30 specifies the advantages and disadvantages of a variety of positions. The ideal position for forward (+G_x) acceleration is considered to be in a seated posture, forward facing, with the trunk inclined forward 20° from the vertical, hips flexed to bring the knees to eye level, and lower legs extended (position B, figure 4-30).

Very Prolonged Acceleration

Exposure to levels of +3 G_x and +4 G_x has been withstood for durations up to 1 hour (Bondurant et al., 1958a; Miller et al., 1959) but there are few instances on record. Clark (1960) describes a 24-hour exposure to +2 G_x in a reclining seat. It was characterized by rotational illusions and discomfort. Ross and his colleagues (1963) report a study of 4 hours' duration.

Restraint and Protection

Standard aircraft harnesses provide no protection against sustained acceleration except to maintain the subject in general position. The development and usefulness of anti-G devices and clothing is summarized in table 4-8 from the work of Nicholson and Franks (1966).
Figure 4-29. Effect of body position and posture on tolerance to acceleration.  
(After Bondurant et al., 1958a)

Table 4-1. Position and direction of greatest and lesser tolerance to acceleration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of greatest tolerance</th>
<th>Direction of acceleration</th>
<th>Position of lesser tolerance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A (water immersion)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4—30. Variations in position which influence tolerance to acceleration.  
(After Bondurant et al., 1958a)
Table 4–8
Devices for Protection Against Positive (+Gz) Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anti-G Device</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Protection Against Visual Symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal belts</td>
<td>Pneumatic belt connected to inflated bag situated under pilot; belt pressurized at 6 G to approximately 2 psi; additional device, pressurized by hand, exerted 25 mm Hg pressure at 5.8 G</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spencer acceleration belt inflated to 2–3 psi approximately 1 min prior to acceleration</td>
<td>0.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrostatic belt connected to 2-gal water tank held at head level; during acceleration, belt filled with water and pressurized at the abdomen</td>
<td>0.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial occlusion suit</td>
<td>Activated by G-controlled air pressure, occluding the femoral arteries; another suit occluded the brachial arteries</td>
<td>2.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandages</td>
<td>Applied to legs and abdomen</td>
<td>0.5 — 0.8 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrostatic pressure suits</td>
<td>Water-filled leggins, with pneumatic Spencer acceleration belt</td>
<td>0.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Franks’ flying suit (Canadian water-filled): Thigh, leg, and abdomen bladders were pressurized under gravitational stress and exerted tensing effect on limbs through an inextensible covering</td>
<td>1.0 — 2.0 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Franks’ liquid-filled suit with superimposed G-graded air pressure</td>
<td>2.1 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cotton aerodynamic anti-G suit (Australian air-filled): Overlapping bags in an inextensible outer covering; bags almost encircled limbs and body from feet to a few inches below the costal margin; provided three levels of pressure</td>
<td>1.4 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spencer-Berger rubber, air-filled suit: Bags partially covered body; ankle bladders pressurized at –1.25 psi/G, calf and abdominal bladders at 1.13 psi/G, bladders at 1.10 psi/G</td>
<td>1.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumatic gradient pressure suits</td>
<td>Spencer acceleration belt and stockings (Poppen Belt)</td>
<td>1.0 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>David Clark single pressure suit inflated at 1.2 psi/G (developed from Spencer acceleration belt and stockings)</td>
<td>1.4 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single pressure suits</td>
<td>Spencer pressure suit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4–8 (Continued)

Devices for Protection Against Positive (+Gz) Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anti-G Device</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Protection Against Visual Symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single pressure suits (Cont'd)</td>
<td>RAF III suit: Essentially a copy of the David Clark single pressure suit, but with a split abdominal bladder and dual air inlet. Present day USAF and RAF suits have single air inlet serving leg and single abdominal bladder. Pneumatic lever suit: Bladder systems consisting of narrow-bore tubes passing down each side of the body from the low thoracic region to the ankle; inflated bladders applied tension to legs and abdomen through interwoven ribbons using capstan principle; 2.2 psi/G pressure applied, starting with 2.0 psi at 2 G.</td>
<td>1.4 – 1.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water immersion</td>
<td>Mayo bath: Subject immersed in water to third rib level</td>
<td>1.5 G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G capsule: Total immersion</td>
<td>1.7 G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Nicholson and Franks, 1966)
To counter +G acceleration, custom-molded contour couches have been developed and utilized in space flight to provide a body posture with inclination of the head, trunk, thighs, and legs that combines optimum tolerance with useful performance (Clark et al., 1959).

For the -G vector, the “Ames system” is available which incorporates a posterior molded couch with frontal and head support (Vykukal et al., 1962). Seats with raschel nylon net as the primary support surfaces have been developed. These provide good support up to +16.5 G_x but demonstrate an undesirable rebound under severe vibration and impact acceleration (Peterson, 1964).

The possibilities of partial or total water immersion as a protective aid have been explored with some success (Wood et al., 1946; Gray & Webb, 1960, 1961) with exposures to +31 G_z for 5 seconds. Figure 4-31 shows the protection given against the effects of transverse acceleration (G_x) when the subject is immersed in water. Curves are also shown for subjects protected by optimal support and positioning.

Performance Under Sustained Acceleration

Vision

Some of the basic visual responses have already been examined. This section is concerned more with the ability to perform specific activities.

Visual Reaction Time. The majority of workers have found a prolongation in simple reaction time on exposure to severe but tolerable acceleration (Canfield et al., 1949; Brown & Burke, 1957; Frankenhaeuser, 1958; Chambers & Hitchcock, 1963). A typical response time to red signal lights is shown in figure 4-32 (Kaehler & Meehan, 1960). The two curves show mean response times (the time from appearance of a red signal light to the movement of the subject’s hand from his lap) for five male college students, 20 to 25 years old, exposed to transverse accelerations. The solid line in the figure shows the combined response times for both right and left hand operation in more than 900 (+G_x) exposures up to +8 G_x. The dashed line shows the combined response times for both right and left hand operation in more than 500 (-G_x) exposures up to -4 G_x. The times required to reach and operate a horizontal lever, a toggle switch, and a pushbutton were longer as the accelerations increased, and variable times were recorded for left and right hand operation. Still longer times were needed for adjusting a rotating knob and a vertical “trim” wheel.

Reading Tasks. In a study by Warwick and Lund (1946), 24 percent of dial readings were erroneous at +3 G z as compared with 18 percent at 1 1/2 G z and 0 percent at 1 G. The response under acceleration varies with luminance, as previously noted. This variation in response is reflected in dial reading, as shown in figure 4-33 (White & Riley, 1958).
Figure 4-31. Protection against transverse (+Gx) acceleration afforded by water immersion, net support, and contour couch. (Bondurant et al., 1958b)

Figure 4-32. Visual reaction time to red signal lights for subjects exposed to +Gx acceleration. (After Kaehler & Meehan, 1960)
Sustained Linear Acceleration

Body Motion

Gross body motion is progressively impaired with increasing acceleration as indicated below (Code et al., 1945).

+2 $G_x$: Walking and movement along a ladder against acceleration very difficult.

+3 $G_x$: Walking, crawling, and movement along a ladder against acceleration impossible; unaided escape from vehicle impossible; parachute donning time increased from 17 to 75 seconds.

+4 $G_x$: Movement at right angles to acceleration vector impossible.

+5 $G_x$: Difficult to hold feet forward on rudder pedals.

+6 to +7 $G_x$: Extremely difficult to reach face curtain ejection seat firing mechanisms (Christie, 1961).

+8 $G_x$: Arms, legs, and body cannot be lifted.

+9 $G_x$: Unsupported head cannot be lifted although use of counterweighted headgear permits motion up to +12 $G_x$.

+25 $G_x$: Hand and wrist movement still possible (Collins et al., 1958).
Control and Tracking

Control maneuvers involving gross motions of limbs are not practicable above 3 to 4 G, and become impossible, as noted above, as acceleration increases. Movement of hand controls is impaired relatively little, however, at high accelerations. The general characteristics of side-arm controllers and the general response to tracking task are shown in figures 4-34 through 4-42.

Higher Mental Function

Relatively little information is available on higher mental function. Increased time is required to complete multiplication tests at +3 G\(z\) for 2 to 10 minutes as compared with performance without imposed acceleration (Frankenhaeuser, 1958). A decrement in color-naming has been observed during 1-minute trials at +3 G\(z\), although no decrement was noted in arithmetic ability, number ranking, and word separation tests in the same series (Wilson et al., 1951). According to Chambers (1963), repetitive memorization of a portion of a sequence of random numbers was satisfactorily undertaken at +5 G\(x\) but the subjects involved stated that the concentration required at +5 G\(x\) was much greater than at 1 G. Chambers also found in the same series of experiments that immediate memory was unaffected to +5 G\(x\) but impaired at +7 G\(x\) and above.

![Figure 4-34. Four types of right hand, side-arm controllers. Under acceleration each responds differently. Pilot performance is influenced by both acceleration and type of control stick. (Chambers & Hitchcock, 1963)](image-url)
Figure 4-35. Mean pilot efficiency scores using various side-arm controllers in different acceleration fields. (After Chambers, 1961)

Figure 4-36. Mean pilot ratings of vehicle controllability with different side-arm controllers. (After Chambers, 1961)
Figure 4-37. Roll error scores for pilots performing tracking task in differing acceleration fields, using differing controllers. (After Chambers, 1961)

Figure 4-38. Mean tracking efficiency scores, influenced by type of controller, amount of damping and cross coupling, and acceleration vector. (After Chambers & Hitchcock, 1963)
Figure 4-39. Mean integrated error in tracking display varying in x-axis, as a function of increased acceleration and various timelag constants. Error is caused by both changing timelag constants and acceleration. (After Kaehler, 1961)

Figure 4-40. Tracking with side-arm controllers; effect of changing pilot task. (After Creer et al., 1962)
Figure 4-41. Effect of high sustained $+G_z$ and $-G_x$ acceleration on root-mean-square tracking error. (After Creer, 1966)

Figure 4-42. Tracking performance decrement, using 3.5 mm target in dual pursuit task, in two subjects exposed to $-16G_x$ acceleration profile simulating reentry. (After Clarke et al., 1959)
References


Bondurant, S., Clarke, N. P., Blanchard, W. G., Miller, H., Hessberg, R. R., & Hiatt, E. P. Human tolerance to some of the accelerations anticipated in space flight. USAF Armed Forces Medical Journal, 1958, 9, 1093. (a)


Bryan, A. C., & MacNamara, W. D. The effect of acceleration on the distribution of pulmonary blood flow. RCAF SAM Rept. 64-RD-8, Institute of Aviation Medicine, Royal Canadian Air Force, 1964.

Canfield, A. A., Comrey, A. L., & Wilson, R. C. A study of reaction time to light and sound as related to positive radial acceleration. Journal of Aviation Medicine, 1949, 20, 350.


Cochran, L. B., Gard, P. B., & Norsworthy, M. E. Variation in human G tolerance to positive acceleration. SAM Rept. 001-059.02.10, Naval School of Aviation Medicine, Pensacola, Florida, 1954.


Fraser, T. M. Human response to sustained acceleration. NASA SP-103, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C., 1966.


Leverett, S. D. Biodynamics. USAF SAM Medical Services Digest, 1968, 19, 23.


Stauffer, F., & Errobo-Knudsen, E. O. Positive acceleration and urine output. SAM Rept. NM 001.059.02.04, Naval School of Aviation Medicine, Pensacola, Florida, 1953.


Warwick, M. J., & Lund, D. W. Effect of moderate positive acceleration on ability to read aircraft-type instrument dials. WADC-MR-694-10, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, 1946.


CHAPTER 5
ROTARY ACCELERATION

by
T. Morris Fraser, M. Sc., M.D.
University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, Canada

Rotary acceleration is defined as the acceleration which exists during angular motion when the axis of motion passes through some part of the body. Consequently, it is a manifestation of angular acceleration, and is always present during steady state spinning or tumbling, even when the angular velocity is constant. The problems related to the acceleration environment of rotating chambers, rooms, tables, and short radius centrifuges in which the axis of rotation is not through the body are not considered here. These are discussed in chapter 12, The Vestibular System.

Rotary acceleration was first noted to be a problem in the tumbling and spinning that occurred during the deployment of early aircraft ejection seats, particularly during ejection at relatively high speeds. In the ejection situation, the problem is more than that of simple tumbling or spinning, since the motion may occur within a decelerative G-field, which, for short durations, may reach a peak or plateau of as much as 50 G. In a space vehicle, or during extravehicular activity, in the null gravity state, problems can arise from simple tumbling or spinning, following imparted motion by, for example, failure of a reaction control system, such as in Gemini 8 where severe tumbling was experienced.

While a specific terminology for rotary acceleration has been suggested (Pesman, 1968), it is more common to use the G terminology defined in chapter 6, Impact, along with specification of the axis of rotation, where x refers to rolling, y to pitching, and z to yawing or spinning. The term tumbling is often used in place of pitching and rolling.

Subjective Reactions and Tolerance

Subjective reactions to rotary acceleration vary with the frequency, axis, and duration of rotation. Individual variability in response is marked. Vertigo, as

Reviewed by Randall M. Chambers, Ph.D., NASA Langley Research Center.

191
manifest subjectively by dizziness, sometimes nausea, and occasionally vomiting, is a common feature of the initial and terminal phases of acceleration to and deceleration from constant angular velocity, but normally ceases after the motion has reached constant velocity, provided head movement is limited. In some individuals, it recurs during prolonged exposure. Vertigo and its associated phenomena are considered in chapter 12.

**Tolerance**

From the few reports available, tolerance to rotary acceleration does not seem to be a rectilinear function of rotation rate. Most subjects, without prior experience, can tolerate rotation rates up to 6 rpm in any axis or combination of axes. Most subjects cannot initially tolerate rotation rates in the region of 12 to 30 rpm and rapidly become sick and disoriented above 6 rpm unless carefully prepared by a graduated program of exposure (Fletcher, 1968). On the other hand, rotation rates of 60 rpm for up to 3 or 4 minutes around the y-axis (pitch) and around the z-axis (spin) have been described by subjects as being not only tolerable but pleasant (Weiss et al., 1954; Urschell & Hood, 1966). Intolerability becomes manifest again at about 80 rpm in the pitch mode and at about 90 to 100 rpm in the spin mode, although McCabe (1960) relates that one of the Ice Capades skating stars spins around the z-axis for 12 seconds at 420 rpm without manifest discomfort. In the pitch axis, with the center of rotation at the heart level, symptoms of negative acceleration (-Gz) are demonstrated at about 80 rpm and are tolerable for only a few seconds. Some effects of positive acceleration (+Gz), namely numbness and pressure in the legs, are also observed but develop slowly, with pain being evident at about 90 rpm. No confusion or loss of consciousness is found, but in some subjects disorientation, headache, nausea, or mental depression are noted for several minutes after a few minutes of exposure (Weiss et al., 1954). With rotation in the spin mode, when the head and trunk are inclined forward out of the z-axis, rotation becomes close to limiting at 60 rpm for 4 minutes, although some motivated subjects have endured 90 rpm in the same mode (Courts, 1966). Except for unduly susceptible subjects, tolerance tends to improve with exposure. Long duration runs in the pitch mode have been endured for up to about 60 minutes at 6 rpm in selected subjects (Fletcher, 1968).

The center of rotation within the body determines, to a considerable extent, the nature of the resulting effects, as will be examined in connection with the discussion of physiological mechanisms. Figure 5-1 illustrates the general human tolerance to tumbling in the pitch plane with centers of rotation at the heart level and at the level of the iliac crest. On the basis of extrapolated data from dogs, Weiss and coworkers (1954) calculate that unconsciousness from circulatory effects alone would occur in man after 3 to 10 seconds at 160 rpm with the center of rotation at the heart and at 180 rpm with the center of rotation at the iliac crest.

Tolerance to tumbling in the presence of a superimposed G field is shown in figure 5-2.
Figure 5–1. Suggested human tolerance to rotation around pitch axis with no superimposed deceleration field (a) with center of rotation at the heart; (b) with center of rotation at the iliac crest. (After Weiss et al., 1954)

Figure 5–2. Estimate of human tolerance to constant rotation around the pitch axis with a G field decaying from 35 to 15 G. (After Edelberg, 1961)
Tolerance to $G_z$ 100 percent gradient spin is very closely related to tolerance to rotary acceleration, in that in the former the axis of rotation is tangent to the crown of the head. Figures 5-3 and 5-4 illustrate human tolerance to this form of rotary acceleration.

Figure 5–3. Mean tolerance to 100% $+G_z$ gradient spin for seven untrained subjects rotating around x-axis with center of rotation tangential to the head. The two isolated points represent tolerance times of a subject who utilized physiological countermeasures to increase his tolerance. His values are not included in the means. (After Piemme et al., 1966)

Figure 5–4. Semilogarithmic plot of mean tolerance time vs acceleration at the feet during exposure to $+G_z$ 100% spin around the x-axis with center of rotation tangential to the head. (After Piemme et al., 1966)
Pain and discomfort are not features of slow rotation but begin to be manifest at about 80 rpm in the pitch and roll axes, largely because of fluid swelling of tissues from the imposed +G fields (Weiss et al., 1954). Even in the z-axis at these rotation rates, discomfort can be severe in the seated posture because of the hydrostatic gradient that develops along the forearms and thighs (Urschell & Hood, 1966).

Perception

The threshold of perception, or awareness, for rotary acceleration is in fact a measure of vestibular sensitivity, but warrants brief consideration here. Using a one-degree-of-freedom simulator that could produce angular accelerations within narrow limits of error, Clark and Steward (1969) examined perception thresholds in the yaw axis in the erect seated position at the center of rotation with head fixed. Figure 5-5 shows the distribution of thresholds in 53 normal male subjects under these conditions.

Table 5-1, from a review by Clark (1967), details the findings of 25 studies on perception of angular acceleration in man. Clark points out that in evaluating the findings in the table, one must bear in mind the miscellany of definitions of threshold, the variation in rotation devices, and psychophysical methods. In general, the results indicate an extreme sensitivity to angular acceleration with perception thresholds varying from 0.035°/sec² to 8.2°/sec².

The relationship between a rotational input and a subjective or objective (for example, nystagmus) output may be so tenuous that time must elapse before the threshold of response is reached. Figure 5-6 indicates the latency time for perception of angular acceleration about the yaw axis, as also do figures 5-7 and 5-8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERCEPTION OF ROTATION (deg/sec²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD DEV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANGE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5-5. Distribution of thresholds for perception of angular acceleration for 53 normal men. (After Clark & Stewart, 1969)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author and Date</th>
<th>Van Wulffen Palthe(^5) 1922</th>
<th>Dodge(^5) 1923</th>
<th>Tumarkin(^6) 1937</th>
<th>Christian(^5) 1939</th>
<th>Christian(^5) 1939</th>
<th>Clark, Graybiel and MacCorquodale(^8) 1948</th>
<th>Clark, Graybiel and MacCorquodale(^7) 1948</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>~2°/sec(^2)</td>
<td>1°-2°/sec</td>
<td>0.2°/sec(^2)</td>
<td>0.13°-0.33°/sec(^2)</td>
<td>0.13°-2.0°/sec(^2)</td>
<td>~18° bank</td>
<td>~0.2°/sec(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator response</td>
<td>a) Perceptual mode</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Oculary illision</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Oculary illision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Method of response</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Yes-No</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canals stimulated</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head position</td>
<td>Erect</td>
<td>Erect (?)</td>
<td>Erect</td>
<td>Erect (?)</td>
<td>Erect (?)</td>
<td>Erect in cockpit</td>
<td>Erect in cockpit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulus</td>
<td>a) Duration</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>&quot;Sudden onset&quot;</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>9 - 14 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Determination of angular acceleration</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed (?)</td>
<td>Not determined</td>
<td>Computed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Method of presentation</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>5(?)</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjects</td>
<td>Rotation device</td>
<td>Spiker aircraft</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotation in water</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>SNJ-6 aircraft</td>
<td>SNJ-6 aircraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of threshold</td>
<td>50% above chance report</td>
<td>50% point</td>
<td>Point at which movement perceived</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>50% level corrected for guessing</td>
<td>50% above chance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-1 (Continued)
Thresholds for the Perception of Stimulation by Angular Acceleration in Man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author and Date</th>
<th>Graybiel, Kerr and Bartley\textsuperscript{25} 1948</th>
<th>Groen and Jongkees\textsuperscript{27} 1948</th>
<th>Groen and Jongkees\textsuperscript{27} 1948</th>
<th>MacCormac\textsuperscript{41} 1948</th>
<th>de Vries\textsuperscript{60} 1949</th>
<th>Hallpike, Hood and Byford\textsuperscript{35} 1952</th>
<th>Hallpike and Hood\textsuperscript{34} 1953</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Threshold</strong></td>
<td>$\sim 0.12^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.28^\circ$ - $2.0^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.18^\circ$ - $0.25^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.10^\circ$ - $0.15^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.9^\circ$ - $4.0^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.2^\circ$ - $1.0^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
<td>$0.2^\circ$ - $0.7^\circ$/sec$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator response</td>
<td>Oculogyral illusion</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation of aircraft</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Oculogyral illusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Perceptual mode</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Yes - No</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Forced-choice (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Canals stimulated</strong></td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Head position</strong></td>
<td>$20^\circ$ - $25^\circ$ forward</td>
<td>Head forward</td>
<td>Head forward</td>
<td>Erect in cockpit</td>
<td>Head 30$^\circ$ forward</td>
<td>Head 30$^\circ$ forward</td>
<td>Head 30$^\circ$ forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stimulus</strong></td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>$\sim 30$ sec</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>$0.1$ - $1.0$ sec</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Duration</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed average</td>
<td>Computed from oscillograph</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Determination of angular acceleration</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) Method of presentation</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjects</strong></td>
<td>Centrifuge</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Torsion swing</td>
<td>SNJ-6 aircraft</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rotation device</strong></td>
<td>50% above chance level on frequency ogive</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Formula including damping of cupula-endolymph system</td>
<td>50% above chance identification</td>
<td>Number of stimuli perceived correctly for guessing</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Definition of threshold</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author and Date</td>
<td>Halpke and Hood* 1953</td>
<td>Hilding 1953</td>
<td>deVries and Schierback 1953</td>
<td>Sadoff, Matteson and Havill 1955</td>
<td>Mann and Ray 1956</td>
<td>Montandon and Russback 1956</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>0.6° - 2.0°/sec²</td>
<td>0.25° - 3.0°/sec²</td>
<td>0.9° - 1.7°/sec²</td>
<td>5.3° - 8.2°/sec²</td>
<td>0.035°-0.13°/sec²</td>
<td>0.5° - 1.0°/sec²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator response</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Pitch-up of simulator</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Perceptual mode</td>
<td>Forced-choice (?)</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Yes - No</td>
<td>Yes - No</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice (?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Method of response</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canals stimulated</td>
<td>Head 30° forward</td>
<td>Head 30° forward</td>
<td>Head 30° forward</td>
<td>Head erect</td>
<td>Head about 15° forward</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head position</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Head erect</td>
<td>Head about 15° forward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Duration</td>
<td>15 - 150 sec</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>0.4 sec</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>4 - 30 sec</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Determination of angular acceleration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) Method of presentation</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Increasing steps of angular acceleration</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Ramp acceleration</td>
<td>Up &amp; down time varied</td>
<td>&quot;Liminal&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjects</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation device</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Link trainer</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of threshold</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>75% point with deVries' correction for guessing</td>
<td>Point on graph of increasing acceleration corrected for RT</td>
<td>75% correct identification</td>
<td>75% correct identification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5–1 (Continued)

Thresholds for the Perception of Stimulation by Angular Acceleration in Man
Table 5–1 (Continued)

Thresholds for the Perception of Stimulation by Angular Acceleration in Man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author and Date</th>
<th>Roggeveen and Nijhoff&lt;sup&gt;54&lt;/sup&gt; 1956</th>
<th>Roggeveen and Nijhoff&lt;sup&gt;54&lt;/sup&gt; 1956</th>
<th>Clark and Stewart&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt; 1962</th>
<th>Von Diringshofen, Kessel and Ousyka&lt;sup&gt;12&lt;/sup&gt; 1954</th>
<th>Miery&lt;sup&gt;47&lt;/sup&gt; 1965</th>
<th>Miery&lt;sup&gt;47&lt;/sup&gt; 1969</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>1.3°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.8°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.12°-0.17°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.26°-1.0°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.1°-0.2°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.5°/sec&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator response</td>
<td>Oculogyral illusion</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Perceptual mode</td>
<td>Yes - No</td>
<td>Yes - No</td>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
<td>Forced-choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Method of response</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
<td>Horizontal and vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canals stimulated</td>
<td>Head 30° forward</td>
<td>Head 30° forward</td>
<td>Head erect in cockpit</td>
<td>&quot;Slightly bent forward&quot;</td>
<td>Head erect</td>
<td>Nose down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head position</td>
<td>0.8 sec</td>
<td>0.8 sec</td>
<td>10 sec</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>Varied</td>
<td>Varied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulus</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Angular accelerometer</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
<td>Computed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Duration</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Ramp acceleration</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
<td>Constant stimuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Determination of angular acceleration</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) Method of presentation</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Rotating chair</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjects</td>
<td>50% correct indication corrected for guessing</td>
<td>50% correct indication corrected for guessing</td>
<td>75% correct identification</td>
<td>Point at which movement perceived for RT</td>
<td>75% correct identification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation device</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of threshold</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
<td>Flight simulator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>54</sup>See original references as listed in Aerospace Medicine, May 1967. (Clark, 1967)
Figure 5–6. Thresholds for sensing rotation about z- and x-axis; at left, latency times for perception of angular acceleration about z-axis; at right, about x-axis. Note scale change of angular acceleration.
Figure 5–7. Perception of angular acceleration: Time required to judge direction of rotation about yaw axis as a function of angular acceleration. Solid points indicate time to make judgments that are correct 75% of the time; open points = time to make judgments, correct or incorrect. (After Chambers (1964), adapted from others)

Figure 5–8. Perception of angular acceleration. Correct direction-of-rotation judgments, expressed as percent of total, are plotted as a function of angular rotation (continuous line); 75% correct point is considered threshold. Also included (dashed line) is plot of 75% correct response from figure 5-7. (After Chambers, 1964, from data of others)
Performance During Rotary Acceleration

Relatively few studies have been conducted to determine performance ability during rotary acceleration, that is, with the axis of rotation passing through the body, although numerous investigations have been conducted in rotating rooms and short radius centrifuges. Much of the work on performance has been done in connection with investigation of the vestibular system and is presented in that chapter.

Visual Acuity

During natural turning movements, vestibular and visual sensory inflow act synergistically to maintain clear vision. Guedry (1968) measured visual acuity during rotary acceleration around the z-axis in seated subjects, with particular reference to the presence and intensity of concurrent nystagmus. The results are shown in figure 5-9. Rate of recovery of visual acuity is related to the magnitude of the preceding stimulus, the stronger stimuli requiring longer recovery times. In further testing, subjects were decelerated from an angular velocity of $-180^\circ$/sec through 0 to $+180^\circ$/sec at rates of $10^\circ$/sec, $15^\circ$/sec, or $30^\circ$/sec for 18, 12, or 6 seconds, respectively, and visual acuity examined throughout the process. Results are shown in figure 5-10, which indicates the buildup of nystagmus and loss of visual detail during each of the three stimuli, as well as the decline of nystagmus and restoration of visual detail following each stimulus. Considerable individual difference was found among the 18 subjects, as indicated in figure 5-11.

![Figure 5-9. Decline of nystagmus and recovery of visual acuity following 10, 15, and $30^\circ$/sec$^2$ stimuli. Values are measures of means taken in initial acceleration and final deceleration of each trial. (After Guedry, 1968)](image)
Figure 5–10. Loss of recovery of visual acuity during and after nystagmus from stimuli of different magnitudes. Blank areas were inserted in 15°/sec² and 30°/sec² results to compensate for differences in duration of stimuli and to aid in visual comparison of results. Dots are nystagmus; solid lines are visual measures; arrow marks end of stimulus. (After Guedry, 1968)

Figure 5–11. Number of subjects seeing each set of visual targets during each second of three different intensities of acceleration stimulus (10, 15, and 30°/sec²) from -180°/sec through zero to +180°/sec. (After Guedry, 1968)
Operational Tasks

Using the Rotational Flight Simulator (RFS) of the U. S. Air Force School of Aerospace Medicine, an air-bearing vehicle capable of simulating various rotational profiles, Lim and Fletcher (cited in Rothe et al., 1967) investigated the time required for subjects to restore the simulator to a preset position by means of a joystick after exposure to various rotations. The profiles used were a "slow random" rotation of 4 ± 2 rpm and a "fast random" rotation of 12 ± 4 rpm for periods of 2, 4, 8, 16, and 30 minutes. Representative results from one subject are shown in figure 5-12. Data from three subjects indicate they had different abilities in righting the RFS, that fast improvement occurred with practice, and that righting time was increased with duration of tumbling and increase of "randomness."

Figure 5-12. Performance of control task during slow and fast random rotation; (A) time required in successive trials to bring back RFS to upright position from initial position; (B) righting time plotted as a function of duration of random tumbling at a slow rate; (C) righting time plotted as a function of duration of random tumbling at a fast rate. (After Lim & Fletcher, cited in Rothe et al., 1967)
It may be that a rotation rate of 6 to 12 rpm is more demanding than some higher rotations, since much higher rotations have been endured with relatively little performance decrement. Using the NASA Multi-axis Test Facility, Useller and Algranti (1963) investigated the ability of pilots to determine and apply corrective torques induced at rates up to 70 rpm. Performance error was determined as a percentage of the total time during which incorrect torque was applied. Error ranged from 6.5 percent to 18 percent, depending on the individual, and was independent of the rate of rotation.

In another form of operational performance task, Weiss and his colleagues (1954) examined the ability of subjects to release a lapbelt (5-lb spring tension) and pull a ripcord (20-lb spring tension) while being exposed to rotations around the y-axis (pitch) of up to 100 rpm with the center of rotation at the heart level, and up to 75 rpm with the center at the iliac crest, or hip. Results are shown in table 5-2. A slight increase in reaction time is observed during the constant speed portion of the run and during the "deceleration" phase. The effect of the deceleration phase is accentuated by requiring the subject to reach out and actuate a toggle switch before releasing the lapbelt. Results of this added test are shown in table 5-3.

Numerical Processing and Coding

Using a sophisticated All-Altitude Air-Bearing Research and Training Simulator (ARTS), Fletcher (1968) examined numerical processing performance during rotations of 3 to 24 rpm in eight individual axes. Tests involved simple arithmetic tasks conducted in four modes: auditory (with verbal response), visual (with remote control of presentation by subject), manipulatory (with digital manipulation of cards by subject), and "flying" (with digital manipulation of cards and instructions to look up and focus on a distant object as though flying, between each numerical task). Task response was measured as time to completion. Table 5-4 indicates overall results of the procedure. Table 5-5 indicates the rank order of speed of performance in the four modes at 3 rpm in the pitch axis, and the rank order of all tasks in eight rotational modes at 3 rpm.

The improved performance at higher rotation rates is shown by the work of Weiss and coworkers (1954) who used coded lights, coded sounds, and verbally presented arithmetic problems as measures of performance. Results of tests during rotation in the pitch axis at about 100 rpm with center of rotation at heart level or 75 rpm at the level of the iliac crest showed "virtually no errors attributable to spinning, and no increase in the time required to answer. Answers to simple arithmetic problems were invariably correct and no subjective confusion was reported."

Physiological Effects of Rotary Acceleration

The primary factor involved in the production of physiological change during rotary acceleration, as with other forms of sustained acceleration, is
the development of a hydrostatic pressure head along the vector of acceleration (see chapter 4, *Sustained Linear Acceleration*). In rotary acceleration, however, with the axis of rotation passing through the body, two opposite vectors exist at the same time, their intensities being dependent on the site of the axis. In addition, rotation has a highly characteristic effect on the vestibular system (see chapter 12).

Table 5-2

**Time Required for Release of Lapbelt and Parachute Ripcord During Various Phases of Rotation Around the Pitch Axis at 100 rpm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Before Spin</th>
<th>During Steady Spin</th>
<th>During Deceleration</th>
<th>After Spin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R.L.</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.E.</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.N.</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.M.</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.R.</td>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.S.</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.S.</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVERAGE</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>1.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time from Lapbelt to Ripcord Pull (sec)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R.L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVERAGE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Weiss et al., 1954)

**Cardiovascular—Theoretical Considerations**

As noted above, the site of the center of rotation is critical in determining physiological effects. A centrifugal force directed away from the heart produces
Table 5–3
Time (sec) Required to Actuate a Switch at Arm’s Length in Front of Chest During Various Phases of Rotation at 100 rpm Around the Pitch Axis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Before Spin</th>
<th>During Steady Spin</th>
<th>During Deceleration</th>
<th>After Spin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R.L.</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>Missed</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>1.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.E.</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.N.</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.M.</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.R.</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.S.</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.S.</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVERAGE</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Discounting miss)

(After Weiss et al., 1954)

Table 5–4
Performance of Visual, Auditory, and Manipulatory Tasks During Rotation Around Various Axes

| Number of subjects: | 17 |
| Number of test runs: | 78 |

Modes tested: Pitch
- Pitch forward
- Roll
- Yaw
- Pitch + roll
- Roll + yaw
- Pitch + yaw
- Pitch + roll + yaw
- Random

Range: 3 – 24 rpm

Typical results: A 21% performance decrement in four men exposed to 6-rpm rotation in random axes while performing visual, auditory, and manipulating tasks

(After Fletcher, 1968)
an increment of pressure in both the venous and arterial sides of the circulatory system. Flow would continue unabated were it not for the highly distensible venous bed. When pooling in this bed is sufficient, the return of blood to the heart will be inadequate and cardiac output will fall. If this fall produces a pressure drop in the cerebral circulation greater than the increase in hydrostatic pressure occasioned by the rotation, cerebral hypoxia will ensue. When the center of rotation is moved towards the feet, the hydrostatic column to the foot is shortened and a lesser degree of pooling can be expected. Conversely, of course, the negative acceleration (-Gz) effects on the cerebral circulation can be expected to increase. Movement of the center of rotation toward the head will increase the positive acceleration (+Gz) effects. Thus, final effects are governed by both the rate of rotation and the position of the center of rotation (Edelberg et al., 1954).

Figure 5-13 is a model of hydrostatic pressure variation secondary to rotation in the pitch axis perpendicular to the Earth's gravitational field for a man 67 inches tall. The point of hydrostatic indifference is considered here to be at the level of the diaphragm.

| Table 5-5 |
| Performance Decrement in Four Simple Numeric Processing Tasks |

| Rank order for four tasks at 3 rpm (pitch) |
| 1. Auditory input |
| 2. Simulated visual flying task |
| 3. Visual input |
| 4. Simulated manipulation flying task |

NOTES: Largest increase in time taken (auditory): 3.9 sec  
Smallest increase in time taken (manipulation): 2.5 sec  
Optimum time for test (0 rpm): 20.6 sec  
Change: 12% to 19%

| Rank order of eight rotational modes at 3 rpm (all tasks) |
| 1. Random |
| 2. Roll + yaw |
| 3. Pitch |
| 4. Roll + pitch |
| 5. Yaw |
| 6. Roll |
| 7. Roll + pitch + yaw |
| 8. Pitch + yaw |

NOTES: Largest increase in time taken (random): 4.3 sec  
Smallest increase in time taken (pitch and yaw): 2.6 sec  
Optimum time for test (0 rpm): 20.6 sec  
Change: 12% to 21%

(After Fletcher, 1968)
Figure 5-13. Simplified model of hydrostatic pressure variation secondary to rotation in pitch axis. In A, B, E, and F are indicated expected mean arterial pressures (A and E) and venous pressures (B and F) in the neck, diaphragm, and feet levels when subject is at 90° and 270° positions. C and D illustrate calculation of hydrostatic pressure components from anatomical considerations and their sinusoidal variations. In G is shown expected hydrostatic pressure variation in head and feet. Circled sine wave refers to body position where maximum point corresponds to the head-up position and minimum point to head-down position. Maximum hydrostatic pressure at foot area lags head-up position by angle θ since subject is in sitting position. MAP = mean arterial pressure; MVP = mean venous pressure; 5 and 2 are hypothetical pressure drops along arterial and venous vessels, respectively. (After Lim & Fletcher; cited in Rothe et al., 1967)
Cardiovascular Response to Rapid (70 to > 100 rpm) Rotation

Figures 5-14 and 5-15 illustrate some of the cardiovascular findings in human subjects rotated around the z-axis (yaw) with the center of rotation at the heart or the hips. The electrocardiogram (ECG) exhibits changes in the QRS and T vectors, which are probably the result of anatomical motion of the heart within the chest, as well as transient extrasystoles (abnormal beats). Some of these results are delineated in Table 5-6. Table 5-7, from the work of Urschell and Hood (1966), shows further aspects of change in blood pressure and heart rate.

![Figure 5-14. Effect on human heart rate, respiration rate, pulse pressure, blood pressure of spinning around z-axis at 106 rpm with center of rotation at the heart. (After Weiss et al., 1954)](image)

![Figure 5-15. Mean arterial blood pressures at eye level, carotid sinus, and aortic arch during rotation around z-axis at 106 rpm with center of rotation at the heart (upper figure); and at 72 rpm with center of rotation at the iliac crest (lower figure). (After Weiss et al., 1954)](image)
Table 5-6
ECG Changes Associated with Rotation Around the Pitch Axis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Center of Rotation at Heart (96–118 rpm)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECG Component</td>
<td>No. of Subjects</td>
<td>Average Starting Values and SE</td>
<td>Average Change from Starting Values and SE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Before Tumbling</td>
<td>During Tumbling (96–118 rpm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate (bpm)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>83.0 ±4.2</td>
<td>10.0 ±2.7**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P–R interval (sec)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.18 ±0.011</td>
<td>−0.01 ±0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q–T interval (sec)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.40 ±0.007</td>
<td>0.03 ±0.007**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QRS–T angle (degrees)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14.1 ±3.06</td>
<td>−4.6 ±3.18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Center of Rotation at Iliac Crest (75–93 rpm)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECG Component</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>89.0 ±5.6</td>
<td>−22.0 ±3.1**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate (bpm)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.17 ±0.012</td>
<td>0.0 ±0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P–R interval (sec)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.41 ±0.017</td>
<td>−0.06 ±0.012**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q–T interval (sec)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>22.1 ±8.96</td>
<td>6.0 ±2.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QRS–T angle (degrees)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Significant at the 0.05 level.  **Significant at the 0.01 level.  (After Weiss et al., 1954)

Cardiovascular Response to Slow (1 to 15 rpm) Rotation

Lim and Fletcher (cited in Rothe et al., 1967) examined the heart rate response to relatively slow rotation with the center of rotation at heart level. They recognized three different types of response in 82 exposures studied. Type I response, where the heart rate from cycle to cycle shows a minimum of scatter, is illustrated in figure 5-16. Superimposed is a sine wave representing the subject body position, 90° being head-up and 270° head-down. It will be noted that heart rate "tracks" the body position curve with increase in the head-up position and decrease in the head-down position. Type I response was observed in all but the very slow and very fast rates of rotation. The maximum heart rate, however, lags the 90° position, and the lag increases as the rotation rate increases. Type II response, with more scatter evident, is found at very low rates (1 to 2 rpm), and is shown in figure 5-17. Type III response, in which little or no correlation is observed between heart rate and body position, is found in those situations where the half cycle period of the rotational rate approaches the maximum heart period. The response is illustrated in figure 5-18. Lim and Fletcher suggest that the type III response may be due to the prolonged time constant of the parasympathetic response as compared with the sympathetic, such that the heart is still under vagal control when the subject comes up to and passes through the head-up position.
Table 5–7
Heart Rate and Blood Pressure Changes at End of Constant Velocity Phase
of Exposure (3 min) to Rotation (120 rpm) in the Roll Axis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pulse</th>
<th>Systolic Pressure</th>
<th>Diastolic Pressure</th>
<th>Mean Pressure</th>
<th>Pulse Pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tu</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>+13</td>
<td>+18</td>
<td>+13</td>
<td>- 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>+74</td>
<td>-20</td>
<td>+ 6</td>
<td>- 8</td>
<td>-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>+66</td>
<td>-34</td>
<td>-16</td>
<td>-18</td>
<td>-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>+67</td>
<td>-45</td>
<td>-20</td>
<td>-24</td>
<td>-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Te</td>
<td>+70</td>
<td>-55</td>
<td>- 4</td>
<td>-22</td>
<td>-51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means</td>
<td>+63±6</td>
<td>-28±12</td>
<td>-3±7</td>
<td>-12±7</td>
<td>-23±8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p &lt; 0.001</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fast Onset

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Pulse</th>
<th>Systolic Pressure</th>
<th>Diastolic Pressure</th>
<th>Mean Pressure</th>
<th>Pulse Pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tu</td>
<td>+62</td>
<td>-21</td>
<td>- 2</td>
<td>- 6</td>
<td>-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>+61</td>
<td>-54</td>
<td>-24</td>
<td>-30</td>
<td>-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>+30</td>
<td>-30</td>
<td>+ 1</td>
<td>-12</td>
<td>-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>+74</td>
<td>-43</td>
<td>-16</td>
<td>-23</td>
<td>-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Te</td>
<td>+76</td>
<td>-35</td>
<td>+ 1</td>
<td>- 6</td>
<td>-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means</td>
<td>+61±8</td>
<td>-37±5</td>
<td>-8±5</td>
<td>-15±5</td>
<td>-28±3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p &lt; 0.005</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p &lt; 0.005</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.01</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Urschell & Hood, 1966)

The cardiac rate tracking phenomenon no doubt reflects carotid sinus stimulus, with phase lags related to complex interrelationships of blood vessel wall impedance, blood fluid inertia, and reflex vasomotor responses. Blood pressure readings taken immediately before and after various runs of 3 minute duration on the roll and pitch axes are presented in table 5-8. No trend can be observed at the rates recorded in either systolic or diastolic levels.

For slow rotation, just as for fast rotation, changes occur in the form of the ECG as the axis of rotation changes (Rothe et al., 1967). The variation is different from one subject to another, but reproducible for the same subject. The changes are more pronounced in random axis rotation than in pure axis rotation. No irregularities or arrhythmias have been observed during slow rotation.
Cardiovascular Response to $G_z$ 100 Percent Gradient Spin

While the distribution of vascular pressures is somewhat different during 100 percent gradient $G_z$ spin as compared with rotary acceleration, it is markedly different from that found in long radius sustained acceleration, and is illustrated in figure 5-19. In high gradient spin, pressures in the head and neck
are little altered from normal while in low gradient configurations, central nervous system blood flow is maintained against a large head of pressure. The limitation to CNS blood flow in high gradient spin is not insufficient perfusion pressure but lowered cardiac output occasioned by insufficient venous return, although the impedance to venous return is, in fact, less in high gradient spin than in long arm configuration (Piemme et al., 1966).

![Graph](image)

**Figure 5-18.** Type III heart rate response to fast pitch rotation at 15 rpm: (A) heart rate response of 6 cycles averaged at each body position, (B) cycle to cycle heart rate variation. (After Lim & Fletcher, cited in Rothe et al., 1968)

Mean pulse rates for subjects undergoing 100 percent gradient Gz spin are presented in figure 5-20. At lower G levels, some increase in pulse rate is found with onset of acceleration but this rapidly subsides to control levels. At higher G levels, rates increase progressively to termination of the experiment. No arrhythmias or other cardiac irregularities have been observed (Piemme et al., 1966).

**Other Physiological Findings**

Apart from investigations of the cardiovascular and vestibular parameters noted above and in the chapter concerning the vestibular system (chapter 12), very little attention has been paid to other physiological effects of rotary acceleration. During high speed rotation in dogs, Edelberg and coworkers (1954) noted that at rates above 140 rpm with the center of rotation at the heart level,
respiration is inhibited. He attributes the apnea to pull on lung stretch receptors. When the center of rotation is moved tailward, however, respiration is maintained. In humans rotating at 106 rpm, respiration is still maintained, according to Weiss and coworkers (1954). Fletcher (1968) also notes that respiration, which tends to be rapid and shallow at 30 rpm, slows and becomes deeper at lower rotation rates. The subject in pitch rotation may, in fact, breathe synchronously with the inversion cycle.

Table 5-8
Blood Pressure Values Before and After Rotation in the Roll Axis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>RPM*</th>
<th>BP Reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.G.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.R.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.D.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.R.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-run</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-run</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*RPM - Revolutions per minute are midpoint rotational rate of class intervals.

**S - systolic; D - diastolic.

(Rothe, et al., 1967)
Figure 5–19. Physical pressures (mm Hg) in absence of compensatory vascular reflexes at each level of the body in high gradient vs low gradient acceleration. At the feet, in each of the two figures to the right, a 5 G pressure exists. The difference in pressures against which the heart must perfuse the central nervous system in each case amounts to little if any more than normal physiologic pressures in high gradient acceleration, as opposed to 100 or more mm Hg in the low gradient profile. (After Piemme et al., 1966)

Figure 5–20. Pulse rates of seven subjects as a function of duration of exposure to $+G_z$ 100% spin around the x-axis with center of rotation tangential to the head. Time zero identifies onset of 3 min plateau of constant angular velocity. Each point represents mean for all subject veins at each level. (After Piemme et al., 1966)
Pathological Effects of Rotary Acceleration

The pathological effects of rotary acceleration, that is, those resulting in injury, have been studied to a very slight extent in animals and observed occasionally in man. Table 5-9 presents a summary of postmortem findings in dogs after 1 minute exposures at 195 rpm in the pitch axis. In addition, frequent nasal, oral, and conjunctival hemorrhage have been observed in dogs, occasionally associated with rectal bleeding (Edelberg et al., 1954). Extrapolation of animal findings to man must always be done with caution, but it is reasonable to assume that similar effects might be expected.

Table 5-9
Summary of Results of Postmortem Examination of Eleven Dogs after Rotation Around the Pitch Axis at 195 rpm (one to five runs, 1 min each)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Positive Cases</th>
<th>Negative Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Macroscopic cerebral hemorrhage</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Microscopic cerebral hemorrhage</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperemic</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>Subendocardial hemorrhage</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Atelectasis</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperemia or edema</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscera</td>
<td>Hyperemia</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rectal hemorrhage</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After Edelberg et al., 1954)

Humans have not been exposed to the same intensity of exposure, but conjunctival petechiae (pinpoint bleeding into the white of the eye) have been found along with petechiae on the top of the foot. Figure 5-21 illustrates the occurrence of conjunctival hemorrhage at various rotation rates (Weiss et al., 1954). Urschell and Hood (1966) note that all their subjects, spun around the z-axis, developed petechiae on the hands and feet during their rotation at 120 rpm. One experimental subject, following a 4 minute exposure to 60 rpm, developed convulsions 3 hours later. These were attributed to a blood clot in the brain (cerebral embolus), although no other neurological findings were demonstrated (Urschell & Hood, 1966). The incident, although isolated, appears nevertheless to be significant.
Figure 5-21. Incidence of conjunctival hemorrhage during rotation at various rates around pitch axis. Note that time in ordinate refers to duration of exposure. (After Weiss et al., 1954)

References


Clark, B. Thresholds for the perception of angular acceleration in man. Aerospace Medicine, 1967, 38, 443-450.


Clark, B., & Stewart, J. D. Perception of angular acceleration about the yaw axis of a flight simulator: Thresholds and reaction latency for research pilots. Aerospace Medicine, 1962, 33, 1426-1432.


Guedry, F. E. Relations between vestibular nystagmus and visual performance. Aerospace Medicine, 1968, 39, 570-579.


Urschell, C. W., & Hood, W. B. Cardiovascular effects of rotation in the z-axis. Aerospace Medicine, 1966, 37, 254-256.


CHAPTER 6
IMPACT

by
Richard G. Snyder, Ph.D.
University of Michigan

The limiting factor of all methods of emergency escape and crash survival protection is the tolerance of the occupants to accelerative forces. Abrupt acceleration, deceleration, or impact is characterized by forces of very abrupt onset, short duration, and high magnitude. It is generally considered that impact involves the occurrence of forces of less than 0.2-second duration (Stapp, 1961b). Some abrupt impact conditions to which aerospace or aircrews may be exposed include astronaut pre-lift-off tower escape, lift-off abort, ejection seat or modular capsule firings, launch vehicle staging, escape device parachute deployment, flight instability, clear air turbulence, aircraft or aerospace vehicle crash landing, and capsule water or land touchdowns. In situations such as saw-toothed accelerations produced by successive rockets firing in multistage propulsion systems, in extreme turbulence, or in many crash landings where multiple contacts are made with trees or other objects, the occupants will be exposed to a series of separate impacts. The tolerances of the human component of the abruptly decelerated system are related to the elastic and tensile limits of the tissues involved, as well as to profound physiologic, psychologic, and metabolic effects.

Our current state of knowledge concerning human impact tolerances is very incomplete. While most human volunteer studies have been conducted on young healthy male subjects under rigidly controlled conditions with careful medical monitoring, they have been voluntarily terminated at levels below that of irreversible injury. No experimental impact data are available for females, children, or other segments of the population, and, due to the range of human variability, data derived from volunteer male subjects must be used with caution in other applications.

Animals have been used extensively to obtain physiological data at impact levels above those potentially injurious to the human volunteer. Cadavers offer a

Reviewed by Randall M. Chambers, Ph.D., NASA Langley Research Center
means of determining structural limits of tissues, but cannot provide the physiological information which must be obtained on living systems. Accidental free-falls have provided still another means of determining human tolerances to extreme impacts beyond those to which human volunteers may be subjected in the laboratory. Other estimates of impact tolerance are obtained from clinical studies of impact trauma and from reconstruction of automotive, aircraft, or space vehicle accidents. While both mathematical modeling and anthropomorphic dummies are used extensively as tools to provide predictions, particularly of body kinematics and force-mass relationships within the body during impact, such simulations can be no more accurate than the very limited biological input information available.

Determination of human tolerances to impact is complicated by many other physical factors influencing the outcome, including tightness and configuration of restraint and support (seat); body orientation; equipment such as helmets or parachute chestpacks, which can alter the force distribution on the body; and the magnitude, direction, distribution, duration and pulse shape of the force resulting from the impact. In addition, biological factors including sex, age, and physical and mental condition have been identified as influencing survival. Individual variability must be considered, for tolerance under identical test conditions will vary in the same individual as well as from person to person. Furthermore, while considerable data are available concerning impact forces in some body orientations, such as in forward or aft-facing positions, less is known of the effects in other orientations, such as in lateral impact. Limited experimental studies of exposure to simultaneous forces or to off-center forces have been conducted. Such conditions also greatly influence tolerance.

It is not possible to state precisely what human tolerance to impact forces is without defining the specific conditions involved. It is the intent of this chapter to present a summary of the known data concerning human tolerance to impact.

Terms and Definitions

The biophysical terminology employed in the field of impact is generally consistent with terms used in the field of sustained acceleration. Some specialized meanings and distinctions have, however, developed. Most work is identified by descriptive terminology, such as forward, rearward or aft, headward, footward, or right or left lateral accelerations. Physiologically, the subject's orientation can be described in relation to the force, and, since 1961, terms using the x, y, z axis (table 6-1) have been recommended by the Biodynamics Committee of the Aerospace Medical Panel, AGARD, as the standard description for simple uniaxial accelerations (Gell, 1961). The physiological standard (System 4 in the table) is recommended as the universal system. Air Force or Navy investigators may use the vernacular description relating "eyeballs" movement in inertial response to the applied acceleration.
Table 6-1
Comparative Table of Equivalents

### TABLE A
Direction of Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINEAR MOTION</th>
<th>Aircraft Computer Standard (Sys. 1)</th>
<th>Acceleration Descriptive (Sys. 2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward</td>
<td>$+a_x$</td>
<td>Forward accel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backward</td>
<td>$-a_x$</td>
<td>Backward accel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upward</td>
<td>$-a_z$</td>
<td>Headward accel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downward</td>
<td>$+a_y$</td>
<td>Footward accel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Right</td>
<td>$+a_y$</td>
<td>R. Lateral accel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Left</td>
<td>$-a_y$</td>
<td>L. Lateral accel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE B
Inertial Resultant of Body Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINEAR MOTION</th>
<th>Physiological Descriptive (Sys. 3)</th>
<th>Physiological Standard (Sys. 4)</th>
<th>Vernacular Descriptive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward</td>
<td>(1, 2) Transverse P-A G Prone G</td>
<td>$-G_x$</td>
<td>Eyeballs In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backward</td>
<td>Transverse A-P G Supine G</td>
<td>$+G_x$</td>
<td>Eyeballs Out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upward</td>
<td>Positive G</td>
<td>$+G_z$</td>
<td>Eyeballs Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downward</td>
<td>Negative G</td>
<td>$-G_z$</td>
<td>Eyeballs Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Right</td>
<td>Left Lateral G</td>
<td>$+G_y$</td>
<td>Eyeballs Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Left</td>
<td>Right Lateral G</td>
<td>$-G_y$</td>
<td>Eyeballs Right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Since body orientations and resultant inertial responses in off-axis impacts may involve complex multiaxial accelerations, a three-dimensional description is often used and expressed in terms of degrees of roll, pitch, and yaw relative to horizontal flight on a polar coordinate system. In the neutral position of 0-0-0 the crewman is seated upright facing toward the point of impact (figure 6-1). In the 0-5-180 orientation, a crewman would be seated upright, five degrees back from perpendicular with the back facing the point of impact. Inertial forces in this orientation are directed from anterior to posterior (Hanson, 1965). Similarly, 0-55-90 orientation would indicate a +Gy (eyeballs left) impact, 55 degrees back from the perpendicular, and 0-0-270 would correspond to a -Gy (eyeballs right) impact.

Historically, confusion of terminology has existed between researchers in the fields of impact and sustained acceleration. Early impact experimentation was accomplished on deceleration test devices, where the direction of force acting on the test subject is opposite to that which occurs in acceleration, even though the direction of motion is the same. Thus a test described as “forward facing impact” (deceleration) is equivalent to backward acceleration.

Understandably, despite efforts toward standardization, some confusion still exists. One reason for this is the limitation of the term “G” to the inertial reaction of the subject. This poses no problem to the investigator working in steady state acceleration, since the transient response is of minor consequence with most devices capable of producing sustained acceleration. For the investigator concerned with impact, the transient response is of major importance since most end points are established by a transient peak. Because of
the time-varying nature of the transient response, the inertial reaction is continually changing. Moreover, due to the complicated reactions of the biological system, the inertial reaction varies throughout the body during the impact. Thus the specification of a single "inertial response" magnitude as a descriptor of the experiment would be of little value to the researcher in impact tolerance. Some researchers have recognized this limitation but have used the "G" magnitude to indicate the input peak rather than the response. This is advantageous for purposes of experimental control and permits relatively easy measurement with generally available equipment.

**Acceleration**

Acceleration is defined as the time rate of change of velocity. Since velocity is a vector, acceleration occurs when either the magnitude (speed) or the direction of motion of a body changes. Most impact test devices use a track and sled system, operating either vertically (FAA, NASA, and 6570 AMRL drop towers, or the 6571 ARL HYGE) or horizontally (such as the USAF "Bopper" or "Daisy"). The test pulse is provided either initially, as the sled accelerates to speed, or terminally as the sled is slowed or stopped from a given speed. Impact pulses may be of a variety of waveforms, either as selected by the researcher or limited by the capability of the test device. Figure 6-2 shows an example of a rectangular profile, with a relatively long plateau or "dwell" time. Rise time depends upon how rapidly peak acceleration is reached. The term rate of onset (T) is frequently used synonymously. Jolt describes the rate of change of acceleration (displacement with respect to time), and has been found to be a strong limiting factor in tolerance. A variety of controlled pulse shapes are shown by Chandler (1967). Difficulty is often encountered in describing concisely a complex impact pulse shape, and a number of techniques have been adopted to provide consistent descriptors (the most recent, Mil - S - 9479A, 16 June 1967).

**The "G" System of Units**

Few units of measurement have been more misused and misunderstood than the unit "G." In the strictest sense, it is merely a dimensional representation of the magnitude of acceleration, expressed as a ratio of the magnitude of the measured acceleration to the magnitude of the "standard" acceleration of gravity, \( G = \frac{a}{g} \). Since acceleration is a vector quantity, having properties of both magnitude and direction, the capital letter \( G \) is used to denote that only magnitudes are being compared, so that the direction of the acceleration of interest does not necessarily coincide with the direction of the acceleration of gravity. The signs and subscripts of the standard terminology, previously discussed, are an attempt to restore directionality to the \( G \) nomenclature.

Consideration of Newton's second law, stated in simplified form as \( F = ma \), with weight defined as mass times "standard gravity" \( (W = mg_0) \), can lead to the conclusion that \( G \) is also equivalent to the ratio of the force (required to accelerate the mass \( m \) at an acceleration level \( a \) ) to the weight (under standard
gravitational conditions). This relationship would be stated: $G = F/W$. Thus $G$ is often thought of as having both force and acceleration significance.

![Diagram of impulse deceleration profile](image)

**Figure 6-2.** Example of rectangular-shaped impulse deceleration profile.
(Adapted from Stapp, 1961)

The quantity $G$ is dimensionless, being the ratio of two accelerations or of two forces. However, by definition it is capable of telling how much force is acting and what acceleration is taking place in a given dynamic situation. Thus, if it can be stated that a body is experiencing a certain amount of $G$, the total amount of force can be determined in ordinary units if the given value of $G$ is multiplied by the standard weight $W_0$ of the body, or $F = G W_0$. Similarly, $G$ defines magnitude of acceleration, $a = g G$. Although dimensionless, $G$ possesses the same property of direction as do the force and acceleration which it connotes. Thus, it is possible to construct $G$ vector diagrams in place of force or acceleration diagrams when analyzing dynamic problems. $G$ is usually thought of in respect to its "force" aspect (Dixon and Patterson, 1953).

The symbol $g$ has been widely abused in aerospace medical literature. Although $g$ has been rigidly established by physicists as a symbol (go) for a specific physical quantity (32.2 ft/sec²), the acceleration of gravity, it is often indiscriminately used in place of $G$ in the literature. In contrast to sustained acceleration, in impact a whole body can only be said to experience a certain $G$ when that $G$ refers to the whole body input, not response. On impact, each element of the body experiences a different $G$ load, depending upon its
elastic, viscous, and/or plastic relation to the rest of the body, to the parameters of the impact pulse, to the support/restraint system, to the general structural characteristics of the test vehicle, and many other factors. Realistically, six degrees of freedom for motion of each element would have to be measured to accurately assess the force imparted. Although accelerometers have been available for at least five decades, the measurement of force and force distribution during impact has not yet been accomplished. To convert an acceleration measurement to a force measurement, one must know the mass upon which the acceleration is acting \(F = ma\). Due to the distributed mass and undefined interconnections of tissues encountered in the human body, the effective mass for the acceleration measured is not known. Therefore, investigators cannot yet speak of inertial force based upon body acceleration measurements without making crude guesses.

**Interpreting the Data**

There are other considerations which pose major problems to the impact engineer. The calibration, placement and attachment of transducers can cause artifacts in the data. Head or chest accelerometers, unless firmly attached or implanted in bone, are subject to distortion of the supporting strap or intervening tissue and result in higher acceleration readings than actually occur (Ewing, 1969). G forces may be recorded on a sled in one study and in various locations on the body in another, yet reported without distinction.

To accurately specify acceleration it would be necessary to utilize three linear accelerometers and three angular accelerometers at the same point, or provide some other means of obtaining these data. Also, acceleration measurements change from point to point on any distributed body element unless it is rigid and moving in only one linear direction without rotation. Thus, one acceleration measure, even if properly made, is not representative of the acceleration distribution over the body (Chandler, 1970). For example, in lateral run No. 2530 programmed for 10 sled G on the Holloman Bopper, peak sled G was 8.48, peak G on subject’s chest was 14.47, and head G was recorded as 22.04 (Zaborowski, 1966).

Finally, results are subject to various interpretations depending upon system or computational parameters which may go unreported. For example, while most test results are presented in terms of peak G, some are given as plateau G or average G. Some investigators “round-off” or “average” multiple peaks while others report the peaks. Frequency response and damping characteristics may differ. All of these factors should temper interpretation of reported tolerance limits.

**Human Tolerance Limits**

Tolerances have been variously defined, and different researchers have established different end points as criteria. Bierman (1947) defined tolerance as “that value of impact or load which produces a painful reaction;” Stapp used a variety of criteria ultimately defining tolerance as the limit beyond which either the subject or the experimenter fears to go lest there be serious injury. Injury has
been termed "reversible" or "irreversible" depending upon whether or not the individual can recover. Aerospace and aviation medical research in impact has been concerned primarily with whole body response to impact forces. Most human tolerance limit data developed to date are based upon the seated, young male subject utilizing maximum body support. In the majority of tests body orientation is in relation to the four main body axes: forward (-Gx), rearward (+Gx), headward (+Gz), and footward (-Gz) acting forces. Only one series of right lateral (+Gy) tests with human subjects has been conducted (Brown, et al., 1966). Test results can be affected by body position, restraints, instructions given the subject prior to testing (e.g., relax or tense muscles during the test), the subject's task, etc.

In figure 6-3 data from a number of sources have been combined to illustrate impact experience documented to date. It should be noted that numerous biophysical factors influence survival, and the "approximate survival limit" shown is only an estimate.

![](image)

Figure 6-3. Impact documentation. Velocity and deceleration distance are shown on common axes, with magnitude of force and deceleration time shown on secondary scales. Hollow squares mark selected, well documented, free-fall survivals for which impact forces have been calculated. Extent of tissue deformation at impact for these free-falls is not known, thus deceleration distance is not always known. (Modified from Webb, 1964, with data of Snyder, 1963-69)
Tolerance to Transverse ($\pm G_x$) Impact Force

In forward facing transverse ($-G_x$) impact, tolerance limits for man are approximately 50 G peaks at 500 G/sec rate of onset for 0.25 second's duration, provided there is adequate upper torso restraint (Stapp, 1951a). However, changes in the rate of onset directly affect human response for various impulse durations (Stapp, 1949, 1968; Stapp & Hughes, 1956; Stapp & Blount, 1957; Eiband, 1959; Stapp, et al., 1964; Stapp, 1965). Air Force design recommendations are approximately 45 G for a duration of 0.1 second and 25 G for a duration of 0.2 second (U.S. Air Force, 1969). Restraint in the experiments establishing these limits was by means of a double harness with 3 inch wide shoulder straps, a seat belt with thigh straps, and a chest belt. With a less adequate restraint system, some debilitation and injury may occur at these levels and greater tolerance may be found with better protective systems.

Stapp reported that peak acceleration of approximately 45 G (0.09 second's duration) with a rate of onset of 500 G/sec resulted in no signs of shock. Yet, he found that 38 G's for 0.16 second at onset rates higher than 1300 G/sec produced signs of severe shock (Stapp, 1949; 1968) and 45 G (for 0.23 second) at 413 G/sec produced severe delayed effects (run 215, Stapp, 1949). A higher rate of onset usually implies a higher content of high frequency energy in the acceleration pulse, with a higher energy transfer to the human. Unfortunately, the data are too few and too often uncontrolled with respect to restraint systems for adequate interpretation (Holcomb, 1961; NASA, 1965).

Human tolerance for impact in rearward facing ($+G_x$) body orientation has not been clearly established. Humans have survived impact, with reversible injuries, at a level of 83 G (chest acceleration, not actual input) at 3800 G/sec for 0.04 second's duration (Beeding & Mosely, 1960). The accepted Air Force design limit falls between this and the 45 G for 0.1 second end point for eyeballs out impact (U.S. Air Force, 1969). Stapp (1949) reported human tolerance for $+G_x$ (rearward-facing impact) to be 30 G for 0.11 second's duration with a calculated rate of onset of 1065 G/sec.

Chimpanzee tests, backed by free-fall data for humans, indicate that limits for survival may be less than 237 G at 11 250 G/sec for 0.35 second's duration in the forward-facing ($-G_x$) body orientation when the subject is restrained by full-body harness, and about 247 G at 16 800 G/sec over 0.35 second's duration (Stapp, 1961a) rate of onset. Persistent injury was found above 5000 G/sec rate of onset, 135 G peak and 0.35 second's duration, although transient injury effects were observed at 60 G at higher than 5000 G/sec rate of onset in the $-G_x$ direction (Stapp, 1958a).

Attempts are being made to expand design criteria regarding the relationship between rate of onset and duration of transverse impact acceleration (U.S. Air Force, 1969). Figure 6-4 gives data related to abrupt transverse ($\pm G_x$) impacts which have been survived by men and animals. In view of these gaps in the data, the general form of the curves in this figure merits some comment (NASA, 1965). It can be seen that for duration times up to 0.01 second, the tolerance level drops off linearly (log-log scale) as duration time increases. This can be
explained in terms of dynamic response, since the critical human response occurs as in a relatively low frequency system. Short duration impacts do not possess sufficient energy to excite maximum response of this low frequency system. When full overshoot is attained (at about 0.01 second) any further increase in the duration of impact does not increase the man's response for a given input level, until the "long" duration regime is approached when hydraulic effects become noticeable and reduce the tolerance level still further (see also figure 6-12).

Figure 6–4. Survivable abrupt transverse (±Gx) impact. Reference numbers are those in original reports. (After Webb, 1964; based on data of Eiband, 1959)
Figure 6-5 presents data for tolerance to $+G_x$ impact as a function of velocity change and average acceleration. The curves of Gurdjian (1954) were calculated to define the dividing line between mild injury (no damage) and severe injury such as shock and retinal hemorrhage in humans, in terms of velocity change and average acceleration force. There are few human experiments at the high accelerations. Animal data support the shape and approximate location of the curve (Kornhauser, 1964). Because of an error found in the original calculations, they were recalculated and plotted as shown. Good agreement is noted except for the 0 to 0.02 region where the earlier model of Gurdjian shows a greater permissible velocity. It can be seen that for exposures of less than 0.02 to 0.06 second, the change in velocity, rather than the acceleration level, determines tolerance (as predicted by figure 6-12). More human data are needed to define the curve at short exposure durations.

Figure 6-5. Tolerance to rearward $+G_x$ short-duration accelerations as a function of velocity change and average acceleration. Dashed line represents $+G_x$ tolerance curve for injury as determined by Kornhauser and Gold (1961), corrected for errors found in the original duration times. The solid line is the tolerance curve resulting from more recent analysis of available usable impact data by Stanley Aviation Corp. (NASA, 1965). [After NASA (Stanley Aviation Corp.) 1965].

Tolerance to Vertical ($\pm G_z$) Impact Force

Design curves for ejection seat and escape capsules (HIAD, 1960; General Dynamics, 1961) have been vague regarding the relationship between rate of onset and duration, especially in the region of short duration impact (Holcomb, 1961). For example, whole body deceleration of 50-pound chimpanzees at $3 -G_z$ using a trapezoidal deceleration profile with a plateau of 50- to 60-msec duration resulted in $G$ amplification of 2.0 to 2.5 times the sled $G$, as detected by a
miniature accelerometer rigidly mounted on the calvarium (Sonntag, 1967). Figure 6-6 gives data which may be helpful in this regard. It shows the durations and magnitudes of abrupt vertical decelerations, in both the tailward ($-G_z$) and headward ($+G_z$) directions, which have been withstood by animals and man.

Impact tolerance has been assessed in terms of impact pressure (i.e., force per unit area) as well as from the magnitude-duration point of view. The $+G_z$ (headward) case is illustrated in figures 6-7 and 6-8. There is a considerable area of unknown effect between the region of voluntary human exposure and the region of known injury. The unknown area covers about 20 G in the ordinate in figure 6-7, which includes the region of most interest in space operations. It is clear from the figure that the boundaries of injury versus non-injury are not yet particularly well defined, and a few more reliable points might well change the general shape of the curves, particularly in the impulse region.

Tolerance to Lateral ($\pm G_y$) Forces

Lateral ($\pm G_y$) impact tolerances appear to be considerably lower than is tolerance in either the transverse ($\pm G_x$) or footward ($+G_z$) body orientations, with a maximum of 14.1 peak $G$ at 600 G/sec for 0.122 second's duration under full body restraint (Sonntag, 1968). When the subject is restrained by a lap belt only, the voluntary tolerance limit for belt $(-G_y$) lateral impact has been reported to be only 9 G (average) for a duration of approximately 0.1 second (Zaborowski et al., 1965; Zaborowski, 1966). More recent tests with the F-111 restraint system (General Dynamics version) resulted in subjective tolerance levels at 9.2 to 10 $G_y$'s, or 12 to 14 G on the chest (Sonntag, 1968). Few right lateral impact ($+G_y$) tests have been done, but in this orientation with full Mercury mission-type body restraint, the subjective tolerance level has been reported to be above 21.5 G (sled) maximum for 1190 G/sec and 0.121 second's duration (Weis et al., 1963a). With the early Apollo restraint system, 18.7 G (sled) was tolerated with no complaints (Brown et al., 1966).

Computer Analyses of Plateau Tolerances

Recent attempts have been made to supplement empirical curves with preliminary computer models employing impedance and resonance techniques (NASA, 1965). An analysis of headward ($+G_z$) accelerations has shown that the maximum plateau input acceleration can probably be taken as 40 G with some degree of confidence. Although essential for computer studies, the selection of an equivalent spinal frequency ($\omega$) is not so well defined. Because of the shortage of results in the impulse region, the most reliable evidence can be taken from the critical velocity change deduced from drop tests which give a value for $\omega$ of 225 rad/sec (Swearingen et al., 1960).
Figure 6-6. Survivable abrupt vertical ($\pm G_a$) impact. Reference numbers are those in original reports. 
(After Webb, 1964, based on data of Eiband, 1959)
Figure 6-6. Survivable abrupt vertical ($\pm G_\alpha$) impact. Reference numbers are those in original reports. (After Webb, 1964; based on data of Eiband, 1959) - Continued
Figure 6-7. Impact sensitivity in terms of force per unit area for $+G_z$ impact. For shorter exposures, the body is believed to act as a rigid mass; for longer exposures, effects are caused by shifts in body fluids and tissues. Data points are taken from human experiments in drop towers, falls, and rocket sleds with various restraint devices. Two shaded areas define approximate areas of effect in terms of impact pressure for any duration. (After Webb, 1964, adapted from Thompson, 1962)

Figure 6-8. Dividing line between mild injury (no damage) and severe injury (shock and retinal hemorrhage) in humans [exposed to $+G_z$ impact, in terms of magnitude and duration of force application.] Data points are from human experiments in several laboratories. Animal data (not shown) support the shape and approximate location of the curve. (After Webb, 1964, adapted from Kornhauser, 1962)
In the transverse, backward direction (+Gx) the plateau tolerance line falls at a value of 45 G for the input acceleration, and the most reasonable position for the impulse tolerance line corresponds to an equivalent frequency of 95 rad/sec. This is somewhat higher than the value suggested by the evidence from accident survival. The adoption of the more pessimistic tolerance line appears justified since it satisfies the few sled test points available, and accident cases usually represent extreme end points and cannot be precisely reconstructed. No satisfactory conclusions can be made from the transverse forward data (-Gx) but a frequency of 95 rad/sec, as for the backward case, is suggested. From a physiological standpoint, the plateau tolerance level for forward facing impact might be lower than that for the backward direction because of the position of the spine relative to the internal organs, but this also depends upon restraint. Until more relevant tests have been conducted, it is suggested that the allowable peak input acceleration be taken as 35 G.

Tentative impact tolerance parameters suggested for use with the single degree of freedom, undamped dynamic model, are given in Table 6-2. It should be remembered that these values are applicable to an undamped model. Damping will introduce changes in the tolerance levels considered to be small enough to be ignored at this stage of model development. Analytic results are also available for two and three degrees of freedom models (NASA, 1965). These bring out the factors determining the drop in tolerance levels at the longer durations of Figures 6-4 and 6-6. The exact shapes of the curves are determined sequentially by tolerance of the head, lumbosacral, and spine-abdomen system as the duration of impulse is increased.

Table 6-2
Tentative Impact Tolerance Parameters for Use With Single Degree of Freedom Undamped Dynamic Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Impact Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Headward (+Gz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equivalent frequency</td>
<td>225 rad/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum allowable mass</td>
<td>+80 Gz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acceleration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impulse region</td>
<td>0 - 0.009 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of plateau</td>
<td>.00 sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(After NASA, 1965, Stanley Aviation Corp.)

Tolerance to Peak Impact Accelerations

Figure 6-9 indicates the peak accelerations that have been survived without permanent injury. Figure 6-10 shows the greatest vertical impact
subjects would voluntarily endure and the type of symptoms noted at given rates of onset. Free-fall studies have indicated that the critical entrance velocity for human survival of water impact is about 100 ft/sec, feet-first ($+G_z$), and 97 ft/sec in the head-first ($G_x$) body orientation (Snyder, 1965; Snyder & Snow, 1967). These velocity calculations were corrected for aerodynamic drag and are thus lower than standard values.

Figure 6-9. Human tolerance to peak accelerations. A: Peak transverse accelerations survived without permanent injury; including data from falls (below 0.03 sec), short tract impact facilities (0.03 to 0.1 sec), high speed sled runs (0.1 to 1.0 sec), and centrifuge studies (2-1000 sec). Peak accelerations lying below band of data are assumed to be noninjurious, while those above should produce severe injury or death. (After Webb, 1963, adapted from Thompson, 1962). B: The two lines connect data points for highest $-G_x$ and $+G_x$ accelerations voluntarily endured without injury by carefully restrained subjects on high speed rocket sleds. Four points above lines show accelerations which produced reversible but serious injury in $+G_x$ acceleration. (After Webb, 1964, adapted from Blockley using data of Stapp, 1951; 1955; 1956; 1957; 1964)
Figure 6-10. Durations and magnitudes of abrupt transverse decelerations endured by various animals and man, showing areas of voluntary endurance without injury, moderate injury, and severe injury. A: summarizes \(-G_x\) data (chest-to-back impact); B: shows \(+G_x\) data (back-to-chest impact). Reference numbers are those in the original reports. (After Webb, 1964; based upon Eiband, 1959). More recent tests with human volunteer subjects confirm in general these early data. The user is cautioned that these tolerances are greatly influenced by the type of restraint protection, which is not specified.
Other Factors Affecting Impact Tolerance

Besides the numerous factors affecting human tolerance to impact which have been indicated in studies to date, new environmental factors encountered in space flight may also exert some degree of influence. In extended space flight, astronauts will be exposed to ionizing radiation which may substantially change the functional state of the organism. However, no information is yet available concerning the effects of ionizing radiation on human impact tolerance and only a little animal data has been gathered. Exposure of mice irradiated in doses of 250 to 850 R to prolonged accelerations of 40 to 42 G for 3 minutes resulted in estimates of the limits of overload resistance of a human subject injured by ionizing radiation of about 52 days (Davydov et al., 1965). Extensive physiological, histological, and biochemical monitoring of two turtles aboard Zond-5,* showed no correlation between radiation and impact effects (Gazenko et al., 1969).

Preliminary acceleration studies (centrifuge) have been initiated relative to the effects of the circadian rhythmicity on impact tolerance, Bolend, 1970, but biological effects upon man’s impact or deceleration tolerance have not been reported.

Low-altitude, high-speed flight in turbulent conditions, which exposes crews to random multiple vertical impacts, has been found to result in markedly deteriorating performance after one hour of flight as terrain slopes steepen and airspeed increases from Mach 0.4 to 0.9 (Soliday & Schohan, 1965).

Physiological and Biochemical Response to Impact

Human tolerance criteria are largely physiologically determined, and it must be emphasized that most data related to the human have been obtained at impact levels at or below voluntary tolerance. Very limited human data, generally obtained in connection with accidents, are presently available at higher impact injury levels. Most estimates of lethal impact ranges are extrapolations from animal studies. A large number of environmental factors directly influence physiological responses, including body orientation, direction of application of force, and magnitude, duration, and rate of application of the acceleration pulse shape. In addition, supporting structures and restraint play a major role in variation.

Cardiovascular Response to Impact

Rate of onset has been shown to be a primary limitation and appears to influence clinical shock directly following impact (Stapp, 1955b; Taylor, 1963). The mechanisms of this physiological shock, which involve complex,

*In semilunar flight from 15 – 21 September 1968; splash down landing in Indian Ocean.
simultaneous neural-humoral events, are not yet clearly understood. Post-impact bradycardia, or slowing of the heart rate below 60 beats per minute, has been well documented (Bierman, Wilder, & Hellems, 1946; Stapp, 1949; Ruff, 1950; Rhein & Taylor, 1962; Taylor et al., 1962; Weis et al., 1963a; Brown et al., 1966). At 30 G peak and 100 G/sec, unpleasant pressure sensations, pallor, drop in blood pressure, increased pulse rate, and occasional retinal venous spasms reportedly occur. These transient changes were found in the absence of mechanical failure or tearing of tissues and organs and without bone fracture. Brown et al., (1966) found that bradycardia post-impact is a function of the acceleration profile and the subject orientation, but little additional documented information is available relative to the influence of impact orientation and magnitude on post-impact heart slowing.

Mild bradycardia is produced at 15 G impact in the forward-facing position \((G_x)\) but is not as marked in the rearward-facing \((+G_x)\) position. Increasing levels of impact increase both the severity and duration of bradycardia up to the tested voluntary human limits of 30 G (Taylor, 1963). In impact pulses of less than 50 msec and less than 15 G the cardio-inhibitory reflex causing slowing of the heart rate apparently does not occur. At low G forces (7.21 to 15.46 G), a tachycardia, or speeding up of the heart rate, has been reported (Piotrowski, 1968).

A carotid sinus reflex induced by sustained pressure rise in the carotid arteries was subjectively observed following exposure to forward-facing \((G_x)\) impact of 600 G/sec to a plateau of 15 G sustained for 0.60 second (Stapp, 1961a). The cardiovascular shock effect is characterized by pallor, sweating, drop in blood pressure and rise in pulse rate. Mild transient shock has been observed at less than 25 G peaks where duration was less than 0.1 second. Severe shock has resulted from exposure to 38.6 G at a 1370 G/sec onset rate for 0.12 second's total duration (8 to 9 Hz resonant frequency) (Stapp, 1961b).

**Hematological and Biochemical Change**

In man, various changes in chemical constituents of the blood as well as adrenal gland activity have been reported to occur in conjunction with impact accelerations. Reduction in blood platelets (thrombocytopenia) after forward-facing \((G_x)\) impact at 20 G (peak sled G) was observed one hour post-impact at 400 to 800 G/sec onset rates (Taylor, 1963). Sympathoadrenal response to impact was suggested due to changes found in measurement of urinary excretion of vanilmandelic acid \((VMA)\) (Hanson & Foster, 1966). More precise measurement of norepinephrine, epinephrine, and 17-hydroxy corticosteroid in urine pre- and post-impact showed a definite connection with sympathoadrenal function and emotional stress (Foster & Sonntag, 1969).

**Pulmonary and Muscular Effects**

In \(+G_x\) (rearward-facing) impact levels up to 25 G, no significant impairment of pulmonary function has been found to occur in the restrained \(+G_x\) (forward-facing) position (Hanson, 1965).
Impact

In lateral ($\pm G_y$) impact, minor physical complaints such as muscle stiffness occurred in approximately 258 G/sec rate of onset for durations of 0.3 to 0.1 second (Zaborowski, 1966).

Physiological Tolerance

Symptoms of various degrees of shock are the first physiological signs limiting human voluntary tolerance to transverse acceleration. A 40 G peak at 331 G/sec onset rate of 0.32 second plateau duration (wearing upper torso restraint) can be tolerated with no indication of cardiovascular shock. Further increase in duration of acceleration (i.e., sustained acceleration) will not affect response (Lewis & Stapp, 1958). However, in seated forward or rearward-facing body orientations ($\pm G_x$), physiological alterations in man have been reported when peak forces exceed approximately 15 G and onset rates are above 400 G/sec. When these levels are exceeded, subjects turn pale, perspire, and exhibit transient rises in blood pressure. More severe loads result in unconsciousness. At the maximum acceleration loads which have been applied, immediate effects are sometimes not pronounced, but delayed effects occur with gradual onset over the next 24 hours (Stapp, 1955, 1965; Pesman & Eiband, 1956; Stapp & Hughes, 1956; Stapp & Blount, 1957; Beeding & Mosely, 1960; Stapp et al., 1964).

The most severe shock observed in human testing occurred in a rearward-facing ($+G_x$) impact of 82.6 G at 3826 G/sec measured on the sternum, or 40.4 G measured on the sled at 2139 G/sec for 0.04 second’s duration (12 to 14 Hz resonant frequency). In this case there was no blood pressure for 30 seconds post-impact, returning to 70 systolic and 40 diastolic within 5 minutes. The subject complained of severe lower back pain, then lost consciousness 10 seconds post-impact. He was hospitalized for 3 days to recover from headache and back pain (Stapp, 1961).

For the lateral body orientation, tolerance has been defined as subject discomfort with prolonged stiffness and soreness in the neck musculature (Zaborowski et al., 1965). Tests reported by Sonntag (1966) have placed voluntary limits in lateral impact with lap belt restraint only at 12 G at which point anal sphincter pain, attributed to vagal effect and acute dilation of the sphincter, has been observed. Two episodes of fainting in shock response are reported, with bradycardia but no nonreversible physiological effects. Earlier, human tolerance determinations, based upon body kinematics, had placed tolerance with lap belt restraint alone as well as lap belt plus shoulder harness at 9 G for 0.1 second’s duration.

Apollo Impact Tests

In a study of predicted Apollo command module landing impacts, Stapp and Taylor (1964) observed that impact forces produced effects to the nervous, cardio-respiratory and musculo-skeletal systems. Neurological effects of impact were momentary stunning and disorientation. A consistent effect on the cardiovascular system was transitory post-impact slowing of the heart rate in
those body orientations in which the decelerative force acts in a footward direction (inertial force acts headward). Respiratory effects of impact were momentary shortness of breath and chest pain. Effects to the musculo-skeletal system were soreness and spasm of muscle groups of the neck and back. No effect to the human subject was severe enough to exceed human tolerance or to cause significant incapacitation of undue pain (tables 6-3 and 6-4). In table 6-3 subjects’ complaints are compiled into 10 categories. The numbers under the column heading “Category of Complaints” in table 6-3 correspond to the categories listed in the note at the end of the table. In some tests, more than one complaint was registered. The “Complaint G Range” indicates the range of impact at which complaints occurred, as measured on the sled used in the tests.

To date no evidence of cumulative effects due to repeated exposure to impact forces close to voluntary tolerance limits has been reported. However, the number of subjects and exposures are too limited, and physiological and psychological tests do not permit valid differentiation of subtle effects of such stress from the changes which occur with time in individuals unexposed to impact.

Physiological response of man subjected to linear, lateral, vertical, and free-fall impact, along with transient neurological and psychological alterations which have been reported, are summarized in tables 6-5 to 6-12. Changes associated with off-axis impact can be found in table 6-14 at the end of this chapter.

**Biomechanical Factors of Impact**

The design capability of manned aerospace vehicles is limited by both the biological and the biomechanical “breaking points” of the human body. The body consists of a skeletal structure, held together by tough fibers, which provides both mechanical support and a lever system upon which the muscles act. The basic structural component is the spinal column of vertebrae which has four curvatures. These curvatures are found only in man with his upright posture. The vertebrae act as load carrying elements and are separated by intervertebral discs. These act mechanically as energy absorbers and connecting linkages. The thoracic organs (heart, lungs, and liver), contained in the rib cage, and the abdominal viscera are suspended freely by connective tissues from the muscle and bone framework.

Tissues of the human body show mechanical properties such as compressibility, elasticity, and shear and tensile strength. In general, biological materials are multiphase, nonhomogeneous, anisotropic, and nonlinear. Fluids are generally non-Newtonian and solids are non-Hookean. Much work has been done to determine the mechanical properties of tissues, but the stress-strain-history law is not known for any tissue (Fung, 1968). Live, whole body response is known to be nonlinear and to exhibit a high degree of rate sensitivity (McElhaney & Byars, 1967). The body responds to impact with considerable variation, both within the same individual and between different individuals.
Table 6-3
 Complaints Registered by Volunteers in Apollo Impact Tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>000-315-000</td>
<td>2/14</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>13.2 - 24.6</td>
<td>5.7 - 26.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>000-335-330</td>
<td>3/10</td>
<td>7.8,10.10</td>
<td>17.3 - 21.0</td>
<td>6.0 - 21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>000-006-320</td>
<td>2/14</td>
<td>4.8,9.5,10</td>
<td>17.5 - 25.6</td>
<td>9.2 - 25.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>000-035-330</td>
<td>4/12</td>
<td>1.1,4.4,6</td>
<td>18.5 - 25.0</td>
<td>10.5 - 25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>000-045-000</td>
<td>5/14</td>
<td>2.4,4.5,5,6,9,9,9,9,9</td>
<td>5.9 - 25.0</td>
<td>5.9 - 25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>000-035-030</td>
<td>6/12</td>
<td>2.4,4.5,9,9,9,10</td>
<td>18.5 - 24.5</td>
<td>10.2 - 24.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>000-005-040</td>
<td>4/11</td>
<td>2.4,4,6,7,9</td>
<td>14.2 - 23.5</td>
<td>10.0 - 23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>000-335-030</td>
<td>1/14</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>8.0 - 24.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>000-085-180</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>2.4,10</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>9.8 - 11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>000-085-220</td>
<td>2/12</td>
<td>4.10,10</td>
<td>13.9 - 15.4</td>
<td>5.9 - 16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>000-085-270</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>No complaints</td>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>18.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>000-085-320</td>
<td>2/21</td>
<td>1.1,4</td>
<td>15.7 - 17.8</td>
<td>6.4 - 19.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>000-085-000</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>No complaints</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>11.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>000-085-040</td>
<td>1/13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>5.8 - 18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>000-085-090</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>No complaints</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>000-085-140</td>
<td>3/14</td>
<td>4.5,5</td>
<td>15.1 - 16.0</td>
<td>5.5 - 18.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>000-045-180</td>
<td>9/17</td>
<td>1.1,2,2,3,3,5,5,5,5,5,5,5,7,7,7,7,7,7,7,7,8,8,9,10,10</td>
<td>15.0 - 26.1</td>
<td>15.0 - 26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>000-035-210</td>
<td>8/20</td>
<td>1.1,2,2,3,4,5,6,6,6,7,7,7,8,9</td>
<td>15.2 - 23.2</td>
<td>10.5 - 28.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>000-005-220</td>
<td>5/16</td>
<td>1.5,5,6,9,9</td>
<td>16.5 - 28.2</td>
<td>16.5 - 30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>000-335-210</td>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>15.5 - 21.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>000-315-180</td>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>19.0</td>
<td>15.8 - 21.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>000-335-150</td>
<td>0/8</td>
<td>No complaints</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>21.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>000-006-140</td>
<td>8/19</td>
<td>2.4,4,5,6,8,9,9,9,9,10</td>
<td>16.4 - 30.7</td>
<td>16.3 - 30.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>000-035-150</td>
<td>8/19</td>
<td>1.1,2,2,5,5,5,6,7</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>29.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1Headache – Incidence at impact, duration up to several hours. 2Stunning/disorientation – Incidence at impact but of brief duration. 3Blurred vision/spots before eyes – Incidence at impact but of brief duration. 4Neck/back muscle spasm/strain – Delayed onset, lasting up to several days. 5Chest pain – Incidence at impact but of brief duration. 6Shortness of breath – Incidence at impact but of brief duration. 7Abdominal visceral displacement sensation – At impact. 8Joint pain – Delayed onset and lasting up to several days. 9Lower extremity muscle spasm/pain – Delayed onset and lasting up to several days. 10Upper extremity muscle spasm/pain – Delayed onset and lasting no longer than 1 day.

(Brown et al., 1966)
Table 6-4
Significant Physical Findings
Post-Impact in Apollo Impact Tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Significant Physical Findings</th>
<th>Test Position</th>
<th>Test Numbers</th>
<th>Sled G</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harness burns (all first degree)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1562</td>
<td>23.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1163</td>
<td>17.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1187</td>
<td>18.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1204</td>
<td>21.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1205</td>
<td>25.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1456</td>
<td>19.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dazed and disoriented (lasting no longer than two minutes post-impact)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1303</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1182</td>
<td>24.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1403</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1387</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1517</td>
<td>17.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1610</td>
<td>19.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1187</td>
<td>18.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1191</td>
<td>19.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory difficulty (lasting no longer than one minute post-impact)</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1215</td>
<td>24.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1216</td>
<td>23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1217</td>
<td>23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1403</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure difference (20 mm Hg at pre and post run physical exam)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1192</td>
<td>19.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse difference (20 beats/min at pre and post run physical exam)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1456</td>
<td>19.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1441</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1819</td>
<td>19.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engorged retinal vessels</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1204</td>
<td>21.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1487</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1205</td>
<td>25.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1517</td>
<td>17.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back and/or neck pain and decreased range of motion</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1559</td>
<td>25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1591</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Brown et al., 1966)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effects</th>
<th>Impact Force</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bradycardia</td>
<td>$5 - 15 + G_x$</td>
<td>Slowing of heart for at least 5 beats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$15 - 30 \pm G_x$</td>
<td>Slowing of heart rate immediately following impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$9 - 12 + G_y$</td>
<td>At higher accelerations slowing is increased. 1.6 mg atropine eliminates slowing, indicating relationship to vagal reflex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shock</td>
<td>$&gt;15 \pm G_x$, 500 G/sec</td>
<td>Brief disorientation, drop in blood pressure to 90/60 mm Hg 15 - 30 sec post-impact, ECG nodal rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$12 + G_y$</td>
<td>Faint, pallor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular</td>
<td>$&gt;26 - G_x$, 850 G/sec, 0.002 sec</td>
<td>Chest pains, aches in back and neck muscles, stiff neck 1 - 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skeletal</td>
<td>$&gt;16 + G_x$, 1160 G/sec</td>
<td>Anterior lip vertebral compression fracture; most observed injury L1 - T7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt;16 - G_x$, 0.01 - 0.10 sec</td>
<td>Fracture of lumbar vertebrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&lt; 83 + G_x$, 3800 G/sec, 0.04 sec</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological</td>
<td>$\pm 15 - G_x$</td>
<td>Increased deep tendon reflexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$&gt;20 - G_x$, 400 + 800 G/sec</td>
<td>Appear stunned 10 - 15 sec at 20 G peak accelerations. Euphoria, hand tremor, decreased coordination, loquacity, increased muscle tone, gross involuntary movements in head, arms, trunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25 G</td>
<td>Deep tendon tendon reflexes absent for several sec, then hyperactive for about 1 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematological</td>
<td>$&gt;25 G - G_x$, 1000 G/sec</td>
<td>Abnormally slow EEG wave patterns observed for several min post-impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 $- G_x$, 400 + 800 G/sec</td>
<td>Blood thrombocytes reduced 1 hr post-impact. A week later thrombocyte count higher than control value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6–5 (Continued)
Observed Physiological Effects of Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effects</th>
<th>Impact Force</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psychological</td>
<td>10 to $-G_X$</td>
<td>Kohn symbol arrangement test shows distinctive changes, increasing with force level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Stress</td>
<td>$&gt;20 + G_X$</td>
<td>Chemical changes in adrenal blood; alterations in adrenal gland activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17-OHCS excretion levels increase significantly and are related to anxiety and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CNS stimulation of adrenocortical secretion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6-6

**Physiological Effects of Forward-Facing Linear (G\(_X\)) Impact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Date of Onset G/sec Velocity ft/sec</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Human Tests: Linear Acceleration (+G(_X)), Subjects Forward Facing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. [7]</td>
<td>Oriented ant.-post.; ss; sb, Shb, H1 unsupported</td>
<td>3-3.6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>Maximum tolerance without symptoms of cerebral concussion, 3-3.6</td>
<td>Henschke, 19-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. y</td>
<td>ss restrained by steel cable</td>
<td>18-20</td>
<td>0.01-0.10</td>
<td>No ill effects; later tests of 16-19 G caused fractures of lumbar vertebrae</td>
<td>Lovelace, Bales and Wulff, 19-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 50 [15]</td>
<td>Impact decelerator, 1 to test impact loads of 1500 lb &amp; 3000 lb on model-A vest</td>
<td>(350 lb load to chest)</td>
<td>0.050-0.070 (peak) .100 total</td>
<td>Transient bradycardia, apnea, forced expiration against closed glottic found best protection</td>
<td>Biernan, et al., 1946</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 20 yr. &amp; 120 lb; 30 [30]</td>
<td>Impact decelerator 2 to test impact loads of 2000 lb on Shb &amp; sb</td>
<td>0-1.6</td>
<td>0.1-0.2</td>
<td>Cutaneous waves traveled 4-14 ft/sec; long axis of body shortened 2 cm, and transverse axis widened approx. 2 cm, under 2000-lb impact force; body compressed approx. 3 cm ant.- post.; shoulder straps caused abrasions; rates of loading in excess of 1.000 sec result in marked discomfort to subject</td>
<td>Biernan, 1947 (See also, Biernan and Larson, 1946; Biernan, 1946)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 135 yr. 25-41 yr, 166.9-166.9 cm, 63-9-82.7 kg; [32]</td>
<td>Seated; 2000-ft rocket track</td>
<td>10-4.6</td>
<td>0.11-0.2</td>
<td>Tolerance limits approximate 500 G peaks at 500 G/sec rate on onset for 0.07 sec, with adequate restraint</td>
<td>Stapp, 1951</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6-6 (Continued)

Physiological Effects of Forward-Facing Linear (Gx) Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of</th>
<th>Experimental</th>
<th>Peak 1</th>
<th>Rate of</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subjects</td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td></td>
<td>Onset</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 6. | Seated; 2000-t rocket track | 10.2±5.3 | 0.01-0.19 | 0.15-0.17 | Vasoconstrictive reactions at 30-G peak; shock at 30-G peak with rate of change of deceleration of 1100 G/sec or more. At 38.6-G with 1370 G/sec rate of onset, fractures, syncope; albuminuria, 2+ for 6 hr. Con- 
tusions and muscle soreness due to staging for 6 days post-

| 7. | Seat restraint device | 5 | | | | |

8. | Seated; seat; 6-

| 9. | Steering wheel catapult | [16.+] | | | | |

A: Linear Tests. Linear Acceleration (-Gx), Subjects Forward Facing

- Stepp, 1963; 1965
- Lewis and Stepp, 1974
- Lewis and Stepp, 1977b; 1978
- Altman, 1968
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Speed, m/s</th>
<th>Mass, kg</th>
<th>Time, sec</th>
<th>Impact Duration, sec</th>
<th>Injury Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>67.5</td>
<td>19.6-16.5</td>
<td>[300]</td>
<td>0.15-0.31</td>
<td>No bruising up to 12 G; no protective muscular extensor response in lower limbs in &lt;0.100 sec.</td>
<td>Latham, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>[18]</td>
<td>80°; daisy track M/LAI</td>
<td>12.6-0.0 subj (trans)</td>
<td>0.051-0.100</td>
<td>No injuries reported</td>
<td>Needing, 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>15[15]</td>
<td>80°; daisy track</td>
<td>19.6-31.8</td>
<td>298-1100</td>
<td>0.065-0.086</td>
<td>No ill effects for 11 subjects, For 1 subject, anterior compression fracture of 5th and 6th thoracic vertebrae, linear fracture of 5th lumbar vertebrae, 100 nodal rhythm and shock 1 min post-impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>7[7]</td>
<td>Daisy track</td>
<td>30.3-34.8</td>
<td>0.034</td>
<td>Burning rectum, sore coccyx 1-5 days; stiff neck 1-5 days</td>
<td>Needing, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>6[6]</td>
<td>Daisy track</td>
<td>35.2-38.4</td>
<td>0.032</td>
<td>Stiff neck 1-10 days; albuminuria, 1+ to 2+, (clear in 8 hr); blood pressure 94/68; blurred vision in left eye; ophthalmoscope examination negative</td>
<td>Needing, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>52 77, 190.5 cm, 78.8 kg</td>
<td>Daisy track</td>
<td>39.8</td>
<td>0.075-0.124</td>
<td>Syncope; blood pressure, 78/0, ECG nodal rhythm. Anterior compression fracture of 5th and 6th thoracic vertebrae; linear fracture of 5th lumbar vertebrae.</td>
<td>Needing, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>5[55]</td>
<td>Daisy track</td>
<td>8.5-37.5 (Ch)</td>
<td>96-1223</td>
<td>0.070-0.194</td>
<td>Thrombocytopenia at &lt;20 G; thrombocyte count almost normal 24 hr after impact; widespread endothelial damage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: At various azimuth and elevations
Table 6–6 (Continued)

Physiological Effects of Forward-Facing Linear (-G) Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec Velocity ft/sec</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17. 70; 31-43 *y1; 35]</td>
<td>Daisy track</td>
<td>8.49-37.46</td>
<td>96-1223</td>
<td>0.075-0.153</td>
<td>Increase in skeletal muscular activity at -20 G, and at 800 G/sec rate of onset, as compared to -400 G/sec of onset when peak seat G was 20</td>
<td>Rhein and Taylor, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 20[20]</td>
<td>Crash demonstrator &quot;bopper&quot;</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>0.052</td>
<td>Relative bradycardia immediately following impact; abolished by 1.6 mg atropine sulfate injected intramuscularly 5-40 min preceding impact</td>
<td>Taylor, Rhein and Beers, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. [2]</td>
<td>Seated; decelerator sled</td>
<td>56 (cart); 35 (ab)</td>
<td>[29;37]</td>
<td>0.017 (cart); 0.041 (ab)</td>
<td>Data projected to 60 ft/sec impact. Development of seat belt protections</td>
<td>Ryan, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. 350; [31]</td>
<td>Seated, crash demonstrator &quot;bopper&quot;</td>
<td>5-15 (sled)</td>
<td>[20 (vel]]</td>
<td>0.052</td>
<td>Slight bradycardia</td>
<td>Rhein and Taylor, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 7(7]</td>
<td>Daisy Decelerator</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>[72.8]</td>
<td>Pre- and post-impact elevated levels of urinary VMA excretion indicating subject anxiety accompanied by sympathetic-adrenal hyperfunction.</td>
<td>Hanson and Foster, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>5 [30]</td>
<td>RAF Swing frame device, F-111 IAM and USAF harnesses</td>
<td>6-14</td>
<td>64 - 310</td>
<td>Subjective reports of collar bone and throat pain, groin tenderness</td>
<td>Reader, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>6(6)</td>
<td>0-13-8 Daisy decelerator Y-III restraint</td>
<td>9-14.0</td>
<td>354.4-359.6</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Sonntag, 1968</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: Ab = abdomen; ant. = anterior; Ba = back; b = belt; Ba-Ch = back to chest; Bu = buttocks; Bu 1st = buttocks first; Bu-Hd = buttocks to head; caps. = capsule; Ch = chest; e = ejection; es = ejection seat; ff = free fall(s); Ft 1st = feet first; Ft-Hd = feet to head; h = harness; Hd = head; Hld 1st = head first; Hld-Bu = head to buttocks; Hld-Ft = head to feet; Hldt = head strap; hor. = horizontal; Kn = knees; MIAI = MIAI propulsion catapult; par. = parallel; par.-Sp = parallel to spine; pl = platform; post. = posterior; rt = right; s = seat; s-Hd = seat to head; sb = seat belt; Sh = shoulder; shh = shoulder harness; Sp = spine; st = strap; subj. = subject; ss = swing seat; trans = transverse(l); trans-Sp = transverse to spine; ue = upward ejection; vel chg = velocity change.

Though investigations have been conducted on other organisms, such as frogs, fish and turtles, data have not been reported. Inertial resultant of body acceleration along x, y, z axis refers to direction of motion of body organs upon impact. 1Weights arrested by rod-head which transmits impact up load rod through straps to subject. Subject strapped in restraint seat on back and drop weight jerked against body to simulate forces in aircraft crash. 2Tolerance to linear decelerations is limited by rate of change, body area involved, and restraints used. No apparent correlation between tolerance and age, weight, height, and backward or forward facing positions. 3Plateau G of trapezoidal decelerations—time curve calculated from displacement—time record. 4Calculated slope.

### Table 6-7

**Physiological Effects of Rearward-Facing Linear (+G<sub>x</sub>) Impact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/Sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 [7]</td>
<td>ss; sbliked; B5 unsupported</td>
<td>20±2</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>Maximum tolerance without symptoms of cerebral concussion, 34.50</td>
<td>Henselke, 1945 Ref.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 [12]</td>
<td>2000-ft rocket track</td>
<td>11.5±31.5&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>469±1065&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.16-0.476</td>
<td>Safe tolerance, 30-G linear deceleration for 0.11 sec</td>
<td>Stapp, 1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 [2]</td>
<td>Seated; 2000-ft rocket track</td>
<td>34.8±35.0&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1150±1600</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>&gt;30-G peak and 100 G/see resulted in unpleasant pressure sensations, pallor, drop in blood pressure, increased pulse rate, and occasional venous stasis of the retinae</td>
<td>Stapp, 1951; 1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 [19]</td>
<td>Seated; 2000-ft rocket track</td>
<td>10-55</td>
<td>500-1200</td>
<td>0.15-0.42</td>
<td>&gt;30-G peak and 100 G/see resulted in unpleasant pressure sensations, pallor, drop in blood pressure, increased pulse rate, and occasional venous stasis of the retinae</td>
<td>Stapp, 1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Oral-restraint device</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Comparison of rearward and forward-facing effect upon post-impact escape time: G sec not significant at this level</td>
<td>Lewis and Stapp, 1957a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. [1]</td>
<td>60°; daisy track</td>
<td>00.7-31.8 (5h); 00.6-25.6 (9h)</td>
<td>201.1-96-0 (5h); +9.5 (9h)</td>
<td>0.46-0.27 (5h); 0.97 (9h)</td>
<td>Mild discomfort—skin abrasions, headaches, chest pain, brief disorientation, dizziness in back and neck muscles—persisting to 9 h; blood pressure dropped</td>
<td>Nedding, 1970a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. [1]</td>
<td>75°; daisy track</td>
<td>14.2-15.1 (5h)</td>
<td>3.4-11 (5h)</td>
<td>0.03-0.18 (5h)</td>
<td>1 subject, at 17.1.6 for 0.099 sec, skipped systole at 1-th and 9-th beats, slightly irregular pulse, and slowing 2nd heart round; no discomfort in other subjects</td>
<td>Nedding, 1970b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. [1]</td>
<td>90°; daisy track</td>
<td>1.7-8 (5h); 0.5-7 (9h)</td>
<td>0.18 (5h); 0.12 (9h)</td>
<td>0.54-0.18 (5h);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. [1]</td>
<td>95°; daisy track</td>
<td>7.7-15.6 (Cha); 9.3-8.7 (5h); 31.2 (6h)</td>
<td>311-702 (5h); 508-300 (6h)</td>
<td>0.1-0.2 (5h); 0.14-0.18 (6h)</td>
<td>No perceptible discomfort; normal ECG and artiery; pulse average increase war 12.6 (50 beats)/min 50 sec after run</td>
<td>Nedding, 1970a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. [1]</td>
<td>90°; daisy track</td>
<td>18.1-10.6 (5h); 11.1-8.5 (6h)</td>
<td>375-592 (5h); 508-300 (6h)</td>
<td>0.12-0.16 (5h); 0.14-0.18 (6h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. [1]</td>
<td>90°; daisy track</td>
<td>7.9-15.6 (Cha); 9.3-8.7 (6h); 31.2 (6h)</td>
<td>311-702 (5h); 508-300 (6h)</td>
<td>0.12-0.16 (5h); 0.14-0.18 (6h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. [1]</td>
<td>60°; daisy track</td>
<td>9.9 (5h); 11.5 (6h)</td>
<td>172 (5h); 512 (6h)</td>
<td>0.39 (5h); 0.06 (6h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. [1]</td>
<td>0°; daisy track</td>
<td>9.9 (5h); 11.5 (6h)</td>
<td>172 (5h); 512 (6h)</td>
<td>0.39 (5h); 0.06 (6h)</td>
<td>Mild discomfort—skin abrasions, headaches, chest pain, brief disorientation, dizziness in back and neck muscles—persisting to 9 h; blood pressure dropped</td>
<td>Nedding, 1970b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>15°; daisy track</td>
<td>29.3-30.5 (Cha)</td>
<td>28.9-30.6 (5h); 29.9-30.6 (6h)</td>
<td>0.00-0.00 (5h); 0.00-0.00 (6h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Subjects</td>
<td>Experimental Conditions</td>
<td>Peak</td>
<td>Rate of Ext 2nd (Velocity/ft/sec)</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Physiological Effects</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[No. of Tests]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>30°, dairy track</td>
<td>99.4</td>
<td>772.2 - 51.6</td>
<td>0.035 - 0.057</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>45°, dairy track</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>108.1 - 254.1</td>
<td>0.57 - 0.067</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Exertion; 10-lb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sandbag dropped</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-12 in. on Ab without</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>warning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>[13]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dairy track</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Ch track]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>97.5 - 22.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Ch track]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>163 - 3826</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dairy track</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Ch track]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.7 - 32.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>[47]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100°, dairy track</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Ch track]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 - 39.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>67, young adult;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(160)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dairy track;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shb lap b, inverted V-strap</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Ch]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37.5 - 82.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Impact</td>
<td>Study</td>
<td>Orientation</td>
<td>Veh.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>[1] Daisy truck; Convair B-b</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>No ill effects</td>
<td>Seeding and Cook, 1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>35°, 41-44 yr; (33)</td>
<td>Seated; dummy demonstrator &quot;bogger&quot;</td>
<td>5-15</td>
<td>Bradycardia for at least 5 beats; effect hypothesized as result of vagal excitation from different lab, possibly carotid apparatus or lung (see line 42)</td>
<td>Rossin and Taylor, 1962</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Napthorp sled, molded restraint, SR I, II</td>
<td>60-07</td>
<td>11,080-12,530</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>All survived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>18[18]</td>
<td>Daisy decelerator 0-5-15° orientation</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>Impact under these conditions did not produce significant lowering in maximum voluntary ventilation performance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6-8
Physiological Effects of Lateral (+G\textsubscript{y}) Right Impact on the Human

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Craft Give [Velocity change/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Human Tests</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>15 [16]</td>
<td>Mark 1 Vertical Inclination Tower Project Mercury, Full torso restraint, rigid seat couch &amp; rigid &quot;microballistic&quot; couch.</td>
<td>6.21-21.5</td>
<td>200-1150 [9.25-41.3]</td>
<td>0.136-1-1</td>
<td>One subject noted pain in right trapezius; one reported &quot;wind knocked out.&quot; Tests below subjective tolerance level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 [2]</td>
<td>Delay Decelerator Apollo restraint 500-1000 g/s [9-18] seated or unseated</td>
<td>77.7±6.7</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>92±4</td>
<td>No complaints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6-9

**Physiological Effects of Lateral (\( -G_y \)) Left Impact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects (No. of Tests)</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset ( G/\sec ) [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5-15 RMS ( +G_z ); upper-torso n</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>0.051-0.16</td>
<td>Head and neck pain; left leg and arm pain; no injury</td>
<td>Holcomb and Hulse, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>77 [77]</td>
<td>4.25-41.6</td>
<td>60-135</td>
<td>0.051-0.110</td>
<td>Head and neck pain; right leg and arm pain; no injury</td>
<td>Weber, et al., 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>77 [77]</td>
<td>2.05-4.05</td>
<td>40.7-50.6 (head) 4.3-5.4 (torso)</td>
<td>0.1-0.3</td>
<td>No permanent physiological changes at 2.25 G avg. for 0.1 sec. Minor physical complaints reported by 50% of subjects were exposed to 6.25 G avg. 2 sec above.</td>
<td>Zabriskie, 1966; Zabriskie, et al., 1965</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6–9 (Continued)

Physiological Effects of Lateral (\(G_y\)) Left Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.7 - 13.8 {slid G}</td>
<td>[33.6 - 34.7]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Er of one subject hit helmet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>5.7 - 14.1</td>
<td>400 - 1100</td>
<td>No subject complaints in 4 tests, dizziness, burns pain noted in 5 tests.</td>
<td>Arthstein and Brown, 1966</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10.6 - 17.7</td>
<td>93 - 390</td>
<td>Tenderness in groin, collar bone and throat, discomfort and pain subjectively reported.</td>
<td>Reader, 1967</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>Work muscle strain in one subject.</td>
<td>Courtois, 1968</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6–10
Physiological Effects of Headward (+G<sub>z</sub>) Vertical Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 8[8]</td>
<td>oe, seated; test catapult</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.010-0.015</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tolerance with no upper arm support, 25 G; with support, 26 G</td>
<td>Geerts, 1944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 5[5]</td>
<td>oe, seated; test catapult; ra &amp; ab restraints; no arm support</td>
<td>20-23</td>
<td>0.010-0.015</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 7</td>
<td>oe, seated; test catapult</td>
<td>25-33</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 types of seat cushions tested; only seat-type parachute reduced acceleration peaks</td>
<td>Geerts, 1944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 2[2]</td>
<td>oe; catapult seat</td>
<td>10-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No harmful effects; peak G below injury level</td>
<td>Lovelace, et al., 1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 27</td>
<td>oe; inclined track</td>
<td>18-20</td>
<td>0.1-0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Physiological limit for seat ejection; minimum injury</td>
<td>Lovelace, et al., 1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. †</td>
<td>oe; catapult of KE-280 jet fighter ea</td>
<td>10-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compression of spinal column; CNS concussion with contrecoup symptoms; hemostatic effects; inner-ear injury</td>
<td>Richter, 1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. †</td>
<td>oe; rubber cushion</td>
<td>0-34</td>
<td>6.4-160</td>
<td>0.1-2.5</td>
<td>No injuries reported</td>
<td>Boebrace and Irrgang, 1945</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Human Tests. Upward Linear Acceleration (+G<sub>z</sub>)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8.</th>
<th>Bu lat; es; sh; Shh; Ht unsupported</th>
<th>56.5</th>
<th>0.01</th>
<th>Maximum tolerance without symptoms of cerebral concussion, 54.5 G</th>
<th>Henschke, 1945</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Pt lat; es; sh; Shh; Ht unsupported</td>
<td>53.6</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Pt lat, Kn bent; es; sh; Shh; Ht unsupported</td>
<td>86.0</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Bu-Mti; es; 20000-ft rocket track</td>
<td>5-35</td>
<td>50-440</td>
<td>0.004-0.03</td>
<td>No injuries reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Bu-Hti; 30-ft catapult; es; B-14 lap b &amp; sh</td>
<td>14.9-16.6 (M); 9.6-10.6 (M), 19.6-20.6 (H-T); 10.5-11.1 (s)</td>
<td>0.05-0.12</td>
<td>High-speed photos showed men appeared to move downward into seat at firing (seat moves faster than man due to compression of body and parachute); movement of unrestrained head</td>
<td>Oser, et al., 1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>es; test tower; Ht rest in varied positions</td>
<td>6-16; 24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Extremal flexion and extension of neck; injury at X12 G if head not held erect</td>
<td>Savely, et al., 1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>es; Mmm. Air Experimental Station ea</td>
<td>17-21</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.03-0.14</td>
<td>Recommended maximum hip acceleration, 20 G; time to reach maximum catapult pressure, 0.00 sec or more; dynamic response factor of subject pressure kept to 1.20 maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>es; ea tower; 2-in. sponge rubber a over 4-in. wood block</td>
<td>10-14.6(s); 13.5-22.6 (M); 10.5-15.6(M); 15.0-15.8 (M)</td>
<td>[44-46]</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>Terminal velocity tolerated for ejection at 14-15 G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Physiological Effects of Headward (+G<sub>v</sub>) Vertical Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>.57 [58]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Watts, et al., 1947a, Ref. 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Flexion of neck, pain, headache; prevented by use of ejection seat headrest</td>
<td>Watts, et al., 1947a, Ref. 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>19-53 yr, 45-57.7 kg [61]</td>
<td>9.6-21.7 (Hips); 7.9-26.7 (SH); 7.9-22.5 (Hd)</td>
<td>7.0 [39.2]; 11.2 [13]; 12.2 [22]</td>
<td>No injury, little discomfort from 18-21 G; critical rate of onset, near 100 G; sec imparted to seat for 0.1 sec; acceleration beyond 100 G/sec for 0.01 sec may be excessive</td>
<td>Watts, et al., 1947a, Ref. 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>15-21</td>
<td>100 (maximum) [56]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mild pain in buttocks, lumbar, thoracic, or cervical region; more discomfort with amputee at 10- to 12-G ejection than with ejection at 17- to 21-G ejection. 2 subjects noted pain in neck and headaches. At 20-G ejection, 1 subject noted severe pain in 4th and 6th thoracic vertebrae, which lasted 6 mo.</td>
<td>Watts, et al., 1947b, Ref. 442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Mass (kg)</td>
<td>Test Rig</td>
<td>G-Force</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>40.7-90</td>
<td>Test tower</td>
<td>9.5-15</td>
<td>Back relieved by arrester during ejection; 12-26% body mass supported by arrester during deceleration to 10 G, 24-56% body mass by lumbar vertebrae</td>
<td>Savely and Ames, 1948 Ref. 431</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>6.2-15</td>
<td>Drop tests with torsion b</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Sharp sensation in lower pelvis; discomfort after tests. At 11-2 G peak, calculated spinal load with harness, 500 lb; without harness, 900 lb</td>
<td>Kalogeris, 1956 Ref. 418</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>110-Ft Royal Air Force vertical test rig</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>[100]</td>
<td>Anatomical tolerance limits. Ejection at 5 G or more, in first 0.05-0.09 sec, caused discomfort</td>
<td>Latham, 1957 Ref. 421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>135 lb, mean age 22 yr [111]</td>
<td>Seated in rigid chair; vertical drop apparatus</td>
<td>10 (8h); 95 (a)</td>
<td>Severe pain in chest, spine, head, stomach; general severe shock</td>
<td>Swearingen, et al., 1960 Ref. 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>120 lb, seated comfort chair; vertical drop apparatus</td>
<td>9 (8h); 322 G (a)</td>
<td>255 (8h); 44,000 (a)</td>
<td>No pain; slight shock in stomach; peak 3 not maximum tolerance</td>
<td>Ref. 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>154 lb, standing, knee locked; vertical drop apparatus</td>
<td>10 (8h); 65 (pl)</td>
<td>666 (8h); 10,000 (pl)</td>
<td>Severe pain in top of head, back, chest, stomach, lower back, hip joints, legs, feet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Subjects</td>
<td>Experimental Conditions</td>
<td>Peak G</td>
<td>Rate of Onset g/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</td>
<td>Duration sec</td>
<td>Physiological Effects</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[97]</td>
<td>Standing, legs flexed; vertical drop apparatus</td>
<td>7(2g); 250 (pl)</td>
<td>585(8g); 50,000(pl)</td>
<td>0.16(8g); 0.0075(pl)</td>
<td>Shock in feet; slight pain in legs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[44]</td>
<td>Squatting; vertical drop apparatus</td>
<td>5(2g); 135 (pl)</td>
<td>250(8g); 26,600(pl)</td>
<td>0.20(8g); 0.0075(pl)</td>
<td>Severe pain in legs, heels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[11][46]</td>
<td>Seated; B-70 1/3 (capsa.; 12-50 gal)</td>
<td>12-50 gal</td>
<td>450-5400 (capsa.)</td>
<td>0.006</td>
<td>Tolerance limit, 24-30 peak with 30 ft/sec velocity change at 50% g/sec rate of onset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[11][46]</td>
<td>Seated; B-70 1/3 (capsa.; 12-50 gal)</td>
<td>12-50 gal</td>
<td>5000-6500 (capsa.)</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>Tolerance limit, 24-30 peak with 30 ft/sec velocity change at 50% g/sec rate of onset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[32]</td>
<td>Ft list; B-98 caps. 2, upper-torsos h</td>
<td>[32]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sharp initial pain; X-rays after 2 days showed compression fracture of 3rd thoracic vertebra, with 7.5 cm loss in height of vertebra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 At various azimuths and elevations. 7 Monorail vertical drop 9 ft-9 in. into water. 1 Monorail vertical drop 9 ft-9 in. onto dirt. 8 Maximum rate for any 0.1 second. 10 Velocity from accelerograph record. 11 Maximum velocity record calculated. 12 Cushion deflated for 6 subjects. 13 Drop-test facility with crushable paper honeycomb impact attenuator. 14 Calculated from author's data.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec [velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>H6-Ft^19</td>
<td>3-10 estimated</td>
<td>4-60</td>
<td>0.05-2.5</td>
<td>Brain hemorrhages; 3 G for more than 1 sec unsafe</td>
<td>Schrenk and Irresong, 1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>[1] H6 let; ss; ab; Sth; H6 unsupported</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>Maximum tolerance without symptoms of cerebral concussion, 34.3 G</td>
<td>Renschke, 1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[7] H6 let; ss; ab; Sth; Ft supported; H6 unsupported</td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>[7] H3 let; Hk bent; ss; ab; Sth; H6 unsupported</td>
<td>69.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5[12] H6-Ft; 50-ft es tower; hor., with a reversed</td>
<td>6.8 (Hb), 10.0 (Ha); 7.5 (a)</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.27-0.33</td>
<td>Tolerances are 4 G for 0.3 sec at 58 ft/sec for 5-ft acceleration distance; 7 G for 0.17 sec at 57 ft/sec for 5 ft; 10 G at 22 ft/sec for 1 ft</td>
<td>Shaw, 1948</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6-11
Physiological Effects of Footward (Gz) Vertical Impact

Human Tests. Downward Linear Acceleration (-Gz)
### Table 6–11 (Continued)

**Physiological Effects of Footward (-G\(_2\)) Vertical Impact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Test Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of onset G/ sec</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 of young adults [60]</td>
<td>M-2-Ft; Mercury couch; 20° angle, 87°; full-pressure suit and helmet</td>
<td>18.1-31.8</td>
<td>895-1540 (sub); 965-8140 (sled)</td>
<td>0.070-0.150</td>
<td>Tolerance without injury 14.5-G plateau, 18.5-G peak impact tailward for 0.06 sec, with maximum rate of onset 1540 and 31.8-G peak; no apparent effects on CNS</td>
<td>Critt, et al., 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 of 28 yr</td>
<td>M-2-Ft; Mercury couch; 30° angle, 107°; couch angle, 5° with s</td>
<td>4.3-18.1</td>
<td>6000-8000 (max vel change)</td>
<td>0.060-0.200</td>
<td>Negative tailward impact of 10.5 G, with subject acceleration of 17 G at 8140 G rate of onset, successfully tolerated</td>
<td>High, et al., 1963; Ref. 216</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 6-12

Biomedical Effects of Free-Fall Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ft-Hd (+G&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt;) parachute n</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>15-20</td>
<td>0.1-0.2</td>
<td>Dull headache</td>
<td>Raff, 1942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 3G, 5Q [8]</td>
<td>½ prone (-G&lt;sub&gt;y&lt;/sub&gt;), ½ supine (+G&lt;sub&gt;y&lt;/sub&gt;); accidental ff, 55-105 ft</td>
<td>26.5-209 estimated</td>
<td>750-28,000 [59.4-109] calculated</td>
<td>0.012-0.073</td>
<td>Ranged from no injury to extensive trauma, but all subjects recovered</td>
<td>DeHaven, 1942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1G, 55 yr; [1]</td>
<td>Prone (-G&lt;sub&gt;y&lt;/sub&gt;); accidental ff</td>
<td>162 estimated</td>
<td>22,600</td>
<td>0.014</td>
<td>Bilateral fractures of ankles and mandible, abdominal rigidity, complaint of chest pain for 36 hr, blood in urine and mouth</td>
<td>DeHaven and Petry, 1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 30[30]</td>
<td>Prone or supine&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt; (+G&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt;); ff mountain climbing</td>
<td>[30-152]</td>
<td>Velocity of 33 ft/sec calculated as 50% probability of major injury in transverse direction</td>
<td>Stockman, 1959</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 1G, 21 yr [1]</td>
<td>Bu-Hd (+G&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt;); suicidal ff, 210 ft onto hard ground</td>
<td>4128 calculated</td>
<td>2,100,666 [10,005]</td>
<td>0.0023</td>
<td>Extensive trauma to all areas except legs; fatal 10 days after impact; close to maximum level of human survival for vertical impact</td>
<td>Snyder, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of</td>
<td>Experimental Conditions</td>
<td>Peak G</td>
<td>Rate of Onset G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</td>
<td>Duration sec</td>
<td>Physiological Effects</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjects [No. of Tests]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[17-116][25]</td>
<td>0.0006-0.054</td>
<td>Some survivable falls found to involve high-impact velocity, with durations shorter than in previous human experiments</td>
<td>Snyder, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 10k G, 35 G  1-91 yr [197]</td>
<td>z, y, z body orientations, accidental ff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7 uninjured in feet-first +Gz impacts. Cerebral concussion and basilar skull fracture common in head-first impacts (+Gz)</td>
<td>Snyder, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 11 G, 8 G  16 mo-4 yr [19]</td>
<td>z, y, z; soil, concrete, snow</td>
<td>[25-61]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. 34 [34]</td>
<td>Children, aged 1-12 years</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical survival velocity, ca. 110 ft/sec; survival up to 116 ft/sec or 133 ft/sec (standard velocity). Feet-first impacts 5-7 times more survivable: 68% had fractures, usually compressions of L2, L3, L4 lumbar vertebrae; 16% had internal trauma, and 3% had no clinical trauma; no injuries to feet or ankles</td>
<td>Snyder, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Injury Type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 10  | Head lat. (-45); voluntary & involuntary ff into water                        | [59-97]
    | [23]                                                                         |      |          | Bilateral pneumothorax, chest pain, renal & bladder hematomas; 1 subject uninjured |
| 11  | Supine, ant.-post. position (-15); voluntary & involuntary ff into water     | [87-92]
    | [23]                                                                         |      |          | Contusions, abrasions, lung hemorrhage, compression of 1st lumbar & 12th thoracic vertebrae |
| 12  | +50 feet just onto concrete, soil, water                                      | [25-120]   |          | No injury below 44 ft/sec; fatal in case at 50 ft/sec onto concrete, but only minor injuries at 74 ft/sec in another water survived at 120 ft/sec |
| 13  | +50 lateral concrete, soil                                                    | [25-28]   |          | Contusions, fall in soil at 25 ft/sec; 2 yr old; 5 yr old falling on concrete at 25 ft/sec compound depressed fracture RT parietal, unconscious 10 min post-impact |
| 14  | +50 prone, concrete, water                                                   | [22-26]   |          | Concussion reported at 22 ft/sec |
| 16  | Hands and knees 4 yr old children                                            | [38]      |          | Laceration, ankle sprain |
| 17  | Prone, post.-ant. position (-15); voluntary & involuntary ff into water      | [80]
    | [23]                                                                         |      |          | Multiple contusions, lung ruptures, mediastinal compression syndrome, mediastinal emphysema, left pneumonitis and pleuritis, lacerations |
### Table 6-12

Biomedical Effects of Free-Fall Impact

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects [No. of Tests]</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec [Velocity ft/sec]</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18. 2[12]</td>
<td>On rt side (-g); voluntary &amp; in- voluntary ff into water</td>
<td></td>
<td>[57-59]^{25}</td>
<td></td>
<td>Contusions, basilar skull fracture, rib fracture, renal hematoma, rupture of right tympanic membrane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. [55]</td>
<td>Age 7-26; 4 yrs selected</td>
<td>35.8-159.0</td>
<td>[24-51]</td>
<td>0.007-0.02</td>
<td>Survival at forces ranging from 1,974-1,264 lb.</td>
<td>Snyder, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. 14[14]</td>
<td>-g, head first into concrete soil, snow</td>
<td></td>
<td>[29-64]</td>
<td></td>
<td>48 ft/sec head first fatal to 6 mo old; fall in identical conditions produced cerebral concussion contusions to 6 yr child; other impacts to 64 ft/sec survived with cerebral concussions, and/or skull fractures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Calculated from author's data. 2. Tests included dying in water. 3. Air Crew Equipment Laboratory, USN, Philadelphia. 4. Linear decelerator. 5. Wedge impact attenuators. 6. Attenuators of stabilizing fin slicing angles and sliceable cylinders. 7. Corrected for aerodynamic drag. 8. Body position during free-fall assumed in some cases. 9. H. americanae, 4 Helonotus sp. 10. At abdominal surface. 11. For 300- to 400-0 peaks. 12. Estimated from authors data. 13. Subjects.

In five cases of thirty-four total force calculations were estimated.
For each region of the body, specific tolerance can be defined. The physical properties of bone are best known, but much less information is available concerning physical properties of most soft tissues and organ systems. Such information is important since human tolerance to a specific impact may be limited by the soft tissue damage to a critical organ at levels far below skeletal structural failure. Damage may occur at the cellular level with no gross evidence of shear, tensile, or compressive forces. Such localized trauma may limit whole body tolerance to the lowest threshold of an organ or tissue.

Any attempt at stress analysis of man with respect to impact forces must take into account the responses of the body as a whole: the simultaneous responses of different kinds and states of materials in the body structure, such as the pneumatic and hydraulic behavior of gases and fluids, plastic deformation of soft tissues, the stretching of mesenteries and ligaments by organ masses, and the nonlinearities prevalent throughout the body. Human stress analysis must determine reversible and irreversible, disabling and fatal failure criteria for the human structure, and should relate measurements to points of structural weakness or of load concentrations (von Gierke, 1961). To better understand the mechanics of the body, mechanical analogs have been devised (Coermann et al., 1960; Shapland, 1961; Payne & Stech, 1962; Feder & Root, 1964; Kornhauser, 1964; NASA, 1965; von Gierke, 1967; Stech & Payne, 1968). Eventually, there may be sufficient data about impedance of segments, body masses, coupling, damping, kinetics, and other features of the models so that they may permit accurate predictions about the effects of the random, multivectored, and, often, sequential forces that operate under actual impact environments.

Lastly, biomechanical effects of impact are dependent, as are physiological effects, upon the environmental complex surrounding the impact event, that is, body orientation, velocity, protection, and so forth.

Physical Properties of Human Tissue

Table 6-13 shows some physical properties of human tissue. Data concerning the strength of the vertebrae are also available (Ruff, 1950; Perey, 1957; Gurdjian, 1962; Crocker & Higgins, 1966; Henzel, 1967).

Vertebral Fracture

Escape ejection accelerations from high performance aircraft have resulted in vertebral injury, generally compression of the anterior lips of the lumbar or thoracic vertebrae (Stapp, 1959; Jones et al., 1964; Chubb et al., 1965; Ewing, 1966; Collins et al., 1968; Klopfenstein, 1969). This may be due to poor seat padding, seat contour, inadequate restraint, forced head flexion, poor trunk-thigh angle, or spinal extension or flexion (Jones et al., 1964). Approximately 80 percent of all vertebral injuries occur in the thoracic region. Available literature to 1965 on ejection-related vertebral injuries in aircrew together with basic findings and analysis of the ejection environment are contained in a study by Higgins et al., (1965.)
### Table 6-13
Physical Properties of Human Tissue

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Tissue, Soft</th>
<th>Compact Bone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density, g/cm³</td>
<td>1 – 1.2</td>
<td>1.93 – 1.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young's Modulus, dyne/cm²</td>
<td>7.5 × 10⁴</td>
<td>2.26 × 10¹¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume compressibility, * dyne/cm²</td>
<td>2.6 × 10¹⁰</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear elasticity, * dyne/cm²</td>
<td>2.5 × 10⁴</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear viscosity, * dyne sec/cm²</td>
<td>1.5 × 10²</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound velocity, cm/sec</td>
<td>1.5 – 1.6 × 10⁵</td>
<td>3.36 × 10⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acoustic impedance, dyne sec/cm³</td>
<td>1.7 × 10⁵</td>
<td>6.0 × 10⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile strength, dyne/cm²</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>9.75 × 10⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shearing strength, dyne/cm², parallel</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>4.9 × 10⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.16 × 10⁹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Lamé elastic moduli.

(After Goldman & von Gierke, 1960)
Compressive load analysis of vertebra-disc complexes have demonstrated that the vertebral end-plates are the initial failing structures of the spinal column (Brown et al., 1957; Snyder, 1958; Roaf, 1960; Patrick, 1961; Stech & Payne, 1963; Henzel, 1967). Vertebrae of cadavers fail at loads as low as 435 pounds (Patrick, 1961). Compression fractures of the vertebrae have occurred under experimental test conditions. An experimental impact at 16 mph of a B-58 escape capsule at 43.6 G (spinal) measured on the subject resulted in one reported compression fracture of T-3 (Holcomb & Huheery, 1962).

An ejection seat impact profile of 18.8 peak G for 100 msec with rate of onset of 420 G/sec and body orientation 34° back from the vertical axis (+Gz) produced compression fractures to the fourth and fifth thoracic vertebrae in one subject. Others have been exposed to 26 G and velocity change of 8 m/sec in the +Gx orientation (off-axis 45°) under the same conditions with complaint of occasional “mild transient pain” over the area of the second to fifth thoracic vertebrae (Henzel et al., 1965). More recently a human volunteer received a compression fracture of the seventh thoracic vertebra under impact conditions of 16.62 +Gz peak sled G, with an onset rate of 1160 G/sec, entrance velocity of 39.8 ft/sec and braking distance of 26.5 inches (Klopfenstein, 1969).

End-plate and vertebral body injury is much more apt to occur during spinal axial loading than is intervertebral disc disruption (Ruff, 1950; Perey, 1957; Roaf, 1960; Henzel, 1967). Work by Kazarian et al., (1968) has identified the mechanisms of other vertebral body injuries in +Gz vertical impact. There is general agreement that a peak of 20 to 21 G for a duration of less than 0.1 second at a rate of onset of 250 to 300 G/sec is tolerable if the spine is properly positioned for +Gz impact (Watts et al., 1947b; Beckman et al., 1953; Jones et al., 1964). A thorough review of the biomechanical aspects of vertebral injury is found in Henzel (1967). A viscoelastic rod model which includes damping has been used to simulate the spinal column mathematically (Terry & Roberts, 1968).

Head Injury

Injury to the head is the most frequent and severe result of impact, and 75 percent of aircraft crash fatalities may be attributed to head injury. Usually such trauma occurs through head contact with the structure or projections rather than the action of acceleration forces on the head as a whole. The shape and elastic properties of the object injuring the head and exposure time are of prime importance in determining the degree of injury. Dynamic load measurements on the skull and knee bone conducted with less than 1 in.² penetrators (such as a control knob) show that skull penetration takes place in five steps: initial load build-up as the penetrator loads the entire skull structure; sudden penetration of the outer layer of compact bone, with abrupt falloff in load, in primarily a tensile fracture approximately the circumference of the penetrator; compression of the diploe layer; a cone-shaped shear failure extending to the inner layer of compact bone; and finally fracture of the inner table in the form
of a plug larger than the diameter of the penetrator. Soft tissue does not significantly (10 percent) alter the skull penetration load (Melvin et al., 1969).

The frontal and occipital bones of the skull have been the subject of numerous impact studies (Gurdjian et al., 1949; Lissner & Evans, 1958; Gurdjian, 1962), but limited data are available related to lateral ($2G_y$) impact tolerance of the parietal or temporal bones (Nahum et al., 1968). Experimental studies in progress indicate that lateral blows to the parietal or temporal area result in fracture at about half the loads required to fracture a frontal bone. Within the conditions studied, the total energy required for skull fracture of frontal bone varies from 400 to 900 in.-lb, with an average often assumed to be 600 in.-lb ($6.8 \times 10^8$ ergs) (Roth, 1967).

Experimental studies also indicate that facial bones fracture due to tension, not compression (Huelke, 1962). Hodgson (1967) found that 1000 lb of force was tolerated for durations of 3 msec or less, while impacts lasting beyond 4 msec produced fracture at approximately 200 lb for a 1 in.$^2$ area of distribution.

A mathematical model describing the response of the cadaver zygomatic (cheek) bones to blunt impact has been used (Hodgson et al., 1966). Impacts as low as 30 to 40 G for 10 to 40 msec may produce transient unconsciousness. Fracture tolerance for the facial bones is about 30 G for the nose, 50 G cheekbone, 100 G for teeth ($3.6 \text{ in}^2$), 40 G mandible, 80 G for 3 msec (1 in.$^2$ area), or 150 G ($4 \text{ in}^2$ area) for the forehead (Swearingen, 1965). For a contact area of 1 in.$^2$, fracture tolerance values for the cheekbone have been found to approximate 200 to 225 lb, for the temporal-parietal (side of head) area, 450 to 550 lb, and 900 to 1100 lb, for the frontal area (Nahum et al., 1968). A 600 Hz natural frequency, 0.01 damping factor, 9.5 lb simple system has been found to represent occiput acceleration response to impacts on the forehead for a 1 in.$^2$ area (within 5 percent), for a wide range of pulse durations and acceleration amplitudes in the cadaver (Hodgson & Patrick, 1968). Such results must be used with caution for the living human.

Neck injury, especially to the cervical spinal cord at the first vertebra, appears to occur from hyperextension rearwards followed by abrupt flexion when the whole body is accelerated from back to front without head support. Neck injury may be aggravated by the increased mass of a helmet. Concussion may be accompanied by deformation or fracture of the skull with shear strains throughout the brain. An experimental model of the human head shows the existence of pressure gradients along three orthogonal axes, and at levels of impact to the forehead of less than 80 G, the pressure gradients are linear in shape. Cerebrospinal fluid flow can produce shear stresses previously demonstrated in the region of the brain stem (Roberts et al., 1966). There is a voluminous literature regarding head impact, skull fracture, cervical injury, and the mechanisms of brain injury (Lindgren, 1966; Caveness & Walker, 1966; National Institutes of Health, 1969; Gurdjian et al., 1970; Hodgson, 1970; Thomas, 1970).
Lower Limb Fracture

Mechanical stiffness of the lower limbs (Hirsch & White, 1965) and the fracture tolerance to bending force in impact (Snyder, 1961; Young, 1967; Mather, 1968) have been studied. The lower leg (tibia) can tolerate a concentrated impact of 1000 to 1500 lb prior to fracture (Young, 1967), and the knee and leg voluntary limit is 1050 lb, with the fracture level at about 1500 lb (SAE, 1970).

Soft Tissues

The mechanical properties of soft tissues have had limited study. The skin appears to fail more often in a tensile or cohesive manner than from a shearing or cutting action. Penetration resistance of human skin is thought to be about 15 to 20 lb (Gadd et al., 1967). Data are available relative to mechanical properties of the tendons, muscles, blood vessels (refer to extensive references in Fung, 1958) and the nervous system (Ommaya, 1968).

Visceral motion responses in humans have been measured by cineradiography. Sixteen subjects were exposed to triangular deceleration pulses (velocity change of up to 2.44 m/sec, time duration of about 7.5 msec, peak acceleration up to 654 m/sec) with successive radiographic images (60/sec) obtained during the impulse. A density wave was observed and interpreted as a shear wave (dilation) traveling through the abdomen and torso. It was concluded that voluntary tolerance may be below 4 m/sec (13 ft/sec velocity change) (Weis & Mohr, 1967).

Resonance and Impedance

Studies such as that cited above suggest that the heart, great vessel branches, and associated visceral attachments behave as a spring-mass system with subcritical damping frequency of 7.5 Hz for the human diaphragm when the abdominal musculature is relaxed voluntarily at impact (Weis & Mohr, 1967). Whole body vibration studies with humans (von Gierke, 1964) suggest the thoracic viscera may respond as a spring-mass system with viscous damping. In these studies 4.5 Hz is reported for the diaphragm and heart (von Gierke, 1964). Analysis of 29 human impact tests in the Gx position on the Daisy Decelerator indicated that the natural frequency of the response measured by sternum accelerometers varies inversely as the duration of the onset of the input deceleration. The value of the product of response frequency (Hertz) and onset duration (seconds) is approximately 0.5 (Chandler, 1962).

The general impedance concept is ordinarily used in conditions where the motion is rectilinear but applies equally well for angular motions or combinations of rectilinear and angular motions (Weis & Primiano, 1966). Figure 6-11 illustrates some human impedance results. The figure indicates that except for the sitting and standing positions during steady-state vibration, impedance magnitude ranges from zero at low frequencies to higher values at higher frequencies. Critical frequencies are found at 7 and 12 Hz (Weis et al., 1963b, 1964). The locations of resonances obtained from transient data may not
always coincide with those obtained under vibration conditions (Bowen et al., 1966). The human mechanical impedance for a particular experimental condition can be used to determine the motion of the human center of mass in the same condition (Weis & Primiano, 1966), although the effective center of mass for mechanical impedance may not be the center of gravity.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 6-11. Human mechanical driving impedance in the transient (impact) environment. The impedance magnitudes and phase angles reveal critical frequencies at approximately 7 Hz and 12 Hz. The impedance magnitude tends toward zero at low frequencies and toward higher values at higher frequencies. This indicates that man is much like a pure mass over the frequency range of 0-20 Hz, but that resonances in certain frequency ranges depend upon body orientation. (After Weis et al., 1964)

In impact exposure of less than one second when no fluid shifts have time to occur, it is believed that physiological effects are caused by localized pressures and relative tissue displacements. These may develop into pathological trauma if the mechanical stress limits of the tissues involved are exceeded. It has been found that the physical response of the body and its organs, and the impedance of this response on the duration and shape of the acceleration time function, can be calculated when the appropriate mechanical system, representative for the body or the particular situation, is known (Latham, 1957; Shapland, 1961;
Payne, 1961a; Kornhauser, 1961, 1964; Linder, 1962; Feder & Root, 1964; Barrett & Payne, 1965; NASA, 1965; Steck & Payne, 1968). Conditions involving unusual acceleration profiles in accidental or operational situations, nonlinearity in response of tissue, and limitation of complete directional data for the whole body tend to limit use of these models to first order approximations for aerospace design purposes.

If the impact duration is to the same order of magnitude or larger than the natural periods of the body systems, maximum effect of impact functions usually results. Excitation follows a pattern from the dynamic response factor for the transient response of linear structures to shock typical of that shown in figure 6-12. Curves of equal physical displacement of organs are shown as a function of pulse duration and maximum acceleration. In such tolerance curves (see figures 6-5 and 6-12) if the pulse duration is much shorter than the natural period of a system, the response is only dependent on the acceleration time integral, "impulse." It is equal to the differences in velocity of the system before and after impact and ceases to be a direct function of the peak acceleration (NASA, 1965). The curves in figure 6-12 represent undamped responses, but note that the more complex damped responses more realistically represent the actual condition (Barrett & Payne 1965).

Figure 6.12. Theoretical impact tolerance curves of a one-degree-of-freedom system. Curves of equal physical displacement of organs as a function of pulse duration and max. acceleration. Figure shows, for various types of pulses, pulse height (as a function of ratio of pulse length to natural period of the system) needed to achieve same max. displacement of the system. (T = natural period of system; t = pulse duration). Pulse duration scales on abscissa are for a system with resonance at 5.5 Hz (main body resonance) and for a system with resonance at 30Hz (head resonance). (von Gierke, 1964a. Transient acceleration vibration and noise problems in space flight. In Bioastronautics, copyright by the MacMillan Company, 1964, and used with their permission.)
In general resonant-response analysis applies to interaction of flexibly linked body masses, and probably to natural frequency characteristics of internally suspended organs, but factors relating to more sustained force application may determine the stress limit. Voluntary tolerance of the lower spinal column in +G\textsubscript{z} vertical (longitudinal) impact of less than 6 G amplitude at sustained low-frequency vibrations is in contrast to 20 G, and even 50 G single impact tolerance under well-defined conditions (von Gierke, 1961). This well illustrates the danger in arbitrary conclusions about tolerance, stress limits, and generalized application of criteria beyond their definitions.

**Impact Other Than Along Primary Axis ("Off Axis")**

The majority of experimental impact studies have been concerned with simple, uniaxial accelerations. Few studies have been conducted of multiaxial acceleration and resultant inertial responses. The orientation of the acceleration vector is a critical factor in human tolerance limitations since the body structures and man's dynamic response characteristics vary with the direction of the applied force. The orientation of the acceleration vector may be random and uncontrolled during aerospace emergency escape, the sequential acceleration environment, and in ground landing impact in closed capsules. The polar coordinate system, in which orientation is expressed in terms of degrees of roll, pitch, and yaw, has been developed to define the precise multiaxial profiles tested (figure 6-13).

![Figure 6-13. Seated subject orientation in 0-0-0 polar coordinates of roll, pitch and yaw relative to direction of sled motion and resultant inertial force. Such a system is used to describe off-axis impacts involving complex multiaxial decelerations. Numbered lines represent direction of forces applied to subject during impact. Columns on right indicate translation of force orientations into seat position. (After Brown et al., 1966; Chandler, 1967b; Stapp, 1968)](image-url)
To date only one study has been conducted of human response to the acceleration profiles of Project Mercury (Weis et al., 1963a), and two studies have been conducted related to Project Apollo profiles (Stapp & Taylor, 1964; Brown et al., 1966). Table 6-14 provides a summary of other studies in which response of man and animals to impact loads at variable axes is known.

A summary of the acceleration profiles and responses noted in subjects exposed to off-axis accelerations while seated in form-fitting couches used in Project Mercury is presented in figure 6-14 and table 6-15. In these experiments the 20 subjects wore the Mercury pressure suit helmet and sat in a rigid vehicle, restrained with a low elasticity chest and pelvic harness, and were exposed to six deceleration profiles in seven orientations. In the lateral (±Gy) tests, both rigid foam couches and semirigid "microballoon" couches were used which were molded to the body contour. A vertical drop tower device was employed to decelerate the falling vehicle when a shaped plunger entered the water. In deceleration profiles ranging up to 26 G (peak), 28 ft/sec velocity, and 2000 G/sec rate of onset, subjective tolerance levels were not reached (Weis et al., 1963). Transient premature ventricular contractions were produced, but no injuries occurred.

For Project Apollo, Stubbs (1966, 1967) reviewed impact modes predicted at the couch in Apollo landings. Stapp and Taylor (1964) studied human response to predicted Apollo command module landing impacts in 146 tests of 58 human volunteers, as did Brown et al., (1966) in 288 experiments. In the first series, impact forces were studied in 16 body positions in a combination of pitch and yaw, in seven configurations of onset at 1000, 1500, and 2000 G/sec, at magnitudes of 10, 15, 20, and 25 G, and at durations from 0.060 to 0.130 second. The volunteer subject sat in a seat mounted in three sets of gimbals providing 10° increments in yaw (0° to 360°), pitch (0° to 180°), and roll (0° to 180°), on a sled suspended by four slippers between cylindrical rails. Post-impact bradycardia of less than 30 seconds' duration resulted from headward force vectors exceeding 15 G magnitude. Stomach mobility or displacement occurs during whole body impact when angular force movements exceed 40° or more from the line of motion (in pitch or yaw.) No significant changes in blood or urine were recorded. All body positions and impact configurations studied were within voluntary tolerance limits except the forward-facing 45° reclining position. A forward-facing subject tipped back 45° in pitch sustained simultaneous compression and hyperflexion of the trunk by force vectors at right angles which produced persistent soft tissue injury in the sixth, seventh, and eighth thoracic vertebrae areas, from impact of 25 G at 960 G/sec in 97 msec. Loose restraints contributed to whole body resonance amplification of impact.

With a less sophisticated harness restraint system than the one used in the Apollo study, compression deformities of the fourth and fifth thoracic vertebrae have been reported in a human test subject exposed in laboratory experiments to an impact acceleration profile similar to that produced by ejection seat rockets. This injury was presumed to be the result of an impact profile having a peak acceleration of 18.8 G, a rate of onset of 420 G/sec and a base line duration of approximately 100 msec. The subject's long axis was inclined backward 34°.
### Table 6–14

**Physiological Effects of Off-Axis Impact**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Chest D/sec (Velocity Fr/sect)</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a. [17]</td>
<td>18°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>750-1052 (°); 90°</td>
<td>0.066-0.078</td>
<td>Chest pains, headache up to 18 hr, brief disorientation, or difficult breathing; single case of mild ischemia, spinal dislocation, shock, albuminuria (1+), later negative. No blood pressure immediately post-impact; 80/50 at 2 min; 109/55 at 5 min; 50 G upper limit for spinal injury in aircraft seat ejection.</td>
<td>Seeding, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>80°-116° (°); 137° (°)</td>
<td>0.066 (°)</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>109°-187° (°); 137° (°)</td>
<td>0.044-0.052</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>235°-165° (°); 137° (°)</td>
<td>0.045-0.052</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>136°-107° (°); 137° (°)</td>
<td>0.040-0.043</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>26.9-35.7</td>
<td>136°-107° (°); 137° (°)</td>
<td>0.040-0.053</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. [18]</td>
<td>255°, on rt side, delay track</td>
<td>25.2-30.2</td>
<td>900°-1101</td>
<td>0.086-0.098</td>
<td>No injury reported</td>
<td>Seeding, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. [17]</td>
<td>Seated, 45° to vertical; 180° face; drooped 20-55 in. into seat back</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>[-2.9, 0.1</td>
<td>10-18°</td>
<td>No Injury</td>
<td>No Injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test 1</td>
<td>Test 2</td>
<td>Test 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event 1</td>
<td>Event 2</td>
<td>Event 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test 4</td>
<td>Test 5</td>
<td>Test 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result 1</td>
<td>Result 2</td>
<td>Result 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Impact**

---

"Tests did not reach voluntary tolerance level at these conditions. In 4 cases (30%) alterations noted. No other physiological changes found. Several subjects noted 'wink' path or 'wink knocked out.'"
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Subjects (No. of Tests)</th>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>Peak G</th>
<th>Rate of Onset G/sec (Velocity Ft/sec)</th>
<th>Duration sec</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8. 10/146</td>
<td>16 positions in combined pitch and yaw; tachy-entosis; a mounted on sled in 15 sets of gimbals, providing fixation by 10° increments in yaw (0-50°), pitch (0-15°), roll (0-15°)</td>
<td>10/151 201</td>
<td>1000 1500</td>
<td>2000 (20-49)</td>
<td>0.060-1.100</td>
<td>Bradycardia immediately post-impact; heart rate dropped up to 90 beats/min for 10 sec; gaitic motility changed with n° pitch or yaw angles; no significant changes in blood pressure. All body positions and impact configurations were within voluntary tolerance limits except forward-facing 15° reclining position at 25.4 G (air), with onset rate of 1000 G/sec for 0.060 sec. Pain and stiffness for 60 days due to compression of soft tissues around ribs, 7th, and 8th thoracic vertebrae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 28[38, 39]</td>
<td>4 pitch orientations: -g, 45° pitch fwd. from vertical</td>
<td>0.8-26.3</td>
<td>52.7-1340 18.35-0</td>
<td>0.050-1.128</td>
<td>6 subjects reported no complaints; 5 subjects complained of mild pain for 3 to 6 min post-impact; 3 subjects complained of pain or muscle soreness lasting 1 to 14 days.</td>
<td>Stapp et al., 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. [12]</td>
<td>-g, 45° pitch back from vertical</td>
<td>0.8-25.0</td>
<td>500-1240 17.93-31.8</td>
<td>0.068-1.140</td>
<td>4 subjects had no complaints; 1 reported mild pain for 2 to 10 min post-impact; 3 reported moderate pain and muscle soreness for 6 to 72 hr after impact. 1 subject sustained severe soft tissue compression injury at 6th, 7th, and 8th thoracic vertebral areas persisting for 60 days post-impact</td>
<td>Stapp et al., 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>45° pitch</td>
<td>26.5-26.9</td>
<td>550±1120</td>
<td>.12±.177</td>
<td>1 subject had no complaints; 5 subjects reported mild pains for 2-5 min post-impact; 1 subject had moderate pains and muscle aches lasting 24 hr.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>60° pitch</td>
<td>18.8-21.9</td>
<td>500±1330</td>
<td>.16±.141</td>
<td>5 subjects had no complaints; 1 subject reported mild pains of 24 hr duration post-impact.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>10° pitch</td>
<td>15.5-30.7</td>
<td>500±1330</td>
<td>.18±.199</td>
<td>Detailed physiological findings are listed in Table B.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>20° pitch</td>
<td>6.3 - 8.2</td>
<td>128 - 210</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tenderness in groin, pain in throat, derrier bone subjectively reported.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Brown, et al., 1966
Reader, 1967
from the vertical force vector (Roth, 1967). Stapp and Taylor (1964) recommend head fixation, energy attenuation to keep impact force below 20 G magnitude and above 60 msec pulse duration, and automatic retraction of the harness prior to impact to prevent slack and relative body motion. The most favorable position was found to be backward-facing (+G_x), bowing 45° from vertical.

Information relative to the effects of simultaneous multiaxial impact forces combined with other environment conditions are not known. For data on complex multi-environmental stresses, the reader is referred to chapter 19.

Figure 6-14. Off-axis impact: a Project Mercury profile. Data for tolerability of impacts applied laterally and off major body axes. A: Directions of impact for 5 positions 45° off axis, and for ±G_y axis. B: Power density spectra of 6 deceleration profiles ranging from 13.4 - 26.6 G with onsets from 426-177 G/sec. No injuries resulted. (Adapted from Weis et al., 1963)
### Table 6–15
Responses of Subjects in Project Mercury Deceleration Profile Study

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Orientation</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right 45°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>&quot;Slight pain&quot; in center of forehead lasting 5 min</td>
<td>&quot;Slight pain&quot; above left ear in skull</td>
<td>Complained bitterly but diffusely – EKG shows abrupt rhythm changes and four PVCs</td>
<td>Complained bitterly but diffusely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up 45°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Transient pain in occiput</td>
<td>Transient pain in occiput – developed severe pain in neck four hr post-test, gone in a.m.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Slight head pain – pain about T2 or T3; transient – developed severe muscle pain at point of left scapula – gone 24 hr</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left 45°</td>
<td>Transient pain in occiput moving to temples</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left 45° up 45°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Fleeting pressure under chest belt</td>
<td>Mild pain beneath chest strap – mild pain about C8 or T1 in midline posterior</td>
<td>Mild pain radiating from right midaxillary line at level of 11th rib to left iliac crest, transient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right 45° up 45°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>&quot;Wind knocked out&quot;</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right 90°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Skinned right elbow</td>
<td>Pain in right calf</td>
<td>&quot;Knocked wind out&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Wind knocked out&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left 90°</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Pain in right trapezius</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>One PVC, 2 min post-test and 11 sec pre-test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*T1, T2, T3 — first, second and third thoracic vertebrae; C8 — eighth cervical vertebra.

(Adapted from Weis, 1963)
References


Barrett, S. & Payne, P. R. Response of a linear damped dynamic system to selected acceleration inputs. Rept. AMRL TR-65-40, Aerospace Medical Research Labs., Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, April 1965.


Beeding, E. L., Jr. Daisy track and supporting systems. Rept. AFADC TR-8, 6571st Aeromedical Research Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, June 1957a.

Beeding, E. L., Jr. Daisy track tests. Rept. AFMDC TR-57-6, 6571st Aeromedical Research Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, April-June 1957b.


Beeding, E. L., Jr., & Cook, J. E. Correlation tests of animals and humans. 5th Stapp Automotive Crash Field Demonstration Conference, 1962.


Bierman, H. R., & Larson, V. R. Distribution of impact forces on the human through restraining devices. Project X-630, Report No. 4, Naval Medical Research Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, March 1946.

Bierman, H. R., Wilder, R. M., Jr., & Hellems, H. K. The principles of protection of the human body as applied in a restraining harness for aircraft pilots. Project X-630, Rept. 6, Naval Medical Research Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, May 1946.

Bierman, H. R., Wilder, R. M., Jr., & Hellems, H. K. The physiological effect of compressive forces on the torso. Project X-630, Rept. 8, Naval Medical Research Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, December 1946.


Chandler, R. F. Determination of equivalent natural frequency indicated by accelerometers mounted over the sternum during human impact in the OX direction. Rept. ARL-TDR-62-29, 6571st Aeromedical Research Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, December 1962.


Gazenko, O. G., Antipov, V. V., Parfenov, G. P., & Saksonov, P. P. Results of a biological experiment conducted aboard the automatic station "Zond-5". Aerospace Medicine, 1969, 40(11), 1244-1247.

Geertz, A. Grenzen und sonderprobleme bei der anwendung von sitnkatapulten. [Limits and special problems in the use of seat catapults], Translation No. U 10-46-22, AAF Aero Medical Center, 1944.

Gell, D. F. Table of equivalents for acceleration terminology: Recommended for general international use by the Acceleration Committee of the Aerospace Medical Panel, AGARD. Aerospace Medicine, 1961, 32, 1109-1111.

General Dynamics/Convair. Capsule escape system specifications, FZC-4-344(G), San Diego, Calif., February 1961.


Hanson, P. G. Maximum voluntary ventilation after $+G_x$ impact in humans. Rept. ARL-TR-65-22, 6571st Aeromedical Research Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, November 1965.

Hanson, P. G., & Foster, P. Urinary excretion of vanilmandelic acid after $+G_x$ impact in humans. Rept. ARL-TR-66-6, 6571st Aeromedical Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, March 1966.


Highly, F. M., Critz, G. T., & Hendler, E. Determination of human tolerance to negative impact acceleration. Paper (1) presented at the 34th Annual Meeting of the Aerospace Medical Association, Los Angeles, California, April-May 1963.


Kalogeris, J. G. Pilot emergency escape upper torso harness support development test of Model F-106A. *ASTIA AD*, 1956, 144, 950.


Lewis, S. T., & Stapp, J. P. Experiments conducted on a swing device for determining human tolerance to lap belt type decelerations. Report TN 57-1, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, December 1957(b).


G. S. Mechanical vibration effects on human beings. Aerospace Medicine, 1962, 33, 939-950.


Lovelace, W. R., Baldes, E., & Wulff, V. J. The ejection seat for emergency escape from high-speed aircraft. AERTTA AT1, 1945, 7245.


Reader, D. C. The restraint afforded by the USAF and proposed RAF IAM seat harnesses for the F-111 under high forward and lateral decelerations. RAF Institute of Aviation Medicine, Farnborough, England, September 1967.


Ruff, S. Human resistance to certain types of uneven acceleration. ASTIA ATI, 1942, 47632.


Snyder, R. G. et al. Pathology of trauma attributed to restraint systems in crash impacts. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1968, 39(8), 812-829. (a)


Snyder, R. G. Survival of high-velocity free-falls in water. FAA-AM-65-12, Federal Aviation Agency, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, April 1965.


Sonntag, R. Unpublished test data with human volunteers. 6571st Aerospace Medical Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, 1966.


Stapp, J. P. Tolerance to abrupt deceleration. Collected papers on aviation medicine. 
Advisory Group for Aeronautical Research and Development, North Atlantic Treaty 

Stapp, J. P. Effects of mechanical force on living tissues. I. Abrupt deceleration and 

Stapp, J. P. Accelerations of space flight. Preprint No. 700-58, American Rocket Society, 
November 1955(a).

30(2), 47-52.

Stapp, J. P. Escape from aircraft. In E. Exard, P. Bergeret, & P. M. Van Wulfften Palthie 

Stapp, J. P. Human tolerance to severe, abrupt acceleration. In Garner & Zuidema (Eds.), 

 maximal decelerations. Part II. Dynamic response of restrained subject during abrupt 
deacceleration. Analyzed and biodynamics of selected rocket-sled experiments. USAF 
School of Aerospace Medicine, July 1964.

Stapp, J. P. Collected data on 40 rocket sled experiments (Holloman AFB). NSL-65-94, 

Stapp, J. P. Voluntary human tolerance levels. Paper presented at Wayne State University 
Centennial—Biomechanics Symposium, Detroit, Michigan, 1966. (In press)

Stapp, J. P., & Blount, W. C. Effects of mechanical force on living tissues. III. A 
compressed air catapult for high impact forces. Journal of Aviation Medicine, 1957, 28, 
281-290.

Stapp, J. P., & Hughes, C. D. Effects of mechanical force on living tissues. II. Supersonic 
deacceleration and windblast. Journal of Aviation Medicine, 1956, 27, 407-413.

Aerospace Medicine, 1964, 35, 1117-1132.


Stapp, J. P. Whole body tolerance to impact. In P. L. Altman & D. S. Dittmer (Eds.), 
Environmental biology, AMRL-TR-66-194, Aerospace Medical Research Labs, 
Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, November 1966.

Stapp, J. P. Voluntary human tolerance levels. Paper presented at Wayne State University 
Centennial—Biomechanics Symposium, Detroit, Michigan, 1968.

Stech, E. L., & Payne, P. R. The effect of age on vertebral braking strength, spinal 
frequency and tolerance to acceleration in human beings. Rept. No. 122-101, Frost 

Stech, E. L., & Payne, P. R. Dynamic models of the human body. Rept. AMRL-TR-66-157, 
Aerospace Medical Research Laboratories, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1968.

Stubbs, S. M. Landing characteristics of the Apollo spacecraft with deployed-heat-shield 

Stubbs, S. M. Dynamic model investigation of water pressures and accelerations 
encountered during landings of the Apollo spacecraft. NASA-TN-D-3980, September 
1967.

Stuckman, E. C. Project Mercury pilot support system development live specimen 

Swearingen, J. J., Garner, J. D., McFadden, E. B., & Blethrow, J. G. Human voluntary 
tolerance to vertical impact. Aerospace Medicine, 1960, 31(12), 989.


Taylor, E. R., Rhein, L. W., Carter, V. L., & Chandler, R. The effects of severe impact on bears. 6571st Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Holloman AFB, New Mexico, ARL-TDR-64-6, July 1964.


don Gierke, H. E. Response of the body to mechanical forces—an overview. In Lectures in Aerospace Medicine, Sixth series, School of Aerospace Medicine, Brooks AFB, Texas, February 1967.


Watts, D. T., Mendelson, E. S., & Kornfeld, A. T. Human tolerance to accelerations applied from seat to head during ejection seat tests; pilot’s escape from high performance aircraft mechanism for development and test of. ASTIA ATI, 1947(b), 206 052.


Zaborowski, A. Human tolerance to lateral impact with lap belt only. 8th Stapp car crash and field demonstration conference, Wayne State University Press, Detroit, 1966.

CHAPTER 7
VIBRATION

by

Richard J. Hornick, Ph.D.
Litton Systems, Inc.

Travel in vehicles of all types subjects man to mechanical vibration. This chapter presents the results of investigations concerning vibration that contribute meaningful data which may be applied to the design of future transport systems. Emphasis is placed on data describing man's reactions to vibration rather than on the vibration characteristics of vehicles. Vibration characteristics of future vehicles will vary in accordance with differences in size, propulsion system, mass, and maneuvering envelopes, while man's reactions to vibration intensity and frequency can be expected to remain essentially constant.

Vibration effects described in this chapter are organized into the following areas: performance effects reflected in tracking proficiency, reaction time, visual impairment, and other measures related to man's ability to control a system; physiological reactions; biodynamic responses; subjective reactions; and human "tolerance" limits. Most attention is placed on performance effects because of the importance of human performance in the operation of sophisticated man-machine systems and because a significant amount of performance data has been developed in recent years. Technological refinements in shaker systems, better experimental designs, and better attempts to control other attendant variables have all served to give recent data a greater degree of validity.

Major vehicular resonances generally occur in the range of 1 to 30 cycles per second (Hz). Man's performance capability is known to be affected by frequencies in that range. Further, whole body and organic resonances occur in this range with potential adverse effects for physiological responses and subjective tolerance. It is for these reasons that the bulk of human vibration studies have been conducted in this low frequency band.

*Hertz (Hz) has been adopted as the standard notation for cycles/second.

Reviewed by Henning E. von Gierke, Dr. Eng., Wright-Patterson Air Force Base.
Certain types of motion are not extensively treated in this chapter. Oscillation below 1 Hz is not usually characterized as vibration since such motion is not known to affect performance or body resonances. Instead, motion sickness associated with otolith stimulation is the most severe effect of motion below 1 Hz. Frequencies above 30 to 60 Hz are not normally a problem for man, and, in any case, are easily damped by body-support cushioning as well as by the tissues of the human body.

Another form of vibration not treated extensively here is localized vibration; that is, vibration applied to a limited body area such as the fingertips or the hand. That type of vibration occurs primarily with the use of hand tools such as pneumatic jackhammers. This problem has become less severe in recent years due to the increasing use of automated power equipment.

Very few animal studies are cited. They have been selected only as they exemplify a need for some consideration important for the human.

The Vibration Environment

Terminology of Motion Axes

Terminology for the vibration environment is generally consistent with that described in chapter 6, Impact. However, whereas bias or steady state acceleration is identified with an upper case “G,” oscillatory vibration is described with a lower case “g.” The complete description of a vibration environment includes identification of the bias acceleration. Figure 7-1 and table 7-1 illustrate the major axes of motion and the terminology involved.

![Diagram of major body axes for acceleration and vibration description](image_url)
Table 7–1
Acceleration and Vibration Axis Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heart Motion Towards</th>
<th>Other Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Heart Motion</th>
<th>Other Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spine</td>
<td>Eyeballs in</td>
<td>+G_X</td>
<td>Spine-sternum-spine</td>
<td>Fore-aft</td>
<td>±g_X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sternum</td>
<td>Eyeballs out</td>
<td>-G_X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feet</td>
<td>Eyeballs down</td>
<td>+G_Z</td>
<td>Head-feet-head</td>
<td>Head-tail</td>
<td>±g_Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>Eyeballs up</td>
<td>-G_Z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Eyeballs left</td>
<td>+G_Y</td>
<td>Left-right-left</td>
<td>Side-to-side</td>
<td>±g_Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right</td>
<td>Eyeballs right</td>
<td>-G_Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To describe completely the vibration environment for a given situation, nondimensional \( G \) and \( g \) units are used. In the case of a human standing upright in a laboratory on a shake table moving in a direction parallel to the spine, the description would appear as \(+1G_x \pm 2g_z\) where \( n \) would be quantified. In a spacecraft during boost, with the occupants in the usual semisupine position and with vibration being experienced laterally with respect to the body, the dynamic environment might be described as \(+3.5G_x \pm 0.5g_y\). An astronaut would be experiencing a 3.5 \( G \) boost acceleration force, eyeballs in, with vibration moving him from side to side.

Mathematical Derivations

Vibration is characterized by the periodic displacement of a mass over time and is defined by the amplitude and the frequency of the displacement. Mathematical expressions for sinusoidal vibration are derived from two basic parameters—frequency and amplitude. Frequency can be expressed in any manner related to a time scale—cycles per second (cps), cycles per minute (cpm), Hertz (Hz), etc. The Hz notation will be used in this chapter.

Coupled with frequency is amplitude or intensity. Amplitude is typically expressed by velocity, acceleration, or jerk quantities. The amplitude quantities have been expressed in metric terms and, more often in the United States, in inches or feet per second. A useful quantity is the nondimensional \( g \) which can be converted into any kind of expression which the user wishes to employ.

Sinusoidal Vibration. For simple harmonic motion, the following relationships exist between acceleration, velocity, and displacement (Society of Automotive Engineers, 1965):

\[
x = x_0 \sin (2 \pi f)t = x_0 (\omega)t
\]

where

\[
x = \text{instantaneous displacement from static position, inches}
\]
\[
x_0 = \text{maximum displacement amplitude from static position, inches}
\]
\[
t = \text{time from zero displacement, seconds}
\]
\[
f = \text{frequency of oscillation, Hz}
\]
\[
\omega = 2 \pi f, \text{ radians per second}
\]

Since the number of gravities of vibration acceleration can be expressed as the following:

\[
g = -\frac{(2 \pi f)^2 x_0}{G} \sin 2 \pi ft
\]
Vibration

where

\[ G = 386 \text{ inches/sec}^2 \]

then

\[ g = 0.0511Df^2 \]

where

\[ D = 2x_0 \] and is peak-to-peak displacement amplitude

To convert from one numerical system to another, the following equivalent values for \( g \) are:

\[ g = \frac{\text{acceleration in m/sec}^2}{9.80} = \frac{\text{ft/sec}^2}{32.2} = \frac{\text{in./sec}^2}{386} \]

Occasionally, frequency is expressed in radians, particularly when angular velocity is involved. Angular velocity \( \omega \) in radians per second = \( 2\pi f = 6.28 \times \) the frequency in Hertz. Figure 7-2 illustrates the relations of the parameters in simple harmonic motion.

**Random Vibration.** Man most often experiences random vibration while traveling in a vehicle. Vibration can be random with respect to frequency and amplitude. At a given frequency, the amplitude may vary from oscillation to oscillation; or amplitude may remain fairly constant and frequency may vary. And, there is motion that varies both with respect to frequency and amplitude.

Amplitude is expressed typically as a root-mean-square (RMS) value in g’s. The frequency spectrum (range) is indicated by mean-square spectral density and expressed as power spectral density (PSD), the units being \( g^2/\text{Hz} \) (Meeder, 1964). Vibration acceleration RMS defines the total energy across the entire frequency band. PSD defines the power at discrete frequencies in the selected bandwidth. A plot of PSD \( (g^2/\text{Hz}) \) versus frequency illustrates the power distribution of the vibration environment.

In order to equate mathematically a pure sinusoidal amplitude of equivalent RMSg values of random, the peak amplitude of the sinusoid is divided by \( \sqrt{2} \).

**Vibration Spectra**

Data presented here indicate, in general terms, the vibration characteristics of some contemporary vehicles. Future vehicles may well have vibration characteristics which are quite different.
Helicopters. Helicopters generate significant vibrations in all major axes. In 1958, Russian helicopters were reported to have significant vibration in a spectrum from 10 to 70 Hz, with amplitudes ranging from 0.4 mm for 70 Hz to 2.4 mm for 10 Hz (Borschchevskiy et al., 1958). Neel (1959) studied the vibration experienced in a suspended litter in the H-13 and H-19 helicopters and found “unpleasant” vibration experienced between 25 and 75 Hz. The UH-1F helicopter, at the base of the pilot seat, shows 2g x vibration at 25 Hz with the major frequency components between 100 to 1000 Hz, and a lateral, 2g y, resonance at 5 Hz at a double amplitude of 0.10 inch. At the seat, the CH-46A has a basic frequency of 4.5 Hz 2g x, with a major resonance at 12 Hz, and secondary peaks at 28, 38, and 48 Hz (Dean et al., 1964).

In summary, the characteristic helicopter vibration spectrum has a basic low frequency vibration related to the number of overhead rotor blade passes per second. Resonances depend on structural characteristics. The intensity changes of the primary and resonant frequencies depends significantly on load, airspeed, and flight phase.

Aircraft. Prior to jets, the primary source of aircraft vibration was propeller rotation. Vibration was relatively high in frequency (several hundred to several thousand Hertz) and very low in amplitude. While there is a general trend away
from the piston engine/propeller-driven aircraft, it is likely that special applications of such craft, such as the OV-10, will keep them in service for some time to come. Average vibration amplitude for typical propeller-driven military aircraft has been reported to be affected very little by aircraft size, with levels considerably below the envelope at which airborne equipment is tested for military standards (Abeling & Bassett, 1967). Figure 7-3 shows a representative envelope of large aircraft vibration.

![Figure 7-3. Envelope of vibration; B-52, JRB-52B, and YB-52, selected locations. (From Abeling & Bassett, 1967)](image)

When jet aircraft engage in low altitude, high speed flight, the dynamic environment experienced by the pilot is a function of many factors—maneuver loads, wing loading, gust sensitivity, aircraft size, structural bending modes, atmospheric conditions, the type of terrain traversed, and airspeed velocity. Lateral \( \dot{e}_y \) and vertical \( \dot{e}_z \) motion for these aircraft generally have a power peak near 1 Hz, with secondary resonances from 1 to 12 Hz. For a variable, swept-wing configuration, significantly improved ride quality can be achieved by proper design of seating and cushioning; little improvement can be made with fixed-wing configurations (Yamamoto, 1965). Care should be taken, however, that cushioning materials damp rather than amplify the undesirable motion, since the converse is indeed possible.
Primary oscillation for high altitude aircraft is due to atmospheric turbulence. It has been predicted (Ness & Gregory, 1963) that a supersonic transport plane flying above 60,000 feet, would have higher lateral gust sensitivities than propeller aircraft (but lower than current jet aircraft) because of higher speeds with excitation of rigid body and flexible modes. Vertical gust sensitivity, on the other hand, would be very low in an SST, due to the low density of the air at cruise altitude. In general, the probability of encountering periods of turbulence could be expected to be lowest for an SST.

Spacecraft. Relatively little inflight data exist for low frequency vibration for space vehicles. Recording accelerometers typically used have low frequency cutoffs at 20 or 10 Hz. During the first Mercury flights, astronauts complained of vibration during boost which interferes with their vision. A modification was made to the head support padding resulting in more subjectively acceptable vibration levels. A “pogo stick” phenomenon was found in the Titan II rocket engine. This consisted of intense vibration at 11 Hz, experienced along the entire length of the vehicle. A similar problem was detected in an early Saturn V test. Fuel pump and engine phasing changes reduced the intensity to acceptable levels.

The only significant vibration levels routinely encountered in spacecraft operations occur during the maximum aerodynamic pressure (max q) portion of boost, with less during atmospheric entry. Since the vibration does occur during boost and entry, it is coupled with a significant bias G acceleration load. Data on the human effects of a coupled vibration-acceleration environment must be obtained from studies conducted with a shaker system coupled with a centrifuge.

Performance Effects

Tracking

A clear statement of the effect of vibration exposure on human tracking performance is not easily achieved for a number of reasons. Paramount is the fact that investigations of vibration stress have used many and diverse tasks, involving a variety of control systems (single axes, multiple axes, fly-to, fly-from, center-stick, side-stick, wheel and column, and steering wheel) in addition to different control system dynamics. However, when similar tasks are used in comparable vibration environments, reasonable agreement of research results is found.

Since most vibration studies have been conducted with seated humans experiencing vertical motion, most data exist for a +1G Z-1G ZG Z situation. Considered first are tracking changes found with sinusoidal vibration in the Z-axis.

Sinusoidal 1G Z Vibration. Table 7-2 presents representative findings for the sinusoidal +1G Z-1G ZG Z environment. Conclusions for random motion and for tracking effects in other axes are presented at the end of the tracking effects section.
Table 7-2
+1Gz±ngz Vibration Effects on Tracking Ability, Seated Subjects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Tracking Task</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Hz, ±0.18 and 0.35 g; 3.5 Hz, ±0.15 and 0.30 g, 1.5 hr duration</td>
<td>Subjects and wheel on shaker; static display; single axis compensatory tracking task in horizontal axis</td>
<td>Error a function of frequency and intensity; error greater at 3.5 Hz; incomplete recovery after exposure</td>
<td>Schmitz, Simons, &amp; Boettcher, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9 – 5.5 Hz at ±0.15, 0.25, and 0.35 g, 10 min duration</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Error elicited, but no effect of frequency or intensity (possibly due to short duration); incomplete recovery after exposure</td>
<td>Schmitz, Simons, &amp; Boettcher, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±0.20 g at 5 Hz, 1 hr duration</td>
<td>Side-arm controller, single axis (horizontal) compensatory tracking</td>
<td>40% decrement in task; incomplete recovery in 15 min postvibration period</td>
<td>Ayoub, c. 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–27 Hz at 4 subjective reaction levels—from &quot;perceptible&quot; to &quot;alarming&quot;</td>
<td>Aircraft wheel and column; 2-axis compensatory; horizontal tracking with wheel, vertical with column</td>
<td>Error related to subjective intensity level; greatest error at 10 – 18 Hz; greater error in horizontal axis in vibration and nonvibration conditions, but vibration has greater relative effect on vertical control</td>
<td>Chaney &amp; Parks, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 4, 6, 8, 11, and 15 Hz with single amplitudes of 0.06 and 0.13 in.</td>
<td>2-axis compensatory; static base display; control stick</td>
<td>Slight improvement for 0.06 in.; over 40% error increase at 0.13 in.; greatest error at 8 Hz</td>
<td>Catterson, Hoover, &amp; Ashe, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Hz, ±0.26 – 0.36 g; 7 Hz, ±0.29 – 0.41 g; 11 Hz, ±0.55 – 0.77 g; 5 min duration</td>
<td>2-axis compensatory; side-mounted stick controller, second order dynamics</td>
<td>Greatest error produced in vertical tracking axis; 5 and 11 Hz have greatest error in vertical axis; 5 Hz produces greatest error in horizontal; vertical error about 40% greater in vibration compared to static condition; amplitude levels equivalent to 25 – 35% of the 1 min human tolerance level degrades tracking</td>
<td>Buckhout, 1964</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7-2 (Continued)
+1g_z±ng_z Vibration Effects on Tracking Ability, Seated Subjects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Tracking Task</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 Hz, ±0.10 – 0.26 g, 20 min duration</td>
<td>2-axis compensatory; side-mounted</td>
<td>Horizontal tracking not affected; vertical tracking significantly impaired at and above ±0.21 g, about 40% greater than in a nonvibration condition</td>
<td>Harris, Chiles, &amp; Touchstone, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Hz, ±0.10 – 0.26 g; 7 Hz, ±0.15 – 0.30 g; 11 Hz, ±0.25 – 0.62 g; 20 min duration</td>
<td>2-axis compensatory; rate control, side-stick</td>
<td>Horizontal tracking not affected; vertical axis tracking, first impaired at ±0.20 g for 5 Hz, ±0.25 g for 7 Hz, and ±0.37 g for 11 Hz, these levels being about 20% of the 1 min human tolerance limits; decrements in tracking were up to 40% greater than nonvibration error</td>
<td>Harris &amp; Shoenerger, 1966</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Sinusoidal versus Random $g_z$ Vibration.** Comparatively few studies have investigated the relative effects of sinusoidal and random vibration. In 1961, Parks used a two-axis tracking task with a wheel and column control in random and sinusoidal motion. Of several parameters tested, only the vertical tracking task was affected, at 2.5 Hz sinusoidal at approximately 0.40 $g_z$. Weisz and coworkers (1965) used a side-stick controller in a two-axis tracking task in sinusoidal 5 Hz, 5 Hz with random amplitude, and a frequency band of 4 to 12 Hz random. Larger errors were reported for vertical tracking than for horizontal tracking. Concerning the relative influence of the vibration environments, error occurred at lower $g$ levels sinusoidal than for random amplitude 5 Hz; and random 4 to 12 Hz vibration did not result in tracking error. These studies tend to establish that random vibration is not as detrimental to tracking performance as is sinusoidal.

**Random $g_z$ Vibration.** In recent years, knowledge about random $g_z$ vibration effects has come largely from studies which have simulated the low altitude, high speed aircraft response spectrum. For such aircraft, the characteristic motion environment is random, with high energy peaks in the low frequency range. Since many simulations lack a multiaxis motion capability, lateral $g_x$ motion effects (as from lateral gusts) are not fully known. Nevertheless, the lengthy duration of test exposures makes the $g_z$ data quite valuable. Table 7-3 summarizes the studies of long duration random vibration.

**Other Axes.** The influence of lateral $g_y$ and fore-aft $g_x$ vibration on tracking performance has not been extensively examined. Two studies are indicative, but cannot be applied universally to the $g_y$ and $g_x$ situations. Fraser and coworkers (1961) studied two-axis tracking in the three major axes. Frequencies of 2, 4, 7, and 12 Hz were used, with single amplitudes of $1/16$, $1/8$, $3/16$, and $1/4$ inches. No effect of "longitudinal," $+G_z$ $\pm g_x$, vibration was detected. Error was greatest in the $g_z$ axis, followed by the side-to-side $g_y$ axis. Hornick and coworkers (1961) studied a horizontal axis tracking task in $+G_z$ $\pm g_x$ and $-G_z$ $\pm g_y$. Frequencies of 1.5, 2.5, 3.5, 4.5, and 5.5 Hz were used at sinusoidal intensities of $0.15$, $0.25$, and $0.30$ $g_x$ and $0.15$, $0.25$, and $0.35$ $g_y$. In the $g_x$ axis, tracking error was related to vibration intensity level. Subjects did not completely recover tracking ability during a 15-minute postvibration period. Finally, there was a slight trend for error to increase as a function of time (during 0.5-hour vibration periods). Similar effects were found for tracking in the $g_y$ axis, with the greatest error rate at the lowest (1.5 and 2.5) frequencies.

**Summary of Tracking Effects.** The following statements can be made concerning the effects of vibration on the tracking ability of a seated human:

1. For the range of 4 to 20 Hz, sinusoidal $g_z$ vibration will significantly impair performance when the double amplitude (D.A.) of 0.05 inches is exceeded. Figure 7-4 indicates the regions of affected and nonaffected performance as delineated by the 0.05 inch D.A. line.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Tracking Task</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft F-111 dynamics; input 0.017 – 0.294 RMSg but closed loop control inputs resulted in 0.028 – 0.291 RMSg; 1.5 hr duration</td>
<td>Center-stick and side-stick controllers, 2-axis terrain following and heading changes</td>
<td>Horizontal control not affected; higher RMSg inputs result in greater pitch control error; no trend for pitch control error to increase as a function of time; pitch error and altitude error for side-stick is about 50% of that with the center-stick, with resulting RMSg reduced by 20% with the side-stick; control error increases as function of task difficulty (displayed terrain)</td>
<td>Soilsey &amp; Schohan, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–5 Hz, shaped PSD</td>
<td>2-axis, with several controller configurations and dynamics</td>
<td>Best performance with side-stick controller with arm support</td>
<td>Torle, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft, fighter dynamics, input 0.33 RMSg, but closed loop control inputs resulted in 0.40 RMSg; 1 hr duration</td>
<td>Center-stick, simulated terrain following; 3 task difficulty levels—simulated flat, rolling and mountainous terrain</td>
<td>Primary error relationship with tracking task difficulty, greatest error with roughest terrain; altitude error does not increase as function of time</td>
<td>Soilsey &amp; Schohan, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed loop RMSg levels varied between 0.05 and 0.40 RMSg as function of simulated gust, speed, and pilot inputs; 3 hr duration</td>
<td>Similar to preceding</td>
<td>No altitude control error trend as function of time; increase in simulated “crashes” at end of runs suggesting fatigue</td>
<td>Schohan, Rawson, &amp; Soilsey, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–12 Hz, peak energy at 1 and 7 Hz, with 0.10, 0.15 and 0.20 RMSg; 4 hr duration</td>
<td>Side-stick controller for 2-axis terrain following and avoidance over 3 simulated terrain types—flat, rolling mountainous, open loop platform dynamics</td>
<td>No trend for error to increase as function of time for 2 easiest terrains; error increase as a function of time for only the mountainous terrain after 2.5 hr of exposure; error not related to RMSg intensity; error residual in postvibration period; greatest error for most difficult displayed terrain</td>
<td>Hornick &amp; Lefritz, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectrum Details</td>
<td>Control Details</td>
<td>Observations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–6 Hz, 0.12 and 0.16 RMSg; two PSD shapes, one with power peak at 2 Hz, one at 5 Hz; 6 hr duration</td>
<td>2-axis, open loop platform dynamics; primarily side-stick controller, with occasional use of center-stick</td>
<td>No trend for error to increase as function of time; error not a function of RMSg intensity; absolute error greater in vertical axis; greater error in spectrum with 5 Hz power peak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH-46A helicopter spectrum, variable RMSg and PSD shapes; seven 40 min tests during 6 hr period</td>
<td>Side-stick controller, 2-axis</td>
<td>No error with this very simple tracking task</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UH-1B helicopter spectrum, and frequency sweeps, 4 Hz to over 100 Hz</td>
<td>Variety of controls and servo systems</td>
<td>Greatest tracking error near 5 Hz; position control more accurate in 5–25 Hz range; force control more accurate above 25 Hz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Holland, 1967
Dean, McGlothlen, & Monroe, 1964
Rosenberg & Segal, 1966
Figure 7.4. Summary of reported effects of $g_z$ vibration on human tracking performance.

2. Sinusoidal low frequency vibration from ±0.20 to ±0.80$g_z$ can produce tracking error up to 40 percent greater than that found in static base conditions. Vehicle control systems must consider the dynamic environment and cannot be designed solely on the basis of static base simulations.

3. Higher RMS$g_z$ levels are required for random vibration to impair performance as compared to sinusoidal vibration.

4. For sinusoidal vibration, increases in error are related to increases in intensity; for random vibration, tracking error is not related to intensity to approximately 0.40 RMS$g_z$. Tracking error during either type of vibration is very much a function of tracking task difficulty, suggesting the use of controls and displays to comprise simplified control task situations.

5. For both random and sinusoidal $g_z$ motion, vertical tracking error is larger than that found for horizontal tracking.
6. For random vibration of long duration, there is no trend for error to increase as a function of time until about 2.5 to 3 hours is reached. Performance deteriorates for difficult tracking tasks at that time, apparently as a result of "fatigue."

7. The type of controller used influences the degree of tracking error experienced. Use of a side-stick and arm support can reduce vibration-induced error in the vertical axis by as much as 50 percent when compared to conventional center-stick controllers.

8. When tracking impairment is experienced during vibration, a residual effect may last up to one-half hour after exposure.

9. Vibration in the ±$g_x$ and ±$g_y$ axes is not known to cause decrement greater than that for ±$g_z$.

**Reaction Time**

Ability to respond rapidly to a stimulus during exposure to vibration has been subjected to much investigation in a wide variety of vibration conditions. Studies of reaction time for sinusoidal $g_z$ vibration are reported by Schmitz, Simons, and Boettcher (1960), Buckhout (1964), Shoenberger (1967), Johnston and Ayoub (c. 1969); for sinusoidal and random $g_z$ vibration by Parks (1961) and Weisz, Goddard, and Allen (1965); for random $g_z$ vibration by Soliday and Schohan (1965), Schohan, Rawson, and Soliday (1965), Hornick and Lefritz (1966), Holland (1967); and in $g_z$ and $g_y$ axes by Hornick, Boettcher, and Simons (1961). Included in these studies are frequencies from 1 to 20 Hz; intensities to ±0.60g; random vibration intensities to 0.40 RMSg; sitting and standing subjects; hand, foot, and whole body reaction; and simple to complex reaction tasks. The data clearly indicate that (1) vibration does not typically affect human reaction time; (2) when reaction time is affected during or following vibration exposure, only several one-hundredths of a second are added to the static base reaction time, normally 0.02 to 0.05 second; (3) increases in vibration intensity or duration do not produce corresponding change in reaction time.

It is possible, when the task is a secondary monitoring task, that reaction time deterioration can occur. A secondary vigilance task to monitor and detect propulsion thrust changes in a low altitude, high speed piloting simulation was used by Hornick and Lefritz (1966). A change in displayed thrust command occurred randomly once in each half hour during the 4 hour random vibration session. Vigilance response time was markedly impaired, from 2.4 seconds in nonvibration to 8.1 seconds during vibration.

**Visual Impairment**

When evaluating visual impairment from vibration, the type of vibration, the posture of the man, illumination levels, and the kind of visual task must be considered. Visual impairment is extremely sensitive to the specific
vibration/task situation. To be considered also in any operational setting are whether or not a protective helmet is worn and whether the display is vibrating along with the man or is independently damped.

In general, the range of 10 to 25 Hz is most detrimental to visual performance, though occasionally frequencies above and below this band cause decrement. The relationship of subject and display is important in that lower frequencies (below 10 Hz) more readily cause visual decrement if the display alone or the display and man are vibrating. Above 10 Hz, vibration of the human more frequently results in visual decrement, as compared to motion of the display alone. Decrement increases as a function of amplitude or intensity level.

Visual performance during vibration can be protected by proper design of displayed matter. Cluttered displays result in relatively greater decrement during vibration than do those which are easier to read. At relatively short distances, vibration can be expected to cause errors in viewed numerals or letters subtending about 9 minutes of arc or less.

In the supine position, a helmet can reduce visual error when motion is in the x-axis. Significant error reduction in the z-axis results when the head can move freely. There is some indication that higher frequencies (11 and 15 Hz) in the y-axis may result in larger error when a helmet is worn. Use of any helmet and liner configuration can be expected to modify man's visual response significantly, and each specific configuration should be the subject of dynamic base tests for high performance vehicle application.

The few studies which investigated random vibration effects have not revealed any visual impairment up to levels of 0.40 RMSg. Table 7-4 presents the major results of primary studies and figures 7-5, 7-6, and 7-7 illustrate selected results.

**Miscellaneous Performance Effects**

Certain performance effects are related to biodynamic characteristics, though they are not completely biodynamic in nature. For example, typing accuracy can be impaired during vibration because of biodynamic disturbance of the arm rather than a disruption of the basic process of typing per se. The influence on speech, auditory, and complex mental processes has also been examined by a number of investigators. Table 7-5 summarizes the results of studies of the influence of vibration on these processes.

Vibration appears to act on the biodynamic and psychomotor properties of man rather than on central neural processes. Tasks which require accurate placement of a limb or movements of controls (figure 7-8) are adversely affected by virtue of leg, arm, hand, or finger displacement (Clark et al., 1965; Schmitz et al., 1960). In cases where accuracy itself does not suffer (figure 7-9), time to complete the task increases during vibration (Guignard & Irving, 1960; Dean et al., 1967; Seeman & Williams, 1966). There is some support of the hypothesis that vibration degrades performance at frequencies where major body resonances occur.
Table 7-4
Summary of Vibration Effects on Visual Performance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Visual Task</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject static; display vibrated at 5 Hz, 0.063 in. D.A.</td>
<td>Reading speed</td>
<td>Speed reduced by about 5.3%</td>
<td>Tinker, 1948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1G_x ± n_g, ± n_g, 5, 8, 11 Hz</td>
<td>Visual acuity by detection of break in line</td>
<td>Comparison of man vibrating with display static vs man and display vibrating; both conditions result in decrement; for constant displacement, acuity worst at higher frequencies; for constant acceleration, acuity worst at 5 Hz; addition of bite-bar improved vision at 5 Hz</td>
<td>Rubenstein &amp; Taub, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1G_x ± n_g, ± n_g, 1.5 – 5.5 Hz; 0.15 – 0.35 g</td>
<td>Static display, Landolt C's</td>
<td>No decrement in either axis</td>
<td>Hornick, Boettcher, &amp; Simons, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 30 Hz in combinations of vertical, pitch, and roll motion</td>
<td>Reading printed words, both static and moving display</td>
<td>Visual acuity worst at 4 – 7 Hz; pitch motion caused greatest decrement; roll motion least decrement</td>
<td>Pradko, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1G_x ± n_g, ± n_g, ± n_g, 6, 11, 15 Hz; ± 0.9 to ± 2.0 g</td>
<td>Read easy and difficult aircraft instrument dials</td>
<td>No effect with easy dial; errors related to intensity; helmet restraint improves performance in x-axis; improves at 6 Hz but degrades at 11 and 15 Hz in y-axis; no effect in z-axis</td>
<td>Taub, 1964 (see figure 7-6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1G_x ± 1.1g_x; 6, 11, 15 Hz</td>
<td>Read difficult instrument dials; effect of various types of head restraint</td>
<td>Error greatest at 6 Hz; head damped in x-axis results in error reduction; no consistent effect of z-axis restraint</td>
<td>Taub, 1966</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7—4 (Continued)
Summary of Vibration Effects on Visual Performance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Visual Task</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz; 8, 13, 11, 23 Hz at 0.05 and 0.1 in. D.A. and 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 Hz at 0.05 in.</td>
<td>Read 3-digit numbers, 1/4 in. high</td>
<td>Beginning at 8 Hz, errors increase as a function of frequency; no function of amplitude; errors increase to 40 Hz</td>
<td>Mozell &amp; White, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz; 1 — 27 Hz; 4 subjective intensity levels</td>
<td>Digit reading</td>
<td>Greatest error in 12 — 23 Hz range; errors increase with intensity</td>
<td>Snyder, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz; 1 — 27 Hz; 4 subjective intensity levels</td>
<td>Digit reading; visual angle 6 to 24 min of arc</td>
<td>Greatest error in 12 — 23 Hz range; errors increase with intensity; error only for 9 and 6 min of arc digits</td>
<td>Teare &amp; Parks, 1963 (see figure 7–5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz</td>
<td>Reading aircraft displays</td>
<td>Collimated, head-up display results in fewer errors</td>
<td>Caiger, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±0.25g±2.4 — 9.5 Hz</td>
<td>Scan letters “c” and count randomly distributed “o’s”</td>
<td>Decrement worst at 3.4 and 4.8 Hz; completion time worst at 3.4 Hz</td>
<td>Guignard &amp; Irving, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz; 1 — 20 Hz; 1/2 short time tolerance limit</td>
<td>Detect diverging lines on static rotating disk</td>
<td>Wide individual differences; greatest decrement at 12 — 18 Hz; error also at 5, 7, and 10 Hz; residual effect following vibration</td>
<td>Lange &amp; Coermann, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1g±ngz; 5 — 37 Hz; ±0.44 - 0.51 gz and 0.83 — 1.02 gz; 6 Hz at ±0.13 — 0.36 gz; 19 Hz at ±0.16 gz</td>
<td>Read printed numbers, subtending 4.4 min of arc; series of studies to compare subject and display motion influence</td>
<td>Increase in error at 5, 14, and 27 Hz for lower intensity; below 10 Hz, influence of vibrating display greater than vibrating subject; above 10 Hz, the reverse</td>
<td>Dennis, 1965(a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
$+1G_x \pm 1.2g_x$ and $\pm 0.9 g_y$; 6, 11, 15 Hz

$+1G_x \pm n g_y$: 0 to 52 Hz vibration inputted directly to head only

Random vibration, helicopter spectrum, to 0.41 RMSg$_x$ ($+1$ G$_x$)

Random vibration, LAHS flight spectrum, various turbulence levels to 0.405 RMSg$_x$ ($+1$ G$_x$)

Random vibration, 2 – 7 Hz band, to 0.30 RMSg$_x$ ($+1$ G$_x$)

Dial reading; effects of helmet and liner configuration

Acuity measured by illumination level required to detect break in line; target static and dynamic base

Meter reading, Landolt C's

Target recognition outside of simulated cockpit

Read aircraft instruments

Error worst in x-axis for 11 Hz; no effect of liner in x-axis; in y-axis performance better with liner at 6 Hz but worse with liner at 15 Hz; total errors higher with helmet than without it

Acuity decrement above $\pm 0.2 g_y$; for constant acceleration of $\pm 1.0 g_y$, acuity worst from 22 – 34 Hz; for constant amplitude of 0.03 cm, acuity worst at 30 Hz; decrements due to target vibration are smaller than those due to head motion

No effects

No effects

No blurring or eye strain

Shoenberger, 1968

Rubenstein & Kaplan, 1968
(see figure 7–7)

Dean, McGlothlen, & Monroe, 1964

Schohan, Rawson, & Soliday, 1965

Woods, 1967
Figure 7-5. Digit reading errors as a function of vibration and digit height. Significant errors occur only for subtended arcs of 9 and 6 min. (From Teare & Parks, 1963)

Figure 7-6. Errors on difficult dial reading task (400 range dial) as a function of frequency and helmet restraint conditions for vibration in y-axis. (Taub, 1964)
While speech intelligibility itself may not be greatly affected, the quality of speech is impaired by vibration. That is, a listener can still understand the spoken material, but does perceive quality loss. No effect on significant hearing ability has been found (Weisz et al., 1965; Holland, 1966). At most, vibration may produce a practically insignificant effect on the auditory thresholds for low frequency sound (Guignard & Coles, 1965).

Tasks involving primarily higher mental processes are not adversely affected by low frequency vibration. Mental addition, pattern recognition and matching, and navigational behavior have been shown not to be impaired below 20 Hz. A single example does exist where vibration at 70 Hz at 4.0 g interfered with "continuous counting" (Ioseliani, 1967).

**Physiological Effects**

Physiological disturbances which occur during vibration are found at intensity levels much higher than those necessary to cause performance decrement. Further, those changes which do occur are usually very small and have no practical significance. Experimental data for physiologically damaging vibrations are of course, not available for humans. In the operational setting, men have been exposed to extremely intense vibration levels in helicopters when rotor blades are lost in flight. It has been speculated that deaths in these instances have resulted from rupture of the aorta.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\pm 0.15 - 0.35 \ g_x$ at 0.9 - 6.5 Hz, low amplitude</td>
<td>Whole body vertical vibration, hand tremor, body equilibrium, foot pressure</td>
<td>Foot pressure constancy impaired at 3.5 to 6.5 Hz (figure 7-8); error increase with intensity; no residual effects</td>
<td>Schmitz, Simons, &amp; Boettcher, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pm ng_x, \pm ng_y$ for 1/2 hr</td>
<td>Body sway equilibrium</td>
<td>No effects</td>
<td>Hornick, Boettcher, &amp; Simons 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pm g_z$, 2 - 20 Hz (intensities $= 1/3$ short-term tolerance limits)</td>
<td>Control of pitch and roll of a chair</td>
<td>Wide individual differences; decrement between 3 and 12 Hz, worst at 6 Hz</td>
<td>Coermann, Magid, &amp; Lange, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pm g_z$ at 0, 2, 5, 8 Hz</td>
<td>Orientation (orienting body position to face targets at 15°, 30°, and 60° from reference plane)</td>
<td>Only small decrement in accuracy; mean error $&lt; 0.5°$</td>
<td>Ayoub, c. 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\pm 0.03 - \pm 0.41 \ g_z$ at 0, 3, 5, and 8 Hz</td>
<td>Leg muscular power (on bicycle ergometer)</td>
<td>No effects</td>
<td>Harrison, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various peak-to-peak accelerations at 1 Hz with 3 Hz, and 2 Hz with 6 Hz</td>
<td>Arm-hand steadiness</td>
<td>Positional errors significantly related to RMS and frequency of vibration; 90% of error was periodic; 1 Hz with 3 Hz combination produced larger error; small (0.5 - 1 g) differences in acceleration had no effect</td>
<td>Clarke et al., 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychomotor Performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+0.25 g&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; at 2.4 – 9.5 Hz</td>
<td>Time to pick up markers and place in small circular areas</td>
<td>Completion time worst at 3.4 and 4.8 Hz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+0.5 RMSg&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; at 2 – 30 Hz (13 Hz peak power)</td>
<td>Digital decimal input with push-button, toggle switch, rotary switch, and thumbwheel controls</td>
<td>Accuracy unaffected; insert times increased by 4%; pushbuttons and toggle switches were most rapidly used, with the former preferred; thumbwheels were most accurate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0, 0.2, 0.4, 0.6, and 0.8 RMSg&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; for 5 min</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>No effects for 0.2 and 0.4 RMSg&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt;; significant increase in insert time for 0.6 and 0.8 RMSg&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; (figure 7–9); speed: pushbuttons &gt; rotary switches &gt; thumbwheels; error rate: pushbuttons highest and thumbwheels lowest for high intensity vibrations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±g&lt;sub&gt;x&lt;/sub&gt; and ±g&lt;sub&gt;y&lt;/sub&gt; at 0.33 and 0.80 Hz at amplitude of ±6.3 and ±7.0 in.</td>
<td>Nut and bolt assembly/disassembly; placement of probe through various sized holes</td>
<td>No effects at 0.33 Hz; time required increased by 30% at 0.80 Hz with no increase in accuracy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Symbol > here indicates faster than.
Table 7–5 (Continued)
Summary of Effects of Vibration on Biodynamics, Psychomotor Performance, Speech, Hearing, and Higher Mental Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>±g₂ at 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 Hz</td>
<td>Intelligibility</td>
<td>Most effect at 10 and 20 Hz</td>
<td>Nixon, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5g₂ sinusoidal at 6 Hz; 0.75 g₂ at 4 and 8 Hz; 1.0 g₂ at 2 — 20 Hz</td>
<td>Intelligibility and quality</td>
<td>No effect on intelligibility at 65 dB; &quot;quality&quot; poorer than control condition</td>
<td>Nixon &amp; Sommer, 1963</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Speech Intelligibility

Audition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Conditions</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 Hz sinusoidal, 5 Hz random amplitude, 4 — 12 Hz random frequency</td>
<td>Frequency (pitch) change (1200 for 1600 Hz) at 86 dB, tones of 0.25 sec duration every sec-detection</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Weisz, Goddard, &amp; Allen, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±g₂</td>
<td>1200 Hz at 86 dB presented every 0.25 sec for 1 sec against a 74 dB, 30 — 3000 Hz white noise; pitch change at 86 dB (1600 for 1200 Hz) — detection</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Holland, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+1G₂±0.7g₂ at 15 Hz (amplitude 0.036 in.) for 30 min</td>
<td>TTS determined as function of vibration and noise vs noise alone (acoustical frequencies from 250 — 6000 Hz)</td>
<td>Extremely small vibration effect at low tone frequencies only</td>
<td>Guignard &amp; Coles, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Conditions</td>
<td>Task Description</td>
<td>Outcome</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±0.15 – 0.35g&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; at 2.5 and 3.5 Hz</td>
<td>Mental addition</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Schmitz, Simons, &amp; Boettcher, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+g&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; at 5, 7, and 11 Hz</td>
<td>Pattern matching and discrimination</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Buckhout, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.40 RMSg&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; random vibration</td>
<td>Navigational tasks in simulated low altitude, high speed flight</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Schohan, Rawson, &amp; Soliday, 1965; Soliday &amp; Schohan, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) No vibration; 2) no noise, no vibration; 3) noise only; 4) vibration plus noise; 5) postvibration +4.0 g&lt;sub&gt;z&lt;/sub&gt; at 70 Hz</td>
<td>Continuous counting at a given rate</td>
<td>Decrement, especially during 5 – 7 min of exposure; residual effects noted; 70% of decrement attributed to vibration (30% to noise) Ss over 36 showed greater decrement</td>
<td>Ioseliani, 1967</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 7-8. Foot pressure error in previbration, vibration and postvibration periods. (From Schmitz et al., 1960)

Figure 7-9. Digital input time for vibration intensity level. (From Dean et al., 1967)
Table 7-6 summarizes the known physiological effects of vibration. The experiments summarized in table 7-6 indicate that man does not experience major physiological change while enduring whole body vibration of normal intensity. A slight degree of hyperventilation is suggested, however. No dramatic changes are seen in blood chemistry or endocrine chemical composition. Anesthesia reduces those changes which do occur, suggesting a stress effect of a psychological rather than mechanical nature. There is substantial evidence that heart rate increases occurring in early stages or during short periods of vibration are anticipatory general stress responses, because of a gradual return to resting state levels during continued vibration (Hornick & Lefritz, 1966; Holland, 1967; Ziegenruecker & Magid, 1959; Temple et al., 1964). No clearly consistent blood pressure changes have been identified after exposures to $\pm 1G_x \pm 2G_x$ from 1 to 27 Hz (Chaney, 1965). The conclusion of von Gierke (1965) is yet valid: "...to date these effects in no way characterize vibration as a severe stress nor do the results give us a handle to use these response functions as a basis for criteria."

Biodynamic Effects

Of all recorded vibration effects, there is more agreement in research results in the area of biodynamics than in any other. Biodynamic effects are those phenomena which consist of body movement reactions to vibration inputs. When the human body is vibrated, it does not react in a rigid and passive manner; rather, the body and its organs can be likened to a complex set of masses, springs, and dampers. There have been attempts to derive a mathematical model which could be used to define and predict man's motion responses to vibration inputs. By and large, attempts to develop such a model may be as overambitious as the model would be valuable. Such a model does not yet exist, due primarily to the wide variety of environmental parameters of importance—such as frequency, intensity, randomness, bandwidth, axis, duration, body-support, etc.—as well as of personal parameters—such as body size, weight, posture, age, sex, fatigue, degree of relaxation, and so forth. Discussions to be consulted which treat biodynamic phenomena are the following: Goldman and von Gierke, 1960; Coermann, 1962; von Gierke and Hiatt, 1962; Weis, 1963; von Gierke, 1964; Pradko, Lee, and Kaluza, 1966; Lee and Pradko, 1968.

From a design standpoint, probably the most useful biodynamic data are those dealing with whole body transmissibility—that is, the ratio of output to input motion. Resonances of internal organs, though of value, are not vital to system design because dangerous organ resonances are thought to occur only at severe intensities where subjective tolerance limits (often associated with pain) are reached.

Two terms which are commonly used with reference to biodynamic response to vibration are mechanical impedance and transmissibility. Mechanical impedance is defined as the ratio of applied force to the resulting body or organ output velocity. Transmissibility is the ratio of body output motion to applied motion in terms of velocity, amplitude, or intensity.

**Sinusoidal $\pm g_z$ Vibration**

Table 7-7 summarizes results of studies in the $g_z$ axis with seated subjects.
Table 7-6
Summary of Effects of Vibration on Physiological Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Condition</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \pm ng_x ) and ( \pm ng_y ), 1.5 - 5.5 Hz</td>
<td>( O_2 ) consumption increased from 7.5 to 11 l/min without increase in breaths/min, at ( \pm 0.25 ) and ( \pm 0.35 ) g</td>
<td>Hornick, Boettcher, &amp; Simons, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z, \pm ng_z ) (0.13 - 0.25 in. double amplitude), 2 - 15 Hz</td>
<td>No increase in respiration rate; increase in tidal volume at 6, 11, 15 Hz</td>
<td>Ashe, 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z, \pm ng_z ) (1 in. double amplitude), 6.6 Hz</td>
<td>Mild hyperventilation</td>
<td>Lamb &amp; Tenney, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMSd ( g_z )</td>
<td>Respiratory rate increased as function of vibration intensity to 0.8 RMSd ( g_z ), small increase in heart rate</td>
<td>Hornick &amp; Lefritz, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMSd ( g_z )</td>
<td>Heart rate increase at onset of vibration, return to resting levels during exposure</td>
<td>Hornick &amp; Lefritz, 1966, Holland, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z, \pm ng_z )</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Ziegenrueker &amp; Magid, 1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z, \pm ng_x, y, z )</td>
<td>Same</td>
<td>Temple et al., 1964</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Blood, Kidney, Endocrine Effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vibration Condition</th>
<th>Physiological Effects</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z, \pm ng_z ), 4 - 9 Hz, 1 min 0.20 - 0.40 RMSd ( g_z )</td>
<td>No evidence of effect on renal function; no change in wbc</td>
<td>Mandel, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pm 1G_z \pm ng_z ), 1 - 20 Hz, 3 min tolerance level</td>
<td>No blood, urine, or stool changes</td>
<td>Dean, McGlothlen, &amp; Monroe, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No effect on 17-hydroxycorticosteroids; no consistent change in urine or plasma levels</td>
<td>Biivaiss et al., 1964 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Effects in Animals</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7 g, 4 – 40 Hz</td>
<td>14 of 60 animals died; effects included high body temperature, kidney degeneration, increased white blood cells, hemorrhage</td>
<td>Nickerson &amp; Paradijeff, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g₂, 4 – 8 Hz</td>
<td>Elevated 17-hydroxy corticosteroids; when anesthetized, not as great; death in some dogs</td>
<td>Blivaiss et al., 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g₂</td>
<td>Skin temperature no change</td>
<td>Holland, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – 60 Hz, unrestrained subjects</td>
<td>Transmissibility acceleration max for shoulders and hips near 5 Hz; ratio of shoulder to table acceleration over 2.5; hip to table, 1.5; attenuation begins at 7 Hz for the shoulder and at 12 Hz for the hip</td>
<td>Guignard, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – 13.5 Hz, unrestrained subjects</td>
<td>4.8 Hz max transmissibility measured at shoulder; muscle tensing causes reduction in transmissibility below 4.8 Hz and increases it above 4.8 Hz</td>
<td>Guignard &amp; Irving, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9 – 6.5 Hz, wearing lapbelt</td>
<td>4.5 Hz max transmissibility measured at head; 6.5 Hz max transmissibility for hip</td>
<td>Schmitz, Simons, &amp; Boettcher, 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – 20 Hz, comparison of sitting erect and relaxed</td>
<td>Max &quot;strain&quot; (inches of change/inch of normal circumference of body area) 5.5 to 6.0 Hz for chest and upper abdomen, and 4 Hz for lower abdomen when sitting erect; max strain for chest 5.5 Hz, and abdomen 4.5 Hz when sitting relaxed (see figure 7–10)</td>
<td>Clark, Lange, Coermann, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 – 20 Hz, unrestrained</td>
<td>Max volumetric pressure changes in rectum at 4 Hz</td>
<td>White, Lange, &amp; Coermann, 1962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 7, 11 Hz, subjects with lapbelt and harness</td>
<td>Max transmissibility for sternum at 5 Hz with a 3.8 sternum to table ratio, and 2.3 and 1.5 ratios at 7 and 11 Hz</td>
<td>Buckhout, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflight UH-1B helicopter vibration, restrained and unrestrained helmets</td>
<td>Acceleration amplitudes more intense with restrained helmet; different frequencies peak in the different restraint conditions</td>
<td>Rosenberg &amp; Segal, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 – 10 Hz, unrestrained subjects</td>
<td>Max transmissibility near 4.5 Hz for shoulder, with ratio of 2.5 to table</td>
<td>Woods, 1967</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Seated and Standing Subjects. Dieckmann (1958) measured transmissibility and mechanical impedance in comparing the biodynamic effects of sitting and standing postures. He found 4 to 5 Hz to be the resonant frequency at the head and shoulders of the seated subject. When the subject is standing, impedance is greatest at 5 Hz with a secondary peak at about 12 Hz.

Comparing the biodynamic effects of sitting versus standing, Coermann (1962) reported peak impedance at 6 Hz for sitting erect; at 5 to 6 Hz for sitting relaxed; and at 6 and 11 to 12 Hz while standing erect. The data in the Dieckmann and the Coermann studies are for one subject and are, therefore, only suggestive that body resonance differs for the standing person. Coermann further reported that use of an MC-3 pressure suit adversely affects biodynamic as well as subjective response. Edwards and Lange (1964) also reported a standing relaxed resonance near 4 to 5 Hz.

Shoulder transmissibility in standing subjects during 1 to 27 Hz was recorded by Chaney (1965). He reported a maximum transmissibility ratio of 1.5 for the 4 to 6 Hz range, with attenuation below 2 Hz and above 7 Hz (figure 7-10).

To determine whether the bent leg can serve as an effective isolator, Hornick (1962) had subjects attempt to isolate the input motion as much as possible at 2 and 5 Hz. A 1 inch double amplitude was used (±0.21 and ±1.3 g, respectively). Subjects visually fixated on a spot 6 feet forward during 2 minute exposures. The legs effectively attenuated the input vibration as measured at the head, though there was a gradual loss in their ability to do so over time. More effective isolation was achieved at 5 Hz. Figure 7-11 shows that transmissibility
acceleration increases from 68 to 93 percent for 2 Hz and from 25 to 39 percent for 5 Hz during the 2 minute test time.

Figure 7-11. Percent of acceleration transmitted to heads of standing persons with knees slightly bent. (From Hornick, 1962)

Random $g_x$ Vibration

In 1966, Hornick and Lefritz recorded acceleration at pilots' heads during simulated LAIIS flight with various RMS$g_x$ levels for a zero to 12 Hz spectrum. It is interesting to note that, for a 10-minute sample, output acceleration is greatest from 4 to 6 Hz, with attenuation below 2.5 Hz and above 11 Hz (figure 7-12). These results agree very well with those obtained during sinusoidal conditions.

Other Axes and Postures

The head motions of seated and standing subjects in $+1G_x$ conditions were recorded by Dieckmann (1958). Figure 7-13 shows that the head follows the horizontal motion in a flat ellipse at low frequencies. As 5 Hz is reached, the elliptical shape of the head movement becomes vertically oriented for the standing person and becomes circular for the sitting person.

Transmissibility at the head, chest, and pelvic regions was recorded by Hornick, Boettcher, and Simons (1961) in $+1G_x$ conditions. Figure 7-14 shows that motion at the head level is attenuated through 5.5 Hz, while transmissibility exceeds unity for the chest and belt levels with maximum amplification at 5.5 Hz. In the same experiment, foot pressure constancy was recorded during the $3g_x$ motion. Greatest limb motion is experienced at 3.5 Hz.
The loss in control of foot pressure constancy becomes more severe as intensity level increases from 0.15 to 0.30 g.

![Figure 7-12. Biodynamic transmissibility during random $g_z$ vibration.](From Hornick & Lefritz, 1966)

![Figure 7-13. Head movement of standing subject (left) and sitting subject (right) with $\pm g_z$ vibration.](From Dieckmann, 1958)
Hornick, Boettcher, and Simons (1961) also recorded transmissibility at the head, during \( \pm g_y \) conditions. Figure 7.15 reveals that from 1.5 to 5.5 Hz, the body does an excellent job of attenuating motion as recorded at the head during the side-to-side vibration. The least attenuation at 1.5 Hz suggests that \( g_y \) resonance lies somewhere near that frequency. Again, foot pressure constancy was recorded, with greatest foot constancy error occurring near 1.5 Hz, the region of greatest head motion. As with the \( x \)-axis, foot motion errors are directly related to the \( g_y \) intensity levels.

Woods (1967) also studied \( \pm g_y \) vibration to 7 Hz with seated subjects. His results confirm those discussed above. Transmissibility is generally below unity above 2.0 Hz for the hip, knee, shoulder, and head. He confirms that \( g_y \) resonance is about 1.5 Hz.

Roman, Coermann, and Ziegenrüecker (1959) studied the chest-abdomen resonance in supine subjects with \( \pm g_x \) and \( \pm g_z \) conditions. From 2 to 17 Hz, there is amplification in the \( \pm g_z \) axis, with highest transmissibility (ratio of 3.5) occurring at 5.9 Hz.
Figure 7-15. Transmissibility at the head during $\pm g_x$ vibration. Standard deviations appear for each mean for 20 subjects. (From Hornick et al., 1961)

Clark, Lange, and Coermann (1962) recorded pelvic, chest, and abdomen motion in supine subjects during $\pm g_x$ conditions, from 2 to 20 Hz. Body deformation "strain" (as described earlier) was employed for measurement. All strains are at a maximum at 6.7 Hz (see figure 7-16).

Figure 7-16. Mean strain of 7 subjects exposed to $\pm g_x$ vibrations in semisupine position. (From Clark et al., 1962)
Edwards and Lange (1964) exposed subjects in the supine position and resting on their sides to $+1G_x$, $+1G_y$, and $+1G_z$ vibration from zero to 20 Hz. In the relaxed supine position, it was again found that the first resonance for the chest and abdominal regions occurs between 5.5 to 7.5 Hz. A similar result in impedance peak occurs for subjects resting on their sides, with the peak near 5 Hz.

**Summary of Biodynamic Effects**

No matter what technique is used to record major body or whole body response to vibration, results are in good agreement.

1. Internal organs have unique resonant frequencies which can differ in each axis.
2. Whole body resonance for seated subjects is in the region of 4 to 6 Hz in the $z$ axis.
3. For the seated subject, maximum hip amplification occurs at higher frequencies, about 10 Hz, in the $z$ axis.
4. Motion experienced in the seated subject at the upper torso may be amplified from 1.5 to 4.0 times at the resonant frequency.
5. Use of helmets modifies head motion, and it is suggested that the helmet-free condition is better than the helmet-restrained condition.
6. Standing subjects, with motion in the $z$ axis, have a major body resonance near 4 to 6 Hz. A secondary resonance occurs near 12 Hz. Standing with the legs bent serves to attenuate the input vibration, but fatigue occurs and effectiveness of this as a damping technique is gradually lowered.
7. When seated and experiencing $z$ vibration, the lower body amplifies the motion, but motion is attenuated at the head. Resonance is above 5.5 Hz.
8. When seated and experiencing $z$ vibration, motion in the upper torso is attenuated, but maximum response occurs near 1.5 Hz.
9. In subjects who are supine or resting on their sides, chest and abdominal response is greatest in the 5 to 8 Hz region, indicating that man's torso should be protected from such frequencies when in these positions.

**Subjective Tolerance Levels**

The system designer is confronted with a large body of conflicting data when he attempts to determine vibration levels which are subjectively acceptable to man. It is true that levels which are virtually imperceptible to man can be identified, as well as those where extreme pain or discomfort occur. However, the designer is most often faced with the nebulous area between the extremes. Tolerance limits are treated here along with subjective levels since a tolerance limit may be considered as the uppermost
subjective level. A true tolerance limit would be based on pathological data such as organic damage or actual mortality. Man is not used as an experimental animal for such purposes; therefore, estimates of tolerance limits are based on subjective reactions to pain and anxiety or fear.

The basic problems in defining valid subjective levels are: (1) inter-personal variability—different persons label the same intensity level with different terms; (2) intra-personal variability—the same individual describes an intensity level as “disturbing” at one time, and “hardly noticeable” at another; (3) situation specificity—a particular intensity level is perceived differently depending on whether the individual is in an aircraft, an automobile, or in his home; and (4) semantics—a lack of consistent definitions of terms such as “annoying,” “objectionable,” “disturbing,” etc.

Subjective levels and tolerance limits presented in this section, therefore, should be used with some degree of caution. The system designer should not believe, for instance, that a potential change of 0.10 g suddenly places his system in an “objectionable” range. He must use the described levels advisedly, knowing that while they may be the best data available, limits are quite flexible because of the factors mentioned above.

Historically, subjective studies have largely provided the basis for proposed vibration standards. Various schemes have been used in attempts to provide standards which could be universally applied to the population. Typically, a set of frequency-intensity curves are provided representing different levels of subjective reaction; then conversion functions might be added to arrive at levels for different axes, for random motion, and for duration of exposure.

Two agencies have been active in trying to define acceptable standards. In the United States, Working Group 53-W-39 of the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) is writing standards with respect to annoyance, work interference, and hazard. Technical Committee ISO/TC 108/WG 7 of the International Organization of Standardization (ISO) is determining thresholds of vibration and shock acceptable to man (ISO, 1970; Hornick, 1969).

Probably the first attempt to organize subjective levels was made by Goldman (1948), who summarized several independent studies with curves describing comfort and discomfort regions. These curves were used as design guidelines without distinction for axis, duration, or randomness. In more recent years, studies have been conducted to define more clearly the influence of these factors on subjective reactions.

Sinusoidal $\pm g$ Vibration

A short-term tolerance limit from 1 to 15 Hz was established by Ziegenruecker and Magid (1959). Lowest tolerance is the range of 4 to 8 Hz. Subjective symptoms frequently reported included abdominal pain,
chest pain, dyspnea, and general discomfort; with relatively fewer reports of testicular pain, head symptoms, and anxiety. Extending this study, Magid, Coermann, and Ziegenruecker (1960) estimated the g levels which might be tolerated for 1 and 3 minute exposures (figure 7-17).

![Figure 7-17. Short time, 1 min. and 3 min. tolerance limits.](Magid et al., 1960)

Showing that the manner of respiration affects tolerance, Mandel and Lowry (1962) obtained higher tolerance limits for 1 minute exposures. Subjects were instructed to continue to breathe normally instead of erratically during vibration. Figure 7-18 compares the Mandel and Lowry data with those of Magid, Coermann, and Ziegenruecker (1960). Figure 7-19 illustrates wide variability in subjective tolerance levels reported by subjects exposed to 1 to 27 Hz in studies by Parks and Snyder (1961) and Chaney (1964) using identical facilities.

A psychophysical approach to the quantification of subjective levels has recently been devised by Shoenerberger and Harris (1969), whereby magnitude estimation and intensity matching replace qualitative descriptions. For each frequency, results are plotted as straight line functions on log-log graphs of subjective intensity versus physical intensity. Subjects then match the intensity of 9 Hz at 0.08, 0.16, 0.26, 0.36, 0.46, and 0.56 \( g_z \) with vibration at each of the other six frequencies. According to Shoenerberger and Harris, equal intensity curves from the magnitude estimation data show the same general shape and comparable levels as corresponding curves determined experimentally using the intensity matching procedure. Figure 7-20 shows the derived curves from the intensity matching and magnitude estimation data based upon a value of 0.006 \( g_z \) for the threshold of vibration perception at 9 Hz, with the six acceleration levels then corresponding to
the multiples of that base. These results indicate that subjective response to vibration can be assessed by techniques similar to those used in acoustics, and that they could eventually be used for estimating the severity of complex vibration conditions.

Subjective levels for dual frequency sinusoidal $g_z$ motion were investigated by Brumaghim (1967). Subjects estimated the severity of 4, 5, 6, 8, and 10 Hz when each was experienced (1) with no other vibration, (2) with 17 Hz at 0.24 RMS$g$ added, and (3) with 17 Hz at 0.43 RMS$g$ added. Subjects were instructed to "ignore" the background 17 Hz motion in identifying perceptible, mildly annoying, and extremely annoying levels for the basic frequencies. When the background intensity was 0.43 RMS$g$, higher intensity levels of the basic frequency were necessary for the subjects to identify them subjectively. Figure 7-21 shows the change in intensity required for the basic frequencies to be found "perceptible," etc., when paired with the 0.43 RMS$g$, 17 Hz vibration. It appears that difficulty is experienced in perceiving the primary frequency when a background vibration is present.

In figure 7-22 are data which present subjective levels for sinusoidal vibration.
Figure 7-19. Subjective tolerance curves comparison. (Chaney, 1964)

Figure 7-20. Equal subjective intensity curves. (From Shoenberger & Harris, 1969)
Figure 7−21. Change in intensity required for basic frequency to reach designated subjective thresholds with and without background vibration. (Compiled from data of Brumaghim, 1967)

Figure 7−22. Subjective levels and tolerance limits for $3g$ vibration.
Reports of Pain. Reports of pain are scattered widely in the vibration literature. Most often, these are relatively casual references to general complaints or to pain in some region of the body by some of the participating subjects. These accounts are not treated in detail here because of the typically sporadic character of the reports, though some generalizations may be made. Little is known with respect to the specific causes of pain during vibration. However, it is widely believed that organic resonances and consequent stretching of supportive muscles and tissue is a major contributor. Most reports of pain occur at levels above those necessary to cause performance decrement. As tolerance limits and "alarming" levels are approached, the proportion of complaints can be expected to increase. In the frequency range of 4 to 8 Hz, complaints are often made at levels over approximately ±0.25g_z, intensities fairly well below "alarming" levels. Pain and discomfort disappear with the cessation of vibration.

Random g_z Vibration

Table 7-8 summarizes reactions to random g_z vibration.

Absorbed Power Concept. In recent years, a concept of "absorbed power" has been advanced by Pradko and his coworkers which is claimed to correlate subjective and quantified values quite well. Detailed explanations and the mathematical structure of the technique are available in several papers and are, therefore, not presented here (see Pradko & Lee, c.1965; Pradko et al., 1966; and Lee & Pradko, 1968). The technique involves use of power spectral density (PSD), but with the added measurement of the rate at which the vibration input is used by means of a transfer function of input to output energy. The rate of flow of energy characterizes the interaction of the vibrating human and the environment. The energy flow occurs as a result of the complex damped elastic properties of the anatomy, and this flow is designated as "absorbed power." This concept is yet largely a hypothetical approach, and its attempts at correlations with subjective reactions, while mathematically precise, are based on too few subjects to be applicable at this time.

Other Axes

Lee and Pradko data (1968) support the notion that the g_x and g_y axes may not differ much for subjective comfort, and that these axes differ from the g_z axis as follows: below 4 Hz, comfort is lower for the g_x and g_y axes; above 4 Hz, comfort is greater in the g_x and g_y axes.

Earlier, Pradko (1964) used sinusoidal and random vibration from 1 to 30 Hz in several axes and combinations—g_z; pitch; roll; g_z and roll; pitch and roll; and g_z and pitch and roll. With random motion, tolerance is greatest for roll. Overall highest tolerance is to random motion which indicates that generalizing from sinusoidal limits to random vibration is not appropriate and that g_z limits cannot be used for other axes. To do so could result in overly conservative design limits not desirable for system design.
Table 7–8  
Subjective Reactions to Random $g_z$ Vibrations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RMSg</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>Intense discomfort in abdomen and thorax; pain</td>
<td>5 min duration, 2 – 30 Hz</td>
<td>Dean, Farrell, &amp; Hitt, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Refusal to exceed by varying aircraft flight parameters</td>
<td>Flying aircraft through turbulence</td>
<td>Notess, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>Refusal to exceed by reducing the velocity of driven tanks</td>
<td>Driving tanks over rough terrain</td>
<td>Fernstrom, Gschwind, &amp; Horley, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>Occasional complaints of discomfort, fatigue, muscle tightness</td>
<td>3 hr duration</td>
<td>Schohan, Rawson, &amp; Soliday, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>Visual blurring, nose itch, face flutter, teeth chatter</td>
<td>40 min duration, 1 – 1000 Hz</td>
<td>Dean, McGlothlen, &amp; Monroe, 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>Some unpleasant effects</td>
<td>3 min duration, 2 – 7 Hz</td>
<td>Woods, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No subjective complaints</td>
<td>4 hr duration, 1 – 12 Hz</td>
<td>Hornick &amp; Lefritz, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No subjective complaints</td>
<td>6 hr duration, 1 – 6 Hz</td>
<td>Holland, 1967</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Woods (1967) compared subjective reactions to sinusoidal and random motion in the $g_z$ and $g_y$ axes with 10 seated subjects. Descriptor opinions were: (1) "neutral;" (2) "some unpleasant effects;" (3) "some unpleasant effects cannot be ignored;" (4) "definitely unpleasant;" (5) "most unpleasant;" and (6) "quite unacceptable." Figures 7-23 and 7-24 show the general nature of his findings. Random vibration is better tolerated than is sinusoidal motion in both the $g_z$ and $g_y$ axes.

Figure 7–23. Comparison of random and sinusoidal $g_z$ subjective reaction of "some unpleasant effects cannot be ignored". (From Woods, 1967; used by permission of Aircraft Engineering)

Figure 7–24. Comparison of random and sinusoidal $g_y$ subjective reaction of "some unpleasant effects cannot be ignored". (From Woods, 1967; used by permission of Aircraft Engineering)
“Annoying” and “objectionable” levels for aircraft passenger situations were studied by Brumaghim (1969). Subjects were seated in aircraft seats in a simulator and experienced several types of vibration—\(g_x\), \(g_y\), single and combined frequencies, single and combined axes, and combined frequencies and axes. These results also indicate that lateral \(g_y\) vibrations are more objectionable than \(g_z\) motion in the range to 3 Hz (Figure 7-25). Combined frequency tests were conducted in \(g_z\) and \(g_y\) axes to determine if reactions to multifrequency vibration could be linearly predicted from the values obtained for each frequency separately. That is, for the 1 and 4 Hz combination, halves of each separate frequency intensity called objectionable were summed as the predicted value for the combined frequencies. Brumaghim found good agreement between predicted and actual values. However, the results for prediction of combined axis vibration reactions were not good, again indicating the nonequivalence of the axes of motion with respect to subjective reaction.

Temple and coworkers (1964) conducted a study with subjects semisupine at +1 G\(x\), experiencing \(g_x\), \(g_y\), and \(g_z\) vibration from 3 to 20 Hz to evaluate tolerance endpoints for several couch support and head restraint configurations. The data indicate that tolerance is extremely sensitive to the type of support, and that complex interactions exist between type of support system and axis of motion.

**Summary of Subjective Responses**

Subjective levels and tolerance limits in older literature are not useful for design because they (1) are based on antiquated studies; (2) use grossly
subjective semantics; (3) depend on “data” from one or very few subjects or “observers;” (4) do not account for variability; (5) do not account for duration; (6) do not account for personal variables; and (7) do not differentiate among axes. Certain agencies are in the process of defining limits which may become universally acceptable as design guidelines. However, these are not yet satisfactorily defined.

Two reviews have as their objective the exploration of the limit problem rather than the definition of discrete levels. Bryce (1966) explored the basis of the disagreements in the subjective comfort area and suggests that the most prominent discrepancies are attributable to the amount of restraint afforded by the body support. Gartley and Beldam (1967) explored the feasibility of establishing acceptable exposure criteria and conclude that “the inconsistencies and general lack of agreement...make it impossible to develop realistic vibration exposure criteria...”

Beyond the subjective data reported in figure 7-23 and table 7-6, it can reasonably be stated that subjective comfort to $g_y$ and $g_x$ motion is less than for $g_z$ below 4 Hz; above 4 Hz, $g_z$ is likely to be more disturbing than for the other axes. Further, the small amount of data comparing sinusoidal motion to random suggests that random motion is better tolerated than is sinusoidal. Published exposure limits at this time are difficult to justify and must be applied cautiously.

Interaction of Vibration with Other Environmental Parameters

Limited research has combined vibration stress with other environmental stressors such as acceleration, noise, and altitude. Visual performance during linear acceleration with vibration was studied by Clarke and coworkers (1965). Conditions of $+3.85 G_x \pm g_x$ were used, with vibration intensities ranging from $\pm 0.8$ to $\pm 2.4 \text{ g}$ at 11 Hz. No effect was found for an easy dial reading task, but increased intensity of vibration was related to increased error scores for a difficult task. In terms of very gross errors, no real effect was noted until $\pm 1.6 \text{ g}_x$ was reached.

A similar set of conditions was used by Vykukal and Dolkas (1966) and Vykukal (1968) where tracking, dial reading, and subjective assessment of performance decrement were evaluated during $+nG_x \pm g_x$ conditions. Acceleration and vibration intensities up to $+4 G_x$ and $\pm 3.0 \text{ g}_x$ in the 2.5 to 20 Hz frequency range were used. Results indicate that decreased visual acuity is the most serious effect. Rapid deterioration of control performance occurred at $\pm 0.7 \text{ g}_x$ for 11 Hz. With a $+3.5 \text{ G}_x$ bias, vibration levels above $\pm 0.30 \text{ g}_x$ at 11 Hz are believed to jeopardize spacecraft mission success. Body resonances were observed at 7 Hz; between 9.5 and 12.5 Hz; and at 15 and 18 Hz. Magnitude of the resonances increases as a function of the bias acceleration for the same level ($\pm 0.4 \text{ g}_x$) of vibration. Observance of pain at 7 and 18 Hz suggests a lower tolerance to vibration at resonant frequencies when combined with high linear accelerations.
Typing performance was studied by Rulon, Sampson, and Schohan (1951) during actual flight conditions with turbulence. Steady state acceleration levels ranged from +1 to +3\( \text{G}_z \) with turbulence producing added oscillation. Experienced teletypists and "hunt-and-peck" typists were subjects. There was a large practice effect observed, and accuracy of the hunt-and-peck typists actually increased during the flights. However, the high proficiency teletypists experienced more response (wrong finger) and displacement (hand on wrong key) errors during the flights. No data were presented relating errors to vibration intensity or duration.

A complex study concerning pilot control during turbulence was reported by Hitchcock and Morway (1968). In this study, pilots "flew" through turbulent storms in a simulated 720-B cockpit on a centrifuge with a shake platform included to provide 4.7 and 7 Hz associated with aircraft vibration. Flight accelerations ranged to +3.5\( \text{G}_z \) with \( \pm 0.5\text{G}_z \) at 7 Hz and \( \pm 1.5\text{G}_z \) at 4.6 Hz. It was noted that under the experimental conditions pilots were willing to follow and capable of following prescribed penetration procedures. They chose, however, to terminate attempts to achieve new headings and altitudes when heavy turbulence was encountered. Finally, the study suggested that use of a "turbulence flight director" enables pilots to maintain better speed control and results in a reduced load factor.

Much additional research is needed in the area of vibration combined with other stresses in order to provide data which can more adequately describe the reactions of man in a dynamic environment.

References


Ashe, W. F. Physiological and pathological effects of mechanical vibration. Report 862-4, NIH Grant OH-6, Ohio State University Research Foundation, Columbus, Ohio, September 1961.

Ashe, W. F. Physiological and pathological effects of mechanical vibration on animals and man. Report 862-5, NIH Grant OH-00006-06, Ohio State University Research Foundation, Columbus, Ohio, January 1964.

Ayoub, M. M. Performance and recovery under prolonged vibration. Unpublished manuscript, School of Engineering, Texas Technological College, Lubbock, Texas, c. 1969.


Vibration 345


Goldman, D. E. A review of subjective responses to vibratory motion of the human body in the frequency range 1 to 70 cps. Project NM 004-001, Report No. 1, Naval Medical Research Institute, Bethesda, Maryland, March 1948.


Hornick, R. J., & Lefritz, N. M. A study and review of human response to prolonged random vibration. Human Factors, 1966, 8(6), 481-492.


Neel, S. H. Noise and vibration exposure of combat zone evacuees. ACAM Report, USAF School of Aviation Medicine, February 1959.

Nickerson, J. L., & Paradijef, A. Body tissue changes in dogs resulting from sinusoidal oscillation stress. AMRL-TDR-64-56, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, August 1964.


Rubenstein, L., & Kaplan, R. Some effects of y-axis vibration on visual acuity. AMRL-TR-68-19, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, June 1968.


Taub, H. A. The effects of vibration on dial reading performance. AMRL-TDR-64-70, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, July 1964.


Vykukal, H. C. Dynamic response of the human body to vibration when combined with various magnitudes of linear acceleration. Aerospace Medicine, 1968, 39, 1163-1166.


Yamamoto, T. G. Structural dynamic response of a terrain following vehicle due to turbulence. NA-64-1324, North American Aviation, Los Angeles, California, 22 January 1965.

Gravity is a force which is ever present, continuously utilized, and little understood. Its invariant nature underlies our every activity. We walk, we build, we play games—in every instance relying on the constant effect of gravity and seldom realizing that this is the case. The world of unit-gravity is very familiar and very comfortable. A world without gravity would be strange indeed. Yet the designers of space missions and space equipment must plan systems and devices for perfect operation in a world in which there is no gravity.

From the design engineering vantage point, two aspects of the weightless or reduced-weight state are especially important. The first of these, of course, is the absence of weight itself; the second, the tractionlessness which accompanies it. The gravitational weight of the body is a quantity to which the human nervous system has become accustomed to responding over the entire period of development of the species on Earth. The removal of man from Earth's gravitation environment can therefore reasonably be expected to have significant impact on the organism, notably in the areas of perceptual-motor performance, sensory performance, and basic physiological functioning.

Perceptual-motor responses are conditioned to overcoming the existing pull of gravity on both the limbs and on any objects one wishes to lift or move. One learns to judge the weight of objects and to predict their movement by forces in the limbs upon handling various objects. With no gravitational force to overcome, free-floating objects will accelerate with the application of the smallest force. Actual space flight experience fortunately has shown that man's effectiveness in handling objects in that environment is not a problem. On the contrary, one adapts readily to this aspect of the environment, and it has frequently been used to advantage (Berry, 1970). Positioning tools, for example, in "mid-air" at a work site and soaring from place to place are obviously convenient when such behavior is desired.

Certain special senses are subject to functional alterations in the weightless environment. This is particularly true of the body's balance mechanism, the
gravity-dependent otolith organ. The physiology of these responses will be discussed in detail in chapter 17 and will only be mentioned briefly in the present chapter. Since the sense of cutaneous touch depends on stimulation of the touch receptors in the skin, the gravity-free environment virtually eliminates this sensation. This seems to create for the inhabitant of the space capsule an unusual but not inconvenient situation.

The satisfactory performance of purely motor functions has posed a more challenging problem in the space environment. The execution of tasks which require push-pull forces and locomotion itself in the weightless state and under lunar gravity conditions has been facilitated through the development of various restraints and specialized tools and preflight astronaut training employing neutral buoyancy and other simulation techniques.

Unfortunately, prediction of physiologic responses during weightlessness is more complicated than prediction of work performance. Many of the problems anticipated have proved to be without foundation. Some, however, have been borne out. For example, it was reasonable to expect that head colds would be more troublesome in 0 g than in the Earthbound environment since sinus drainage is gravity dependent. During the Apollo 7 mission, crewmembers who suffered head colds reported considerable discomfort and indicated that the space flight environment was in fact detrimental to relieving cold suffering. Earthbound analogs of weightlessness are available, but these are little more than useful tools. None actually simulates weightlessness since none eliminates gravity effects. At best, these techniques permit long-term study of isolated aspects similar to those which would be experienced in the weightless environment. Bed rest studies, for instance, are useful for more closely examining the effects of prolonged inactivity on such functions as calcium metabolism. The neutral buoyancy technique is unsuitable for the study of long-term physiological change because human subjects obviously can be submerged only for limited periods of time.

Since true weightlessness can be achieved within the influence of Earth's gravity for no longer than 1 min (usually 30 to 40 sec) (Gerathewohl & Ward, 1960), the most reliable predictor of the effects of long-term weightlessness on the human organism is, without doubt, actual orbital space flight experience. To date, this experience is limited to 2 weeks' exposure during the Gemini 7 mission and 24 days in the Soviet Salyut/Soyuz 11 flight. (See appendix for a chronology of U.S. and Soviet space flight mission durations.)

Animal data have been obtained during a 22-day mission where dogs were placed in orbit by Soviet scientists aboard the Kosmos 110 satellite (Parin et al., 1968). This and similar animal experiments are, like ground-based simulation, a valuable, but by no means perfect, tool for studying weightlessness effects. Whereas extrapolation from simulated to actual space flight conditions must be made cautiously because ground-based studies cannot eliminate gravity effects, direct applicability of orbital animal flight data is markedly restricted because of the inherent danger of generalizing results across species. Such experimentation does, however, offer the possibility of performing procedures which could not be ethically applied to man, and animals can be subjected to excessive
environmental exposures in search of threshold tolerances (but still must be instrumented carefully if any results are to be interpretable).

All information available to date indicates that man adjusts well to zero gravity for the periods he has flown. Some reversible physiological changes have been noted, principally in the cardiovascular system. To limit the magnitude of those changes, some countermeasures to weightlessness may be required, but these may be no more complicated than the provision of dietary supplements. With few exceptions, adjustment to weightlessness has been effortless.

Information about weightlessness effects has been gained by increasing man's exposure to the weightless environment in cautious incremental steps. In the Skylab program, scheduled to commence in 1973, this approach will be expanded and systematized. The Skylab space station will permit a much higher level of complexity of medical/behavioral laboratory techniques and equipment as well as longer mission durations of 28 to 56 days. Missions such as these will provide the first steps toward a sound basis for committing man to even longer stays in space, perhaps up to several years' duration.

Data obtained during manned missions in space have done much to dispel speculation concerning the potential hazards of space travel. However, some changes have been seen and although they do not appear to suggest that man is seriously compromised physiologically by space flight experience they nonetheless must be watched carefully to insure that they are not progressive in nature. The necessity for more data is further emphasized by the small number of individuals studied thus far and the inevitable individual variability which exists. Increasing mission length, however, increases the importance of providing an environment for man in space which assures his safe and satisfactory performance. Space vehicles must be designed with all aspects of operation in zero gravity taken into account.

Effects of Weightlessness on Physiological Systems

Prior to actual space flight experience, many legitimate concerns were expressed about man's potential response to the space flight environment. Table 8-1 lists a number of the effects predicted. Some of these involved pure conjecture; others could be more reasonably expected on the basis of early orbital animal flight experience and parabolic aircraft flight experimentation involving both men and animals. Inflight and postflight studies reported for individuals who have lived and worked in space indicate that many predicted problems were baseless, at least for stays up to 2 weeks. Some physiological changes have been consistently noted, but none have been permanently debilitating.
Table 8-1

Predicted Human Response to Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Human Response</th>
<th>Physiological Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dysbarism</td>
<td>Reduced blood volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disruption of circadian rhythms</td>
<td>Reduced plasma volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased g-tolerance</td>
<td>Dehydration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin infections and breakdown</td>
<td>Weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleepiness and sleeplessness</td>
<td>Bone demineralization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced visual acuity</td>
<td>Loss of appetite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorientation and motion sickness</td>
<td>Nausea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary atelectasis</td>
<td>Renal stones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High heart rates</td>
<td>Urinary retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac arrhythmias</td>
<td>Diuresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High blood pressure</td>
<td>Muscular incoordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low blood pressure</td>
<td>Muscular atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fainting postflight</td>
<td>Hallucinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electromechanical delay in cardiac cycle</td>
<td>Euphoria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced cardiovascular response to exercise</td>
<td>Impaired psychomotor performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedative need</td>
<td>Infectious disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulant need</td>
<td>Fatigue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8-2 summarizes the responses of the United States astronauts and Soviet cosmonauts to space flight exposure in the Mercury, Gemini, Apollo, Vostok, Voskhod, and Soyuz missions. Observation and measurement of these responses were made possible by a number of techniques, including preflight, inflight, and postflight studies. Television, telemetry and voice communication plus inflight sampling and, in one instance (Voskhod 1), inflight clinical evaluation by a physician, permitted an assessment of real time physiological changes.

Table 8-3 lists the principal techniques employed to monitor minute-to-minute inflight responses.

The sections which follow elaborate the physiological and performance areas which have been or may be expected to be affected by weightless space flight.

**Cardiovascular Responses and Hematological Effects**

Oxygen and nutrients in the internal environment of the body would be rapidly exhausted if they were not continually replenished by circulating blood. Likewise, the end products of metabolism would soon build up to toxic levels were they not removed from the tissues. This exchange is accomplished in capillary beds. At the arterial end of the capillaries, hydrostatic pressure due to
### Table 8-2

Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>UNITED STATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEHCURY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CARDIOVASCULAR RESPONSES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AND HEMODYNAMICS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PULSE RATES</strong></td>
<td>Elevated postflight (76 vs 86 bpm). Normalized 9 - 19 hr. postflight (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ORTHOSTATIC TOLERANCE</strong></td>
<td>Decreased postflight 7 - 19 hr.; briefly presyncopal (heart rate rose to 188 bpm during egress) (MA-9); greater decrease after 34 hr. flight than after 9 hr. flight (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXERCISE TOLERANCE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(WORK CAPACITY)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFLIGHT</strong></td>
<td>Not significantly different from preflight (38)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 8–2 (Continued)
Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>UNITED STATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MERCURY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTFLIGHT</td>
<td>Not measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NET HEMATOLOGICAL CHANGES</td>
<td>Lymphocytosis for 2 weeks postflight (90/80 supine) (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE BLOOD CELLS</td>
<td>Unchanged (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RED BLOOD CELL MASS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLASMA VOLUME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELECTRICAL ACTIVITY (EKG)</td>
<td>Moderate rightward shift in QRS &amp; T postflight (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELECTRIC &amp; MECHANICAL SYSTOLE</td>
<td>Stable (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRHYTHMIAS</td>
<td>Not different from baseline (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOOD PRESSURE</td>
<td>Decreased 9 - 19 hr postflight (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULMONARY FUNCTION</td>
<td>Normal (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERAL METABOLISM</td>
<td>-7.75 lb (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WEIGHT LOSS</td>
<td>-7.75 lb (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATER BALANCE</td>
<td>Negative (reduced food and water intake) (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTFLIGHT ENERGY EXPENDITURE MEASURED BY O₂ UPTAKE DURING REST</td>
<td>Not measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUSCULO-SKELETAL RESPONSES</td>
<td>Not measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NITROGEN BALANCE</td>
<td>Not measured</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8-2 (Continued)
Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>UNITED STATES</th>
<th>GEMINI</th>
<th>APOLLO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUSCLE CHANGES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased calf size; cardiac silhouette decreased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BONE DEMINERALIZATION</td>
<td>No evidence of Ca mobilization (39)</td>
<td>12 - 15% decrease in bone density (Gemini 4, 5, 7) (1); calcium balance data confirm negative trend (4, 10)</td>
<td>Minimal density reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VESTIBULAR RESPONSES</td>
<td>Sensation of objects rotating 90°, transitory (38)</td>
<td>No alteration (4)</td>
<td>Minimal subjective symptoms of motion sickness in early phase of mission; nausea and/or vomiting in 3 astronauts (of total 30) each on separate missions; tumbling sensation 2 crewmen on donning suits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>Total: 4.5 hr (in short, sound naps) inflight; subjectively normal (38)</td>
<td>Variation in depth from stage 1 - 4 (noted also in ground based data) amount not sufficient to prevent fatigue (4)</td>
<td>Quality and quantity improved when crew sleep simultaneously (Apollo 9, 10, 11) (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COORDINATION</td>
<td>Normal (39)</td>
<td>Unimpaired (4)</td>
<td>Unimpaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SENSATIONS</td>
<td>None (39)</td>
<td>None (1)</td>
<td>Slight to severe symptoms (9/30 crewmen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTION SICKNESS</td>
<td>None (39)</td>
<td>None (4)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISORIENTATION</td>
<td>Transitory; not troublesome (38)</td>
<td>1/30 - sensation of headdown tilt of approximately 30° during recumbency for 5 postflight days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FATIGUE</td>
<td>Expressed, but did not interfere with performance (4)</td>
<td>Expressed, but variable in degree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISCELLANEOUS</td>
<td>&quot;Fullness of the head&quot; (4)</td>
<td>&quot;Fullness of head&quot;; generally universal during early flight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOCHEMICAL CHANGES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOOD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELECTROLYTES (Na, K, Cl)</td>
<td>Na elevated postflight (38)</td>
<td>Decreased postflight in command pilot (4)</td>
<td>Consistent slight decrease to moderate decrease in serum potassium. No change in serum sodium, chloride; generally return to pre-flight levels 24-48 hr postflight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLUCOSE</td>
<td>Increased postflight (4)</td>
<td>Transient elevation postflight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URIC ACID</td>
<td>Decrease (4)</td>
<td>Generally decreased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8–2 (Continued)
Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>UNITED STATES</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MERCURY</td>
<td>GEMINI</td>
<td>APOLLO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATININE</td>
<td>Slight increase postflight (4)</td>
<td>No significant change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMUNOGLOBULINS</td>
<td>Increased (probably related to clinical illness and stress) (2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYDROXPROLINE</td>
<td>Marked increase in bound hydroxyproline in plasma (Gemini 7) in 1st postflight sample (4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHOLESTEROL</td>
<td>No significant change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORMONES</td>
<td>ADH and aldosterone elevated (4); 17-hydroxycorticosterone increased postflight (4)</td>
<td>Hydrocortisone and ACTH decreased. Insulin unchanged. T-3, T-4 unchanged; angiotensin I markedly elevated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URINE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYDROXPROLINE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELECTROLYTES (Na, K, Cl)</td>
<td>Retention postflight (38)</td>
<td>Na - slightly reduced output inflight; marked retention postflight; Cl - same; K - ambiguous (4)</td>
<td>Diminished excretion immediately postflight (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEROIDS</td>
<td>Aldosterone increased inflight and immediately postflight (4)</td>
<td>Hydrocortisone elevated aldosterone elevated 17-ketosteroids slightly decreased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATECHOLAMINES</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gemini, elevated; Apollo, elevated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALCIUM</td>
<td>Elevated postflight (38)</td>
<td>Larger quantities excreted in later phases of flight (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No significant trend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UREA NITROGEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased postflight (command pilot Gemini 7) (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATININE</td>
<td>Elevated postflight (38)</td>
<td>Apollo 8 through 16: 24-hr urine No significant change from preflight levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of abnormality based on crew mission task performance and EEG (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of abnormality based on crew mission task performance (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VISION</td>
<td>Unimpaired (onboard vision tester) (4)</td>
<td>Acuity unimpaired; light flashes noted on most lunar missions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8-2 (Continued)
Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES</th>
<th>UNITED STATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MERCURY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MICROFLORAL ALTERATIONS</td>
<td>Not measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLINICAL ILLNESS</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIATION EXPOSURE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARDIOVASCULAR RESPONSES AND HEMODYNAMICS</td>
<td>SOVIET UNION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULSE RATES</td>
<td>VOSTOK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased in zero G (33); normalization</td>
<td>After pronounced increase, normalization occurred within 2 hr of flight; one vagotonic reaction was observed; decrease to 46 beat/min in sleep (11); almost all experienced fluctuation in rate (12); moderate tachycardia in Voskhod 2 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orthostatic tolerance</td>
<td>Decreased postflight (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orthostatic tolerance</td>
<td>Decreased heart rate indicated by decreased (26-47%) minute volume, and blood pressure (10-24 mm Hg) on standing (11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| EXERCISE TOLERANCE (WORK CAPACITY)      | VOSTOK       | VOSHOD       | SOYUZ        |
|                                         | High (Vostok 5, 6) (36) | Somewhat decreased for one cosmonaut; remained high for other (11) | High (Soyuz 9) (22) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SOVET UNION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VOSTOK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decreased. Greater increase in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>heart rate and normalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>period than preflight; normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by 3 days postflight (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VOSKHOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes seen after missions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lasting more than 5 days;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>decrease in Soyuz 9 crew lasted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 days postflight (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SOYUZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>POSTFLIGHT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**NET HEMATOLOGICAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CHANGES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WHITE BLOOD CELLS</strong></td>
<td>Leucocytosis (Vostok 2, 3, 4);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lymphopenia and tendency to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eosinopenia (Vostok 3, 4) (all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quickly reversed: attributed to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stress) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slight leucocytosis and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lymphocytosis; normalized in 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hr postflight (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eosinopenia, leucocytosis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thrombocytopenia 1.5 - 2 hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>postflight (Soyuz 9) (26, 31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RED BLOOD CELL MASS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLASMA VOLUME</strong></td>
<td>Decrease indicated by increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in hemoglobin, erythrocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>postflight (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**ELECTRICAL ACTIVITY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(EKG)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Observation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELECTRIC &amp; MECHANICAL SYSTOLE</td>
<td>Increase in electromechanical delay (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARRHYTHMIAS</td>
<td>Noted in Vostok 6 (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOOD PRESSURE</td>
<td>Decrease in zero G (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULMONARY FUNCTION</td>
<td>No abnormalities (Vostok 3 &amp; 4)(5); normal 12-22 b/min range (Vostok 5 &amp; 6) (inflight) (20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERAL METABOLISM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WEIGHT LOSS</td>
<td>1.9, 2.9, 3.0 kg, Voskhod 1 (11); 1 and 0.9 kg, Voskhod 2 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATER BALANCE</td>
<td>Increased perspiration (with fatigue) (11); water retention postflight (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTFLIGHT ENERGY EXPENDITURE MEASURED BY O2 UPTAKE DURING REST</td>
<td>Up 6 and 27%, Voskhod 1 (11); up 29 and 13%, Voskhod 2 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUSCULO-SKELETAL RESPONSES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NITROGEN BALANCE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8-2 (Continued)
Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SOVIET UNION</th>
<th>SOYUZ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VOSTOK</td>
<td>VOSKHOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUSCLE CHANGES</td>
<td>Muscular strength decreased in flight (33)</td>
<td>Tonus decreased (Soyuz 6 - 9), pain, atrophy, reflexes decreased postflight (Soyuz 9) (24, 28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BONE DEMINERALIZATION</td>
<td></td>
<td>Optical density decrease equal to effect of up to 72 days bedrest (29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VESTIBULAR RESPONSES</td>
<td>Asymmetry of nystagmic movement (Vostok 5 &amp; 6) (18); normal, no asymmetry in oculomotor reaction (by oculogram) (Vostok 3 &amp; 4) (5)</td>
<td>No disagreeable sensations in Voskhod 2, increase in total afferent signals during muscular contraction in active work credited with disappearance of sensations noted in Voskhod 1 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>EEG shifts in excitation-inhibition (8); deep sleep (36)</td>
<td>Deep after several days of adaptation (Soyuz 9) (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COORDINATION</td>
<td>Not reduced (15)</td>
<td>Accuracy for slight coordinated movements decreased (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SENSATIONS</td>
<td>MOTION SICKNESS</td>
<td>DISORIENTATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nausea, dizziness (Vostok 2) (37)</td>
<td>After 1.5 to 2 hrs of flight, disappeared after sleep (11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BIOCHEMICAL CHANGES</th>
<th>BLOOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ELECTROLYTES (Na, K, Cl)</td>
<td>% chlorides unchanged during flight (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLUCOSE</td>
<td>% unchanged during flight (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URIC ACID</td>
<td>Urea increased (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiological Responses to Manned Space Flight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SOVIET UNION</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VOSTOK</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VOSKHOD</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SOYUZ</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CREATININE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMMUNOGLOBULINS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HYDROXYPROLINE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CHOLESTEROL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up to 260-290 mg % postflight (220-260, normal) (11); normal within 2 weeks (12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HORMONES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>URINE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HYDROXYPROLINE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ELECTROLYTES (Na, K, Cl)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diminished excretion postflight (Soyuz 9) (22)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEROIDS</td>
<td>Noted (Vostok 3 &amp; 4 postflight). Reversed (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATECHOLAMINES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CALCIUM</td>
<td>Increased excretion (Vostok 2 &amp; 3) (8); hydroxytocosteroids increased 2.5 - 10.7 times normal. Reversed (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UREA NITROGEN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATININE</td>
<td>Increased (Vostok 2 &amp; 3); reversed after 14 days (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM</td>
<td>Unimpaired (Vostok 5 &amp; 6) (20); Mental activity remained high (8); EEGs normal (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VISION</td>
<td>Acuity unchanged; negative fusion increased 40, 70% (in 2 of Voskhod 1 crew; no change in 3rd man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES</td>
<td>MICROFLORAL ALTERATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOYUZ</td>
<td>Dybacteriosis (Soyuz 9, 22, 31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOSKHOD</td>
<td>Transient, insignificant changes in anaerobic flora (Vostok 3, 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOSTOK</td>
<td>Transient, insignificant changes in anaerobic flora (Vostok 3, 4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References for Table 8-2


5. Parin, V. V. (Ed.) Aviation and space medicine. NASA, Washington, D.C., December 1964. (NASA TT F-228)


References 22-29 are articles appearing in: Gazenko, O. G. & Gurovskiy, N. N. (Eds.) Space Biology and Medicine, Moscow: Meditsina Publishing House, Vol. 4, No. 6, 1970.


30. Gazenko, O. G. Personal communication.

31. Kakurin, L. I. Medical research performed on the flight program of the Soyuz-type spacecraft, NASA TT F-14, 026, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C., November 1971.


34. Alekseyeva, O. G. Some natural immunity factors and cosmonaut autoflora during the training period and following the flights of Vostok, Vostok 2, Vostok 3, and Vostok 4. p. 278.

35. Zhukov-Verezhnikov, N. N., et al. Results of microbiological and cytological investigations conducted during the flights of Vostok type vehicles. p. 252.

36. Yazdovskiy, V. I., Yemel'yanov, M. D., Vasil'ev, P. V., & Kopanev, V. I. Some results of biomedical investigation conducted during the training period and flights of cosmonauts V. F. Bykovskiy and V. V. Terekhkova. p. 251.


## Table 8–3

**Inflight Biomedical and Performance Measurements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Measured</th>
<th>American Missions</th>
<th>Soviet Missions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac activity</td>
<td>2-lead EKG with synchronous phonocardiography</td>
<td>Seismography (myocardial contractility) 2-lead EKG, kineotocardiography, cutaneogalvanography electrocardiophone (pulse rate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous heart rate (arrhythmias)</td>
<td>Cardiotachography</td>
<td>Cardiac contraction monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>Biosensor harness pressure cuff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood vessel permeability</td>
<td>Impedance pneumography</td>
<td>Pluxysmometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory rate (chest perimeter)</td>
<td>EEG, ocular counter-rolling, overall task performance voice communication</td>
<td>Pneumography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vestibular functions and CNS</td>
<td>Oral thermistor</td>
<td>EEG, electrooculography, overall task performance, voice communication, onboard logs, psychophysiological testing by cosmonaut physician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>Inflight exercise response; postflight bicycle ergometry</td>
<td>Rectally inserted sensor *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular fatigability</td>
<td></td>
<td>Central electronic monitoring (not specified)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular strength</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work capacity</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupational and graphical analysis and required time for task completion; in Soyuz 9 inflight exercise response was monitored; postflight gas-energy exchange determined by method of Douglas and Holdan, minute volume determined by return breathing of CO₂ (Fick Method); bicycle ergometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor activity</td>
<td></td>
<td>Electrooculography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual acuity</td>
<td>Onboard vision tester</td>
<td>Examination of ability to focus by cosmonaut physician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall clinical profile</td>
<td>Voice communication, television</td>
<td>Voice communication, television, examination by cosmonaut physician</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Temperature sensor was made in form of a “metal olive” inserted into the ampulla of the large intestine by cosmonaut prior to donning spacesuit. (Soviet data from Kakurin, 1971, and others)
the heart's action drives oxygen and nutrient-bearing fluid into the spaces between the tissue cells. The drop in pressure in the venous end permits depleted fluid to return to the capillaries, thence to the central circulation. To effectively balance these two operations, or maintain homeostasis, blood plasma must be delivered in sufficient volume and with sufficient pressure. The cardiovascular system and all the complex reflexes which govern its function are devoted to maintaining this balance.

In advance of space flight experience, both plasma volume and blood pressure changes were predicted on the basis of extrapolation from bed rest studies (Deitrick, Whedon, & Shorr, 1948) and what could reasonably be expected as a consequence of the reduction in hydrostatic pressure gradients at zero gravity. Reduction of hydrostatic pressure gradients will, for example, greatly diminish pressure exerted on blood vessels; the end result of which can be a reduction in the reactivity or sympathetic tone of the vessels (particularly the veins).

It was thus predicted that over long periods of time the reduced load upon the heart, lowered blood pressure, and reduced hydrostatic pressure differences experienced in weightlessness ultimately might become manifest as a malfunction of one or more of the cardiovascular control loops responsible for homeostatic regulation. The pressure regulation and blood volume loops which are susceptible to hydrostatic effects were expected to be the most likely to deteriorate, if deterioration should occur, since these are subjected to minimal stress during prolonged weightless space flight. The consequences of such phenomena, might, it was thought, diminish or obliterate man's ability to withstand the gravitational load associated with reentry accelerations.

Prior to actual flight, it was not possible to say with any reliability whether weightlessness would alter other aspects of the cardiovascular system. Hence, careful measurements were made to detect any changes in heart rate and electrical conductance. Changes in the formed elements of the blood also were watched closely. The following section describes the principal findings.

**Space Flight Results.** Cardiovascular indices have been monitored during all United States space flights and have been within expected physiological ranges. No significant changes have been noted in blood pressure while heart rate has tended to stabilize at a lower level. Only in the Apollo 15 crew have any significant irregularities been noted in electrocardiographic recordings. Post-flight, reduced orthostatic tolerance has been observed with regularity. It has so far been the most pronounced and consistent finding. This phenomenon has also been seen following Soviet space missions. Orthostatic intolerance accompanied by elevated heart rate was first noted on capsule egress in the Mercury 8 pilot. Cardiovascular function has therefore been extensively investigated following all subsequent flights.

**Cardiovascular Profile.** The heart function profile has been as follows:

- **Heart Rate.** Peak heart rates (table 8-2) have been observed at launch and at reentry, normally reaching higher levels during the latter. During the
weightless phase of space flight, heart rates have tended to stabilize at lower levels and have responded, at these levels, adequately to physical demands. Soviet investigators (Akulinichev et al., 1964; Volynkin & Vasil’yev, 1969) have reported that normalization of heart rate occurred in flight but that the period of time required to achieve preflight heart rates was considerably extended beyond the period required for normalization following similar accelerative stresses on Earth. Postflight heart rates have been found to be elevated (Berry, 1967a; 1970) and, here again, normalization has been inhibited. Following United States Apollo missions, 30 to 50 hours were generally required for preflight baseline heart rates to be reestablished.

- **Cardiac Electrical Activity.** By far the most serious finding in the sphere of cardiovascular response have been the aberrations in cardiac electrical activity noted in the Lunar Module Pilot and the Commander of Apollo 15. The Apollo 15 crew had engaged in strenuous activity on the lunar surface during which time the arrhythmias were first noted. These were well outside the range of normal. The Lunar Module Pilot experienced numerous premature ventricular contractions both on the lunar surface and during the return to Earth. Twelve bigeminis were recorded, as were premature auricular contractions. The mission Commander experienced four premature ventricular contractions during a sleep period on the morning of reentry when a heart rate of only 28 beats per minute was recorded. This was followed by additional premature auricular contractions and occasional premature ventricular contractions which lasted for about one hour. However, neither crewmember exhibited any evidence of arrhythmia upon postflight examination (Berry, 1972). Extrasystoles had been noted during prior United States and Soviet space missions but these occurred rarely and no individual experienced more than an occasional arrhythmia (Berry, 1967; Akulinichev et al., 1964; Yazdovskiy & Denisov, 1963). Postflight examinations of the Apollo 15 crew revealed potassium deficits which were linked to the irregular heartbeats. Supplementary dietary potassium and less strenuous work schedules eliminated this problem for the Apollo 16 crew (Berry, 1972).

- **Heart Size.** During the Vostok flights, increases were noted in electromechanical delay (Bayevskiy & Gazenko, 1964), while electric and mechanical systole in the Soyuz crews showed no significant difference from preflight baselines in flight (Kakurin, 1971). This parameter has not been measured inflight for U.S. crews. Study of pre- and postflight posterior/anterior chest films from all U.S. flights reveal a decreased cardiac size postflight. Specific studies in Apollo 16 correlating several X-ray views taken at the same time in cardiac cycle, systole or diastole, revealed an apparent decrease in the cardiac silhouette.

- **Blood Pressure Measurements.** Blood pressure recordings, including those taken at reentry, indicate that systolic and diastolic pressures have remained within the envelope of normality (Berry, 1967a). Soviet experience (Volynkin & Vasil’yev, 1969) indicates a definite overall decrease in pulse pressure under the conditions of weightlessness. Pulse pressures following Apollo flights have been found to be quite labile for up to 3 days postflight (Berry, 1970).
Orthostatic Tolerance. Significantly reduced orthostatic tolerance, evidencing cardiovascular deconditioning, to the one g environment has been observed in every United States space mission since the last two Mercury flights. Soviet investigators have also reported the phenomenon in their Voskhod and Soyuz missions (Petukhov et al., 1970; Volynkin & Vasil'yev, 1969; Kakurin, 1971). While there were no noticeable changes in any of the recorded parameters after 2-day flights, all the cosmonauts showed signs of orthostatic instability after 3- to 5-day flights (Kakurin, 1971).

In order to reveal the full extent of cardiovascular deconditioning to 1 g or conditioning to 0 g, several types of postflight cardiovascular provocation are employed while various indicators are monitored. The point of provocative testing is that it often reveals changes otherwise undetectable in resting individuals because compensatory mechanisms may mask any sign of physiological decrement. Gemini astronauts, for example, showed no signs of orthostatic hypotension prior to provocative testing. The methods employed have included the application of lower body negative pressure and passive orthostatic tests. In the U.S. static stand procedure, the subject demonstrates stable heart rate and blood pressure in the resting, supine position for 5 minutes, after which he is assisted to a standing position with minimum delay and movement. He remains motionless in the upright position for 5 minutes while heart rate and blood pressure are again recorded each minute. The Soviet procedure involves 10 minutes of tilting in a rotating chair to a vertical position (88°) after the subject has rested in a supine position for at least 20 minutes, while hemodynamic, gas exchange and respiration measures are made.

Space crews have required, at the longest, 13 days postflight to reach preflight baselines. The Soyuz 9 and Apollo 15 crews' recoveries were markedly slower than those of previous Apollo crews who reached preflight levels within 3 days after space flight.

Whatever the factors causing orthostatic intolerance, heart rate remains the most sensitive index (Berry, 1970). Postflight heart rate increases during tilt table testing for Gemini crewmen were 17 to 105 percent greater than those exhibited preflight. In the Apollo series, 90° passive standing revealed significantly elevated pulse rates in all crewmembers tested. Figure 8-1 indicates representative heart rate changes.

Blood pressure, on the other hand, has not proved to be a consistently reliable index of deconditioning. Decreased pulse pressure has been noted in 15 of 21 Apollo crewmembers tested postflight (Rummel et al., 1972).

Hematological Profile. The following paragraphs describe all blood changes for United States missions to date. It should be noted that these changes were completely reversible.

Plasma Volume. Plasma volume changes associated with weightlessness have been variable in direction and temporary, not lasting more than 10 days. This is strikingly different from results of bed rest studies, in which decreases continue for several weeks. Table 8-2 summarizes individual findings. A later
Figure 8-1. Representative changes of heart rate during 90° passive standing preflight and postflight (Berry, 1970)

discussion concerning endocrine and electrolyte response to weightless space flight presents an explanation of this phenomenon. *

- **Red Blood Cell Mass.** Hematological changes have been compared in three Gemini crews (4, 5, and 7) and the crews of Apollo missions 7, 8, 9, 14, and 15 by Johnson & Driscoll (1972). When the Gemini crews were compared with the Apollo crews on missions which did and did not employ the lunar module, a statistically significant difference was noted in the percent change of red blood cell mass (using 51Cr) among the groups; no such change was seen in controls. These results are indicated in table 8-4. No difference was found in the mean survival time of red blood cells, and no difference was found between the two types of Apollo missions compared.

Blood studies of Soyuz 9 cosmonauts indicated increased hemoglobin 1.5 to 2 hours postflight (Molchanov et al., 1970).

| Table 8-4 |
| Red Cell Mass Percent Change |
| (Premission vs Immediately Postmission) |
| GEMINI | APOLLO & LM | APOLLO |
| Crew | -15.6 ±2.3 | -7.4 ±1.2 | -2.4 ±1.6 |
| Controls | -1.1 ±1.0 | +0.1 ±1.6 |

*(From Johnson & Driscoll, 1972)*

*Plasma volume decreases are suggested in the Soyuz crew by increases in hemoglobin and red blood cell mass postflight (Kakurin, 1971.)
- **White Blood Cells.** Net increases in the number of white blood cells were consistently noted in Gemini missions and continued to occur during Apollo missions. Similar changes have been reported for Soviet cosmonauts (Molchanov et al., 1970). Soyuz 9 results showed thrombocytopenia for two weeks postflight. Although other leucocytes have decreased in number, substantially elevated neutrophil counts account for the net increase (Berry et al., 1966; 1970). Table 8-5 summarizes changes in hematological responses for the Apollo 7 through 11 missions.

Table 8-5

Apollo Blood Profile Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Apollo 7</th>
<th>Apollo 8</th>
<th>Apollo 9</th>
<th>Apollo 10</th>
<th>Apollo 11</th>
<th>Overall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red blood cells</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematocrit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemoglobin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reticulocytes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separable cells</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutrophils</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphocytes</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monocytes</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eosinophils</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basophils</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelets</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
<td>▼▼▼▼▼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LEGEND:**

- **0** No occurrence
- **▼** Significant trend (negative)
- **▼▼** -2σ
- **▼▼▼** -3σ
- **▼▼▼▼** +3σ
- **▼▼▼▼** +3σ

**Simulation Studies.** As early as 1948, Deitrick, Whedon, and Shorr noted that hypodynamia, produced by bed rest and standardized by cast immobilization of the pelvic girdle and legs, brought about a definite deterioration in the mechanisms essential for adequate circulation in the erect position. Figure 8-2 shows the percentage change from resting levels of pulse rate and pulse pressure for their subjects during tilt table testing. Increases in pulse rate and decreases in pulse pressure of 40 to 70 percent were noted prior to immobilization. During immobilization, these changes exceed 70 percent. Syncope was also common.
To examine to what extent bed rest parallels weightlessness, the flight data obtained during the Gemini mission series were compared with data from bed rest studies of equal duration. Figure 8-3 shows resting heart rate changes (expressed as a percentage of preexposure values) for each. Although the two conditions show very similar trends, the magnitude of change is markedly different. This, perhaps, indicates that factors other than those simulated by bed rest are involved in the changes in heart rate noted after exposure to weightlessness.

Conclusions. Cardiovascular deconditioning, as evidenced by diminished orthostatic tolerance, is the most consistently observed and most profound of the effects upon the cardiovascular system following exposure to up to 18 days of weightless space flight. This condition is reversible and appears to have no serious lasting implications. Rare irregularities have been noted in the electrical activity of the heart. These appear to be controllable through maintenance of electrolyte balance. An apparent decrease in cardiac silhouette postflight has been consistently observed in U.S. flights.

The factors accounting for deconditioning of the cardiovascular system are not yet clear. Soviet investigations (Volynkin & Vasil’yev, 1969) suggest that relative hypodynamia and, possibly, physical fatigue observed in-flight are related and that these together might be responsible for decrease in myocardial contractility, a breakdown of the mechanisms regulating coordinated activity of
the heart and vessels, and a decrease in venous tone. Fatigue has not been a feature of any significance during United States missions except when inadequate rest had been obtained or when heavy workloads were imposed on the lunar surface. Weightlessness per se appeared to reduce rather than increase fatigue, since movement seems to require much less work in weightlessness than in the unit gravity environment (Berry, 1970).

Examination of endocrine and electrolyte data offers clues to the nature of the changes that present as orthostatic intolerance postflight. An hypothesis as to the mechanisms involved is presented later in this chapter in conjunction with the discussion of endocrine and electrolyte responses to space flight.

Red blood cell mass decreases which have been noted may be explained by one important difference among missions: the amount of residual nitrogen in the space cabin atmosphere. Hyperbaric oxygen (at 2 atmospheres or greater) is known to have a hemolytic effect. Conclusive data are not available for atmospheres of 100 percent oxygen delivered at 5 psi. A normal $^{51}$Cr red blood cell half time indicates that hemolysis did not occur in the Apollo program. The decrease in red blood cell mass noted in the absence of external bleeding suggests that the probable cause for the decrease is inhibited erythropoiesis (Johnson & Driscoll, 1972, cited in Berry, 1972).

The only persistent hematological change, transient increases in the white blood cell count, is probably a consequence of increased blood epinephrine and steroid levels associated with mission stress and is reversible by two days postflight.
Work Capacity (Exercise Tolerance)

In assessing the physiological cost of manned space flight, it is essential to determine to what extent the many factors inherent in the weightless environment affect the capability to do physical work. This capacity can be an index of cardiopulmonary function. Significant deterioration in physical work capacity is a phenomenon noted in individuals subjected to bed rest. For this reason, exercise capacity tests are routinely performed before and after space flights. For the most part, work capacity tests have employed an electronic bicycle ergometer capable of producing a fixed workload. The load is increased in regular increments until elevated heart rates, usually 160 or 180 beats per minute, are reached. Oxygen uptake per kilogram of body weight and systolic blood pressure serve as the indices, with oxygen consumption the more reliable of the two. Cardiac output has also been estimated indirectly by the single breath method requiring instantaneous gas composition and oxygen consumption data.

Space Flight Results. A reduction in work capacity has been noted in both Gemini and Apollo crews. In Gemini 7 work capacity was reduced 19 percent in the Command Pilot and 26 percent in the Pilot. Twenty-five of 30 Apollo astronauts tested have shown a significant decrease in exercise tolerance postflight. Table 8-6 shows typical results, in this case for the Apollo 14 crew. In general, preflight levels have been reattained within 24 to 48 hours postflight. The single exception to this rule was the Apollo 15 crew. In this crew, preflight exercise capacity was not reached in the Command Module Pilot until 3 to 5 days postflight; in the Lunar Module Pilot, until 9 days postflight; and in the Commander, until 13 days postflight. Exercise tolerance was reduced in the Apollo 15 crew by about 44 percent compared with a deficit of 20 percent in the Apollo 16 crew.

Table 8-6
Work Capacity Indicators for Apollo 14 Crew

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CDR</th>
<th>LMP</th>
<th>CMP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preflight</td>
<td>2.40 l/min</td>
<td>233 mm Hg</td>
<td>3.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R + O</td>
<td>2.48</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>2.86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \dagger \) = statistically significant decrease.
(Berry, 1971)
In conducting a functional test consisting of 30 knee bends during the day after the Voskhod 1 mission (Volynkin & Vasil'yev, 1969), all Soviet cosmonauts showed a greater increase in pulse rate than they did during the preflight period. Soyuz cosmonauts in all flights beyond 5 days' duration exhibited decreased work capacity. In the Soyuz 9 crew, this was ascertained by examination of postflight gas-energy exchange determined by the method of Douglas and Holden and by minute volume determinations (using the Fick method), as well as by bicycle ergometry (Kakurin, 1971).

**Conclusions.** Significant decrements have been noted in work capacity after space flight. The physiologic mechanisms responsible for the changes observed remain to be identified through further investigation. Hypokinesia leading to decreased muscle tone appears, from Soviet findings, to play a part. Supplementary U.S. data indicate that work performance decrements are not due to altered pulmonary function or to diminished ability to extract oxygen from the atmosphere (Berry, 1970). It is more likely that these changes are in some way associated with cardiovascular deconditioning. To elucidate further the physiological mechanisms underlying the reduction in work capacity, cardiac output assessments are being made to determine whether a decrease in peripheral resistance plays a part. Increases in cardiac output for given oxygen consumption levels were noted in crewmen of Apollos 14 and 15 but not in Apollo 16. No change in peripheral resistance was indicated in Apollo 16 results, and thus the mechanisms still await further study.

**Respiratory Responses**

The aspects of respiratory function which have been of concern with relation to prolonged weightless space flight include changes in lung volume and airway conductance, and the possibility and consequences of atelectasis. Hypothetically, pulmonary circulation and pulmonary gas diffusion might also be affected. In an extensive review of respiratory physiology in the space environment published in advance of the Apollo missions, the National Academy of Sciences (1967) expressed the opinion that none of these would pose problems of any real consequence.

**Space Flight Results.** Pulmonary function in weightlessness appears completely unimpaired. Pre- and postflight X-rays during the Gemini mission series have failed to reveal any evidence of atelectasis. Peak respiratory rates were noted during heavy workloads, but even when these rates have exceeded 40 breaths per minute, they have not been accompanied by symptomatology (Berry, 1967a). No respiratory problems were noted during lunar surface activity and Apollo pre- and postflight X-rays have shown no atelectasis.

During the Soviet Voskhod 1 and 2 missions, somewhat higher respiratory rates were noted, as was also the case during preparation for and conduct of the Soyuz spacwalk (Kakurin, 1971).

**Conclusions.** The weightless environment appears to have no significant impact upon either respiratory mechanics or lung structure. Inflight pulmonary function evaluation in Skylab should further clarify pulmonary status in weightlessness.
Skeletal Responses

Gravity and countergravitational muscular effort are important for the maintenance of skeletal strength. In zero or reduced gravity conditions, elimination or reduction of mechanical forces such as those produced by weight bearing and muscle tension can result in the loss of calcium, and other related elements, from the bones. If such losses were to continue unabated over a long period of time, it is conceivable that demineralization, leading to loss of skeletal strength, could ultimately occur. A 1 to 2 percent per month figure has been predicted as reasonable for the rate of bone loss for persons in the weightless state (Hattner & McMillan, 1968). It is possible, on the other hand, that stabilization may occur at some point in time. Calcium balance does, for example, appear to normalize after some years in paralyzed patient-subjects (Heaney, 1962).

Space Flight Results. To minimize both muscle and skeletal deterioration during weightlessness, rigorous exercise routines have been adhered to by United States astronauts and Soviet cosmonauts. During the 18-day Soyuz 9 flight, cosmonauts exercised twice daily, for 120 minutes a day. Rubber bungee cords attached to the cosmonauts' suits at one end and to the floor at the other provided for increased load during simulated walking and running exercises. The cosmonauts reported a feeling of "muscular exhilaration" after exercise which lasted for the entire work day (Vorob'yev et al., 1970). Similar, but less extensive, exercise routines were followed by United States astronauts. Despite this regimen, both groups experienced loss of bone mass.

Losses in bone mass were observed in the Gemini and Apollo missions. These were directly demonstrable using a bone densitometric X-ray technique. Tables 8-7 and 8-8 indicate bone density changes for the Gemini 7 crew and the Apollo 7 and 8 crews, respectively. When compared with changes observed during bed rest studies, calcium losses for Gemini 7 crewmen were far lower than for Gemini 4 and 5 crewmen. This is illustrated graphically in the case of heel bone density in figure 8-4. The figure also indicates the relative calcium intake in each mission. In addition to receiving supplementary calcium (approaching 1000 milligrams per day), the Gemini 7 crew routinely exercised.

Although loss of bone density varies considerably from site to site and in individuals, none of the losses noted in either the Gemini 7 or the Apollo 7 and 8 missions approached the maximum 20 percent loss noted in the calcanei and metacarpals of the Command Pilot and Pilot of the Gemini 5 voyage (Mack & LaChance, 1966).

In contrast to earlier findings, Apollo 14 bone mineral content determinations did not reveal bone demineralization. Pre- and postflight examinations of the left central os calcis and the right distal radius and ulna by means of a monoenergetic photon absorption technique revealed no significant mineral losses during the 10-day mission.

Optical density studies of bone tissue of Soyuz 9 cosmonauts after their 18-day flight revealed effects similar to those seen for Gemini and Apollo crews.
Table 8-7
Bone Density Changes in Gemini 7
(Percentage Decrease)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conventional os calcis scanning section</th>
<th>Command Pilot</th>
<th>Pilot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overall os calcis involving multiple traces over 60% of bone</td>
<td>- 2.91</td>
<td>- 2.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section through distal end of talus</td>
<td>- 2.46</td>
<td>- 2.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple traces covering hand phalanx 4-2</td>
<td>- 7.06</td>
<td>- 4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple traces covering hand phalanx 5-2</td>
<td>- 6.55</td>
<td>- 3.82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Greatest change in any section of os calcis
Greatest change in hand phalanx 4-2
Greatest change in hand phalanx 5-2

(Mack, Vogt, & LaChance, 1966)

Table 8-8
Bone Density Changes in Apollo 7 and 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skeletal Sites</th>
<th>Individual Crewman Percentage Change During Flight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Apollo 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Os calcis</td>
<td>-5.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand phalanx 4-2</td>
<td>9.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand phalanx 5-2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capitate</td>
<td>-4.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal radius</td>
<td>-3.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal ulna</td>
<td>-3.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
examined by application of the same technique. Table 8-9 summarizes these findings. During the postflight period, optical density levels increased, but by 50-days postflight the initial status of the bone tissue had not yet been restored. The decreases in optical density noted compared to levels characteristic of 62 to 72 days of bedrest confinement. Biryukov and Krasnykh (1970) note that since these decreases in optical density were less than those found in the same bones for the Gemini crewmembers and almost equalled the decreases observed during the 4-day Soyuz 3 flight, some positive effect may have been associated with the use of the inflight exercise routine. The differences between the findings for each of the cosmonauts are thought to be attributable to age and the differences in the nature of the exercise loads performed by each.

Mineral balance studies conducted during the Gemini 7 mission (Berry, 1967a) indicate a slightly negative calcium balance. Soviet investigators report similar findings (Fedorova et al., 1964). Although no overall changes in calcium or magnesium levels have been found, there have been individual instances of elevated urinary calcium and magnesium.

A less equivocal picture of demineralization has been provided by an examination of plasma and urinary hydroxyproline levels. Large amounts of hydroxyproline are present in collagen, which is found in connective tissue and bone. An increased excretion of this substance, it was reasoned, might accompany demineralization and dissolution of bone matrix (Berry, 1967a). Bioassay revealed that bound plasma hydroxyproline levels immediately following the 14-day Gemini mission were elevated, while larger quantities of calcium were excreted later in the flight than during the early phases. Similar changes were noted after the Apollo 8 mission.
### Table 8-9
Change in Optical Density of X-Ray Image of Bone Tissue
(In Percent of Initial Level) Postflight (Soyuz 9)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigated Parts</th>
<th>A. G. Nikolayev</th>
<th>V. I. Sevast’yanov</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Day 2</td>
<td>Day 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 phalanx (finger)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 &quot;</td>
<td>-5.0</td>
<td>-2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 &quot;</td>
<td>-3.1</td>
<td>±0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 &quot;</td>
<td>-4.7</td>
<td>-1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heel bone</td>
<td>-8.5</td>
<td>-4.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Biryukov & Krasnykh, 1970)

Biochemical confirmation for bone demineralization, and partial restoration, was also found for Soyuz 9 cosmonauts. Figure 8-5 indicates urinary calcium excretion on the last day of flight exceeded the first day’s level by 29 to 60 percent. During the postflight period, however, calcium excretion in the urine decreased until preflight levels were reached.

![Figure 8-5. Renal excretion of calcium for Soyuz 9 cosmonauts. White bars — calcium excretion for A. G. Nikolayev; shaded bars — for V. I. Sevast’yanov. (Biryukov & Krasnykh, 1970)]](image-url)
Simulation Results. A number of studies (cited in Hattner & McMillan, 1968) indicate that normal, immobilized humans have shown unabated negative calcium balance. Deitrick, Whedon, and Shorr (1948) have demonstrated a net calcium loss of up to 2 percent in healthy subjects immobilized in plaster casts for up to 6 weeks. Their subjects also showed increased excretions of phosphorus, sodium, and nitrogen. All of the changes noted were reversible within about 6 weeks postexposure.

In a more recent study (Donaldson et al., 1969) of longer duration than most previously reported, subjects were confined to bed for periods of 30 to 36 weeks. A regime of supine exercise failed to prevent negative mineral balance. Space flight effects on bone tissue have been more severe than those changes produced by equal periods of bedrest.

Conclusions. Overall, bone density has been minimally reduced after space flight. The reason for the divergence of results is unclear. Mineral balance data have shown a negative balance trend indicative of calcium loss from the bones. Further, although no overall changes in calcium or magnesium levels have been noted, there have been instances of elevated urinary calcium and magnesium. In addition, elevated bound plasma hydroxyproline levels immediately following the 14-day Gemini mission are consistent with resorptive changes in bone matrix. Subsequent mission data will be needed to clarify the reason for the disparity in bone mineral data; it may be simply a matter of altered technique (Berry, 1971a).

One final point regarding reduced bone mineral content should be made. Although functional underloading of skeletal muscle and the decrease in energy expended during muscular work in the weightless state are undoubtedly closely linked to skeletal muscle changes, other possibilities must be taken into account. Biryukov and Krasnykh (1970) suggest that “calcium metabolic mechanisms associated with general impairment in regulatory processes under the influence of space flight stress may be involved.” These might include the endocrine mechanisms responsible for regulating the general metabolism of the body. It is possible, for example, that calcium ions are mobilized from the bone cation pool in order to correct the electrolyte balance changes occurring in weightlessness. Changes in parathormone and calcitonin levels will be investigated in subsequent missions to further clarify the mechanisms of mineral loss from the bones (Berry, 1971a).

Neuromuscular Changes

Muscle structure, like bone structure, can reasonably be expected to deteriorate in the absence of gravity and counter-gravitational effort. Deitrick, Whedon and Shorr (1948) noted increased urinary nitrogen excretion and muscle atrophy from 2 to 12.5 percent in the arms and thighs of their bed rested subjects. Because it was an area likely to manifest effects, the neuromuscular system has been examined closely after all manned space flights.

Space Flight Results. Fourteen days of exposure to weightlessness did not cause muscle atrophy or any impairment in coordination (Berry, 1967b).
Mineral balance studies for astronauts exposed to two weeks of space flight, however, indicated slightly negative nitrogen balances which persisted postflight despite increased dietary nitrogen intake (Berry, 1967a). After 18 days of space flight, however, the picture changed radically. Upon return to Earth, the Soyuz 9 cosmonauts exhibited extreme changes in the motor sphere. They reported that their limbs felt unusually heavy and they had difficulty walking and lifting objects. When in the prone position, they sensed "being pressed" into their beds. On the second to the fifth day postflight, muscle pain was reported. Muscle tone and strength, as well as the circumference of the lower extremities were diminished. Reflex excitability of the neuromuscular system, determined by recording the bioelectric activity of muscles during knee tendon reflexes, was increased.

Conclusions. Cherepakhin and Pervushin (1970) surmised that the principal cause of decrease in muscle tone during 18 days of space flight is weightlessness per se, since this condition makes it unnecessary to maintain posture, and, as a result, the tonic stress of the muscle tissue through application of effort. This, they feel, is confirmed by the fact that muscle groups subjected to a lesser load showed the highest degree of change. Since neuromuscular tone plays an important part in regulating many body functions, these authors conclude, deterioration of tone following exposure to weightlessness plays an important part in determining the characteristics of the readaptation period. Apparently, too, the longer the space flight the more stressful will be the adaptation to Earth's gravity. Exercise is undoubtedly helpful, but other techniques, for example preventive medications may, these authors suggest, have to be explored.

Vestibular Responses

Information related to body orientation is relayed to the brain via innervation from two structures in the inner ear: the semicircular canals and the otolith apparatus. The semicircular canals respond to angular accelerations, and the otoliths to linear acceleration. In the absence of gravitational force, there is "physiological deafferentation" of the otolith apparatus, but no corresponding dramatic effect on the semicircular canals. Movements of the head will, in weightlessness as in unit gravity, generate angular accelerations sufficient to stimulate the canals. However, the linear accelerations caused by head movement and occasional changes in spacecraft velocity and attitude might not, it was feared, provide sufficient stimulation for the otoliths under extended 0 g (Graybiel et al., 1967). In fact, there was some question as to whether otolithic stimulation would be adequate to provide an appropriate cue concerning the upright of the spacecraft. There is much evidence to indicate that visual cues compensate for vestibular and kinesthetic cues that normally contribute to orientation. Moreover, disorientation rarely occurs without reduction in vision (Clark & Graybiel, 1955), and this does not occur in space. On the other hand, the relationship between the gravity dependent vestibular apparatus and motion sickness is well established. In view of these considerations, close attention has been paid to the function of the vestibular apparatus in weightless space flight.
Space Flight Results. In the Gemini mission series, no disorientation was noted. Crews adjusted easily to the weightless environment and did not observe aberrant sensations during head movements. Visual orientation was achieved with reference to the spacecraft interior and to the Earth. During extravehicular activity, the sky and Earth provided reference points. There were no instances of motion sickness. Apollo crewmen, however, experienced motion sickness symptoms which ranged from mild stomach awareness to nausea and vomiting. Symptoms lasted from 2 hours to 5 days, after which time adaptation occurred (Berry, 1970). Orientation illusions have also been reported. These symptoms, along with the history of motion sickness for Apollo crewmembers, are listed in table 8–10. It should be noted, however, that despite the reported symptoms, specific tests for alteration of vestibular function have been negative (Berry, in press; Graybiel et al., 1967).

Vestibular and vestibular-related aberrations in Soviet cosmonauts have been reported to occur with greater frequency than for United States astronauts. "Space sickness," characterized by a decrease of appetite followed by nausea, has been reported for nearly every Vostok and Voskhod mission (Volynkin & Vasil'yev, 1969, Yuganov, 1964). Illusions of inverted position have also been noted (Volynkin & Vaal'yev, 1969). These were said to affect cosmonauts when

Table 8–10
Illusions and Motion Sickness Symptoms Experienced by Apollo Astronauts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mission</th>
<th>Astronaut</th>
<th>Motion Sickness History</th>
<th>Illusions/Motion Sickness Symptoms in Space Flight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In Land, Air and Sea Vehicles</td>
<td>In Zero-G Parabola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>K</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>S/EI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Y/HI</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Concomitant illness.
(Adapted from Berry, in press)
their eyes were both open and closed and reportedly lasted for the duration of the effect of weightlessness, disappearing completely only with the onset of reentry accelerations. Changes in the function of the vestibular apparatus are thought to be implicated.

Electrooculograms recorded during the flights of Vostok 3 and 4, sometimes simultaneously with the administration of special tests, revealed no asymmetry of oculomotor reactions or nystagmus (Akulinichev et al., 1964). The otolith apparatus’ threshold of sensitivity to galvanic current, examined after the flight of Voskhod 1 (Volynkin & Vasil’yev, 1969) was unchanged.

Soyuz 9 crewmembers reported some Coriolis-like sensations in the earlier portion of their flight which disappeared after the normal adaptation period (third to fifth day). They found, as did Apollo astronauts, that taking care to make no abrupt head movements during this period lessened symptoms. Analysis of the writing of vertical letters in flight, a test of vestibular function, revealed the magnitude of slope angles to be increased threefold over ground-based baselines, indicating an increase in reactivity of the cupuloendolymphatic system of the vestibular analyzer to Coriolis acceleration under weightless conditions (Kakurin, 1971). Postflight, increases were noted in the indices of general center of gravity (GCG) oscillations and the frequency of cardiac contractions when the eyes were closed (Petukhov et al., 1970; Kakurin, 1971).

No perceptual-motor impairment has been observed in conjunction with U.S. space flight. Soviet investigators have noted some changes. During the Voskhod 1 mission, the accuracy of carrying out slight coordinated movements was found to decrease (Volynkin & Vasil’yev, 1969), and in the Soyuz 3 flight, a subjective increase was reported in the pause between the decision to perform a motor activity and the act itself (Kakurin, 1971).

Conclusion. Both Apollo astronauts and Soyuz cosmonauts have reported sensations resembling sea sickness during spaceflight. On the whole, however, U.S. astronauts do not appear to be excessively plagued by motion sickness symptoms. A clue to the ease with which the vestibular system of these individuals appears to adapt to the zero-g environment may be provided in the results of a study conducted by Clark and Stewart (1972). These investigators, in attempting to establish the relationship between reports of motion sickness and selected vestibular tests, found that pilots as a group clearly report less experience with motion sickness than do nonpilots. The pilot’s less frequent experience with motion sickness may well be an important contributing factor in his selection of flying as a profession. The U.S. astronaut population to date is comprised entirely of pilots, most of whom have extensive experience as test pilots (Berry, 1972).

Metabolism

Metabolism in the broad sense may be defined as tissue change. This tissue change is the end product of the conversion of small molecules into larger ones, for example, amino acids to proteins, and the breaking down of larger molecules
into smaller ones. In the former process, anabolism, energy is consumed; in the latter, catabolism, energy is given off. All energy used by the body (except that for outside work) finally appears as heat. Since oxygen is used in the process of breaking down nutrients to yield carbon dioxide and water, oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production are useful indices of metabolic rate.

Direct metabolic measurements have not been made during actual space flight. Metabolic costs have been inferred from examination of total carbon dioxide production by chemical analysis of spent lithium hydroxide canisters. This technique established an average heat production rate during multiman missions. Other, more direct techniques have been used to assess metabolic costs during lunar surface activities. Metabolic rate has been determined from telemetry data by use of three methods: thermal balance, oxygen consumption, and heart rate. Thermal balance was determined by comparing the inlet and outlet temperatures in the water cooled undergarment during lunar surface activity; oxygen usage from the portable life support system was measured; and heart rate during lunar activity was compared to that on an energy cost calibration curve obtained preflight by bicycle ergometry. (For detailed treatment of these methods, the reader is referred to Carson, 1972).

Space Flight Results. Inflight metabolic data from both Soviet and U.S. space flights show close agreement. Figure 8-6 compares the average metabolic rates for the Vostok, Mercury, and Gemini missions. The higher rate observed during the Gemini mission, graphed at the far left of the figure, undoubtedly is due to the fact that these were short flights during which crewmen did not sleep. Metabolic rate, based on carbon dioxide output, for the longest American mission (Gemini 7) was estimated to be 2219 calories per day (figure 8-7). This expenditure was adequately provided for by the diet (2333 calories per day).

![Figure 8-6. Average metabolic rates during actual space flight. (Berry, 1967a)](image-url)
Comparative techniques for metabolic assessment used during Apollo lunar surface activity indicated that monitoring of the temperatures at the inlet and outlet of the liquid cooled undergarment (thermal balance method) was best suited for estimating energy production. For the Apollo 11 mission, the thermal balance and oxygen use methods yielded similar data and accurately reflected the physical activity observed by telemetry. Heart rate data proved the least reliable method for determining metabolic rates (Berry, 1970).

Average expenditure for each task varied for each crewman, with the average hourly energy production between 900 and 1200 BTU’s. Table 8-11 compares lunar extravehicular times and metabolic rates for Apollo lunar surface crews.

Conclusions. The techniques used for determining metabolic expenditure inflight admittedly are gross. Nevertheless, the expenditures calculated by this technique indicate that the diet provided for missions is more than adequate for living and working in space for up to 2 weeks. Refined techniques for assessing metabolic costs during lunar surface activity yield accurate data which provide a sound basis for life support system and mission planning.

Endocrine and Electrolyte Responses

Extensive biochemical studies have been a feature of space flight programs. Data gathered through these studies are essential for determining the etiology of clinically demonstrable changes. Attention has been focused in areas where earlier experience has indicated most physiological changes occur, and in areas where it might be reasonably expected that zero gravity exposure could have significant impact. Accordingly, attempts have been made to elaborate the
Table 8-11  
Lunar Extravehicular Activity Times and Metabolic Rates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mission</th>
<th>Crewman</th>
<th>Launch Date</th>
<th>EVA time, min</th>
<th>Average metabolic rate, Btu/hr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 11</td>
<td>Armstrong</td>
<td>6/69</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 11</td>
<td>Aldrin</td>
<td>6/68</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>1118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 12</td>
<td>Conrad (EVA-1)</td>
<td>11/69</td>
<td>341</td>
<td>825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 12</td>
<td>Bean (EVA-1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>341</td>
<td>925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 12</td>
<td>Conrad (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>235</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 12</td>
<td>Bean (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>235</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 14</td>
<td>Shepard (EVA-1)</td>
<td>1/70</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 14</td>
<td>Mitchell (EVA-1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>288</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 14</td>
<td>Shepard (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>275</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 14</td>
<td>Mitchell (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>275</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Scott (EVA-1)</td>
<td>6/71</td>
<td>393</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Irwin (EVA-1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>393</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Scott (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>432</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Irwin (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>432</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Scott (EVA-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>290</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td>Irwin (EVA-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>290</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Young (EVA-1)</td>
<td>4/72</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Duke (EVA-1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>431</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Young (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Duke (EVA-2)</td>
<td></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Young (EVA-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>340</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td>Duke (EVA-3)</td>
<td></td>
<td>340</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mechanisms involved in weight loss, demineralization, stress, and cardiovascular deconditioning. Insight has been gained into several of these phenomena as a result of analyses of urine and blood samples collected before, during, and after space flight.

Space Flight Results and Conclusions

Electrolytes. Urine and plasma electrolyte studies have revealed postflight retention of electrolytes. Decreases have been noted in potassium levels, indicative of decreases in total body potassium, and in urinary sodium and chloride levels. These changes have paralleled the time course of body weight changes.

Figure 8-8 shows the results of urinary potassium studies for the Gemini 7 pilot. In flight, potassium excretion appeared depressed, and this depression was still apparent by 24 hours postflight. Similar decreases were found in both serum and urinary potassium levels for Apollo crewmen. These changes were, in fact, suggestive of a decrease in total body potassium, an hypothesis that was supported by K40 evaluations in the Apollo 13 and 14 crews. Total body gamma spectrometry indicated a significant decrement of total body potassium for Apollo 13 crewmen compared with preflight values. In Apollo 14 crewmen, similar decreases in total body potassium were seen 17 days after recovery versus the astronauts' preflight values. These decreases were noted when control subjects showed increased total body potassium levels. This potassium loss is
presumptive evidence of intracellular water and cation loss, for which there is other supporting evidence. Decrements in total exchangeable potassium (10 to 15 percent) also were seen in Apollo 15 crewmen when evaluated postflight by K42. No decrements were noted in Apollo 16 crewmen.

Consistently diminished excretions of sodium and chloride have also been observed in the immediate postflight period. Figure 8-9 indicates urinary electrolyte levels for the Command Module Pilot of the Apollo 14 mission. This figure also shows his pre- and postflight potassium levels. Although some individual variation has been observed, these urinary electrolyte measures are typical following space flight exposure and clearly indicate efforts on the part of the body to retain fluid to compensate for inflight fluid volume loss.

Figure 8–9. Urine potassium, Gemini 7 pilot.
Endocrine Responses. Endocrine responses have been evaluated principally to determine whether hormones related to body fluid regulation reflect the observed postflight fluid and electrolyte changes.

Attempts have also been made to evaluate stresses related to space flight by measuring certain postflight steroid levels. These results, based on very limited data, appear to indicate that the reentry and recovery periods may be the most stressful. Inflight steroid levels are, in contrast, low. Figure 8-10 indicates a typical response, noted in the Gemini 7 Command Pilot. Apollo astronauts have exhibited similar responses.

![Figure 8-10. Urine 17-hydroxycorticosteroids, Gemini 7 Command Pilot.](image)

It is, however, admittedly difficult to evaluate “stress” on the basis of endocrine assay since many hormones which are believed to be indicative of certain stresses are also related to other physiological functions, for example, vasoconstriction or vasodilation and electrolyte regulation.

Pre- and postflight measures of hormones related to electrolyte and fluid balance support the hypothesis that readily recoverable weight losses immediately postflight are primarily the result of inflight water loss. Postflight elevations have been noted for (1) antidiuretic hormone, (2) aldosterone, (3) plasma angiotensin which indicates renin activity, and (4) catecholamines.

Increased levels of antidiuretic hormone, which regulates water resorption through the distal renal tubule, and increased aldosterone levels resulting in resorption of sodium in the proximal tubule are consistent with the electrolyte retention noted and the rapid weight gain postflight. Plasma angiotensin levels,
an index of renin activity, show significant increases postflight. Since renin stimulates the adrenal gland to secrete aldosterone upon sensing decreased blood volume or salt concentration (which is uncertain) in the kidney, the elevations in aldosterone levels observed postflight are consistent with cardiovascular and fluid/electrolyte findings.

Aldosterone excretion triggered by exposure to zero gravity may explain why elevated plasma volume is not noted in longer duration missions but is in shorter missions. If the high urinary aldosterone excretion is associated with an increased aldosterone secretion rate, one would anticipate elevated plasma volume during longer duration missions since aldosterone expands circulating plasma volume as potassium is diuresed and sodium is retained. If increased aldosterone secretion occurred after plasma volume had been lost in response to an initial redistribution of body fluid volumes upon entering the weightless state, the net result would be a near normal plasma volume (Johnson & Driscoll, 1972, based on data of Lutwak et al., and Leach). Near normal plasma volumes were found postflight in the Apollo 14 and 15 crews (they were not measured for Apollo missions 11, 12, and 13). In fact, these crewmen exhibited plasma volume levels that were slightly elevated above their preflight mean. Apollo 16 crewmembers, however, averaged plasma volume decreases of 9 percent.

Weight Loss

All but one U.S. astronaut has lost weight in space. Weights recorded immediately postflight have ranged from 2 to 14 pounds below preflight levels. The Apollo 14 Commander alone gained 1 pound during his stay in space. Because most astronauts have regained about 60 percent of their weight loss within the first 24 hours after splashdown, it has been presumed that the weight loss is principally a water loss. Soviet cosmonauts exhibited similar weight loss patterns. The Soyuz crews lost 2 to 4 pounds postflight. These body weight losses were rapidly recoverable in all but the Soyuz 9 (18-day) crew. Because postflight urinary nitrogen excretion did not increase, it was presumed that weight loss reflects water loss and not tissue catabolism. After the 18-day flight, some urinary nitrogen excretion was noted although this was within physiological limits. This coupled with the slow reattainment of preflight body weight indicates the possibility of some tissue catabolism (Kakurin, 1971).

Apollo 16 astronauts, like all crews before them, lost weight (the Commander, 7.5 pounds; the Lunar Module Pilot, 5.5 pounds; and the Command Module Pilot, 6.5 pounds). Various indirect measurements made on the Apollo 16 crew, including estimates of the amount of food and drink taken and the amount of excreta produced, coupled with weighings on the recovery ship by scales calibrated with those used before launching, appear to indicate that the astronauts' weight losses did not result from a diuresis alone. Further studies apparently will be needed to clarify all the factors underlying weight loss (Berry, 1972).

Weight losses observed postflight for the Apollo 7 through 16 mission crewmen are shown in table 8-12. The rapidity with which the average weight
### Table 8-12
Weight Changes -- Apollo 7 thru 16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Weight Loss</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
<th>Weight Regained (R + 24 hr)</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>- 6.3 lbs</td>
<td>-3.2</td>
<td>+2.5 lbs</td>
<td>+1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>-10.0 lbs</td>
<td>-6.4</td>
<td>+3.5 lbs</td>
<td>+2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>- 8.0 lbs</td>
<td>-5.1</td>
<td>+5.5 lbs</td>
<td>+3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>- 8.7 lbs</td>
<td>-5.1</td>
<td>+2.7 lbs</td>
<td>+1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>- 7.8 lbs</td>
<td>-4.5</td>
<td>+0.7 lbs</td>
<td>+0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>- 4.0 lbs</td>
<td>-2.8</td>
<td>+0.5 lbs</td>
<td>+0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 9</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>- 5.2 lbs</td>
<td>-3.3</td>
<td>+2.7 lbs</td>
<td>+1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>- 5.7 lbs</td>
<td>-3.2</td>
<td>+8.5 lbs</td>
<td>+4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>- 6.1 lbs</td>
<td>-3.8</td>
<td>+4.2 lbs</td>
<td>+2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 10</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>- 2.0 lbs</td>
<td>-1.1</td>
<td>+2.0 lbs</td>
<td>+1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>- 5.0 lbs</td>
<td>-3.0</td>
<td>+1.0 lbs</td>
<td>+0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>-10.0 lbs</td>
<td>-5.8</td>
<td>+2.0 lbs</td>
<td>+1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 11</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDR</td>
<td>- 8.0 lbs</td>
<td>-4.7</td>
<td>+6.0 lbs</td>
<td>+3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>- 7.0 lbs</td>
<td>-4.2</td>
<td>+0.0 lbs</td>
<td>+0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>- 1.0 lbs</td>
<td>-0.6</td>
<td>+4.0 lbs</td>
<td>+2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-4.2 lbs</td>
<td>-28</td>
<td></td>
<td>-7.2 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-12.5 lbs</td>
<td>-8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-14.0 lbs</td>
<td>-8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>-11.0 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-6.5 lbs</td>
<td>-4.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+1.0 lbs</td>
<td>+0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>-12.0 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+1.0 lbs</td>
<td>+0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-1.2 lbs</td>
<td>-0.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>-3.0 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-5.5 lbs</td>
<td>-3.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-7.5 lbs</td>
<td>-4.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>-6.5 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-5.5 lbs</td>
<td>-4.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Weightlessness
loss was regained (and a consistent pattern of retention of electrolytes postflight) indicates that of the average 6.2 lb loss, 3.1 lb may be attributed to water loss. Although slightly negative water balance has been maintained, the situation is within manageable bounds.

The Nature of the Adaptive Response to Space Flight: An Hypothesis

Much information has been gained in American biomedical programs concerning the effects of space flight on man. A number of consistent findings have been observed: some imply a possible alteration of the structure of physiological systems while others indicate merely a change in capacity. These changes, while dealt with as discrete events, undoubtedly are individual elements in a basic adaptive response of the human organism to the unique stresses of space. Sufficient information is presently available to begin to piece together at least a tentative hypothesis concerning the nature of the adaptive process and the manner in which the various changes may be interrelated.

Table 8-13 is a greatly simplified illustration of the hypothesis now being developed and shows the major classes of body response during the period of adaptation. Figure 8-11 presents the same hypothesis in diagrammatic form. In each case, the part of the hypothesis presented is that intended to describe factors influencing fluid shifts within the body.

Table 8–13
Overview of Current Hypothesis Concerning Processes Involved in Man’s Adaptation to Zero Gravity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Response of Body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Upon initial entry into weightlessness, an immediate redistribution in the total circulating blood volume occurs. The body interprets the resultant increase in right atrial filling as an indication of a need to reduce total fluid volume by increasing urine output. This event is governed by a decrease in antidiuretic hormone and a decrease in aldosterone production. The result is a loss of water, sodium, and potassium through the kidneys with a resultant loss in total body weight. The concomitant decrease in plasma volume tends to reverse the initial aldosterone decrease. At this point, the body is believed to enter a phase of electrolyte and fluid imbalance in which sodium retention increases while potassium loss continues. Intracellular fluid and potassium loss results in a cellular acidosis with a mild (compensated) hypokalemic alkalosis of extracellular fluids.

In essence, the body’s response to lowered total body potassium is an intracellular exchange of potassium for hydrogen ions. Associated with the potassium deficit may be a decrease in bone density and muscle mass. Loss of cellular potassium can include the heart muscle, with resultant increased irritability and tendency toward disorders of cardiac rhythm. This was very likely the series of events which led to the cardiac arrhythmias experienced by the Apollo 15 crew. Postflight decreases of total exchangeable potassium in this crew offer support of this supposition.

In the final phase of the adaptation loop postulated, hyperacidity of the cell stimulates the respiratory system to decrease plasma carbon dioxide by
increasing ventilatory rate. Renal compensation commences as the renal tubules begin to reabsorb potassium. The body weight now stabilizes at a new equilibrium point. This part of the body's overall adaptation process now becomes complete. The new equilibrium establishes an optimal total circulating blood volume or "new load" on the cardiovascular system and a new fluid and electrolyte balance state. It is reasonable to presume that the new stabilized condition is appropriate for long-term performance under space flight conditions, provided it is unperturbed. If factors such as workload, thermal stress, or emotional stress are introduced, the system may be driven beyond the point of equilibrium. The conceptual model postulated here will be further tested and amplified as new flight data warrant. Information collected in conjunction with the Skylab experiments should be valuable in elucidating the mechanisms of man's response to space flight.

**Microbiological Changes**

Under Earth's gravitational conditions, airborne particulate matter remains suspended in inverse proportion to its settling velocity: larger particles (a few to several hundred micrometers in diameter) settle out rapidly. In the gravity free environment of the spacecraft, on the other hand, it is presumed that no sedimentation will occur. As a consequence, a considerable range of particles of biological interest on earth, that is >0.5μ and <10μ will be stabilized (National Academy of Sciences, 1967). The tremendous number of particles shed by man into the spacecraft atmosphere (talking alone expels 1000 infectious nuclei into the air per minute) will remain suspended. This is of particular significance in future spacecraft where leakage rates will be low. Because this set of circumstances can produce untoward effects, microbiological studies have been conducted before and after space flight missions. In addition to weightlessness, other aspects of the space environment, radiation, for example, have the potential to produce microfloral alterations.

**Space Flight Results.** Microbiological studies during the Apollo mission series have shown that growth of opportunistic organisms appears to be favored in the space environment (Berry, 1970). In one case, staphylococcus aureus obtained at one preflight sampling site on one crewman, spread to most sites on all three crewmen and produced some clinical infection. Soyuz 9 cosmonauts also exhibited microflora shifts with a number of organisms less resistant to antibiotics postflight (Kakurin, 1971). The etiology of these changes is unclear and factors other than weightlessness, confinement, for example, may be involved.

**The Effects of Zero Gravity Upon Performance**

The nature of the null gravity environment produces two kinds of change in the human space traveler. Adaptive changes, or those changes which take place in the physiological systems, have been discussed. The second type of change may be referred to as operative or habitational change. Stated simply, when the

*In the Apollo 15 crew, this was evidenced by an absolute rather than relative loss of potassium as well as the loss of sodium measurable postflight.*
unit gravity force is removed, the things that man is accustomed to doing one way on Earth must be done quite differently in space. Sleeping, eating, and moving about in zero gravity both inside and outside the spacecraft are all affected in some measure.

Sleep

It is difficult to isolate weightlessness *per se* as a factor influencing the quality of sleep. Sleep disturbances have been common during space flight missions but these appear to be much more profoundly affected by operational factors than by the weightless element of the environment. Cyclic noise disturbances from events such as thruster firings, communications, movement in the spacecraft, staggered sleep periods, alterations from preflight diurnal cycles, and the so-called "command pilot syndrome" all contributed to sleep disturbances during the Gemini missions. Similar problems were experienced by Apollo mission crew members until the time of the Apollo 11 lunar landing flight, when increased confidence in spacecraft systems permitted scheduling of simultaneous sleep periods for crew members. This resulted in rest periods which were close to ideal prior to lunar orbit insertion (figure 8-12). These sleep periods, described only from the study of telemetered heart and respiration rates and crew reports, were deemed adequate for medical approval of earlier extravehicular activity on the lunar surface than was originally planned. Environmental aspects of the lunar module, however, once again disrupted sleep. This has been the case for astronauts on missions subsequent to Apollo 11 and has in some cases necessitated the prescription of sleeping medication.

![Figure 8-12. Crew sleep periods during Apollo 11 mission.](image-url)
Sleeping in the weightless environment is accomplished by many astronauts most comfortably if a fetal position is assumed. Consistent reports of backache among astronauts may well be linked to the tendency to assume the fetal position. The use of improved sleep restraint systems on future missions may alleviate this problem.

Mission constraints have thus far precluded the collection of inflight EEG sleep data, although pre- and postflight baseline data were obtained for the Apollo 16 crew (Berry, 1972). Sleep experiments scheduled for the Skylab program will permit the first inflight monitoring of sleep patterns by EEG and EOG and undoubtedly help to clarify the effects of weightlessness on sleep (Berry, 1971a; 1972).

Kakurin (1971) reports that after several days of adaptation during the 18-day Soyuz 9 flight, sleep lasted 7 to 9 hours and “always brought freshness and good humor.” Crewmembers fell asleep rapidly in about the same manner as on Earth. One crewmember appeared to adapt so well to sleeping in the weightless condition that he preferred to sleep without being tied into his cot.

Eating in Weightlessness

Space diets have consisted principally of freeze dehydrated food that is easily reconstituted inflight with both cold and hot water. This diet has been augmented by the inclusion of thermostabilized meat dishes of high moisture content as well as drinks and snacks containing dietary potassium supplements. Initially, these foods were eaten through tubes incorporated into the food container, but it was later found that eating foods with sufficient moisture could be easily accomplished in zero gravity with a conventional spoon utensil.

Regardless of the diet provided for any given mission, space crews have indicated in postflight debriefings that hunger occurred less frequently in space and that food requirements are only about two-thirds of “normal.” Based on these observations, menus have been designed to provide approximately 2300 to 2500 kilocalories per man per day in U.S. missions. Soviet space dietary allowances are considerably higher; 2800 kcal were provided in the daily diet for the Soyuz 9 crew members (Kakurin, 1971). These latter diets which initially comprised principally freeze dehydrated foods have, like American diets, been supplemented by other types of foods because of the “low rating” given by cosmonauts to dehydrated food products. With consideration given to individual tastes, these diets have been reported to satisfy cosmonauts’ requirements “completely” (Kakurin, 1971). Sensations of thirst have been reported to be slightly reduced in Soviet cosmonauts during flight and increased considerably postflight.

Intracabin Movement

The absence of gravity has been found to represent a bonus for locomotion within the spacecraft cabin. Locomotion in zero g appears to require much less work than in the unit gravity environment. Movement is accomplished with
Weightlessness

minimal effort, frequently in a swimming manner. Acrobatic maneuvers, such as rolling, tumbling, and spinning, are done without difficulty. An additional feature of the zero gravity environment, the capability to impart minimal velocities to objects, also has been used repeatedly by crewmen as an aid in performing inflight activities.

The ability to move freely through all parts of a space cabin during weightlessness has implications for general vehicle habitability. Apollo astronauts have commented that the Command Module, which seemed rather cramped during ground tests, was more comfortable in flight due to the increase in usable living and working space. This observation has raised the question of the validity of volumetric studies which attempt to extrapolate from habitation in other confined areas such as submarines or low pressure chambers the volume of living space required for astronauts in long duration missions. Locomotion in three dimensional space, as opposed to two, appears to be a positive factor in determining vehicle habitability.

Extravehicular Activities

The first extravehicular activities, performed by cosmonaut Aleksei Leonov in March 1965, and by astronaut Edward White in June 1965, demonstrated that man is capable of reasonable activity in space while operating without the protection of a space capsule. These first ventures, while quite short, clearly were the forerunners of later periods of lunar exploration and of useful maintenance and equipment assembly operations during longer space missions. In subsequent EVA attempts during Gemini flights, however, astronauts experienced considerable difficulty in actually accomplishing what had been considered to be a normal EVA work assignment prior to launch. As matters stood at that time, the demands of EVA exceeded the capabilities of an astronaut. It was not until the final flight of the Gemini series that these difficulties were resolved through intensive study that resulted in partial redesign of EVA work stations and support equipment. This series of events provided a very dramatic demonstration of the requirement that information concerning human capabilities be reflected in the design of space equipment. At the root of the problem was a paucity of useful data concerning the effects of weightlessness on man’s performance capabilities. Subsequent flight experience, however, has done much to provide the information needed by space system designers.

EVA History. Table 8-14 summarizes extravehicular activity in United States space missions. Problems associated with early EVA were eradicated, principally through the development of energy saving techniques and work aids and the opportunity for rehearsal afforded by underwater simulation experience.

Energy Expenditure in Extravehicular Activity. The principal problem with early EVA flights was, as noted earlier, the exhaustion which was suffered by the astronaut, at times even before the completion of the assigned tasks. This exhaustion was due principally to the unique character of working in the weightless environment where difficulties are encountered in producing reactions to actions once momentum had been imparted and maintaining position in the
### Table 8-14

#### U.S. Extravehicular Summary – Free Space and Lunar Surface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mission</th>
<th>Time of Exposure (hr:min)</th>
<th>Principal Tasks Accomplished</th>
<th>Problems</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gemini 4</strong></td>
<td>0:36</td>
<td>Dynamics of 25-ft tether evaluated, hatch ingress and egress assessed</td>
<td>Metabolic heat output exceeded cooling capacity of ventilation control module</td>
<td>EVA successful although energy required exceeded anticipated levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gemini 8-A</strong></td>
<td>2:07</td>
<td>AMU* evaluated, photography</td>
<td>Overheating, exhaustion, attitude maintenance difficult, loss of traction, vision fogging</td>
<td>EVA terminated due to view fogging and fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gemini 10</strong></td>
<td>2:39</td>
<td>Experiment package retrieved, photography, CP assisted by EVP in formation flying with Agena vehicle</td>
<td>Grip difficult to maintain, eye irritation. 50-ft umbrella difficult to control</td>
<td>Eye irritation believed due to use of both O2 compressors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gemini 11</strong></td>
<td>2:41</td>
<td>100-ft tether attached between spacecraft and Agena vehicle photography</td>
<td>Overheating, exhaustion</td>
<td>EVA terminated due to fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gemini 12</strong></td>
<td>5:30</td>
<td>Restraints and workload basic, with photography and equipment use evaluated, experiment package retrieved</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>EVA completely successful as a result of underwater simulation practice and body restraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 9</strong></td>
<td>0:37</td>
<td>System tests</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>EVA successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 15</strong></td>
<td>0:35 12</td>
<td>In-flight EVA performed out of Earth orbit</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>EVA successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 16</strong></td>
<td>1:34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 11</strong></td>
<td>5:16</td>
<td>First manned lunar landing, photography, survey, sampling of lunar soil</td>
<td>No major problems</td>
<td>EVA successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 12</strong></td>
<td>5:52</td>
<td>Demonstrated point landing capability, sampled more area, deployed ALSEP, investigated Surveyor 3 spacecraft, and evaluated photographs of candidate exploration sites.</td>
<td>No major problems</td>
<td>Metabolic production values lower than predicted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 14</strong></td>
<td>18:46</td>
<td>Experiment package deployment, multiple collection</td>
<td>First orientation of experiments observed</td>
<td>Overall metabolic production within satisfactory limits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 15</strong></td>
<td>57:10</td>
<td>First to carry Lunar Module vehicle, extended exploration</td>
<td>Lunar surface worked, overtaxed crew (exhausted)</td>
<td>EVA successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apollo 16</strong></td>
<td>42:38</td>
<td>Most comprehensive sampling</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>EVA successful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* AMU * - Astronaut Maneuvering Unit
Weightlessness 405

absence of traction. Additional problems were imposed by the increased effort involved in moving in a pressurized space suit (3.5 psi). This created a heat load in the space suit and unacceptably high carbon dioxide levels.

Reduction of effective work load in the Gemini 12 mission EVA was due, at least in part, to realistically simulated weightlessness training and, in part, to improved work aids. Additional energy conservation resulted from the astronaut's ability to condition himself to relax completely on occasion within the neutral position of the space suit (Kelly and Coons, 1967). The Gemini 12 astronaut reported that he systematically monitored each muscle group. When a group of muscles was found to be tense while performing no useful work, he was able to relax these muscles consciously. All of his movements were slow and deliberate. When a task could be performed by small movement of the fingers, he would use only those muscles necessary for this small movement.

Planning for EVA missions in either 0 g or 1/6 g and the development of equipment for use during these missions has and must continue to take into account work load. The Lunar Roving Vehicle is one example of equipment designed for conservation of energy.

Counteracting the Physiological Effects of Weightlessness

Considering the trepidations expressed a decade ago about possible effects of long term exposure to weightlessness, man has weathered his entry into this new domain in surprisingly good shape. Not only have most of the predicted problems been negligible, but certain benefits have been found to be associated with living and working in zero gravity. However, certain changes in major body systems have been observed. Space flight results to date tend to substantiate the belief that these changes are largely adaptational responses to the new environment. However, one can not be absolutely certain that some of these changes do not in fact represent the first stages of a gradual deterioration process. Countermeasures to weightlessness have therefore been and are continuing to be investigated. Table 8-15, from a survey by Vinograd and Manganelli (1972), lists approaches which have been explored with mixed results.*

A limited number of countermeasures to weightlessness effects have been employed in conjunction with past space missions. Inflight exercise regimes have been a feature of both U.S. and Soviet space missions. These regimes and their effects have been discussed in an earlier section of this chapter. Because it was believed that potassium deficits were responsible for the arrhythmias suffered by the Apollo 15 crew, dietary countermeasures were employed during the Apollo 16 mission. A diet high in potassium was provided (105 milliequivalents, versus a normal 70, in the command module diet, and 135 milliequivalents in the lunar module diet). Potassium enriched beverages and snack supplements were

*This survey, entitled Literature Summary on Countermeasures, may be consulted for details on experiments which have been attempted and for efficacy rating. (See References for full citation)
Table 8-15
Potential Countermeasures to Weightlessness

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Tumbling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Medication</td>
<td>Electrical stimulation of muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diet</td>
<td>Exercise and LBNP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBNP</td>
<td>Exercise and venous occlusion cuffs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradient positive pressure</td>
<td>Exercise and positive pressure breathing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Suit</td>
<td>Exercise and bone stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous occlusion cuffs</td>
<td>Exercise and hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive pressure breathing</td>
<td>Venous occlusion cuffs and medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valsalva maneuver</td>
<td>Venous occlusion cuffs and leotards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone stress</td>
<td>Hypoxia, LBNP and exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double trampoline</td>
<td>Centrifugation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Vinograd & Maganelli, 1972)

Also stocked. Potassium enriched meals were also consumed for 72 hours prior to launch to guarantee adequately high potassium levels at launch time. The provision of a high potassium diet, coupled with better planned work-rest cycles, proved to be a successful technique for countering the cardiac problems experienced by the prior crew. Lower body negative pressure was used by the Salyut crewmen inflight.

Another approach which has been suggested for countering the effects of the weightless environment is the provision of some system of artificial gravity in space vehicles. Two approaches have been suggested: rotation of the entire space vehicle or station and inclusion of an onboard centrifuge.

Table 8-16 shows the rotation radii and angular velocities necessary to achieve 3 gravity levels currently considered acceptable. The Coriolis force created is also indicated. A maximum Coriolis force of 20 percent of man's apparent weight is thought to be the limit which can be obtained without resulting discomfort. With higher angular velocities than those shown and shorter radii of rotation, even simple head movements can cause severe Coriolis forces with the associated discomfort. In addition, with a short radius of rotation, a gravity gradient (a difference in gravity between head and feet) exists which, if sufficiently large, can also produce discomfort. The Coriolis forces indicated in the table are based on a man's moving at a velocity of 3 feet per second.

It should be pointed out that medical and performance data available at the present time do not support a requirement for artificial gravity systems in spacecraft. In the view of space crews to the present time, artificial gravity systems are unnecessary for task performance. Crews have learned to live in a zero gravity environment and feel very confident in this state. Many have, in fact, expressed a preference for a zero g environment since the absence of gravity
Table 8–16
Generation of Artificial Gravity by Rotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Apparent Gravity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.28*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius of rotation (feet)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity gradient (G/r)***</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(percent)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angular velocity (RPM)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angular velocity</td>
<td>.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(radians/sec)</td>
<td>.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coriolis force (percent)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Anticipated minimum acceptable (Thompson, 1965).
** Recommended maximum.
*** Computed for a 6-ft-tall person.
increases the effective volume of what would otherwise be rather confined work spaces. On the other hand, the provision of artificial gravity would undoubtedly increase the habitability of spacecraft. Eating would become a simple affair, and locomotion could proceed nearly as it does in the Earth-bound environment. Everyday activities could be carried out about as easily and simply as they are in one's own home. Where engineering considerations are concerned, design tasks would be simplified in that restraint systems and locomotion aids would no longer be required. On the other hand, the engineering tasks associated with designing the artificial gravity system itself are formidable and could be costly.

The issue of the need for artificial gravity in spacecraft of the future is no more clearly resolved among Soviet scientists than it is in the United States. Valyavski (1969) states that until it becomes clear whether man forms adaptive mechanisms in the weightless state, technology will continue in the Soviet Union to attempt to create artificial gravitation. This is a problem which is "much in the forefront of modern cosmonautics." Members of the Soviet medical community had indicated to the author that they find no basis for requiring artificial gravity, but that it is still a question of concern to Soviet space system designers.

References

Akulinichev, I. T., et al. Results of physiological investigations on the space ships Vostok 3 and Vostok 4. V. V. Parin (Ed.), *Aviation and Space Medicine*. NASA TT F-228, December 1964, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C.


Berry, C. A. Space medicine in perspective. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1967, 201, 86-95. (b)

Berry, C. A. Preliminary clinical report of the medical aspects of Apollo VII and VIII. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1969, 40, 245-254. (a)

Berry, C. A. Status report on space medicine in the United States. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1969, 40, 762-769. (b)


*Personal communication.*
Berry, C. A. Biomedical findings on American astronauts participating in space missions. Paper presented at the Fourth International Symposium on Basic Environmental Problems of Man in Space, Yerevan, Armenia, 1-5 October 1971. (a)

Berry, C. A. Medical results of Apollo 14-implications for longer duration space flights. Paper presented at XXIIInd International Astronautical Congress, Brussels, Belgium, 25 September 1971. (b)


Berry, C. A. Findings on American astronauts bearing on one issue of artificial gravity for future manned space vehicles. In press.


Busby, E. Clinical space medicine: A perspective look at medical problems from hazards of space operations. NASA CR-856, July 1967. Prepared by Lovelace Foundation for Medical Education and Research for National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C.


Kakurin, L. I. Medical research prepared on the flight program of the Soyuz-type spacecraft. NASA TTF-141026, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C., November 1971.


Yegorov, B. B. Physiological reactions and possible means of protection during long term exposure to weightless conditions. NASA TT F-12095, January 1969, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C.

Yuganov, Ye. M. Physiological reactions in weightlessness. In V. V. Parin (Ed.), *Aviation and space medicine*, NASA TT F 228, December 1964, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C.
## APPENDIX

**History of U.S. and Soviet Manned Space Flights**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spacecraft</th>
<th>Launch Date</th>
<th>Crew</th>
<th>Flight Time</th>
<th>Highlights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vostok 1</td>
<td>Apr. 12, 1961</td>
<td>Yuri A. Gagarin</td>
<td>1 hr. 48 mins.</td>
<td>First manned flight. First U.S. flight; suborbital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury-Redstone 3</td>
<td>May 5, 1961</td>
<td>Alan L. Shepard, Jr.</td>
<td>15 mins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vostok 4</td>
<td>Aug. 6, 1961</td>
<td>Gherman S. Titov</td>
<td>25 Hrs. 18 mins.</td>
<td>First flight exceeding 24 hours. First American to orbit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vostok 5</td>
<td>June 14, 1963</td>
<td>Valery F. Bykovsky</td>
<td>119 hrs. 6 mins.</td>
<td>First long U.S. flight. Second dual mission (with Vostok 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vostok 6</td>
<td>June 16, 1963</td>
<td>Valentina V. Tereshkova</td>
<td>70 hrs. 50 mins.</td>
<td>First woman in space; within 5 miles of Vostok 5. First 3-man crew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voskhod 1</td>
<td>Oct. 12, 1964</td>
<td>Vladimir M. Komarov</td>
<td>24 hrs. 17 mins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. Konstantin P. Feoktistov</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr. Boris G. Yegorov</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voskhod 2</td>
<td>Mar. 18, 1965</td>
<td>Alexei A. Leonov</td>
<td>26 hrs. 2 mins.</td>
<td>First extravehicular activity (Leonov, 10 minutes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 4</td>
<td>June 3, 1965</td>
<td>James A. McDivitt</td>
<td>97 hrs. 56 mins.</td>
<td>21-minute extravehicular activity (White).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 7</td>
<td>Dec. 4, 1965</td>
<td>Frank Borman, James A. Lovell, Jr.</td>
<td>330 hrs. 36 mins.</td>
<td>2-Week duration flight; demonstrated controlled reentry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 8</td>
<td>Mar. 16, 1966</td>
<td>Neil A. Armstrong, David R. Scott</td>
<td>10 hrs. 41 mins.</td>
<td>First docking of 2 orbiting spacecraft (Gemini 8 with Agena target rocket).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 9-A</td>
<td>June 3, 1966</td>
<td>Thomas P. Stafford</td>
<td>Extravehicular activity; rendezvous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 10</td>
<td>July 18, 1966</td>
<td>Eugene A. Cernan, John W. Young</td>
<td>72 hrs. 21 mins.</td>
<td>First dual rendezvous (Gemini 10 with Agena 10, then Agena 8).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 12</td>
<td>Nov. 11, 1966</td>
<td>James A. Lovell, Jr., Edwin E. Aldrin, Jr.</td>
<td>94 hrs. 35 mins.</td>
<td>Longest extravehicular activity (Aldrin, 5 hours 37 minutes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 1</td>
<td>Apr. 23, 1967</td>
<td>Vladimir M. Komarov</td>
<td>26 hrs. 40 mins.</td>
<td>Cosmonaut killed in reentry accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 8</td>
<td>Dec. 21, 1968</td>
<td>James A. Lovell, Jr., William A. Anders</td>
<td>147 hrs.</td>
<td>First manned orbit(s) of Moon; first manned departure from Earth's sphere of influence; highest speed ever attained in manned flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 4</td>
<td>Jan. 14, 1969</td>
<td>Vladimir Shatalov</td>
<td>71 hrs. 18 mins.</td>
<td>Soyuz 4 and 5 docked and transferred two cosmonauts from Soyuz 5 to Soyuz 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 5</td>
<td>Jan. 15, 1969</td>
<td>Boris Volynov, Alexey Yeliseyev, Yevgeniy Khrunov</td>
<td>72 hrs. 40 mins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX – Continued
History of U.S. and Soviet Manned Space Flights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spacecraft</th>
<th>Launch Date</th>
<th>Crew</th>
<th>Flight Time</th>
<th>Highlights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 9</td>
<td>Mar. 3, 1969</td>
<td>James A. McDivitt</td>
<td>241 hrs. 1 min.</td>
<td>Successfully simulated in Earth orbit operation of lunar module to landing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>David R. Scott</td>
<td></td>
<td>and takeoff from lunar surface and rejoining with command module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Russel L. Schweickart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thomas P. Stafford</td>
<td></td>
<td>Successfully demonstrated complete system, including lunar module descent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>John W. Young</td>
<td></td>
<td>to 47,000 feet from the lunar surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Eugene A. Cernan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 10</td>
<td>May 18, 1969</td>
<td>Neil A. Armstrong</td>
<td>195 hrs. 19 mins.</td>
<td>First manned landing on lunar surface and safe return to Earth. First</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Michael Collins</td>
<td></td>
<td>return of rock and soil samples to Earth, and manned deployment of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edwin E. Aldrin, Jr.</td>
<td></td>
<td>experiments on lunar surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 6</td>
<td>Oct. 11, 1969</td>
<td>Georgiv Shonin</td>
<td>118 hrs. 21 mins.</td>
<td>Soyuz 6, 7 and 8 operated as a group flight without actually docking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Valeriy Kubasov</td>
<td></td>
<td>Each conducted certain experiments, including welding and Earth and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 7</td>
<td>Oct. 12, 1969</td>
<td>Anatoliy Filipchenenko</td>
<td>118 hrs. 43 mins.</td>
<td>celestial observations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vladislav Volkov</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Viktor Gorbatko</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aleksey Yeliseyev</td>
<td></td>
<td>parts of Surveyor III spacecraft which landed in Ocean of Storms on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Richard F. Gordon, Jr.</td>
<td></td>
<td>55 hours and 54 minutes into flight pressure in oxygen tank No. 2 rose,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Alan L. Bean</td>
<td></td>
<td>mission aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo 13</td>
<td>Apr. 11, 1970</td>
<td>James A. Lovell, Jr.</td>
<td>142 hrs. 54 mins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fred W. Haise, Jr.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>John L. Swigert</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soyuz 9</td>
<td>June 1, 1970</td>
<td>Adrian W. Kojayev</td>
<td>424 hrs. 59 mins.</td>
<td>Longest duration manned mission to date. Also first nighttime manned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vitaly Sevastyansov</td>
<td></td>
<td>launch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mission</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Crew Members</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Apollo 14 | Jan. 31, 1971 | Alan B. Shepard  
Steward A. Roosa  
Edgar D. Mitchell       | 216 hr. 42 mins. | Used mobile equipment transporter on moon; record time on moon of 31 hours 33 minutes; first lunar highlands exploration. Lunar material weighing 96 pounds returned to Earth.               |
| Soyuz 10 | Apr. 22, 1971 | Vladimir A. Shatalov  
Alexei Yeliseyev  
Nikolai Rukavishnikov    | 47 hrs. 46 mins.  | Linked for 5.5 hours with Salyut; mission aborted early; first nighttime recovery.                                                                                                                   |
| Soyuz 11 | June 6, 1972  | Georgi T. Dobrovolsky  
Vladislav N. Volkov  
Viktor I. Patsayev       | 570 hrs. 22 mins. | New regenerative life support systems used; extensive biomedical data collected; plants grown. Crew died of hypoxia and dysbarism due to hatch seal failure resulting in rapid decompression of spacecraft prior to reentry. |
| Apollo 15 | July 26, 1971  | David Scott  
Alfred Worden  
James Irwin             | 295 hrs. 11 mins. | 28-mile coverage of moon's surface, using the first self-powered transport system for the surface of the moon; subsatellite launch; deep-space walk; approximately 170 pounds of moon rock returned to Earth. |
| Apollo 16 | Apr. 16, 1972  | John W. Young  
Thomas K. Mattingly  
Charles M. Duke          | 265 hrs. 51 mins. | 5th manned lunar landing; exploration using Lunar Rover; 213 pounds of lunar samples returned.                                                                                                           |

Concern over the effects of exposure to radiation is uniquely a product of the twentieth century. Within this period, machines capable of producing or releasing many kinds of radiation particles have been developed. Man also has taken the first steps into space, a radiation environment altogether different from that found on Earth. Medical and dental personnel now use radiation sources as diagnostic and therapeutic tools. It is with respect to space travel, however, that the most dramatic issues concerning radiation exposure have been raised. It has been known for some time that the Earth's atmosphere shields man from higher levels of solar and galactic radiation. Only now is information being obtained as to the effects of deliberate penetration into these regions of increased radiation. The findings from these early space missions will aid in determining the feasibility of long-term space voyages. Also, and perhaps of even greater importance, these findings will aid in determining the tolerance of man to the ever-proliferating radiation sources now being encountered on Earth.

The penetrating ionizing space radiations are extremely diverse in the energy range of both their particulate and their electromagnetic components. The particulate radiation component includes all subatomic particles such as protons, neutrons, electrons, atomic nuclei stripped of orbital electrons (the heavy primaries), mesons, etc. The pi meson is a charged or neutral particle and reacts to form new mesons with release of energy which in turn form electrons or positions with release of energy. K-mesons are also present in cosmic radiation. The electromagnetic portion includes the X- and gamma radiations. The
radiation energies lie between $10^{-3}$ and $10^{13}$ million electron volts (MeV). The identifying term “ionizing” is used because these radiations penetrate matter and, in their interactions with matter, cause pairs of positive and negative ions to be formed along the path of the incident particle or photon by loss or gain of an electron. The less energetic radiations may penetrate only a fraction of a millimeter, while the more energetic can penetrate many inches of dense material such as lead. Penetration implies entry to at least 10 microns, which is slightly beyond the thickness of most cells.

This chapter introduces the reader to the ionizing radiations in space and the general biological effects of ionizing radiation, but makes no attempt to establish or recommend standards of operational safety. Similarly, shielding against radiation, being an operational problem, is not discussed, though the matter is introduced because of the perturbations produced in any radiation field by any mass. (See also Radiobiological Factors in Manned Spaceflight, Langham, 1967.)

The space radiations can be broadly defined as falling into one of three categories: the primary cosmic radiations, the geomagnetically trapped radiations (Van Allen belts), and the solar flare events. The solar events vary considerably from one event to the next in the differential energy spectrum and the intensity of the protons of which they are predominantly composed. The energy spectrum of solar flares also varies with time. The reader is referred to the Solar Proton Manual (McDonald, 1963) and Webber (1963) for a more thorough treatment of these potentially hazardous radiation events.

The profuse and various secondary radiations generated when primary particles are stopped, and the importance of these secondaries are discussed. Common terms in radiation are defined and the concept of relative biological effectiveness (RBE) or the related quality factor (QF) is introduced. A word of warning here is appropriate. By definition (National Committee on Radiation Protection Handbook 59, 1954), the biologic response to radiation is standardized to the effects produced by 200 kVp X-rays. Radiations that have the same effect are said to have an RBE of unity. Radiations with a greater effect per rad (radiation absorbed dose)—such as neutrons, low energy protons and alpha particles—are said to have an RBE greater than unity in accordance with the ratio of doses that produce the same response.

RBE values are shown later, some of which are quite firmly established. Since they are generally to be applied to occupational radiation safety considerations, additional safety factors have been built in. Thus, they may be of only limited value for the evaluation of space radiations. There is also, at present, some controversy concerning the "best estimate" RBE for protons of energies equal to or greater than 100 MeV. These vary from about 0.6 (Sondhaus, 1962) to 1.6 (Fickering, 1963). The higher figure, derived from primate studies, may be more like that for man, since the exposure "geometry" is more typical. The reader is advised, however, not to accept any RBE value as rigorous.

Attention also is given to the question of tissue depth dose, since a heterogeneous or heterochromatic radiation flux will not penetrate any mass
uniformly at all depths. In addition, every solar flare event will have its own characteristic depth dose distribution. In this regard, it is suggested that the mean dose to the bone marrow be estimated wherever possible, and employed as a best estimate of the biologically significant dose.

The balance of the radiation effects sections present a rather broad delineation of the expected human response to the ionizing radiations. The data assume that depth dosage is nearly uniform and that exposure of the whole body has occurred. The summary of acute radiation illness has been derived from a number of sources, as indicated in the legends; but for the most part, well-documented accident cases, cases treated with therapeutic radiation, and the Hiroshima-Nagasaki survivors form the bulk of existing experience. Dose estimates are, therefore, uncertain. Individual biologic variations in response also occur. Therefore, indicated dose-response relationships must be considered to have at least a 20 percent error of estimate in either direction. A field where as yet figures cannot be provided for the engineer is that of the behavioral aspects and the possibility of effects of damage to the central nervous system by radiation alone or radiation combined with emotional and physical stress.

All existing experience supports the assumption that man is comparatively radiosensitive. He has a lower median lethal dose (~450 R) than observed in most rodents (500-750 R) but is somewhat more resistant than the average canine (250-400 R). Man shows a long slow course of events in the typical hematopoietic or bone marrow syndrome. Injury develops slowly, and reaches a maximum in 3 to 6 weeks. The testis, highly sensitive to radiation, is damaged promptly, but since this injury is done to immature cells the damage may not appear for some days and if not too severe will slowly recover. Recovery, in general, from the more acute manifestations may be protracted over many months or even years. Some efforts have been made to evaluate residual or long-term injury, but these have to employ many simplifying and therefore inaccurate assumptions, because of our general inability to detect critical recovery mechanisms and rates. The ERD (equivalent residual dose) concept is presented later, but the user should not attempt to employ any derived values for engineering design criteria. The concept is given more to enable the nonspecialist in radiation effects to gain better appreciation of the nature of the time-intensity dose variables in radiation biology. In general, if doses are kept small enough and sufficient time is allowed for recovery from earlier injury, the radiation "status" of an individual can be kept in a fairly steady state.

Dose-response estimates for the eyes and skin are largely based on clinically determined responses to standard radiation sources. The space radiations are more difficult to evaluate for these effects for several reasons. They include (a) particles that produce very dense ionization tracks which are more effective in inducing lens damage, (b) large numbers of low energy particles that can produce high surface doses with negligible deep tissue dosage, and (c) the capability of inducing diverse secondary particulate and bremsstrahlung radiations that can add significantly to the burden of surface-damaging ionization.
It is not yet possible to present a clear picture of the expected effects of partial-body exposure. Any degree of partial-body shielding and any protraction or fractionation of exposure can be advantageous. It is particularly beneficial to shield the sensitive organs or tissues, such as the gastrointestinal tract, eyes, and significant portions of the bone marrow. It should be understood that dose-response estimates of the acute radiation syndrome following partial-body exposures are impossible to make at this time; but if the major portion of the main torso is in the exposure field, the response would probably grade toward the whole-body exposure case.

Lastly, some consideration is given to the general questions of long-term effects—both for the exposed individual and for subsequent generations. With the exception of the leukemia incidence estimate, the data are all based on animal experimentation. Errors of estimate are therefore unknown, and could certainly involve a factor of 2. Long-term injury is also a population phenomenon in many respects, and all statements must, therefore, be given in probability terms. Probability statements for selected individuals are thus not appropriate and can be extremely misleading.


**Radiation Terms and Measures**

**Basic Units**

There are several units in use for describing radiation intensity and human exposure. These are interrelated as follows (Nuclear Radiation Guide, 1962):

*Roentgen.* The basic indicator of quantity of radiation is the roentgen unit. Inasmuch as radiation cannot be measured directly, its magnitude is determined by the ionization produced by the passage of radiation through a medium. The roentgen refers to the ionization produced in air by the passage of X- or gamma radiation, specifically, that amount of radiation required to produce 0.001293 grams of air ions carrying one electrostatic unit of electricity of either sign.

*Rad.* The rad (radiation absorbed dose) is the measure of exposure in most common use. One rad of any type of radiation corresponds to the absorption of 100 ergs per gram of any medium. Because the rad does not specify the medium, a medium should be stated unless clearly implied. For example, the term "tissue rad" should be used in the case of exposure of soft human tissue.
Biological Effectiveness

The RBE (Relative Biological Effectiveness) expresses the effectiveness of a particular type of radiation in producing the same biological response as X- or gamma radiation having a linear energy transfer (LET) equivalent to 3 kilovolts per micron of water and delivered at the rate of about 10 rads per minute. For applied radiation protection, QF (quality factor) is the preferred term under most practical circumstances.

Figure 9-1 shows the manner in which the RBE factor is used to translate an exposure expressed in rads into one expressed in REM’s. The REM (Roentgen Equivalent, Man) is the most accurate unit for expressing exposure of man. The REM refers to the absorbed dose of any ionizing radiation which produces the same biological effects in man as those resulting from the absorption of 1 roentgen of X-rays. As seen in figure 9-1, each type of radiation must be converted by a specific factor, the RBE, in order to equate the biological effects.

Table 9-1 presents RBE factors for a number of types of radiation. The standard RBE values are based on the most detrimental chronic biological effect (for example, cataract induction by neutrons) for continuous low dose exposures that might be met in industrial situations. However, the RBE for many acute high dose rate exposures may be very much lower. The RBE for a large acute lethal dose of fast neutrons may be less than 1.0 for man, as against the values of 5 to 10 shown in table 9-1. Also, as a given particle degrades in tissue, the RBE will rise as its energy transfer per micron (LET) rises. At the same time, a heterogeneous beam of protons will have an average RBE that tends to drop with increasing depth in tissue as the lower energy component becomes fully absorbed and the higher energy component continues its traverse. Figure 9-2 shows instantaneous and mean RBE’s for protons of different energies, corresponding to the instantaneous linear energy transfer at energy E, and the mean RBE for dissipation of the entire energy from E down to zero.

Table 9-2 illustrates the manner in which the RBE (QF) value changes as a result of increasing power of X-rays or electron radiation. The relation between RBE (QF) and LET in terms of keV/μm in water can be employed for virtually all end points to compensate for differences in radiation quality.
Table 9-1
RBE Values for Various Types of Radiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Radiation</th>
<th>RBE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-rays</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamma rays and bremsstrahlung</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta particles, 1.0 MeV</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot; 0.1 MeV</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutrons, thermal energy</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 0.0001 MeV</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 0.005 MeV</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 0.02 MeV</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 0.5 MeV</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 1.0 MeV</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 10.0 MeV</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protons, greater than 100 MeV</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 1.0 MeV</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 0.1 MeV</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha particles, 5 MeV</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot; 1 MeV</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(From Barbiere et al., 1958; U.S. Atomic Energy Commission, 1962; Saenger, 1963.)

![Diagram of QF vs Kinetic Energy (mev)](image)

Figure 9-2. Instantaneous and mean RBE's for protons of various energies. (Schaefer, 1961; Sondhaus & Evans, 1969)
Table 9-2
Values of RBE (QF) for Late or Delayed Effects
as a Function of Average LET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LET∞ (keV/μm in Water)</th>
<th>RBE (QF)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-rays and electrons of any LET</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 or less</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 - 7</td>
<td>1 - 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 - 23</td>
<td>2 - 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 - 53</td>
<td>5 - 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 - 175</td>
<td>10 - 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(National Committee on Radiation Protection and Measurements, 1954)

Equivalent Residual Dose (ERD) is a concept used in estimating what residual acute radiation injury persists for a period of weeks and months after an exposure to radiation. Thus a person exposed to radiation on Monday can be said to have a certain amount of that injury on the next Monday, something less on the next after that, and so forth. The ERD at any time, t days, after onset of exposure can be calculated on the basis of the following assumptions:

1. 10 percent of the injury attributed to the dose is considered to be irreparable.
2. The body repairs the remaining 90 percent at the rate of 2.5 percent per day.
3. Recovery is continuous during protracted exposure. The ERD at t days may be expressed as:

\[
ERD = D_0 \left[0.1 + 0.9(1.000 - 0.025)^{t-4}\right] + \hat{D} \int_4^t \left[0.1 + 0.9(1.000 - 0.025)^{t}\right] dt,
\]

where

- \(D_0\) = brief dose in r received during first 4 days,
- \(\hat{D}\) = protracted daily dose at a constant rate, r/day, received after the 4th day, and
- \(t\) = time in days after onset of initial exposure.
Classes and Sources of Ionizing Radiation

The radiation encountered in space, and to a lesser extent on Earth, may be attributed to three principal sources: geomagnetically trapped radiation, galactic cosmic radiation, and solar particle radiation. Space radiation levels vary substantially both with time and with distance from the Earth. These temporal and spatial fluctuations must be taken into account in the planning of space missions if radiation exposures are to be held to an acceptable level. Table 9-3 shows the nature and location of electromagnetic and particulate ionizing radiations found in space. As indicated, most of the various radiations can be found within each of the three radiation sources noted above. Principal exceptions are alpha particles and heavy primary nuclei which are not generally associated with the radiation emanating from solar events.

Table 9-3
Nature and Location of Electromagnetic and Particulate Ionizing Radiations in Space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Nature of Radiation</th>
<th>Charge</th>
<th>Mass</th>
<th>Where Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Photon</td>
<td>Electromagnetic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Radiation belts, solar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-ray</td>
<td>Electromagnetic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Radiation (produced by nuclear reactions and by stopping electrons), and everywhere in space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamma ray</td>
<td>Electromagnetic</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Nuclear reactions and by stopping electrons, and everywhere in space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electron</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>1 mₑ</td>
<td>Radiation belt and elsewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positron</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>+e</td>
<td>1 mₑ</td>
<td>Cosmic rays, radiation belt, solar flares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proton</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>+e</td>
<td>1840 mₑ or 1 amu*</td>
<td>Primary cosmic rays, radiation belt, solar flares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutron</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1841 mₑ</td>
<td>Secondary particles produced by nuclear interactions involving primary particle flux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pi meson</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>+,−, or 0</td>
<td>273 mₑ</td>
<td>Cosmic rays, radiation belt, solar flares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha particle</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>+2e</td>
<td>4 amu</td>
<td>Primary cosmic radiation (nucleus of helium atom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy primary nuclei</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>≥+3e</td>
<td>≥6 amu</td>
<td>Primary cosmic radiation (nuclei of heavier atoms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*amu = atom mass unit
(Newell & Naugle, 1960; Sondhaus & Evans, 1969; Glasstone, 1958)

The following sections describe the sources of the principal ionizing radiation of biological significance in space.
Primary Radiation

*Geomagnetically Trapped Radiation.* There are two belts of geomagnetically trapped radiation around the Earth, as shown in figure 9-3. These belts, known as the Van Allen belts, are separated by a region of relatively low intensity. Figure 9-3 shows the relative intensities of both electrons and protons within the trapped radiation belts. Electrons are shown to the left, protons to the right. Both, of course, are intermingled and are separated only for clarification of the values.

![Figure 9-3](image)

Figure 9–3. Representation of the radiations trapped in the Earth's magnetic field, known as the "Van Allen belts". (Adapted from White et al., 1969)

The Van Allen radiation belts are not entirely symmetrical. In the South Atlantic Anomaly, extending from about 0 to 60 degrees west longitude and 20 to 50 degrees south latitude, the trapped proton intensity for energies more than 30 MeV is the equivalent at 100 to 200 miles altitude to that at 800 miles altitude elsewhere. This is due to a perturbation or asymmetry of the Earth’s geomagnetic field. For trajectories of space vehicles of 30 degrees inclination from the equator or greater, there will be approximately five traverses through this anomaly in each day. Experience with earth orbital missions to date indicates that nearly all of the accumulative radiation exposure has been attributable to passage through this geomagnetic anomaly.

Table 9-4 compares the total radiation exposures for Apollo missions 7 through 14. Most of this exposure, it is believed, took place during the period while the vehicle was within the Van Allen belts. It is apparent that the Apollo 14 crew received a higher radiation dose than crews on any prior Apollo mission,
but still a dose of no hazard or biological significance (Berry, 1971). In fact, the
crewmembers on this flight received the largest dose experienced on any manned
mission to that point in time. The Apollo 14 trajectory, particularly the
outbound portion, took the spacecraft close to the heart of the trapped
radiation belts. Since the mission occurred at a time of solar minimum, the
cosmic ray flux was relatively higher than for previous missions.

Table 9-4
Radiation Exposure for Apollo 14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Apollo 7</th>
<th>Apollo 8</th>
<th>Apollo 9</th>
<th>Apollo 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rad</td>
<td>Rad</td>
<td>Rad</td>
<td>Rad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.16</td>
<td>.16</td>
<td>.20</td>
<td>.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apollo 14 Exposure (Rad)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chest</th>
<th>Thigh</th>
<th>Ankle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.996</td>
<td>1.095</td>
<td>1.073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.126</td>
<td>1.145</td>
<td>1.279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.078</td>
<td>1.204</td>
<td>1.248</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Berry, 1971)

Galactic Cosmic Radiation. Galactic cosmic radiation, frequently referred to
simply as galactic radiation, originates outside the solar system. This radiation
consists of atomic nuclei which have been completely ionized and accelerated to
very high energies. Protons of 10^{18} electron-volt energy have been identified
from this source. Protons (hydrogen nuclei) constitute about 85 percent of this
radiation; alpha particles (helium nuclei), about 13 percent; and heavier nuclei
ranging up to tin, the remaining few percent (Jones, 1968).

Cosmic activity in space is reasonably constant. Measures obtained with
deep-probe rockets show little difference in intensity between 1.0 and
1.5 astronomical units from the sun. This would indicate that cosmic ray
intensity in the vicinity of planets such as Venus and Mars is quite similar to that
found near the Earth.

The galactic cosmic radiation received on Earth varies substantially both as a
function of the level of solar events occurring at that time and as a function of
position on the Earth's surface. Figure 9-4 shows the galactic radiation received
at varying altitudes up to 120 000 feet during periods of minimum and
maximum solar activity. The two curves are based on estimated whole-body dose
to an unshielded man at about 40 degrees north latitude. These curves show
that, whereas the dose rate is essentially negligible at sea level, at higher altitudes
Ionizing Radiation

427

the exposure during periods of solar minimum is approximately twice that found during solar maximum.

![Altitude profiles of galactic radiation level in the atmosphere. (Foelsche et al., 1969)](image)

As seen in figure 9-5 distance from the equator has a very significant effect on exposure to galactic radiation at altitudes above 30,000 feet. Highest exposures are recorded in the polar region. At polar latitudes and at altitudes in excess of 70,000 feet, radiation levels are more than triple those found at a latitude of 30 degrees.

Solar Particle Radiation. Solar activity increases in rather regular 11 year cycles and is characterized by giant eruptions from the surface of the sun, termed "solar flares." Solar flares develop rapidly and generally last only 30 to 50 minutes, during which time intense radiation activity occurs. Table 9-5 shows the major solar events occurring during the period from 1956 through 1961. The peak events of this solar cycle were recorded in 1958 and 1959. This was the period showing the greatest solar particle radiation reaching the Earth.

The electromagnetic radiation from a solar flare is emitted only during the visible activity. However, the solar particles continue to arrive near the Earth for a few hours to several days after the visible activity has ceased. High energy protons, alpha particles and a few heavy nuclei of Z up to 9 or 10 emitted during the flare activity constitute the radiation hazard to space travellers outside of the trapped radiation (Van Allen) belts. Neutrons have not been detected in the primary solar flare radiation.
Figure 9-5. Altitude profiles of galactic radiation level at solar minimum. (Foelsche et al., 1969)

Table 9-5
Major Solar Cosmic Ray Outbursts Occurring 1956 – 1961

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Importance</th>
<th>$\geq 30$ MeV</th>
<th>$\geq 100$ MeV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1956 Feb 23</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1957 Jan 20</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug 29 to 31</td>
<td>Uncertain flare, possibly two events</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1958 Mar 23</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jul 07</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug 22</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug 26</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1959 May 10</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jul 10</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jul 14</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jul 16</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960 May 04</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov 12</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov 15</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1961 Jul 18</td>
<td>3+</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Modified from McDonald, 1963)
Evidence indicates that two classes of protons are produced during flare activity. The highest energy particles, 200 to 300 MeV, arrive first, within 5 to 20 minutes after the onset of the optical flare, and consist of high-velocity particles, about 0.6 times the velocity of light.

After about one-half hour, the second class of protons arrives, the average energy of which has fallen to below 100 MeV. Maximum intensity is reached one-half hour to one day after the beginning of the solar disturbance. The intensity slowly decreases over a period of several days. The variation with time of the spectral energy distribution and the flux density (number of particles/cm²) is unpredictable.

During the period of solar activity between 1956 and 1962, about 30 flares occurred which would have produced a total tissue dose of more than one rad (as measured with plastic phantom material placed behind approximately 0.5 gm/cm² of aluminum) at 3000 kilometers or greater above the surface of the Earth. In four events, the potential tissue dose approached 1000 rads and exceeded 200 rads in 13 other flares. With the thickness of shields on present day spacecraft, the probability of a crewmember receiving a tissue dose of greater than 100 rads during a manned 30 day mission appears to be between 5 and 10 percent. However, this calculation must be tempered by the fact that crewmembers of all manned space missions to date have received total doses considerably less than this (see table 9-4).

The matter of variable solar particle radiation is of great importance for the selection of launch dates, particularly for long-term space missions. Table 9-6 shows the maximum and minimum doses calculated as a function of mission duration for the worst and best launch dates during a single period of solar activity. Fortunately, the selection of dates so far has been quite good since astronauts have received only nominal radiation exposures.

With the thrust presently available for spacecraft, it is impractical to provide the extensive shielding which would be required against high-energy protons. Thin shielding is of little value, inasmuch as protons and other charged particles give up increasingly more energy as they are slowed. The most intensive zone of ionization is at the end of their path, where it may be up to several orders of magnitude greater than at the beginning. The proton does not produce ionization having about the same LET (linear-energy-transfer) throughout the irradiated material, as would be produced by X- or gamma rays, but would produce a LET value a hundred times greater at the end of its path than at the beginning. The solar electrons encountered in space, as well as most of the remaining electromagnetic radiations, are of sufficiently low energy that they should not present a great hazard inside a vehicle, but could be hazardous during extravehicular activities.

The radiations that are constantly being given off from the sun, between periods of flare activity, consist of a large number of protons and electrons of low energy, ranging from a few electron volts for the electrons to approximately 5 MeV for the protons. The protons do not exist as simple...
monoenergetic sources. They are found in complex spectra of energies and intensities.

Table 9–6
Maximum and Minimum Mission Doses* for Best and Worst Launch Dates During Active Period of Cycle 19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mission Duration</th>
<th>Maximum Dose (rads)</th>
<th>Minimum Dose (rads)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>3492</td>
<td>2439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>3229</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>2781</td>
<td>526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 years</td>
<td>2415</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>2110</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 months</td>
<td>1963</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>1963</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>1962</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 months</td>
<td>1492</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Surface dose inside 1 g/cm² uniform aluminum shielding.

(Langham, 1967)

Secondary Radiations

One of the principal problems in developing effective shielding for the occupants of space vehicles concerns secondary radiations. Whenever primary particles strike a spacecraft and its shielding material, secondary radiations are produced. Figure 9-6 illustrates the fates of particles meeting a manned vehicle. Electrons and positrons are stopped by the vehicle wall, which then emits the bremsstrahlung (gamma rays). Protons and heavy ions may hit a target in the wall, or within the cabin, or may pass right through the structures. Wherever a target is hit, these particles produce characteristic showers of secondary particles as shown. Whenever a primary particle with an energy of 300 MeV or greater hits a nucleus of target material, secondary particles and electromagnetic radiations are generated in great variety, as shown in figure 9-7.

The absorption of radiation in matter involves the transfer of all or some portion of the incident radiation energy to an electron or nucleus in the absorber mass. This may lead, as illustrated in figure 9-7 to the production of recoil protons, neutrons, electrons, X- or gamma radiation, or many other secondary particles. The space radiations are not qualitatively different from conventional radiations in this regard, but quantitatively the production of secondaries is somewhat unique. This is due to the presence in space of particles of unusually
high energies that can generate a cascade of secondary photons and particles. The exact nature of the secondaries will be a function of the incident particle and its charge and energy, the density of the absorbing or shielding material and its thickness, and the proximity of masses of different composition or elemental form (i.e., laminated shielding, capsule wall, and black boxes).

Figure 9–6. The fates of radiation elements striking a manned spacecraft. (Modified from Grahn, 1964)

Several studies have been initiated on the shielding problem, and these can be reviewed in the Proceedings of the Symposium on the Protection against Radiation Hazards in Space (1963). The biological importance of the problem is illustrated in figure 9-7 which demonstrates the buildup of secondary radiation dose in shielding material. In other words, while shielding is certainly an effective countermeasure, it does modify the quality of the radiation, which must then be considered the radiation of interest for biological consideration (Keller, 1962).

The complexity of the secondary radiation and shielding problem is illustrated further in figures 9-8a and 9-8b. These show the differential effectiveness of aluminum shielding against trapped protons and solar protons. Even heavy shielding is seen to be inefficient with regard to trapped protons although fairly effective with regard to solar protons. Still other shielding problems arise with intracapsular radiation sources such as might be found with isotopic power units or small reactors.
Figure 9-7. Generation of secondary particles and electromagnetic radiations following nuclear collision. (Saylor et al., 1962)

Figure 9-8. Effectiveness of aluminum shielding of varying weight against trapped and solar protons. (Keller, 1962)
Whole Body Radiation Effects

There is only limited information available concerning the effects of whole body radiation on man. Data on Japanese victims of World War II nuclear explosions constitute one source, although the relationship between exposure and aftereffects is in this case not a simple matter to interpret. Many other factors, such as the medical condition of the survivors at the time of exposure plus the complications of other injuries, make the issue a difficult one. Other data, from accidents involving radiographic equipment, industrial X-ray machines, cyclotrons, and nuclear reactors, are easier to interpret but are quite sparse.

In examining the whole body radiation effects, it should be noted that reliable information has been obtained for doses from 52 to 100 rem. As the dose increases from 200 to 600 rem, the data from exposed humans decrease rapidly and must be supplemented by extrapolations based on animal studies. Nevertheless, the conclusions drawn can be accepted with a reasonable degree of confidence. Beyond 600 rem, however, observations on man are so sporadic that the relationship between dose and biological effect must be inferred or conjectured, almost entirely from observations made on animals exposed to ionizing radiations (Glasstone, 1962).

Radiation Intensity

Figure 9.9 shows the relationship between median survival time and acute radiation dose for mice, rats, monkeys, and man. It can be seen that man is slightly more resistant to radiation effects than the animals until the dose rate reaches a level where death is a certainty within several days or less.

Figure 9.9. Relationship between median survival time and acute radiation dose for different species. (Langham, 1963)
Figure 9-10 shows the probability of death, for man, within a finite period (60 days) as well as the probability of initial symptomatology (nausea and vomiting). The relation is plotted for whole body radiation dosage and first symptoms of death. For exposures in the mid-lethal range and above, nearly all persons will experience severe nausea and vomiting within 5 hours of the time of exposure with a mean time of onset of about 2 hours. These probability plots are estimates based on accumulated experience from Japanese casualties, accidental exposure to fallout, reactor incidents and clinical experience.

Changes in the probability of death as a function of radiation dose level and dose rate are shown in table 9-7. This table also shows the difference in the dose level producing a given probability of death as the time during which the radiation is received ranges from 1 day to 1 year.

The short term effects to be expected from acute whole body radiation are described in table 9-8. Dose levels discussed range from 10 rads, an easily survivable one-time event, to 5000 rads, an event in which ensuing death is certain for all individuals exposed. In examining table 9-8, it is of interest to note that doses of 100 to 200 rads were common in survivors of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki nuclear attacks, particularly among persons who were at some distance from the nuclear explosion (Glasstone, 1962).
Table 9-7
Some Conjectured Human Tolerances

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Week</th>
<th>Month</th>
<th>4 Months</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Exposure dose (midline rads), Subcommittee No. 14 (NCRP)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_0$/time period</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_{5-10}$/time period</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_{50}$/time period</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>370</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Dose* rate (R/min), Subcommittee No. 14 (NCRP)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_0$/time period</td>
<td>0.069</td>
<td>0.0099</td>
<td>0.0031</td>
<td>0.0012</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_{5-10}$/time period</td>
<td>0.115</td>
<td>0.0164</td>
<td>0.0046</td>
<td>0.0016</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$LD_{50}$/time period</td>
<td>0.208</td>
<td>0.0298</td>
<td>0.0079</td>
<td>0.0021</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Dose = $R$ in air in phantom midline.
(National Council on Radiation Protection, 1962)

Table 9-8 shows that vomiting is one of the principal reactions to acute whole body radiation. A more clear definition of the incidence of vomiting as a function of dose level is shown in figure 9-11. The line represents the most likely given dose in hundreds of rads following acute exposure and indicates the 10 percent incidence when the radiation has been protracted over one day.

An idealized description of the time course of symptomatology of acute radiation illness following a mid-lethal acute exposure is shown in figure 9-12. The symptoms shown in this figure are predicated upon a radiation level of 250 to 500 rad. Of particular interest in figure 9-12 is the period around 10 days following exposure when an individual for a short period may be entirely free of any symptoms of radiation illness.

Rate-Effectiveness Factors

It is apparent that a low radiation dose rate, if received over a sufficient period of time, can have consequences as severe as those following a high dose rate for a short period of time. Table 9-9 presents rate-effectiveness factors ($f_r$) which can be used to equate radiation exposures for the production of three classes of symptomatology: erythema and skin desquamation, prodromal signs, and hematological depression and lethality. In general, this table shows that a low dose must be administered for 2 to 3 times as long as that considered a high dose rate if the same biological effects are to be produced.
Table 9–8
Expected Short-Term Effects From Acute Whole-Body Radiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose in Rads</th>
<th>Probable Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 – 50</td>
<td>No obvious effect, except, probably, minor blood changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 100</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea for about 1 day in 5%–10% of exposed personnel. Fatigue, but no serious disability. Transient reduction in lymphocytes and neutrophils.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 – 200</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea for about 1 day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness in about 25%–50% of personnel. No deaths anticipated. A reduction of approximately 50% in lymphocytes and neutrophils will occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 – 350</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea in nearly all personnel on first day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness, e.g., loss of appetite, diarrhea, minor hemorrhage. About 20% deaths within 2–6 weeks after exposure; survivors convalescent for about 3 months, although many have second wave of symptoms at about 3 weeks. Up to 75% reduction in all circulating blood elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350 – 550</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea in most personnel on first day, followed by other symptoms of radiation sickness, e.g., fever, hemorrhage, diarrhea, emaciation. About 50% deaths within 1 month; survivors convalescent for about 6 months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550 – 750</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea, or at least nausea, in all personnel within 4 hours from exposure, followed by severe symptoms of radiation sickness, as above. Up to 100% deaths; few survivors convalescent for about 6 months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Vomiting and nausea in all personnel within 1–2 hours. All dead within days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>Incapacitation almost immediately (minutes to hours). All personnel will be fatalities within 1 week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Author’s change.
(Langham, 1967)
Figure 9–11. Incidence of vomiting as a function of radiation dose.
(Langham, 1967)

Figure 9–12. Changing symptomatology during acute radiation illness
(From Glasstone, 1962; Saenger, 1963; and Cronkite et al., 1956)
Table 9–9
Suggested Dose-Rate or Rate-Effectiveness Factors ($f_r$) for Early Responses Following Exposure to Low-LET Radiations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration of Exposure</th>
<th>Erythema and Skin Desquamation</th>
<th>Prodromal Signs</th>
<th>Hematological Depression and Lethality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>High Dose Rate</strong></td>
<td>1–2 hr or less</td>
<td>2–4 hr or less</td>
<td>1–2 days or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of exposure for maximum effectiveness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low Dose Rate</strong></td>
<td>4–6 days or longer</td>
<td>2–4 days or longer</td>
<td>3–4 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of exposure for minimum effectiveness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ratio of total doses to produce same response level ($B/A$)</strong></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rate-effectiveness factor ($f_r$)</strong></td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>1/2.5</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Adapted from National Committee on Radiation Protection and Measurements, 1962; Langham, 1967)

Radiation Effects on Specific Body Systems

Tissue

When radiation particles are absorbed in human tissue, there is an irradiation effect as a particle is slowed. Figure 9-13 presents a longitudinal section of the isodose line field in tissue for the terminal section of a cosmic ray heavy nucleus of $Z = 20$ (Ca). In this figure, the section from 280 to 0 micron residual range is the "thindown" part.

Figure 9-14 shows the calculated dose which might have been received from protons at various depths in tissue from Inner Van Allen belt and the solar proton event of 12 May 1959, assuming a spacecraft cabin providing only 2 gm/cm² of shielding. The greater drop of tissue depth-dose from flare protons as compared to inner belt protons is a function of the differences in the integral energy spectra; the greater frequency of higher energy protons in the inner belt increases the dose rate in deep tissues. Note the importance of knowing the integrated energy spectrum of the proton radiation when considering the critical targets—i.e., bone marrow, spleen, and intestinal locations beneath the surface.
Figure 9-13. Longitudinal section of isodose line field for terminal section of cosmic ray nucleus of $Z_\gamma$ (Ca). (Schaefer & Golden, 1960)

Figure 9-14. Calculated radiation dose from protons at various tissue depths — assuming shielding of 2 gm/cm². (Schaefer, 1960)
Blood System

Radiation exposure produces a number of significant changes in the various elements of the blood. The extent of these changes is shown dramatically in figure 9-15 which presents average values of blood elements for five individuals exposed to estimated doses of 250 to 350 rads at the Oak Ridge Criticality Accident of 16 June 1958. Note that, whereas initial changes are seen in virtually all blood elements, the full extent of the damage may not be apparent until 25 to 40 days following the event. In view of the observed drops in red cell mass assumably due to oxygen effect, the effect of radiation on hematocrit and hemoglobin shown in figure 9-15 may be exaggerated.

![Figure 9-15. Change in blood elements for five individuals exposed to 250 to 350 rads. (Saenger, 1963)](image)

The response of one individual to a brief whole body exposure of about 130 rads of fission gamma radiation is shown in figure 9-16. The curves in this figure emphasize the long persistence of radiation injury in man. The cellular elements of the blood show an early rapid decline in number, but do not reach a minimum for 4 to 5 weeks. The blood cell count remains at about 50% of normal for over a year, yet the affected individual, in this case, expressed no outward signs or symptoms of this injury. The individual was, undoubtedly, more susceptible to infection and his general response capability to any additional stress was probably depressed throughout the period of observation. Although no direct test was made for this individual, victims of other radiation accidents have complained of a persistent fatigue for many months after exposure.

Figure 9-17 shows the limits for receipt of radiation by a human without clinically detectable damage to the hematopoietic system. Individuals receiving continuous dose rates indicated on figure 9-17 would be expected
to show no overt symptoms relating to injury of blood forming tissues at the accumulated doses, dose rates, and times shown on the figure.

Figure 9-16. Blood element changes for one individual exposed to 130 rads. (Langham, 1963)

Figure 9-17. Continuous radiation exposures at the above level should produce no injury clinically measurable to the hematopoietic system. (Modified from Langham, 1967)

Radiation injury, by virtue of its effect on specific blood elements, could make an individual more susceptible to disease. This is shown in figure 9-18 which shows the depression of normal neutrophil count following exposure to acute radiation. Schematized levels of neutrophils in the blood are shown for varying exposures and are related to the times when infections are most prevalent. Only neutrophils are shown here as the predominant white blood cell involved in combating acute infections. Other white blood cells (lymphocytes and monocytes) also would be depressed as a result of radiation damage.
Figure 9–18. Schematized levels of blood neutrophils following different radiation exposures. (Adapted from Cronkite et al., 1956; Andrews, 1962; and Langham, 1967)

The effect of radiation on platelets formation is shown in figure 9-19. These curves indicate, for various exposure levels, the observed course of platelet counts over a 180 day period. Whenever platelet count falls below 40 to 50 percent of normal, bleeding and oozing from minor wounds and scrapes is hard to stop and hemorrhage is likely from such radiation-damaged tissues as the intestine.

Figure 9–19. Observed course of platelet counts following different radiation exposures. (Langham, 1967)
One of the most dramatic demonstrations of the effect of radiation on blood systems comes from the increase in cases of leukemia recorded for survivors of the Hiroshima nuclear explosion, as shown in figure 9.20. This figure shows that leukemia in Hiroshima rose from a number of approximately one case per 100,000 people in 1946 to almost 18 per 100,000 by 1951, but has decreased in recent years (Ishimaru, 1971). This can be compared with only a slight increase (about double in 1960) in leukemia incidence for the rest of the Japanese population.

A calculated probability of death from leukemia is about $10^{-6}$/R/year for the first 15 to 20 years after brief exposure to whole body radiation. This probability is based on experience at rather high exposure dose rates (>25 R/min). Animal data clearly indicate that the response is less at low dose rates (<R/min), and assumably man would respond in a like manner. Experience of the A-bomb survivors suggests that most cases of leukemia develop within 15 or 20 years of exposure.

Figure 9.20. The incidence of leukemia cases reported in Hiroshima in the period 1946 to 1962. (Modified from data of Watanabe, 1961 by Brill et al., 1962; United Nations Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation, 1964)
Since the astronauts are healthy adult males, their susceptibility can be assumed to be less than that of the general population. The probability of achieving doses high enough to induce cancer other than leukemia or cancer of the thyroid in astronauts is slight. With doses of 50 R and above, the probability of induction of leukemia is on the order of $10^{-6}$/rad/year; that for cancer of the thyroid is in the same range, and that for other cancers is less by at least a factor of 10 (Brill et al., 1962; United Nations Committee on the Effects of Atomic Radiation, 1964).

**The Skin**

Radiation damage to the skin is of interest since this is the initial point of penetration for the radiation and also since changes are easily assessed. In general, it is found that higher radiation dose levels are required to produce demonstrable damage to the skin than is the case for the hematopoietic system. Table 9-10 shows four levels of damage occurring from acute exposure to X and gamma radiation. Note that approximately 350 rads must be received before significant changes begin to appear. In all cases, with the exception of extreme levels in excess of 2000 rads, the principal effect is not immediate but appears instead after an interval of several days to several weeks.

**Table 9–10**

Acute Radiation Damage to the Skin From X- and Gamma Rays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epilation (loss of hair)</th>
<th>Erythema (first degree burn)</th>
<th>Wet dermatitis and blistering (second degree burn)</th>
<th>Ulceration (third degree burn)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rare at less than 200 r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial epilation at 350-450 r</td>
<td>Response is dependent on energy, dose rate, area exposed, &amp; complexion of the individual.</td>
<td>Full effect in 1 to 3 weeks after:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete epilation in 16-18 days at &gt; 450 r</td>
<td>200-400 r (&lt;150 kev)</td>
<td>500-600 r (200-400 kev)</td>
<td>Effect in 1-2 weeks at:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent epilation at &gt; 700 r</td>
<td>800-1000 r (&gt;400 kev)</td>
<td>00-1000 r (&gt;1000 kev)</td>
<td>Rapidly progressive effect at &gt; 2000 r</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 1 r $\equiv$ 1 rad since these statements are based on air doses.
(From Grahn, 1964, adapted from Saenger, 1964 & Cronkite et al., 1966.)

Table 9-11 shows the dose level of high intensity radiation necessary to achieve a given probability level for the production of erythema and
desquamation of the skin. Note that with each of the clinical signs it is necessary to essentially double the dose rate in order to progress from a 10 percent probability of the symptom appearing to a 90 percent probability level. In either case, a high dose rate is required in order to produce the given symptoms. Figure 9-21 shows the effect of single and fractionated radiation in producing erythema and also moist desquamation, either of which would be partially or completely disabling, particularly in the wearing of a space suit.

Table 9–11

Estimated Absorbed Doses of High-Intensity Reference Radiation for Production of Erythema and Desquamation of the Skin*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Sign</th>
<th>Absorbed Dose for Probability of Response (rads)**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythema</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desquamation</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Early Skin Effects, p. 60, Langham, 1967.
**Site of interest for dose estimation, 0.1 mm depth; area exposed, 35 – 100 cm².

Figure 9–21. Effect of single and fractionated radiation in producing erythema and moist desquamation. (Modified from Langham, 1967)
Skin effects produced by exposure to electron radiation are indicated in figure 9-22. Electron radiation is of importance during extravehicular activity, the wall of the capsule being sufficiently dense for shielding. The space suit alone provides some protection. However, the abrasive and pressure effects of the space suit may make the skin more susceptible to radiation injury as is indicated in the figure (Langham, 1967; U.S. Air Force–National Aeronautics and Space Administration, 1969).

![Figure 9-22. Skin effects produced by exposure to electron radiation. (U.S. Air Force–National Aeronautics and Space Administration, 1969)](image)

**Visual System**

Data regarding the effect of ionizing radiation on the visual system come largely from reactions noted clinically following exposure to standard radiation sources. These data, as noted earlier, may underestimate the impact of space radiations for several reasons. First, solar or cosmic ray particles can produce very dense ionization tracks which would cause greater lens damage. Second, there are in space large numbers of low energy particles that can produce high surface damage. Third, there is the matter of induced secondary particulate and bremsstrahlung radiations that can augment the damage pattern. Figure 9-23 shows the incidence of lens opacities in man as a function of dose for X- and for gamma radiation delivered over a period of 3 weeks or less. This could be considered an acute exposure. Figure 9-24 shows the time-dose relationship for the
production of both cataract and non-cataract changes in the ocular lens for chronic exposures in which the exposure time is extrapolated for periods as long as 3 years.

Figure 9-23. Incidence of lens opacities in man as a function of dose for X and gamma radiation delivered over three weeks or less. (Merriam & Focht, 1957)

Figure 9-24. Extrapolated relationship for the production of late indication changes in the ocular lens. (Langham, 1967)
Reproductive System

The extent to which radiation exposure produces temporary or lasting damage to the reproductive system is an issue of concern for the planning of long duration space missions. Table 9-12 presents a summary of observations concerning the effects of high-intensity X-ray exposure on spermatogenesis. In essence, it appears that at exposures of 15 to 100 rads, the response will probably be reduced fertility. From 100 to 300 rads, there will probably be temporary sterility for approximately one year or longer. Over 500 rads, the individual will probably not survive but, if so, permanent sterility would probably result.

Table 9-12
Summary of Observations of Effects of High-Intensity Doses of X-Rays on Spermatogenesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose (rads)</th>
<th>Observed Effect on Sperm Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Moderate oligospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Moderate oligospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Pronounced oligospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Marked oligospermia and azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Azoospermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>Azoospermia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(From Heller, 1966)

There is little information available on the effects of protracted radiation, but it is probable on the basis of studies in dogs that a dose of 0.5 rem/day will produce radiation damage within one year. Exposure at an average daily rate of 0.2 rem continued for 2 to 5 years will probably produce some temporary infertility. However, this would be without effect on libido or potency.

Late Effects of Radiation

It is characteristic of radiation damage that significant effects may not be evident for long periods of time, frequently years after the event or, as would be the case with genetic damage, even into subsequent generations. One of the most important long-term features of radiation damage is a shortening of life expectancy. Figure 9-25 shows the estimated life expectancy of a 20-year-old population exposed to fixed daily doses of whole-body radiation, continued until time of death. Deaths would be from natural causes. While comparisons have been drawn between the effects of radiation and the normal process of
aging, the analogy is not complete. When radiation is delivered over a long period, there will be approximately a 1% shortening of the life span per 100 rads of exposure. For short periods of exposure at rates above 2 rads per hour, the life shortening effect will be multiplied by 5 (Storer, 1969).

The effect of radiation intensity on life shortening is shown in figure 9-26. These projections, based on accumulated doses of penetrating ionizing radiation, show that high intensity radiation is appreciably more damaging than is low intensity with respect to anticipated life span.

Of a special concern with respect to radiation damage are possible genetic effects. Figure 9-27 shows the frequency of anticipated mutation for a total exposure dose delivered at two dose rates. The genetic effect is expressed as the probability of induction of recessive mutations in the male germ cell, since dominant lethals have relatively limited clinical significance in this selected population. Two probabilities are given: (a), for high dose-rate exposure, 25 X 10^{-8}/R/gene; (b), for low dose-rate exposure, 5 X 10^{-6}/R/gene. Although these data were obtained from mice, man is expected to respond similarly. If he has 10^4 genes per germ cell, then the probability of occurrence of a new recessive mutation is that shown in the figure. Additional information on mutation rate estimates is presented in table 9-13. Again, these estimates are derived from data obtained from the mouse and extrapolated to the human.
Figure 9-26. Life-shortening effect for low and high intensity radiation. (Langham, 1967)

Figure 9-27. Probability of induction of recessive mutations in the male germ cell for different radiation exposures. (Russell et al., 1958)
### Table 9-13
Mutation Rate Estimates for Males
(Derived from the Mouse)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mutation Type</th>
<th>Germ Cell Stage</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mature</td>
<td>Immature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. High dose rate (&gt;25R/min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethal</td>
<td>$1 \times 10^{-3}/R/gamete$</td>
<td>$1 \times 10^{-4}/R/gamete$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visible</td>
<td>$5 \times 10^{-7}/R/locus^*$</td>
<td>$25 \times 10^{-8}/R/locus^*$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethal</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1 \times 10^{-4}/R/gamete$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Low dose rate (&lt;1 R/min)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visible</td>
<td>No applicable</td>
<td>$5 \times 10^{-8}/R/locus^*$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethal</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>$2 \times 10^{-5}/R/gamete$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Based upon 7 selected recessive visible mutant loci. The range of induced mutations is estimated to be on the order of $6 - 40 \times 10^{-9}$/gamete/R.
(Adapted by Grahn from available data)
References


Foelsche, T., Mendell, R., Adams, R. R., & Wilson, J. W. Measured and calculated radiation levels produced by galactic and solar cosmic rays in SST altitudes and precaution measures to minimize implications at commercial SST operations. RIF-FAUSST 7.3.3.02. NASA Langley Research Center, Hampton, Virginia, 1969.


Ionizing Radiation


Rapid advances in the United States manned spacecraft programs have emphasized the importance of careful environmental control of space cabin atmospheres. The need for control applies not only to the concentrations of breathing gases at various cabin pressures but also to the levels of contaminants present in the environment. A unique aspect of toxicology has been developed in an attempt to provide the information necessary for the establishment of safe levels of space cabin contaminants.

Both facilities and techniques have been developed in recent years to explore the toxicological problems of space flight under simulated flight conditions, with the exception of weightlessness. These research programs are designed to establish safe limits for environmental contaminants under continuous exposure conditions of space flight and to define emergency tolerance limits for accidental situations. The information derived from these programs unfortunately lags behind the general advances of the space program and consequently many atmospheric limits have had to be established by committee action to provide engineering guidelines. The selection of limits by any committee is based on available toxicological information for each material considered. This information, frequently sparse, has been based on acute exposures of short duration or, at best, chronic daily exposures simulating industrial working conditions. The circumstance of the immediate need for contaminant limits for non-comparable conditions frequently causes selection of limits having extremely large safety factors for use until better information can be obtained. Provisional limits for a number of space cabin contaminants, with such safety factors, have been established for 90 and 1000 day continuous exposures by the Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968).

A discussion of the terminology of the units of contaminant concentration is in order since the conventional units of parts per million (ppm) is applicable.
only at the normal atmospheric pressure of 760 mm Hg experienced here on Earth. NASA has chosen to define contaminant concentrations as millimoles per 25 cubic meters (m mole/25M 3) since the number before the unit is essentially the same as for ppm, which is based on standard temperature and pressure conditions. In addition to other reasons, the use of molarity permits direct interpretation of the standards in the light of available biochemical knowledge. Other groups have selected the unit of milligrams per cubic meter (mg/M 3) which expresses the concentration in terms of volume regardless of absolute pressure. The latter term also is comparable with units in use by toxicologists for setting industrial threshold limits on contaminants. The experimental data presented in this chapter are given with units of ppm or mg/M 3 wherever applicable since these are the terms used in the research cited.

**Oxygen Toxicity and The Effects of Variations In Oxygen Partial Pressure on Toxicity**

The advent of manned space flight brought about a need for information concerning the physiological and toxicological response of animals and humans to prolonged exposure in enriched oxygen environments at reduced pressure. While considerable information had been obtained concerning the toxicity of oxygen at atmospheric pressure by Bert (1878), Bean (1933), Comroe and Dripps (1945), Ohlsson (1947), and Weir et al. (1965) and at hyperbaric pressures by Bean (1945) and Smith et al. (1932), little was known concerning the toxic response of man or other species to oxygen under hypobaric conditions.

Herlocher et al. (1964) measured the physiological response of men exposed to essentially pure oxygen at 258 mm Hg pressure (5 psia) for a 30-day period. Their clinical observations indicated that no significant changes occurred which were not associated with the prolonged confinement of these men. Robertson et al. (1964) described respiratory studies conducted on the human subjects used in the experiment reported by Herlocher. The most significant result of this study was that vital capacities decreased on depressurization to 250 mm Hg. The entire gas supply to the chamber was essentially pure oxygen, which resulted in an alveolar pO2 of 177 mm Hg as opposed to the normal alveolar pO2 of 100 mm Hg cited by Dittmer and Grebe (1958). These investigators found that the vital capacity of the individual test subjects returned to normal immediately upon repressurization to ambient atmospheric conditions.

Since hematopoietic decreases at increased partial pressures of alveolar oxygen tension had been previously reported (Helvey et al., 1963, Mammen et al., 1963, and Morgan et al., 1963), Zalusky et al. (1964) studied the hematopoietic parameters of the subjects included in the study reported by Herlocher et al. (1964). These investigators found that no significant decreases occurred during a 30-day exposure period with the exception of a slight change in hematocrit values.

Continuous exposure studies on animals conducted in reduced pressure chambers at Wright-Patterson Air Force Base showed increased mortality in rats
exposed to 100 percent oxygen at 5 psia pressure. McNerney and MacEwen (1965) reported that the rodent mortality was uniform in all chambers whether a contaminant was present or not. Ambient air control rats did not exhibit a similar mortality pattern. Subsequent experiments conducted by MacEwen and Haun (1966) determined that this was a strain-specific effect of the Wistar rats used and was not related to reduced pressure–enriched oxygen environments. The more important finding of those studies was the clearer understanding of oxygen toxicity at near ambient pressures. The mortality observed at various absolute oxygen pressures is illustrated in figure 10-1. While dogs and mice exhibit essentially a similar pattern of oxygen toxicity response, the albino rat is shown to be much less susceptible to oxygen toxicity than any of the other three species tested, as had been reported earlier by Smith et al. (1932) and by Boycott and Oakley (1932). Rhesus monkeys were not as consistent as the other species in their mortality response but no mortality was seen at total oxygen pressures below 600 mm Hg.

Kistler et al. (1967) described the pathological picture of oxygen toxicity at 760 mm Hg pO$_2$ to be one of pulmonary edema with resolution of the edema resulting in morphometric changes in the air-blood barrier. Death appears to result from the acute pulmonary edema formed. Dickerson (1964) and Kydd (1967) have shown that the lowest oxygen pressure that will produce acute pulmonary edema in the rat is about 650 mm Hg although rats surviving a 30-day exposure to oxygen at 516 mm Hg pressure were found to have thickening of the walls of small blood vessels of the lungs associated with pulmonary hypertension. Kydd (1968) showed that preexposure of rats to 518 mm Hg total oxygen pressure decreased the mortality expected at

Figure 10–1. Oxygen toxicity mortality at varying absolute near-ambient pressures in experimental animals.
760 mm Hg pO₂. He postulated that this protective effect was due to development of maximal lymphatic drainage of lung fluids formed at the lower pressure so that drainage was still in excess of fluid formation even at 760 mm Hg pO₂.

Continuous long-term exposures of four animal species to 100 percent oxygen at 5 psia pressure was reported by Kaplan et al. (1968). This exposure of dogs, monkeys, mice, and rats, conducted for 8 months, produced no evidence of systemic oxygen toxicity. Electron microscopy showed changes in the lungs of these dogs and rats that could be related to the oxygen exposure as reported by Lewerenz et al. (1967). The change seen was minimal in nature and could not be associated with any apparent pulmonary functional deficit.

A similar study of continuous exposure of the same animal species to a mixture of 68 percent oxygen and 32 percent nitrogen at 5 psia was described by Fairchild (1967). In these studies, verified by a second 8 month continuous exposure to the same conditions one year later, the only significant and repeatable finding was the depression of growth of male rats in the test environment. The prolonged breathing of pure oxygen at near ambient or hyperbaric pressure has been shown to produce pathologic changes, such as pulmonary edema, and death. However, none of the controlled laboratory experiments with animals or humans breathing pure oxygen at reduced pressures (pO₂ less than 400 mm Hg) has shown any harmful effect.

**Effects of Oxygen on the Toxicity of Ozone and Nitrogen Dioxide**

The effect of variation in oxygen partial pressure upon the acute toxicity of inhaled ozone and nitrogen dioxide has been reported by MacEwen (1966). One-hundred percent oxygen at 258 mm Hg was shown to be protective against the acute effects of ozone exposure. Table 10-1 shows the results of a series of experiments in which animals were exposed continuously to 8.0 mg/M³ ozone for a 14-day period. Increased partial pressure of oxygen resulted in reduced mortality among mice, rats, dogs and monkeys. Differences were also observed in the lung weight to body weight ratios, shown in Table 10-2 for the various test environments. The intermediate pO₂ of the mixed gas environment resulted in the highest weight ratio while exposure of monkeys at near ambient pressure resulted in an essentially normal pattern.

These studies demonstrated differences in time of onset and severity of toxic responses in animals to O₃ and NO₂. While a beneficial protective effect of increased O₂ partial pressure against O₃ toxicity was shown, it was only demonstrated up to a pO₂ of 260 mm Hg. Higher O₂ concentrations may not be protective, as shown by Mittler (1958), and in fact, may be synergistic in action.

A protective action of O₂ against NO₂ toxicity was not clearly shown, although increasing pO₂ to 260 mm Hg appeared to prolong the life of animals exposed to lethal concentrations. There was, however, a reduction of mortality response in both mixed gas and 100 percent O₂ reduced pressure (5 psia) environments compared to ambient pressure conditions.
Table 10-1
Mortality Produced During 14-Day Continuous Exposure
to Ozone – 8.0 mg/M³

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure Conditions</th>
<th>Total pressure (mm Hg)</th>
<th>pO₂ (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Gas supply</th>
<th>Total pressure (mm Hg)</th>
<th>pO₂ (mm Hg)</th>
<th>Gas supply</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>700</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>Air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>260</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>68% O₂ 32% N₂</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>68% O₂ 32% N₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>260</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>100% O₂ 32% N₂</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>100% O₂ 32% N₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>720</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>36% O₂ 64% N₂</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>36% O₂ 64% N₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>260</td>
<td>36% O₂ 64% N₂</td>
<td></td>
<td>260</td>
<td>36% O₂ 64% N₂</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Species (No. deaths/No. Controls)

- **Mice**: 33/40, 32/40, 33/40, —, 16/40
- **Rats**: 50/50, 45/50, 45/50, —, 15/50
- **Guinea pigs**: 8/8, 9/9, 8/8, —, —
- **Dogs**: 5/5, 6/8, 2/8, 0/8, 2/8
- **Monkeys**: 2/4, 1/4, 0/4, 0/4, 0/9

Toxicity of Fuels and Oxidizers

One criterion for the selection of compounds as suitable propellant fuels and oxidizers is that their combustion exhaust gases consist of low molecular weight species since the specific impulse (thrust/unit mass of fuel) is an inverse function of that molecular weight. Therefore compounds selected as fuels must be highly reactive materials containing elements of low atomic weight. Usually the more reactive fuels and oxidizers are more reactive with one another than they are with biological materials. This high reactivity generally results in a high order of toxicity in the more useful fuels and oxidizers.

**Hydrazines**

Hydrazine and its methylated derivatives meet the criteria for propellant fuels and are used as such. The Titan II rocket uses a mixture of hydrazine and unsymmetrical dimethylhydrazine (UDMH) as a fuel while both the Gemini and Apollo space vehicles use monomethylhydrazine (MMH) in their attitude control systems.

A comprehensive review of research on the pharmacology and toxicology of propellant hydrazines by Clark et al. (1968) reports 273 studies on these compounds. Further studies on MMH toxicity have been reported by Haun et al. (1968) and MacEwen and Vernot (1970).

The acute toxicity of all the propellant hydrazines manifests itself on the central nervous system resulting in convulsions and death. Death usually occurs during or immediately following a severe convulsive seizure. The principal difference between these compounds in their acute effects is the dose required...
Table 10-2
Effect of Ozone on Lung Weight to Body Weight Ratio
for a 14-Day Continuous Exposure
(Chamber Concentration = 8.0 mg/M³)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure Conditions</th>
<th>Unexposed Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total pressure (mm Hg)</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pO_2$ (mm Hg)</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas supply</td>
<td>Air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32% $N_2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lung Weight/Body Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beagle dogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males (4) test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females (4) test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males (2) test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females (2) test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males (25) test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females (25) test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to initiate the convulsive action. Jacobson et al. (1955) reported the relative order of toxicity for hydrazine and its methylated derivatives as shown in Table 10-3. Similar data were reported by Weir et al. (1964). MMH is approximately twice as toxic as UDMH and symmetrical dimethylhydrazine (SDMH) and is at least five times more toxic than hydrazine. In general, there is a species gradient for the acute toxicity of the propellant hydrazines with rats and monkeys least susceptible and mice and dogs most susceptible. Since susceptibility of the various species to these compounds does not show a consistent pattern based on progression in size, it is impossible to predict where man falls in this order. Therefore, any use of such toxicity data in establishing safety standards must utilize the results of the most susceptible species.

Table 10-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>LC50</th>
<th>19/20 Confidence Limits</th>
<th>Slope</th>
<th>S.E. of Slope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Species</td>
<td>(ppm)</td>
<td>(mg/M3)</td>
<td>(ppm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrazine</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>570</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>504 - 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>-* - 305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylhydrazine</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>71 - 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>50 - 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uns-Dimethylhydrazine</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>618</td>
<td>219 - 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>423</td>
<td>150 - 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-Dimethylhydrazine</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>280-400**</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lower limit is not calculable from the data.
**Rough estimate.
(Jacobson et al., 1955)

Subacute exposures to monomethylhydrazine have been shown to produce decreased performance in trained primates at subconvulsive doses by Reynolds and Back (1966). Similar changes in the learned performance of cats have also been reported by Sterman et al. (1968). Reynolds and others (1963, 1964) reported changes in primate learned behavior and discrete avoidance tasks. Kidney damage has been reported from hydrazine exposure by Weatherby and Yard (1955) and by Krop (1954). MMH-induced kidney damage was described by Pinkerton et al. (1967), George et al. (1968), and Sopher et al. (1968). A decrease in renal blood flow resulting from hydrazine exposure was also described by Coe and Korty (1967).
Acute effects and death from severe propellant hydrazine exposures may be prevented by rapid therapeutic treatment using barbiturates or barbiturates in combination as suggested by Azar et al. (1970). Phenobarbital or other barbiturate preparations will suppress the convulsant seizures and provide protection through the acute intoxication phase until the propellant hydrazine has metabolized. It has been shown that pyridoxine, a form of vitamin B, will prevent fatty liver changes from hydrazine. A method of pyridoxine treatment has been recommended by Back et al. (1963).

The chronic effects of UDMH exposure have been reported by Rinehart et al. (1960). They exposed three dogs daily to a 5 ppm UDMH concentration for a 6-month period. The exposed dogs were lethargic throughout the exposure period and exhibited a mild hemolytic anemia (approximately a 15 percent depression of hematologic values) which persisted. A similar 3-month exposure of dogs to 25 ppm UDMH resulted in a more profound hemolytic anemia with one death. The 6-month exposure of the dogs to 5 ppm UDMH is the basis for the current threshold limit value (TLV) of 0.5 ppm used for occupational health conservation as cited in the Documentation of the Threshold Limit Values (1971).

A recent 6-month chronic toxicity study on MMH (TLV of 0.02 ppm) was reported by MacEwen and Vernot (1970). This study exposed dogs, rats, mice, and monkeys to 5 ppm and 2 ppm concentrations on a 6 hour/day, 5 day/week basis. Definite dose-related responses were shown in mice with 29 percent mortality at 5 ppm and 17 percent at 2 ppm. Similar dose-related effects were seen in rats with significant depression of growth rate and increased liver and kidney organ-to-body weight ratios. Both dogs and monkeys exhibited methemoglobinemia and Heinz body formation. A moderate hemolytic anemia was seen in dogs (approximately 15 percent depression of hematologic values) and increased red blood cell fragility. Only a marginal hemolytic response was seen in monkeys. The response seen in these chronic exposures of dogs to MMH was almost identical with that seen by Rinehart with UDMH. Most important, a no-effect level was not achieved, which suggests that further consideration should be given to the safety margin of the industrial TLV values.

**Propellant Oxidizers**

The oxidizers of most interest in propellant reactions that have been used or have a high potential for use are oxygen, fluorine, nitrogen trifluoride (NF3), chlorine trifluoride (CIF3), chlorine pentafluoride (CIF5), oxygen difluoride (OF2) and the dimer of nitrogen dioxide, nitrogen tetroxide (N2O4). Since oxygen toxicity is primarily a function of O2 partial pressure (and total pressure) creating biological damage only when either too high or low, it will not be discussed further.

**Fluorine.** Fluorine and FLOX (a mixture of fluorine and oxygen) have been used as oxidizers for rocket fuels. The acute toxicity of fluorine in animals has been described by Stokinger (1949), Eriksen (1945), and Keplinger and Suissa (1968). Human experience with this compound has been reported by Macle and Evans (1940). Lyon (1962), Rickey (1959), Belles (1963) and Keplinger
The signs of fluorine toxicity below lethal concentrations are irritation of the eyes, nose and lungs. According to Keplinger, this effect begins at an air concentration of approximately 25 ppm F₂. When lethal exposure occurs, the degree of irritation is increased with coughing, wheezing, and severe lacrimation. Death usually occurs within 12 to 18 hours after severe exposure from pulmonary congestion. Experimentally, animals that survived any exposure level for 48 hours went on to recovery.

Repetitive animal exposures to fluorine at sublethal levels have produced increased fluoride content of the long bones in all species tested. Thus the signs associated with chronic fluorosis may be expected to occur if toxic levels of fluoride are built up and released systemically. The industrial TLV is based on this effect.

**Oxygen Difluoride.** An important member of the family of fluorine containing gaseous oxidizers is OF₂ which has been reported to be a severe pulmonary irritant. Rodent exposures to as little as 10 ppm for 10 minutes have been shown by LaBelle (1945) and Lester and Adams (1965) to cause death. Death results from asphyxiation subsequent to severe pulmonary edema and hemorrhage. The odor of OF₂ resembles garlic and is perceptible somewhere between 0.1 and 0.5 ppm. Since a TLV for this gas has been established at 0.5 ppm, its odor is thought to be a safe warning property. There have been reports of OF₂ exposure of research chemists at three different industrial plants. All of these people were sufficiently aware of the hazard of breathing OF₂ and, when its odor was noticed, they immediately left the exposure area. Each of the men exposed to OF₂ complained of soreness of the chest which disappeared within 3 days with no further effects. Their estimated exposure levels were below 10 ppm in each case.

A human exposure to OF₂ was investigated by MacEwen and Vernot (1969) who concluded that the man had been briefly subjected to an air concentration of approximately 1000 ppm. His survival and complete recovery after several days of severe respiratory distress were inconsistent with the toxicity data derived from rodent inhalation exposures. Therefore, more comprehensive studies on OF₂ toxicity were undertaken. These studies reported by MacEwen and Vernot (1970) showed that dogs and monkeys were less sensitive to the effects of OF₂ by a factor of 10, having a 1-hour L₅₀* value of 26 ppm as compared with approximately 2 ppm for rats and mice. If this difference in toxicity levels is related to the difference in size, then it would help to explain the survival of the man exposed to 1000 ppm OF₂.

Chronic exposures of rodents to 0.1 ppm OF₂ for 5 weeks were conducted by LaBelle (1945) with no measurable effect.

**Chlorine Trifluoride.** Chlorine trifluoride (ClF₃) is a highly reactive compound with strong oxidizing properties approaching that of fluorine itself. This compound, characterized by Grisard et al. (1951), has been successfully used as a fluorinating agent in numerous reactions which customarily require elemental fluorine.

*Lethal concentration which kills 50 percent of animals by inhalation route.*
One of the earliest studies on the toxicity of CIF$_3$ was made by Horn and Weir (1955). Chronic inhalation studies were made on dogs and rats exposed to sublethal concentrations of the gas for periods up to 6 months. Acute effects of CIF$_3$ on rodents have been reported by Dost et al. (1968). The reactivity of CIF$_3$ is such that it is highly unlikely that it reaches the lung of exposed subjects unchanged. One of the major breakdown products of this chemical compound in air is hydrogen fluoride (HF), and their biological effects are identical. CIF$_3$ is very irritating to the eyes and nose and, in animals, has been shown to produce pulmonary edema, hemorrhages, and emphysema, frequently leading to death. Experiments reported by MacEwen and Vernot (1970) showed essentially no difference in response between animal species and a reasonable correlation between LC$_{50}$ levels for HF and CIF$_3$ on an equimolar fluorine basis. It is reasonable, then, that the health and safety limits for CIF$_3$ are one third those of HF.

**Nitrogen Trifluoride.** The acute toxicity of nitrogen trifluoride (NF$_3$) has been shown by Ruff (1931), Torkelson et al. (1962), Dost et al. (1968), and Vernot and Haun (1969) to be due to massive formation of methemoglobin, with death ensuing from the resulting anemia. Death seldom occurs unless the methemoglobin level exceeds 75 percent, beyond which the oxygen carrying capacity of the blood is reduced below that required to supply the needs of body tissues, particularly the brain. Animal experiments conducted by Vernot and Haun showed that survivors of near-lethal exposures (50 to 75 percent methemoglobin formed) have a Heinz body type of hemolytic anemia with destruction of approximately 35 percent of the red blood cells (RBC). In healthy animals the RBC loss stimulates reticulocyte activity and new cells begin forming. The time of lowest RBC values occurs about 10 days after exposure, and full recovery to normal RBC levels requires approximately 40 days. There is little species variation in response to NF$_3$ exposure, as shown in table 10-4, with the exception of the dog which is more susceptible to Heinz body anemia regardless of etiology than the others.

**Table 10-4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time (min)</th>
<th>Rats</th>
<th>Mice</th>
<th>Dogs</th>
<th>Monkeys</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>26700</td>
<td>19300</td>
<td>38800</td>
<td>24000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>11700</td>
<td>12300</td>
<td>20200</td>
<td>14100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>6700</td>
<td>7500</td>
<td>9600</td>
<td>9200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From a toxic hazard point of view, NF$_3$ is probably the safest of the fluorinated oxidizers and would be the chemical of choice if other factors, such as specific impulse, were equal.

**Chlorine Pentafluoride.** There is very little known about the biological action of chlorine pentafluoride (CIF$_5$). Dost and his associates (1969) have studied its effects on plants and fish and report it to be chemically less reactive...
with air and water vapor than CIF₃. It is also slightly less toxic than CIF₃ to plants, microorganisms, and fish. The only animal exposure data available, reported by Weinberg and Goldhamer (1967), is limited both in the variety of species tested and in the scope of inhalation toxicity studied. From the data available, it may be estimated that CIF₅ is slightly more toxic to animals than CIF₃. Necropsy results were similar to those seen from most strong oxidizing chemicals, marked pulmonary edema and hemorrhage with congestive changes in other visceral organs. During the subacute exposure of rats to 100 ppm CIF₅ for 15 minutes per day for 6 days, respiratory enzyme activity (glutamic oxalacetic transaminase) was absent in the lungs, but all other criteria of physiological status were normal. Ten-minute exposures to CIF₅ of 400 ppm concentration produced 100 percent mortality, while 200 ppm produced only a partial lethal response in rats.

**Nitrogen Tetroxide.** Nitrogen tetroxide is an equilibrium mixture of nitrogen tetroxide (N₂O₄) and nitrogen dioxide (NO₂). This equilibrium shifts toward NO₂ at lower pressure and increased temperature, and NO₂ is, therefore, the more common form to which man is exposed. Health and safety limits for N₂O₄ are one-half what they are for NO₂ since the dimer form is exactly twice as reactive with biological materials. Nitrogen dioxide can be identified by its distinct odor in concentrations as low as 5 ppm, its current threshold limit value. It is mildly irritating to the eyes, nose, and upper respiratory mucosa at concentrations of 10 to 20 ppm, and, unfortunately, higher concentrations cannot be distinguished since no further irritation is experienced until significant pulmonary injury has been produced.

Concentrations of NO₂ above 100 ppm will cause death after a relatively short exposure. Death results from asphyxia subsequent to massive pulmonary edema. Exposures to concentrations of NO₂ as low as 40 ppm for periods of 4 to 6 hours have produced death in all common experimental animal species.

NO₂ is probably the most dangerous to man of all irritant gases because it is so commonly found. Its release in industrial accidents has caused many deaths. As is often the case in accidental exposures to toxicants, the NO₂ concentrations producing death in man have never been quantitatively identified but have been estimated to be slightly in excess of 100 ppm. Experimental evidence of acute NO₂ toxicity in primates and other species suggests, however, that exposure to 50 ppm for 6 to 8 hours might be fatal to man. It is because of the increasing evidence that NO₂ acute toxicity effects may occur at such low atmospheric concentrations that the threshold limit value has been reduced several times since it was first established at 25 ppm, to the current 5 ppm level. A safety factor of 10 below the lethal dose level is relatively small, when one considers that the safety factors used for many other industrial chemicals or contaminants are greater than 10 below nonlethal effect levels. It should also be noted that persons with chronic respiratory disease—asthma, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema—are more adversely affected by NO₂ than are healthy individuals.

There are many conflicting reports regarding the effect of NO₂ on animals under conditions of either repeated or continuous exposure. Wagner et al. (1965) exposed six species of animals 6 hours per day, 5 days per week to three
concentrations of NO₂ (1, 5 and 25 ppm) for 18 months without producing any demonstrable morphologic changes or significant changes in any of the usual indices of normal physiological status. Grey et al. (1952), however, reported emphysema and pneumonitis in rats exposed 4 hours per day, 5 days per week for 6 weeks to 9 to 13 ppm NO₂.

The results of reported continuous NO₂ exposures are also conflicting. Freeman and Haydon (1964) exposed rats to 25 ppm of NO₂ for about 150 days and produced strikingly voluminous lungs, a 50 percent reduction in growth rate, and eventual death. At 12.5 ppm, these investigators reported an 11 percent mortality after 213 days which was associated with 20 percent decrement in growth and increased respiration rate in the survivors. Haydon et al. (1965) reported no mortality or evidence of pulmonary disease or abnormality in body or lung weight in rats exposed for 16 weeks to 4 ppm, although the rats sacrificed exhibited the early histopathologic changes associated with higher concentrations. Rats exposed for 90 weeks to 0.8 ppm showed only a slight increase in respiration rate. Freeman et al. (1968) reported continuous 3 ppm NO₂ exposures of rats for 2 years produced pulmonary changes. Terminal and bronchiolar epithelium was affected by a loss of exfoliative activity, loss of cilia, and the appearance of crystalloid cellular inclusion bodies. They believed that the morphologic evidence suggested a reduction of the pulmonary cleansing function of the lungs particularly in the peripheral regions.

Continuous exposure to 0.5 ppm NO₂ for 3 months or longer has been shown by Ehrlich and Henry (1968) to significantly increase the susceptibility of mice to airborne Klebsiella pneumoniae. Henry et al. (1969) also reported that a single 2 hour exposure of mice to 3.5 ppm NO₂ either before or after the inhalation of an aerosol of Klebsiella pneumoniae resulted in significantly increased mortality.

A significant epidemiologic study of the effects of exposure to NO₂ was reported by Shy et al. (1970a, b). They found an increased rate of respiratory illness in families and a reduced forced expiratory pulmonary volume in children exposed to an average NO₂ concentration ranging from 0.062 to 0.109 ppm.

Conversely, Steadman et al. (1966) exposed animals continuously to five concentrations of NO₂ ranging approximately from 0.5 ppm to 11.5 ppm for a period of 90 days. Although 20 to 50 percent mortality was seen in several species at the higher concentration, 0.5 and 5 ppm exposures produced no significant effect on any biological parameters measured (nor were any morphologic changes attributable to the NO₂ exposure seen). Similar 90 day continuous exposures of rats, mice, monkeys, and dogs to 5 ppm NO₂ were reported by MacEwen and Geckler (1968) in which only transient signs of stress were seen with no significant morphologic or biochemical changes.

Data from chronic human exposure are equally confusing. Patty (1963) reported that exposures of men to average NO₂ concentrations ranging from 10 to 20 ppm for 18 months produced no ill effects. Vigdortschik et al. (1937),
on the other hand, reported symptoms of NO₂ toxicity after 5 years of daily exposures at approximately 2.5 ppm. The symptoms included possible bronchitis and emphysema.

There are numerous other liquid propellant fuels and oxidizers that have either been used or seriously considered for use that are not discussed in this chapter. For the convenience of the users of this handbook, some of the physical and chemical properties of these compounds, along with toxicity data and safety limits, are listed in table 10-5, in increasing order of toxicity. Additional information on the properties and handling procedures for these propellant chemicals may be found in the report of the JANNAF Hazards Working Group (1970).

Table 10–5
Some Physical and Toxic Properties of Propellant Fuels and Oxidizers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Boiling Point (°C)</th>
<th>Vapor Pressure at 80°F (mm Hg, approx)</th>
<th>Rat 60 Min LC₅₀ (ppm)</th>
<th>Industrial TLV (ppm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen Trifluoride (NF₃)</td>
<td>-129</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6700</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrazine (N₂H₄)</td>
<td>113.5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2280</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Fluoride (HF)</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>985</td>
<td>1275</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1-Dimethylhydrazine (UDMH)</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>1410</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine Pentfluoride (ClF₅)</td>
<td>-13.1</td>
<td>3790</td>
<td>&lt;400</td>
<td>0.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine Trifluoride (ClF₃)</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>1375</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen Dioxide (N₂O₄)</td>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>1158</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monomethylhydrazine (MMH)</td>
<td>87.5</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorine (F₂)</td>
<td>-188</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diborane (B₂H₆)</td>
<td>-93</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>160**</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen Diffluoride (OF₂)</td>
<td>-145</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentaborane (B₅H₉)</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Proposed.
**Estimated from partial data.

Carbon Monoxide

This colorless and odorless gas is still the subject of scientific controversy, even though it was one of the earliest of the toxic gases to be recognized. The toxicity of carbon monoxide (CO) arises from its great affinity for hemoglobin (approximately 200 times greater than is the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen),
resulting in oxygen starvation of body tissues. The concentrations of CO that are dangerous to life are shown in figure 10-2. It is not the lethal effects that are the basis of the scientific controversy, however, but the level of CO which will produce impairment of human mental functions. It is generally believed that subjective symptoms of CO intoxication rarely occur below blood carboxyhemoglobin (COHb) levels of 20 percent, while acute signs of central nervous system embarrassment occur at COHb levels greater than 30 percent (Haldane, 1927).

![Figure 10-2. Effects of CO on man as a function of concentration and exposure time. Lightly shaded band shows region of milder effects; heavily shaded band, dangerous or lethal region. Solid lines indicate exposure limits set by military services for aircraft. The point marked at 0.005% CO (50 ppm) and 480 min is current TLV for 8-hr/day exposure in industry. (Department of Defense, 1958; Haldane, 1925; Henderson & Haggard, 1922; Sayers et al., 1922)](image)

Recently, a number of investigators have suggested that the central nervous system is impaired at COHb levels as low as 2 to 5 percent. MacFarland et al. (1944) demonstrated impairment of visual discrimination with COHb levels of 4 percent. Trouton and Eysenck (1961) reported decrement in limb coordination at the same COHb levels. Schulte (1963) reported consistent impairment in cognitive and psychomotor performance at COHb levels of
5 percent with beginning tendencies for disruption as low as 2 percent COHb, while Beard and Wertheim (1967) reported a decrement in auditory discrimination of tone signal duration at estimated COHb levels from 4 to 5 percent.

Contradictory findings have been reported by equally competent scientists. Clayton et al. (1960) found no association between COHb level and automobile accidents, although Rockwell and Ray (1967) reported a possible effect of CO exposure on estimation of distances between following automobiles in fatigued, CO-exposed drivers with COHb levels of 5 to 10 percent. Mikulka et al. (1969) reported no observable impairment on a battery of psychomotor performance tasks in young men with COHb levels up to 12 percent. These findings were confirmed by Flanks (1970). Stewart et al. (1970) found no untoward effects on central nervous system function in sedentary males at COHb levels below 15 percent, while exposures resulting in higher blood COHb levels caused delayed headaches, changes in visual evoked response, and impairment of manual coordination.

Current standards for emergency exposures to carbon monoxide are based on air concentrations which will not produce COHb levels greater than 15 percent. When sufficient data are accumulated to settle the controversy on the possible influence of lower COHb levels, these standards may be lowered. In order to clarify the relationship between CO atmospheric concentrations and COHb blood levels, blood saturation rate curves are shown in figure 10-3 for rest and light work. An increase in work effort decreases the time required to reach the equilibrium level. Both sets of equilibrium curves originate from 0.5 percent COHb, which is about the normal level resulting from catabolism. An increase in CO concentration will produce a corresponding increase in COHb to a new equilibrium value that is not additive with the previous level.

Prolonged exposures of experimental animals to CO have shown that environmental adaptation occurs. Back and Dominguez (1968) and Back (1969) reported a series of experiments in which monkeys were continuously exposed to CO for periods up to 105 days to CO concentrations of 50, 200, and 400 ppm. No detectable effect on learned performance was seen in reaction time to visual and auditory signals or in work output of the monkeys. The failure of CO to impair these functions in monkeys having COHb levels up to 33 percent was thought to be due to a concomitant increase in red blood cells and total hemoglobin, which was shown by Vernot et al. (1970) to occur in other species as well. The increase of total hemoglobin resulted in sufficient oxygen delivery to tissues to prevent cellular hypoxia.

While sudden exposures to high atmospheric concentrations of CO may cause impairment of human ability to perform tasks critical for survival, it is believed that the slow buildup of CO concentration in a closed environment, such as a spacecraft, while not desirable, will cause an adaptive increase in hemoglobin and red blood cells that will permit normal functioning at elevated COHb levels and, more important, survival.
Experimental data for establishing spacecraft continuous exposure limit values are extremely limited. The continuous exposure of animals to contaminants is a difficult and expensive task and therefore has been done only with a few materials. The needs and problems associated with this type of research has been described by Back et al. (1962) and Thomas (1968). The first reports of results of continuous prolonged exposures of animals to probable spacecraft contaminants were given by Sandage (1961a,b) and by House (1964). Additional studies have been reported by MacEwen and Geckler (1968) and by Jones et al. (1970).

As a beginning step in establishing spacecraft exposure limit values, the Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight of the Space Science Board-National Academy of Sciences proposed provisional limits for a few materials identified as spacecraft contaminants. The provisional long-term exposure limit values are shown in table 10-6. The panel decided that U.S. Navy submarine standards were suitable as guidelines for space mission limits for 90-day exposures but could not
be extrapolated for longer missions since interplanetary flight is not easily aborted, and return to Earth may take weeks or months. A list of chemical contaminant submarine TLV values is given in table 10-7. For simple aliphatic hydrocarbons not listed, the 90-day limit is 60 mg/m$^3$ and for simple aromatic hydrocarbons other than benzene, it is 10 mg/m$^3$. MacEwen and Geckler (1968) recommended 90-day spacecraft exposure limit values of 1 ppm for NO$_2$, 0.01 ppm for ozone and 0.5 ppm for carbon tetrachloride.

Table 10-6
Provisional Limits for Space Cabin Contaminants for 90 and 1000 Days

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air Contaminant</th>
<th>Air Limit in PPM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90 Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Butanol</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Butanone</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroform</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloromethane</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioxane</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl acetate</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formaldehyde</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Methylbutanone</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroethylene</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,2-Trichloro, 1,2,2-trifluoroethane &amp; related congeners</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Data from National Academy of Sciences, Space Science Board, 1968)

Emergency Exposure Limits (EEL)

Provisional emergency limits for spacecraft contaminants were established by the NAS Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight for five materials as shown in table 10-8. These limits are intended only as guidelines for a single exposure which does not reoccur during the flight.

Emergency exposure limits for use in fuel manufacturing, storage, and handling have been established by the NAS/NRC Committee on Toxicology for a number of chemicals including some propellant fuels and oxidizers. Some of these EEL values are shown in table 10-9. EEL values are intended only as guidelines for selection of engineering criteria for storage limitations. By definition, an EEL is a limit for an accidental exposure which would normally not be repeated in a lifetime. It is based on a contaminant dose which is not
expected to produce any irreversible physiologic changes and will permit the
conduct of emergency duties and escape from the environment. EEL’s are
closely related to specific circumstances of exposure and should not be used for
different conditions without first verifying their applicability. These values
should never be exceeded since they contain little or no safety factor.

Table 10–7
U.S. Navy Submarine Contaminant Concentration Limits
(ppm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 Hr</th>
<th>24 Hr</th>
<th>90 Day</th>
<th>ACGIH TLV*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acetone</td>
<td></td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetylene</td>
<td></td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonia</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Monoxide</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichlorodifluoromethane</td>
<td>30 000</td>
<td>20 000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1, 2, 2-Tetrafluoro-1,2-Dichloroethane</td>
<td>30 000</td>
<td>20 000</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td></td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Chloride</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Fluoride</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methane</td>
<td></td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Chloroform</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoethanolamine</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen Dioxide</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozone</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosgene</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur Dioxide</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1, 1-Trichloroethane</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylene</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists, 1966.

Spacecraft Contaminants

The appearance of contaminants in space cabins during flight is caused by
several factors, none of which can be completely eliminated. The factors are:
(1) outgassing of cabin construction materials under reduced pressure
conditions, (2) volatile metabolic waste products of the crew, (3) volatile
components of spilled food, and (4) leaks from the environmental or flight
control systems. Contaminants found in submarines differ only in the area of outgassing from construction materials but have additional sources due to the increased amount of operational machinery. Many of the contaminants found in manned spacecraft simulation tests were also found in some of the Mercury and Apollo space flights.

Table 10-8
Provisional Emergency Limits for Space Cabin Contaminants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air Contaminant</th>
<th>Air Limit for 60 Min</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ppm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Butanone</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonyl fluoride</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene glycol</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Methylbutanone</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1,2-Trichloro, 1,2,2-trifluoroethane and related congener</td>
<td>30 000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Data from National Academy of Sciences, Space Science Board, 1968)

A type of spacecraft contaminant which has received little notice consists of particulate pollutants which are not easily removed from the air under conditions of weightlessness. Although a spacecraft cabin is cleaned many times before use, some dust may remain in inaccessible places and become airborne by mechanical means during flight. Other sources of particulate contamination are foodstuffs, abraded flight uniforms, and powdering from painted surfaces. Particles have been seen by astronauts in flight but information is lacking on particle size and concentration. Particulate removal is accomplished to a limited degree in the filter section of the air handling system. Additional sources of particulate contamination in future space flights may be found when regenerative life support systems are placed in operational spacecraft.

A comprehensive list of contaminants found in space flight to date, in submarines, and in some of the simulated space flight tests conducted at the USAF School of Aerospace Medicine is given in table 10-10. This list also includes the contaminants found in Sealab II and in the McDonnell Douglas Corporation's 60-day manned test of a regenerative life-support system (1968). This list, although not complete, contains 88 contaminants that were common to many of the space flights and spacecraft simulator runs and are also found in cabin material off-gassing studies. Although the presence of these contaminants has been verified, little or no information is yet available about the concentrations present in the spacecraft. Until the contaminant concentrations can be assessed, no judgments can be made concerning the toxic hazard of a space cabin environment.
Table 10–9
Emergency Exposure Limits of the Committee on Toxicology NAS/NRC (ppm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>10 Min</th>
<th>30 Min</th>
<th>60 Min</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrolein</td>
<td>25 mg/M³</td>
<td>10 mg/M³</td>
<td>7 mg/M³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum fluoride</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
<td>25 ppm</td>
<td>15 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum oxide</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
<td>25 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonia (anhydrous)</td>
<td>500 ppm</td>
<td>300 ppm</td>
<td>300 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boron trifluoride</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>5 ppm</td>
<td>2 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromine pentafluoride</td>
<td>3 ppm</td>
<td>1.5 ppm</td>
<td>0.5 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon disulfide</td>
<td>200 ppm</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide (normal activity)</td>
<td>1500 ppm</td>
<td>800 ppm</td>
<td>400 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide (mental acuity)</td>
<td>1000 ppm</td>
<td>500 ppm</td>
<td>200 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine pentafluoride</td>
<td>3 ppm</td>
<td>1.5 ppm</td>
<td>0.5 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine trifluoride</td>
<td>7 ppm</td>
<td>3 ppm</td>
<td>1 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diborane</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>5 ppm</td>
<td>2 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,1-Dimethylhydrazine</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene oxide</td>
<td>650 ppm</td>
<td>400 ppm</td>
<td>250 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorine</td>
<td>15 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>5 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formaldehyde</td>
<td>- ppm</td>
<td>- ppm</td>
<td>3 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrazine</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen chloride</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen fluoride</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
<td>8 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen sulfide</td>
<td>200 ppm</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP-5</td>
<td>5 mg/l</td>
<td>5 mg/l</td>
<td>2.5 mg/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monomethylhydrazine (MMH)</td>
<td>90 ppm</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
<td>15 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen dioxide</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen trifluoride</td>
<td>- ppm</td>
<td>100 ppm</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen difluoride</td>
<td>0.5 ppm</td>
<td>0.2 ppm</td>
<td>0.1 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perchloryl fluoride</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur dioxide</td>
<td>30 ppm</td>
<td>20 ppm</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfuric acid</td>
<td>5 mg/M³</td>
<td>2 mg/M³</td>
<td>1 mg/M³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tellurium hexafluoride</td>
<td>1 ppm</td>
<td>0.4 ppm</td>
<td>0.2 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1, 2-Trichloro-1, 2, 2-trifluoroethane (Refrigerant 113)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1500 ppm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 10-10
Contaminants Found in Confined Spaces During Actual or Simulated Space Flights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contaminant</th>
<th>Sources*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetaldehyde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetic Acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetylene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl Alcohol</td>
<td>x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amyl Acetate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,3 Butadiene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Butane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Butanone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-Butene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Butene cis, trans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Butyl Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso-Butyl Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso-Butylene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butyraldehyde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Disulfide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Monoxide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorobenzene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorofluoroethylene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroform</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloromethane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclohexane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopentane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,2, Dichloroethane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,2, Dimethylbutane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,3, Dimethylbutane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioxene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethanene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethanethiol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl Acetate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freon 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freon 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freon 113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freon 114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Heptane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Hexane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl benzene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl Ether</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See notes at end of table.
Table 10–10 (Continued)
Contaminants Found in Confined Spaces
During Actual or Simulated Space Flights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contaminant</th>
<th>Source*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ethyl Formate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Ethyl Toluene</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formaldehyde</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freon 11</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Fluoride</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen Sulfide</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoprene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isopentane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methane</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Alcohol</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Methylbutanone-3</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Chloride</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Chloroform</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Cyclopentane</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylene Chloride</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Cyclohexane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Ethyl Benzene</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Ethyl Ketone</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Isobutyl Ketone</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanethiol</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or 3-Methyl Pentane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylsiloxane Polymers</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl Thiophene</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen Oxides</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentfluorothane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentane</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso-Pentane</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso-Pentene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perchloroethylene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propionic Acid</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Propyl Alcohol</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso-Propyl Alcohol</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propylene</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur Dioxide</td>
<td>x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1, 1-Trichloroethane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See notes at end of table.
Table 10-10 (Continued)

Contaminants Found in Confined Spaces During Actual or Simulated Space Flights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contaminant</th>
<th>Source*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroethylene</td>
<td>x x x x x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethyl Pentane</td>
<td>x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinyl Chloride</td>
<td>x x x x x x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylene</td>
<td>x x x x x x x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Data originally reported in publication of the National Academy of Sciences' Space Science Board (1968) from the following sources:

SOURCE LIST

2. Apollo GT-3: Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968)
3. Apollo GT-4: Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968)
5. Apollo GT-7: Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968)
6. Apollo GT-10: Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968)
7. Apollo GT-12: Panel on Air Standards for Manned Space Flight (1968)
8. SAM-I: Conkle et al. (1967)
9. SAM-II: Conkle (1966)
10. SAM-III: Adams et al. (1966)
11. MESA I: Saunders (1967A), Cotton et al. (1966)
12. MESA II: Cotton et al. (1966)
15. Submarines: Naval Research Lab Reports
16. SeaLab II: Saunders (1967B)

Another possible source of future contaminant generation may be the thermal reaction products formed by small electrical fires or contaminant removal systems. One such material was identified in a manned life support test (MESA I) when 1, 2-dichloroacetylene was found to result from the reaction of trichloroethylene with lithium hydroxide. The lithium hydroxide is used as a scrubber for removal of metabolically produced CO₂. The production of dichloroacetylene caused the experiment to be stopped with resulting loss of time and money. This contaminant has caused other expensive delays (Saunders & Williams, 1969) and the circumstances causing its formation should not be allowed to recur. Specifically, *trichloroethylene should not be introduced into a spacecraft in any form at any time.*

Outgassing studies have been conducted on a large number of spacecraft construction materials to identify possible contaminants. Animal experiments also have been conducted to screen the candidate space cabin materials used in
the Apollo series. Results of the screening studies made under reduced pressure—100 percent oxygen conditions have shown the outgassed contaminants of most cabin materials to be nontoxic under the test condition used, as reported by Culver (1966) and Haun (1967). Of several hundred tested, one material proved to be toxic when heated. Carboxynitroso rubber, which was selected as a candidate spacecraft material because it was nonflammable, was found to decompose at 300°C and to form highly toxic decomposition products. MacEwen (1968) estimated that the decomposition of 15 grams of carboxynitroso rubber in an Apollo space cabin would be fatal if inhaled for 2 minutes.

Water Quality Standards for Space Missions

Standards for the quality of potable water aboard spacecraft are as important as those for air quality. The amount of water needed for drinking and personal hygiene is sufficiently great on extended space missions to make storage prohibitive. Therefore, water used by the crew for personal or cabin hygiene and body waste water and water produced by spacecraft equipment must be collected, treated, and reused.

Water quality standards need not be as stringent as those used for municipal water supplies since the latter are established to protect a broad population, including young and old, and sick and healthy, for a lifetime, not just a limited period. However, whereas it is true that spacecraft water will not be contaminated by soil leachates and industrial pollution, it may contain concentrated impurities (because of recycling) released by the water treatment system and the crew itself.

The requirements for spacecraft water quality standards are based on aesthetic or physical criteria, trace chemical content, and microbiological impurities. From the crew viewpoint, the aesthetic criteria may be most important since unpleasant odors or taste may discourage normal use of the water which may in turn cause adverse effects on health. The aesthetic standards recommended by the National Academy of Sciences' Space Science Board (1967) are listed in table 10-11. Chemical standards are listed in table 10-12.

Table 10–11
Spacecraft Water Quality Standards for Physical Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quality</th>
<th>Spacecraft Limit</th>
<th>Municipal Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turbidity (Jackson units)</td>
<td>Not to exceed 10</td>
<td>Not to exceed 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (platinum—cobalt units)</td>
<td>Not to exceed 15</td>
<td>Not to exceed 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taste</td>
<td>None objectionable</td>
<td>Odor No. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odor</td>
<td>None objectionable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foaming</td>
<td>None persistent more than 15 sec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(National Academy of Sciences, Space Science Board, 1967; Public Health Service, 1962)
Recirculation or reuse of bodily and hygienic waste waters requires consideration of biological contamination. The nature of a water reclamation system is such that microbiological organisms of body of air origin may find many suitable physical and nutritional support sources. Although the biological forms of bacteria, molds, fungi, and viruses would be limited to those with which the bodies of the crewmembers are familiar, there is ample opportunity for overgrowth which may overwhelm the normal tolerance to small numbers of these organisms. Furthermore, biological growths in the water system may add byproduct toxins or unwanted taste and odor. The recommended standard of the National Academy of Sciences' Space Science Board (1967) is stated as follows:

Because of the diverse natures and modes of hazard of possible biological contaminants in water-recuperation systems for space use, the Panel found no justification for the establishment of standards based on individual types of microorganisms. It was considered that the goal should be essential sterility and that total counts of aerobic, facultative and anaerobic organisms would be the best indications of attainment of this condition. A maximum of 10 viable microorganisms per milliliter was considered to be a realistic criterion for "essential sterility."

Table 10–12
Spacecraft Water Quality Standards for Chemical Content
(mg/l)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Spacecraft Limit</th>
<th>PHS (Upper Limit)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barium</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boron</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical Oxygen Demand</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dichromate method)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride</td>
<td>450.00</td>
<td>250.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium (hexavalent)</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoride</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrate and nitrite (as nitrogen)</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfate</td>
<td>250.00</td>
<td>250.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total solids</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(National Academy of Sciences, Space Science Board, 1967; Public Health Service, 1962)
It was considered essential, moreover, that this criterion of
essential sterility be applied to all parts of the recovery system
beyond the initial phase separation step and not simply to the
finished product water.

The Panel felt strongly that some positive form of sterilization
was needed at some point in the recovery-storage-delivery system
immediately after phase separation. In addition, it was felt that there
should be provision for periodic heat treatment of the subsequent
portions of the system to forestall hazards of possible bacterial or
fungal growth.

It will be difficult to monitor the quality of the drinking water under actual
space flight conditions. Therefore, any water reclamation system should be
thoroughly use-tested in simulator runs to establish that it meets required
chemical, biological, and physical standards. Some sampling may be feasible
during flight but could by necessity be limited to simple indicator tests of single
ions and simple biological cultures on multipurpose media. Research from the
Apollo program has produced rapid techniques for identifying the presence of
living forms through the reaction of their ATP content with the “fire fly”
enzymes to give a visible signal. This test will not distinguish pathogenic
organisms from nonpathogens but would be applicable to the Space Sciences
Board’s recommendation of 10 microorganisms per milliliter without regard to
their identity or pathogenicity.

References
Adams, J. D., Conkle, J. P., Mabson, W. E., Watson, J. T., Wolf, P. H., & Welch, B. E. Study
of man during a 56-day exposure to an oxygen-helium atmosphere at 258 mm Hg total
pressure. II., Major and minor atmospheric components. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1966, 37,
555.

American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists. *Documentation of the

Azar, A., Thomas, A. A., & Shillito, F. H., Pyridoxine and Phenobarbital as treatment for

the 5th Annual Conference on Atmospheric Contamination in Confined Spaces,
AMRL-TR-69-130, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB,
Ohio, 1969.

Back, K. C., Sandage, C., & Thomas, A. A. Development of space cabin tolerance criteria to


Back, K. C., & Dominguez, A. M., Psychopharmacology of carbon monoxide under ambient
and altitude conditions. AMRL-TR-68-175, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory,
Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1968.


Bean, J. W. Hypophyseal and adrenocortical factors in pulmonary damage induced by

Belles, F. *Fluorine handbook*. Lewis Research Center, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Cleveland, Ohio, 1965.


Dickerson, K. H. Pathophysiology of pulmonic toxicity in rats exposed to 100 percent oxygen at reduced pressures. NADC-ML-6403, Aerospace Medical Research Department, Naval Air Development Center, Johnsville, Pennsylvania, 1964.


Dost, F. N., Reed, D. J., Finch, A., & Wang, C. H. Metabolism and pharmacology of inorganic and fluorine containing compounds. AMRL-TR-67-224, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, August 1968.


Erikson, N. A study of lethal effects of the inhalation of gaseous fluorine (F₂) at concentrations from 100 PPM to 10 000 PPM. Report 435, United States Atomic Energy Commission, University of Rochester, Rochester, New York, 1945.


Freeman, G. & Haydon, G. B. Emphysema after low level exposure to NO₂. American Medical Association Archives of Environmental Health, 1964, 8, 125.


Grey, E. LeB., MacNamee, J. K., & Goldberg, S. B. Toxicity of NO₂ vapors at very low levels. American Medical Association Archives of Industrial Hygiene, 1952, 6, 20.


Haldane, J. S. Carbon monoxide as a tissue poison. Journal of Biochemistry, 1927, 21, 1068.


Henderson, Y. & Haggard, H. W. The physiological principles governing ventilation when the air is contaminated with carbon monoxide. Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, 1922, 14, 229.


Horn, J. H., & Weir, R. J. Inhalation toxicology of chlorine trifluoride. *American Medical Association Archives of Industrial Health* 1955, 12, 515.

House, W. B. Tolerance criteria for continuous inhalation exposure to toxic materials. III., Effects on animals of 90-day exposure to hydrazine, unsymmetrical dimethylhydrazine (UDMH), decaborane and nitrogen dioxide. ASD-TR-61-519 (III), Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1964.


Krop, S. Toxicology of hydrazines, a review. *American Medical Association Archives of Industrial Health*, 1954, 9, 199.

Kydd, G. H. Lung changes resulting from prolonged exposure to 100 percent oxygen at 550 mm Hg. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1967, 38, 918-923.


Labelle, C. W. Studies on the toxicity of oxygen difluoride levels of exposure from 10 to 0.1 ppm by volume. Pharmacology Report No.478, Manhattan Project Contract W-7401 eng 49, The University of Rochester, January, 1945.


MacEwen, J. D., & Geckler, R. P. Comparative studies of 90-day continuous exposure to O₂, NO₂ and CCl₄ at reduced and ambient pressures. AMRL-TR-67-68, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1968.


MacEwen, J. D., & Vernot, E. H. Toxic hazards research unit annual technical report. AMRL-TR-68-133, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, October, 1968.

MacEwen, J. D., & Vernot, E. H. Toxic hazards research unit annual technical report. AMRL-TR-69-84, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, September, 1969.


Machle, W., & Evans, E. E. Exposure to fluorine in industry. Journal of Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, 1940, 22, 213.

Mammen, R. E., Critz, G. T., Dery, D. W., Highly, F. M., & Hendler, E. Effects of sequential exposure to acceleration and space capsule atmospheric conditions. Aerospace Medicine, 1963, 34, 260, (Abstract)


Toxicology 485


Sandage, C. Tolerance criteria for continuous inhalation exposure to toxic material. I., Effects on animals of 90-day exposure to phenol, CCl4 and a mixture of indole, skatole, H2S and methyl mercaptan. ASD Technical Report, 61-519 (I), Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, October 1961.

Sandage, C. Tolerance criteria for continuous inhalation exposure to toxic material. II., Effects on animals of 90-day exposure to H2S, methyl mercaptan, indole and skatole. ASD Technical Report 61-519 (II), Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, December 1961.


Thomas, A. A. Man's tolerance to trace contaminants. AMRL-TR-67-146, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1968.


Weinberg, M. S., & Goldhamer, R. E. Pharmacology and metabolism of compound A. AMRL-TR-66-238, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1967.

Weir, F. W., Memenzo, T. H., Bennett, S., & Meyers, F. H. A study of the mechanisms of acute effects of hydrazine, UDMH, MMH and SDMH. AMRL-TR-64-26, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1964.


CHAPTER 11
RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

by
Roscoe G. Bartlett, Jr., Ph.D.
International Business Machines Corporation

This chapter presents a treatment of the topic of human respiration intended primarily for use by persons who are not professionals in the biologic sciences. It discusses developments in the field where these are relevant to problems faced by engineers and designers of life support equipment. Essentially all of the relevant data concerning respiration have been known for some time; the problem has been one of application, not acquisition of information. There is a growing appreciation of a gap in effective dialogue between biologists (including those in medicine) and engineers and physical scientists. This chapter represents an attempt to present material in a form that should bridge this gap in the area of respiratory physiology. To the skilled biologist, the presentation will perhaps appear condescending and to the theoretical engineering scientist the engineering and physics naive; the presentation is not really meant for either of these. Rather it is meant for the engineers and designers who must face and solve the myriad of small and large problems in the development of any man-rated system.

It is beyond the scope of this book to present a description of the basic anatomy of the respiratory system, and length constraints also necessitate an abbreviated treatment of the physiology of respiration. For a better understanding of the data presented, it is recommended that the reader who is unfamiliar with these topics consult any one of the following texts for background material:


The following list of terms may also be helpful:

- **Apnea**—no breathing activity
- **Dyspnea**—labored breathing, especially if not warranted by physical exertion
- **Eucapnea**—normal level of body CO\(_2\)
- **Hypercapnea**—Higher than normal level of body CO\(_2\)
- **Hyperventilation**—correctly, a level of lung ventilation in excess of that required to maintain CO\(_2\) at eucapnea levels; sometimes incorrectly used to describe the labored breathing produced by exercise or stress
- **Hypocapnea**—lower than normal level of body CO\(_2\), produces hyperventilation

**Minute Volume**—volume of air moved in and out of the lungs in one minute, may be either inhalation or exhalation volumes, which are rarely the same. The fact is usually ignored when this term is used.

**Respiratory Exchange Ratio (R)**—CO\(_2\)/O\(_2\) ratio as determined from inhaled exhaled gas composition comparisons. Will deviate from R Q. with hypoventilation and hyperventilation.

**Respiratory Quotient (R Q)**—CO\(_2\)/O\(_2\) ratio as a result of tissue metabolism

**Respiratory Rate**—frequently used by physicians and physiologists as a synonym for breathing frequency, used by biochemists to indicate the rate of tissue metabolism.

**General Anatomy of Chest and Lungs**

The relations of chest and lungs are shown in figure 11-1, which schematically shows the grosser features and the position of the heart, which shares the chest cavity with the lungs. The major divisions of the “respiratory tree” and a schematic of the micro anatomy are shown in figure 11-2. The branching and rebranching of the bronchi and bronchioles gives rise to a very large number of respiratory bronchioles and alveoli. The total surface contact between alveolar air and lung capillary blood is approximately 100 square meters (about half a singles tennis court) in the healthy adult male.

Accumulating evidence indicates that microscopic lung structure is deleteriously affected by a number of pollutants. Since the life support engineer may be called upon to provide respiratory protection and support equipment for use in environments where the atmosphere cannot be economically cleansed of pollutants some knowledge of the microscopic anatomy of the lung may be useful.

**Intrathoracic Pressure**

During development of the fetus and during the growth of the child, the chest cavity enlarges faster than the lung increases in size. Consequently, the lung pulls away from the chest wall with greater and greater pressure. This pressure is referred to as the intrapleural pressure or intrathoracic pressure. Because intrathoracic pressure is applied directly to the heart and major thoracic blood vessels, changes in intrathoracic pressure have effects on the circulation.
Increased intrathoracic pressure prevents venous return to the heart. Cardiac output rapidly falls reducing blood pressure and blood supply to the brain, and, since it has no ability to accumulate an oxygen debt, the brain ceases to function and unconsciousness ensues. The engineer and designer of life support equipment must be careful not to produce or require changes in this pressure that compromise the circulation.

![Diagram of the chest and lungs]

Figure 11-1. Gross anatomical relations of chest and lungs.

**General Function of Respiration**

In the majority of people during routine activities, the depth and rate of breathing movements are regulated for the maintenance of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood. Oxygen want can be regulating, but only when the oxygen content of the inspired gases is reduced to nearly half that in air at sea level. Oxygen partial pressure, except in some unusual circumstances, should always be high enough so that the breathing will be regulated by the body requirements for CO₂.

The oxygen content of lung air will be determined by the oxygen content of the inspired gases, the flushing of the lungs required for CO₂ regulation, and the rate of oxygen uptake by the blood as it passes through the lungs.
Figure 11-2. Micro-anatomical relations of chest and lungs. Terminal bronchiole gives rise to 10 to 20 respiratory bronchiolcs, each of which widens into alveolar ducts with many hundreds of alveoli. The alveolar duct often has several major partitions, the so-called alveolar sacs. Interalveolar septa are shown extending into the sacs; the irregular small spaces thus formed are the alveoli.
Respiration

Strictly speaking, respiration refers to the tissue enzyme oxidation processes that utilize oxygen and produce carbon dioxide. More generally this term designates the phases of oxygen supply and carbon dioxide removal. The following annotated outline shows the general subdivisions of the overall process:

1. **Breathing**—Movement of chest/lung complex to ventilate the alveoli

2. **External respiration**—Exchange of gas (O\(_2\) and CO\(_2\)) between lung (alveolar) air and blood

3. **Internal respiration**—Exchange of gas between tissue blood and the tissue cells

4. **True respiration**—Ultimate utilization of oxygen by the cells with the coincident release of carbon dioxide.

To the biochemist respiration refers to the enzymatic processes in the tissues which use oxygen and produce carbon dioxide. Figure 11-3 shows the general function of the blood in tissue gas supply and removal.

Figure 11-3. Gas exchange between the capillary blood and tissue cells.
Breathing Movements

The volume of the lungs is determined by the balance between the elastic recoil of the lungs and the elasticity of the chest structure in the resting position. From this midposition appropriate muscular action will produce either an exhalation or an inhalation. Breathing motion during space flight, as on Earth, is produced by active inhalation (increasing lung volume above of midposition). Subsequent passive exhalation is produced by the elastic recoil of the chest/lung complex releasing potential energy stored during the active inhalation. Figure 11-4 depicts the balance of forces establishing midposition and the mechanism of passive exhalation during normal breathing. Any system design or use that requires forced exhalation (e.g., pressure breathing in high altitude flying) will produce rapid discomfort and fatigue. Therefore, low exhalation resistance is required.

Inhalation Movements

The mechanism of inhalation may be an important consideration in support equipment design because any circumstance which tends to deform the usual mechanism will be both limiting and fatiguing.

The expansion of the chest in the lateral diameter is produced by movement of the lower full ribs (6 to 10). They are bowed downward, and, during inhalation, move up and out much as the bail on a bucket is raised. The chest is increased in its anterior/posterior diameter by movement of ribs 2 and 5, which elevate the sternum. In adults, the ribs have a downward slant from their attachment to the vertebral column.
The chest is increased in the head-foot dimension by descent of the diaphragm.

**Exhalation Movements**

In most breathing activity, exhalation is entirely passive. The relaxation of the inhalation muscles permits the forces of gravity and stored elastic energy to return the chest/lung complex to its normal midposition. In weightlessness, only elastic recoil remains as a passive force for exhalation; but it is adequate. In active exhalation the ribs move down, decreasing both the anterior/posterior and lateral dimension of the thorax. This compression is a usual concomitant of parturition (childbirth), micturition, defecation, and vomiting.

**Control of Breathing**

**Frequency and Depth Variations**

To understand the effects on breathing of various conditions of space flight, it is well to know the basic mechanisms by which the body regulates the rate and depth of breathing. Normal resting rates may vary from 5 to more than 30 breaths per minute and little is known about the mechanisms that determine individual differences. Slower breathing rates are related to greater breathing depths. This relationship is a very constant one. There is, on the other hand, a very narrow normal range for alveolar ventilation. The rate and depth of respiration produces, in the average individual, an alveolar CO$_2$ concentration of 40 mm Hg; thus, deeper breaths accompany slower breathing rates.

To differentiate alveolar ventilation from total lung ventilation the following terminology is used:

1. *Pulmonary ventilation*—The total amount of air moved by the breathing movements

2. *Alveolar ventilation*—The volume of inspired gas which reaches and ventilates the alveoli, i.e., total ventilation minus dead space ventilation.

Table 11-1 shows the relations to produce a 6.0 liter per minute alveolar ventilation with 150 ml dead space.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breathing Rate BREATHS/MIN</th>
<th>Dead Space Ventilation L/Min</th>
<th>Total Ventilation L/Min</th>
<th>Alveolar Ventilation L/Min</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>6.75</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>7.50</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When equipment dead space is added to body dead space, the breaths at any one breathing frequency must be correspondingly deeper. Considerable difference of opinion exists as to the effects of added dead space. Some investigators believe that there are compensating mechanisms that tend to keep CO₂ at the desired level. Others do not. Thus, engineers and designers may have to decide between added support system complexity and dead space increases. A brief description of some of the mechanism of breathing control will be presented so that the dead space effects can be better appreciated.

**Mechanisms of Breathing Control**

Normal rhythmic breathing is controlled by the requirement to ventilate the lungs to remove CO₂ as fast as it is produced by metabolic activity. There are, however, other factors effective in the control of breathing. These are illustrated schematically in figure 11-5 and described briefly below.

*Figure 11–5. Respiratory control elements.*

**Cerebral Cortex Control.** Physical exercise results in an immediate increase in pulmonary ventilation. Impulses originating in the cerebral cortex stimulate the respiratory center to greater activity, so that breathing is increased in anticipation of exercise. Breathing is also regulated by the
cerebral cortex to accommodate talking, swimming, etc. Within limits, there is also a voluntary control of breathing that is cerebral in origin.

Under heavy exercise, maximum pulmonary ventilation can reach 110 to 120 liters per minute, as compared to a resting rate of 6 liters per minute. In aviation, however, extremes of physical activity are not encountered, with the metabolic oxygen consumption seldom exceeding 2 to 3 times the resting rate. On this basis, the provision of oxygen in military aircraft is based on a pulmonary ventilation rate of 25 liters.

**Blood Pressure Effects.** Pressoreceptors in the carotid sinus respond to blood pressure changes with impulses that regulate breathing rate as well as blood pressure. Increased blood pressure results in a lowered respiratory rate and falling blood pressure increases the rate.

**Chemoreceptor Reflexes.** The primary receptors for chemical control of breathing are located within the respiratory system. There are, however, chemoreceptors adjacent to the aortic and carotid arteries that reflexively affect breathing regulation. Two reflexes are involved. Increases in the PCO₂ and hydrogen ion concentration stimulate breathing to make it faster and deeper; decreases depress breathing. Falling oxygen/blood tensions (oxygen want) also stimulate breathing. With a falling oxygen content of inspired air, the blood is better oxygenated with increased alveolar ventilation. This mechanism produces hypocapnia at high altitudes without supplemental oxygen. Under these conditions, the hypoxic drive overrides the usually precise PCO₂ control. The resulting hyperventilation decreases the carbon dioxide concentration, thereby effecting an increase in oxygen concentration since water vapor pressure remains constant.

**Lung Stretch Receptors.** There are three types of stretch receptors in the lung that are stimulated progressively as the lung is inflated. One set of receptors increasingly inhibits further inhalation and finally terminates it. Passive exhalation then follows. When inhalation is deeper and more forceful than usual, another set excites the inspiratory center of the medulla to further intensity of inspiration. The response of these receptors is short lived and inhalation inhibitory receptors come into play, abruptly terminating inhalation. Lastly, when inhalation is very deep, for example, during heavy exercise or emotional stress, a third set of receptors produces a forced, active exhalation.

**Reflexes from Muscles and Joints.** Increases in breathing activity during exercise cannot be explained by chemical or blood pressure changes since arterial blood PCO₂ is usually lower and PO₂ elevated during exercise compared to values at rest. A very important factor in increased breathing activity during exercise is the reflex stimulation from joint and muscle movement. Even movement of the arm or leg stimulates breathing.
Lung Volumes and Capacities

For descriptive convenience the total capacity of the lung at full inspiration is divided into several functional subdivisions. These are defined below and illustrated in figure 11-6.

The four primary lung volumes which do not overlap are:

1. **Tidal Volume** (TV)—the volume of gas inspired or expired during each respiratory cycle.

2. **Inspiratory Reserve Volume** (IRV)—the maximal volume that can be forcibly expired following a normal inspiration (from the end-inspiratory position).

3. **Expiratory Reserve Volume** (ERV)—the maximum amount of air that can be forcibly expired following a normal expiration.

4. **Residual Volume** (RV)—the amount of air remaining in the lungs following a maximum expiratory effort.

Each of the four following capacities includes two or more of the primary volumes.

1. **Total Lung Capacity** (TLC)—the sum of all four of the primary lung volumes.

2. **Inspiratory Capacity** (IC)—the maximum volume by which the lung can be increased by a maximum inspiratory effort from midposition.
3. *Vital Capacity* (VC)—the maximum amount of air that can be exhaled from the lungs following a maximum inspiration. It is the sum of the inspiratory reserve volume, tidal volume, and expiratory reserve volume.

4. *Functional Residual Capacity* (FRC)—the normal volume at the end of passive exhalation, i.e., the gas volume which normally remains in the lung and functions as the residual capacity.

The lung volumes and capacities are frequently determined by use of a spirometer (a volume displacement device into which the subject breathes). From this instrument a spirogram (volume change versus time) is obtained.

**Significance of Lung Volumes for Equipment Design**

*Functional Residual Capacity.* FRC is important in equipment design for two principal reasons. First, when a closed-loop breathing system is used, the total gas volume will be the sum of the gas volumes of the rebreather loop and FRC and the tidal volume. (The tidal volume will be contained in either the lungs or the rebreather bellows or will be distributed between them during inhalatory or exhalatory activity.) This total system gas volume is important in considerations of inert gas dilution, expansions or contractions with pressure change, inert gas washout, etc. Secondly, should the expanding gases exceed tolerable pressures, the designer must assure that a breathing apparatus will not so impede the flow of these rapidly expanding gases as to increase lung pressures above these critical levels.

*Residual Volume.* Because the residual volume is that portion of lung volume that remains in the lung after a forced exhalation, to reduce lung volume below this level will require compression of the chest/lung complex or an increased trans-lung (intrapleural pressure to alveolar air pressure) pressure gradient as the result of reduced external breathing apparatus pressure acting through the airway. Regardless of the mechanism, lung collapse (atelectasis), lung blood vessel rupture, pulmonary edema, or any combination of these three effects may occur. It is therefore, important to assure that system operation over every possible range of pressure changes never produces such pressure differentials as to require a lung volume less than residual volume.

*Inspiratory Capacity and Inspiratory Reserve Volume.* Inspiratory capacity represents the maximum volume of air that can be forced into the lung by changes in system volume, without producing overexpansion of the lungs. The volume of the inspiratory reserve capacity is progressively reduced during an inhalation, and the remaining volume that can be inhaled is referred to as the inspiratory reserve volume. Thus, during a breathing cycle, the permissible increase in lung volume imposed by system pressures is reduced by the tidal volume. When system pressures are such as to require a lung volume increase greater than that represented by the inspiratory capacity (or inspiratory reserve volume, as appropriate), the lungs are overextended, and lung rupture is possible. It is, therefore, important to
assure that system pressure changes will never require an increase in lung volume above what could be produced by a maximum inhalation.

**Tidal Volume.** A closed-loop system must have a rebreather bellows that will accommodate the largest expected tidal volume. Such a tidal volume could, of course, be as large as the vital capacity. But it might not be practical to provide so large a rebreather bellows. In such a case a rebreather bellows of reasonable size should be provided (determined by expected level of exercise, etc.). In this case increased inhalation volumes can be provided from oxygen storage and increased exhalation volumes can be accommodated by venting through a spring loaded exhalation pressure safety valve.

**Total Lung Capacity.** In an extreme case, the maximum amount of gas the lungs could contain, which must be considered for total system volume calculations and accommodation for gas expansion, is the total lung capacity. Although such a circumstance is unlikely, a conservative design must use this volume as the basis for the design.

**Average Lung Capacities, Volumes, and Function Capabilities for Healthy Adult Males**

There is considerable individual variability in lung volumes and capacities. This variability is somewhat decreased if the data are shown with size and age relationships. Figures 11-7 through 11-11 present these data. One should note, however, that because of individual variabilities, the values presented must be used only as approximations when applied to individuals or small groups of individuals.

![Graph showing functional residual capacity (FRC)](image)

Figure 11-7. Functional residual capacity (FRC) in normal adult males. (Cotes, 1968)
Figure 11-8. Forced expiratory volume in normal adult males. (Cotes, 1968)

Figure 11-9. Total lung capacity (TLC), vital capacity (VC), and residual volume (RV) in normal adult males. (Cotes, 1968)
Figure 11.10. Nomogram relating indices of ventilatory capacity to weight and height for normal adult males. (MVV = max voluntary ventilation; FEV₁ = forced expiration velocity at one second from start of forced exhalation from full lung). (Cotes, 1968)

Figure 11.11. Expiratory peak flow rate in normal adult males. (Cotes, 1968)
Mechanical Relations

Pressure/Volume Relations

A knowledge of the pressure/volume relationships is important in the design of life-support equipment. Figure 11-12 presents the relationship in its simplest form. Maximum inspiratory (at the left of the figure) represents the negative inspiratory pressure that can be exerted with lung volume varying from 0 to 100 percent of vital capacity and the maximum inhalation volume exchange over a range of negative pressures to nearly 100 mm Hg. For example, with the lung completely emptied, when only residual air remains (Point 1), a maximum inspiratory effect of approximately 90 mm Hg can be exerted. Also, if the pressure in an external breathing loop is 90 mm Hg negative, no inspiratory volume can be moved. In fact, this negative pressure will empty the lung to this point. If the negative pressure were greater, i.e., more negative, there would be marked engorgement of the lung vascular bed with imminent threat of blood vessel rupture.

With the lung as full as possible (Point 2) no additional inspiratory effort can be exerted. It also can be seen that, if the pressure in the external breathing loop is the same as lung pressure, a full vital capacity can be exchanged.

The points establishing the curve labeled maximum expiratory are obtained in a like manner using exhalation efforts and positive rather than negative pressures. Thus, at 100 percent vital capacity a maximum exhalation effort can be made, and at 0 percent, no exhalation effort made. Likewise, with about 100 mm Hg positive pressure the lung is completely filled in spite of a maximum exhalation effort so that no air can be moved. If more pressure
is exerted there is the danger that the lung may be stretched to the rupture point with tearing of tissue, bleeding, and loss of effective gas exchange surface.

The reader is cautioned that these curves present average values for maximum breathing efforts. For any one person danger may exist at much lesser pressure values. These figures, then, represent extremes that should never be approached as design points.

The maximum pressure/volume loop takes on new meaning if an additional dimension, the pressure volume relations for the relaxed chest-lung complex, is included (figure 11-13). The point at which the relaxation pressure curve crosses the zero pressure line is the midposition; the volume below it is the expiratory reserve volume, and the volume above it is the inspiratory capacity. The figure shows that at about 20 mm Hg negative pressure the lung is collapsed to the residual volume, if there is no competing muscle force. At about 20 mm Hg positive pressure the lung is completely filled, if there is no competing exhalation muscle force.

Since the pressure/volume loop has the dimensions of work (\(\text{AREA} = \text{volume} \times \text{pressure} = \text{cm}^3 \times \text{gm/cm}^2 = \text{gm centimeters}\)), one can also show diagrammatically the mechanical work done at different breathing loop pressures. This is shown in figure 11-13 for zero pressure differential and for a positive 30 mm Hg differential.

The mechanical work at zero pressure differential is done by the inspiratory muscles because exhalation is passive. At 30 mm Hg positive
pressure, the mechanical work is done by the expiratory muscles. The fatigue effect is even greater than the relative increase in mechanical work so that such breathing can be endured only during an emergency.

Pressure breathing is employed in emergency situations in aircraft flight and might be a desirable fallback capability for some space flight contingencies. The limit of tidal pressure/volume loops over a range of negative to positive breathing loop pressures can be superimposed on figure 11-13. Because there is an inherent, reflex, muscular counterforce applied to the differential breathing loop pressures, the limit envelope for the tidal pressure/volume loops deviates from the relaxation pressure curve. Thus, whenever the applied pressure is positive, relaxation of the exhalation muscles does not occur at any phase of the breathing cycle. The same is true for inspiratory muscles if negative pressures are applied. The position of the curves determining the pressure/volume loops over a range of breathing loop pressures is shown in figure 11-13.

Breathing Resistance and Mechanical Work of Breathing

Breathing equipment, no matter how well designed, provides some flow resistance. "Safety pressure" may be employed to remove inhalation resistance, but then exhalation resistance is correspondingly increased. Increased flow resistance increases the work of breathing. Mechanical work over a range of breathing resistance is shown in figure 11-14. The pressure/volume loops shown were obtained at uniform breathing rates of 40 breaths per minute and with maximum or near maximum effort.

Note that at low resistance (50 mm H2O pressure to produce 100 liters per minute flow) the area, and therefore mechanical work, is small. As pressures are increased (125 and 225 mm Hg), the volume moved is not appreciably lessened, but the pressures exerted are much higher so that the mechanical work done is greater. With still higher pressures (675 mm), the work lessens because the respiratory muscles cannot exert higher pressures. Thus the volume decreases because breathing in all cases is at 40 breaths per minute. As far as work output is concerned, there is an optimal loading of the breathing mechanism. This is shown in the figure 11-15. The oxygen cost of breathing through these resistances was relatively flat across the range of breathing resistances.

With mechanical work done and the coincident oxygen cost, one can calculate the efficiency. These relations are shown in figure 11-16.

Oxygen consumption for the subjects in the study illustrated in the figures that follow is very high compared to oxygen consumption during space flight. Also, highest efficiencies occurred with relatively high airway resistances. One can conclude, therefore, that there is a very large breathing reserve that can be called on in an emergency. Breathing this reserve may be fatiguing, but the reserve is available for emergencies of short duration.
Figure 11–14. Pressure/volume loops for maximum breathing effort with four levels of airway resistance. (Reprinted from Journal of Applied Physiology, 1938, 13(2), 194-204)
Figure 11–15. Mechanical breathing work output with maximum breathing effort at several airway resistance levels. Symbols represent different subjects. (Reprinted from Journal of Applied Physiology, 1958, 13(2), 194-204)

Figure 11–16. Breathing efficiency with maximum breathing effort at several airway resistance levels. (Reprinted from Journal of Applied Physiology, 1958, 13(2), 194-204)
Velocity/Volume Loop

If breath velocity is plotted against breath volume, and if inspiratory volumes are equal, a closed loop is generated. When maximum inspiratory and expiratory efforts are exerted, a closed loop is formed. For adult males the velocity/volume (V/V) loop has the form presented in figure 11-17. This contour is markedly changed with respiratory diseases and aging. The figure also shows lung volumes and capacities usually obtained from a spirogram by superimposing the resting V/V loop on the maximum V/V loop 0.

![Diagram of V/V loop](image)

Figure 11-17. Maximum velocity/volume (V/V) loop.

Because time elements can be determined, it is feasible to use the maximum V/V loop for obtaining any of the frequently used timed vital capacities of forced expiratory volumes, as they may be called. Figure 11-18 illustrates the technique for full inspiratory and expiratory efforts.

The V/V loop can be determined during space flight by use of a pneumotachograph and appropriate transducers (figure 11-19). These are lightweight and can be integrated into the life-support equipment. Because the pneumotachograph produces only a velocity signal, the coincident volume values are obtained by integration under the velocity trace. This is conveniently done by using an onboard or ground-based computer.

Gas Density, Airway Resistance, and Flow Rates

The reduced pressures during space flight produce a reduced gas density. If helium were used as the inert gas in a two-gas atmosphere, there would be an
additional reduction in gas density. Reduced gas density results in lesser airway resistance for a given flow rate. Airway resistance is also determined by gas viscosity and gas density; but over wide ranges of density differences, viscosity effects will be small. If increased airway resistance slows the transit time of gas from the alveoli to the mouth, a measure of the lag between alveolar pressure production and resultant air flow at the mouth will reflect relative resistance to air flow.

For Expiration \( EVCT = \frac{V^2}{A} = \frac{5^2}{20.75} = 1.20 \text{ sec} \)

For Inspiration \( IVCT = \frac{V}{A} = \frac{5^2}{34.15} = 0.73 \text{ sec} \)

Figure 11–18. Use of the maximum \( \dot{V}/V \) loop for calculating inspiratory vital capacity time (IVCT) and expiratory vital capacity time (EVCT).

Figure 11–19. Construction of \( \dot{V}/V \) loop from pneumatogram.
To understand the effects on the astronaut of engineering expediencies that may compromise the exchange of gases between alveolar air and capillary blood, it is helpful to note the partial pressures of gases in this exchange (table 11-2). The only active process in the exchange is transportation (the circulation of the blood and the ventilation of the lungs). There is no secretory process. The gases move along concentration gradients as seen in the table.

Table 11-2
Partial Pressure and Gas Exchange Breathing Air at Sea Level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>O₂</th>
<th>CO₂</th>
<th>N₂</th>
<th>H₂O</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inspired air</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expired air</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>565</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alveolar air</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial blood</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous blood</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissues</td>
<td>30 or 50 or less</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A study of this table raises three questions that should be answered:

1. Why is the alveolar/venous blood gradient so much larger for O₂ than for CO₂? Although O₂ is a smaller molecule than CO₂, and therefore diffuses faster, CO₂ is approximately 30 times more soluble in body tissues than is O₂. Therefore, the effective diffusability is approximately 20 times greater for CO₂ than O₂, and a concentration gradient for CO₂ of 6 mm Hg results in a more complete equilibration than does a concentration gradient of 60 mm Hg for O₂. This general relationship is important in design. Oxygen supply to the tissues is much more sensitive to derangement than is CO₂ removal, thus the necessity for assuring equipment and physiological O₂ supply adequacy.

2. Why is nitrogen partial pressure lower in lung air and blood than in inspired air? Actually if gas composition is calculated on a dry basis, percentage of nitrogen is higher in alveolar air (and blood) than in inspired air. This is because more oxygen is picked up by the blood than CO₂ released. This reflects metabolic activity in the tissues when varying combinations of fat, carbohydrate, and proteins are burned producing ratios of CO₂ production to O₂ consumption (called Respiratory Quotient (RQ) in the tissues or Respiratory Exchange Ratio (R) for exhaled air).

3. Why is total gas pressure, including water vapor pressure, less in venous blood and tissue than in arterial blood and respiratory gases? As is apparent from the gas partial pressure table 11-2 this difference reflects the difference in partial pressure for oxygen uptake by the tissues (60 mm Hg for venous blood) and carbon dioxide increase as a result of CO₂ release by tissue metabolic activity.
Implicit in this comparison is the observation that for binding of a given quantity of gas there must be a much larger change in O₂ partial pressure than in CO₂ partial pressure. This reflects the very large binding (or buffering) capacity of blood and other body fluids for CO₂. Indeed, as discussed later in this section, hypoventilation and hyperventilation can move enormous quantities of CO₂ in and out of body storage, respectively. The lower total partial pressure of dissolved gases in venous blood and tissue assures that gas injected into the body or leaked from the lung by rupture will be quickly absorbed by the blood. Thus, there are no permanent gas pockets in any tissue in the body.

Oxygen Dissociation Curve of Hemoglobin

The requirements for maintaining oxygen partial pressure at specified levels is better understood if the mechanism of oxygen transport is understood. Almost all of the oxygen transported by the blood is carried by the hemoglobin. (Hemoglobin carries approximately 19 ml per 100 ml of blood. At usual O₂ tensions only about 0.3 ml per 100 ml of blood is carried in the dissolved state.) The relation between O₂ partial pressure and hemoglobin saturation with oxygen is usually described as the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin and is presented as a curve on PO₂—percent saturation coordinates. The general shape of the curve is shown in figure 11-20.

![Oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin](image)

The shape of this curve has great significance. Note that above 50 mm Hg PO₂, there is little increase in hemoglobin carrying capacity for oxygen. Therefore a lowered alveolar PO₂ concentration will not materially reduce the O₂ available for tissue use as long as the partial pressure remains above 50 mm Hg. However, at the tissue level where the PO₂ is kept low by
metabolic activity, the hemoglobin will hold little oxygen. This means that large amounts of oxygen are reduced for tissue use. Table 11-2 shows average values of \(O_2\) concentrations in alveolar air, arterial blood, venous blood, and tissues. Figure 11-21 indicates the usual conditions of hemoglobin saturation in the lungs and desaturation at the tissue level. Note the markedly increased amounts of \(O_2\) released to the tissues with high metabolic rates that may reduce the tissue \(P_{O_2}\) level to near zero.

![Oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin and the facilitation of \(O_2\) uptake and release.](image)

An additional facility further increases the efficiency of oxygen supply to the tissues: the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin is not fixed but is different at the tissue level as compared to lung blood. The extent of this shift is shown in figure 11-22. Examination indicates the great efficacy of this shifting of the curve: hemoglobin/oxygen association is much facilitated in the lung blood and hemoglobin/oxygen dissociation is much enhanced at the tissue level. For instance, at 25 mm Hg \(O_2\) tension and with the curve at the far left position, the hemoglobin would be 62 percent saturated, but with the curve at the extreme right position the hemoglobin is only 35 percent saturated. Thus an additional 27 percent of total saturation volume of \(O_2\) is released to the tissues.

To convert the percent of saturation to the actual quantity of \(O_2\) carried by hemoglobin, multiply the grams of hemoglobin per 100 ml of blood by 1.34, which is the milliliters of \(O_2\) that will combine with one
gram of hemoglobin. Because normal adult male blood contains about 15 grams of hemoglobin, each 100 ml of blood will carry about 20 ml of O₂ (called 20 ml percent, i.e., percent by volume). But, because of venous admixture (some blood in the lungs is not adequately exposed to ventilated alveoli), the hemoglobin of mixed arterial blood is only about 95 to 97 percent saturated. The curves above show the percent of saturation plateauing at this level. Higher O₂ (e.g., 100 percent at sea level) will not much increase the percent saturation. More O₂ is carried in simple solution. But for space cabin pressures, even 100 percent O₂ will not much increase this carrying capacity because O₂ solution in blood is small.

![Figure 11-22. Oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin shift and lung blood as compared to tissue blood.]

The conditions of blood in the lungs (as compared to those of tissue blood) that cause the curve to be shifted to the left are:

1. Lower temperature
2. Lower pH
3. Lower ionic concentration
4. Lower $P_{CO_2}$.

Opposite conditions exist at the tissue level and cause the curve to be shifted to the right.
Denitrogenation

Saturation, Tissue Types, and Nitrogen Elimination. Ambient air contains approximately 79 percent physiologically inert gases of which nearly all (78 percent) is nitrogen. The body is saturated with nitrogen when breathing air. When lung nitrogen is removed by flushing with oxygen, the nitrogen that is dissolved in the body tissues moves along concentration gradients to the lungs where it is in turn flushed out. If the decrease in lung partial pressure is too precipitous, the dissolved gases are expanded and collect in body tissues and structures to produce a variety of symptoms. This syndrome has many names, such as bends, chokes, decompression sickness, and caissons disease, which are based on the more conspicuous complaints.

To determine the likelihood of decompression sickness resulting from inadvertent decompression, one must know: (1) the extent of denitrogenation at the time of decompression and (2) the absolute level of inhaled nitrogen immediately preceding the decompression. Continued exposure to an inhalation mixture containing nitrogen at a low partial pressure, e.g., 35 mm Hg, will produce a relative denitrogenation with ultimate equilibrium at this level rather than at 0 mm Hg N\textsubscript{2} partial pressure, which would obtain if denitrogenation were accomplished by inhalation of 100 percent oxygen (or a mixture of gases containing no nitrogen). At sea level, breathing air, the body is equilibrated with nitrogen solution at a partial pressure of approximately 670 mm Hg. Therefore, when oxygen is breathed, nitrogen elimination proceeds with the initial gradient for nitrogen movement being approximately 670 mm Hg. If, instead of denitrogenation with 0 mm Hg N\textsubscript{2} pressure, a mixture containing 35 mm Hg N\textsubscript{2} partial pressure is inhaled, the initial driving force for nitrogen elimination will be a pressure gradient of approximately 635 mm Hg. Such a small reduction in the total gradient would not meaningfully slow the rate of nitrogenation, particularly since N\textsubscript{2} elimination is generally perfusion (i.e., blood flow) limited rather than diffusion (i.e., gas diffusion) limited. Even small changes in lung perfusion rate would affect the rate of nitrogen elimination much more than would the small difference in driving force.

The other consideration is the absolute pressure of nitrogen in the inhaled mixture immediately preceding the decompression. If alveolar PN\textsubscript{2} is high in the few minutes before decompression, the probability of bends, or another manifestation of decompression sickness, will be determined largely by the long term alveolar PN\textsubscript{2} levels rather than the short-term effects. This is true for two reasons. First, the high levels of PN\textsubscript{2} inhaled for a short time will affect N\textsubscript{2} solution primarily only in the lowest tissue component, and the nitrogen from this component will be released very quickly on decompression. Second, bends manifestation is believed to be largely restricted to the higher tissue components with long half-times for clearing. Because it takes many hours to clear this tissue (see table 11-3) and because even the highest PN\textsubscript{2} levels expected will not materially slow the nitrogen elimination from these tissues, short-term exposure to the higher PN\textsubscript{2} levels should have little effect on bends production.
Table 11–3

Tissue Types for Nitrogen Clearance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tissue Component</th>
<th>Tissue Types</th>
<th>Time for Removal of Half Previous Level (Approximate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Lungs, Circulatory system</td>
<td>1.5 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Viscera</td>
<td>8 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Muscle, Fascia, Skin</td>
<td>30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Adipose tissue, Bone</td>
<td>150 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V, N</td>
<td>(There is evidence for even longer half-time tissues, perhaps in excess of 940 min)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The importance in bends production of nitrogen dissolved in the tissues with long clearance half-times is further suggested by the following comparison. Even though long-term exposure to an altitude of 4700 feet theoretically removes only about 15 percent of dissolved nitrogen and one hour of denitrogenation removes about 60 percent of dissolved nitrogen, still the protection provided against bends production is about equal.

This discussion has been related to decompression sickness only and not to hypoxia. It is clear that inhalation of essentially 100 percent O₂ during decompression above 35 000 feet is required and this will not be less efficacious if predecompression PN₂ levels have been 70 mm Hg rather than 35 mm Hg.

Breathing Equipment Design and Nitrogen Elimination. Because nitrogen solution in body tissues (at pressures of 1 or 2 atm and lower) is directly proportional to lung concentration, the relative amount of nitrogen contained in lung air at saturation equilibrium, as compared to that dissolved in the body tissues, is constant over this pressure range with varying nitrogen percentages in the respired gases. Therefore, we can consider elimination of nitrogen after equilibrium, at sea level, and breathing air and then extrapolate to indicate elimination relations for other conditions.

At sea level breathing air, the lungs contain about 2 liters of nitrogen (at midposition FRC). The total dissolved nitrogen in the body is not much more than 1 liter. If closed-loop breathing equipment is employed and if denitrogenation is desired, then the nitrogen must be removed from the lungs and from the tissues.

Nitrogen elimination from the lungs is quite rapid. Considering N₂ elimination from the tissues, it is apparent from the curve in figure 11-23 that N₂ elimination from the lungs has essentially asymptoted at about 1.5 minutes.
If one considers N₂ elimination as a function of number of breaths, rather than on a time basis, a theoretical elimination curve can be constructed (figure 11-24). It is apparent from this curve that lung N₂ elimination is about 90 percent complete in 15 breaths.

Figure 11–23. Accumulated nitrogen elimination.

Figure 11–24. N₂ remaining in lungs after each of 20 breaths.
The importance of these observations to respiratory support equipment design relates to the requirement for nitrogen purging from closed-loop systems. It is clear that the purging must be rapid at first to clear the lungs and then slower over a protracted time to keep equipment PN2 levels low enough to permit relatively unimpeded nitrogen elimination from the tissues without extravagant use of gas for flushing.

Ventilation, Perfusion, Dead Space, and Shunts

In the normal adult male at rest there is an alveolar ventilation of about 5 liters per minute and a cardiac output (perfusion) of about 5 liters per minute. Thus, the ventilation/perfusion ratio for the lung as a whole is approximately unity. However, ventilation and perfusion are not evenly distributed, so that some alveoli/capillary units are relatively over ventilated (under perfused) while others are over perfused (under ventilated) (see figure 11-25). In addition, some of the inhaled air never reaches the alveolar surface, so that it does not take part in gaseous exchange. Thus the total lung complex may be subdivided into the following functional compartments so far as gas exchange is concerned:

1. Air in the lung and air conducting passages
2. Ventilated and non-perfused alveoli
3. Perfused and non-ventilated alveoli
4. All variations between 2 and 3, including those with balanced ventilation/perfusion ratios.

Figure 11–25. Range of ventilation/perfusion ratios.
The relations shown in figure 11-25 are discussed in the order of the lowest to the highest ratios of ventilation to perfusion.

**Anatomical Shunt.** Some blood passes from artery to vein in the lung without ever going through a capillary bed. The effect is the same as that which occurs with perfused but non-ventilated alveoli. Anatomical shunting, then, is the sum of actual blood shunting and effective shunting when some alveoli are collapsed or plugged and not ventilated at all.

**Venous Admixture.** Other alveoli are relatively under ventilated, so that the blood perfusing them is only partly replenished with oxygen and has only a portion of the CO₂ that was picked up in the tissues. This blood is only partly arteriolized and to a lesser or greater extent remains venous blood. The effect of this on the mixed arteriolized blood leaving the lungs is referred to as venous admixture. In the normal lung it is small, reducing potential O₂ carrying capacity from about 20 to about 19 volumes percent and reducing hemoglobin saturation with oxygen from the potential of 100 percent to 95 to 97 percent.

**Normally Ventilated and Perfused Alveoli.** In the normal lung most of the alveoli fall into this category. Because of the shape of the oxygen dissociative curve of hemoglobin, the hemoglobin is essentially 100 percent saturated over the range of ventilation/perfusion ratios shown in the central hatched area in figure 11-25. In some diseased states, a much smaller percentage of the alveoli will fall in this range.

**Alveolar Dead Space.** Still other alveoli are relatively underperfused. The blood that passes through these capillary beds reaches complete equilibrium with the air. Because the reduced blood flow could have been redistributed to fewer alveoli to produce normal ventilation/perfusion ratios, the effect is as if some alveoli were adequately perfused and others not perfused at all. These non-perfused alveoli constitute alveolar dead space. The effective alveolar dead space is the same whether the inadequate perfusion is evenly distributed or selectively distributed to some alveoli, with other alveoli completely non-perfused. Alveolar dead space may be very large in some disease states.

**Anatomical Dead Space.** If alveoli had no perfusion, the ventilation/perfusion would be zero. The inspired gas that remains in the anatomical dead space (the air conducting passages) is equivalent to this. In the normal adult male the anatomical dead space is approximately 160 ml; the alveolar dead space is very small with quiet breathing but increases with increased breathing effort.

**Physiological Dead Space.** The combination of anatomical and alveolar dead space is called the physiological dead space. It is the effective dead space. To this space must be added equipment dead space if a mask or helmet is worn. Thus it can be seen that added anatomical dead space is the equivalent of added alveolar dead space. Many individuals have markedly increased alveolar dead space in certain diseases (e.g., emphysema). If the disease process is arrested, the patient adapts to the increased dead space, as long as it is not too large, with no great adverse effects. What, then, of added equipment dead space? Perhaps, if it is not too large, an astronaut would accept it and adapt to it with no noticeable effect.
But what is too large? Certainly a few hundred milliliters would not appear to be. It should be cautioned that there is no agreement on this point. But, the above logic is intended to guide the engineer and designer in his assessment of the varying opinions.

O₂/CO₂ Diagram and the Alveolar Equations

O₂/CO₂ Diagram. The O₂/CO₂ diagrams for oxygen breathing are relatively simple. Because the alveolar and expired points fall on a straight line, it is easy to determine the effects of hypoventilation and hyperventilation. If the alveolar concentration of one gas and the total ambient pressure are known, the alveolar concentration of the other can be easily calculated. The formula is

\[ P_{CO_2} + P_{O_2} + P_{H_2O} = P_{AMBIENT} \]

Figure 11-26 shows these relations at sea level and several altitudes.

![O₂/CO₂ diagram breathing pure O₂.](image)

With usual breathing the breath is warmed to body temperature and completely saturated so that \( P_{H_2O} \) is 47 mm Hg. This is independent of ambient pressure. And since the body, also independent of ambient pressure, strives to maintain alveolar \( P_{CO_2} \) at 40 mm Hg, these two gases (CO₂ and H₂O) exert a combined pressure of 87 mm Hg. Thus, at high altitude, even breathing 100 percent oxygen, the lungs will not contain adequate oxygen to saturate the blood. In the event, as shown in figure 11-27, the body compromises the \( P_{CO_2} \)
stability as the low $O_2$ (hypoxia) creates a strong respiratory drive through reflexes from the chemo receptors. This compromise makes more oxygen available at the expense of a stable $CO_2$, and the pH is elevated with the untoward effects of this acid base balance derangement.

![Diagram of $O_2/CO_2$ diagram breathing air.](image)

When air is breathed the alveolar gas concentrations are not so simply related. As shown in figure 11-27, there is a family of curves, specific relationships being determined by the Respiratory Exchange Ratio.

The basic diagram is represented by the grid of curved lines and relates the tensions of $O_2$ and $CO_2$ to the hemoglobin saturation and the total content of carbon dioxide in the blood. It is constructed from the dissociation curves for oxygen and carbon dioxide in a subject with a normal hemoglobin concentration and may be used to predict any two of the variables when the other two are known.

Superimposed on the basic diagram are two sets of co-ordinates and a curved line. The co-ordinates for the respiratory exchange ratio (R) radiate from a point (I) which describes the inspired gas (in this case air). The co-ordinates for the alveolar ventilation in the units/min per 100 ml/min of oxygen uptake are represented by sets of parallel lines of which that for infinite ventilation is also that for an R value of infinity. The curved distribution line illustrates the combinations of oxygen and carbon dioxide tension which may occur for different ventilation-perfusion ratios in one particular subject: the distribution line is defined at its lower end by the composition of the inspired gas ($V_A/Q = \infty$) and at its upper end by that of the mixed venous blood ($V_A/Q < 0$). The dashed lines converge on a point on the distribution line where the $V_A/Q$...
ratio is 1.2. For an alveolus having this ratio of ventilation to perfusion the alveolar ventilation may be expected to be 2.0 l/100 ml, the respiratory exchange ratio of 0.9 and the tensions of oxygen and carbon dioxide are respectively 104 and 39 mm Hg. The corresponding values for the oxygen saturation and the total content of carbon dioxide may also be read off the diagram.

**Alveolar Equations.** In space flight with two gas atmospheres and reduced total pressures, neither air nor oxygen will be breathed. It will, therefore, be of frequent interest to the engineer and designer to determine alveolar gas concentrations under various conditions. At times it will be inconvenient to measure all of the gaseous constituents. A set of equations called the alveolar equations has been developed that permits the calculations of some variables if others are known. The equations are derived as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Symbols</th>
<th>Symbols for Gas Phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \dot{V} )</td>
<td>( I ) - Inspired gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V )</td>
<td>( E ) - Expired gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( P )</td>
<td>( A ) - Alveolar gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( F )</td>
<td>( B ) - Barometric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R )</td>
<td>Respiratory exchange ratio ( \frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two assumptions must be made:

1. There is no gas exchange in the dead space; therefore, all gas exchange is through the alveolar membranes.

2. The inspired volume of nitrogen is equal to the expired volume (therefore the equations do not apply during denitrogenation or renitrogenation).

\[
\dot{V}_{IFN_2} = \dot{V}_{EFN_2} \quad (1)
\]

Because inspired and expired total volumes are not the same (except when \( R = 1 \)), one must be expressed in terms of the other.

\[
\dot{V}_I = \dot{V}_E \frac{F_{EN_2}}{F_{IN_2}} \quad (2)
\]

Similarly for \( \text{CO}_2 \) release

\[
\dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{V}_{EFCO_2} - \dot{V}_{IFCO_2}
\]
and substituting from equation (1)

\[ \dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{V}_{\text{EF}_{CO_2}} - \left( \dot{V}_E \cdot \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}} \right) F_{I_{CO_2}} \]

\[ \dot{V}_{CO_2} = \dot{V}_E \left( F_{E_{CO_2}} - F_{I_{CO_2}} \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}} \right) \quad (3) \]

Similarly for \( O_2 \) uptake

\[ \dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_{\text{FI}_{O_2}} - \dot{V}_{\text{EF}_{O_2}} \]

Substituting from equation (1)

\[ \dot{V}_{O_2} = \left( \dot{V}_E \cdot \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}} \right) F_{I_{O_2}} - \dot{V}_{\text{EF}_{O_2}} \]

\[ \dot{V}_{O_2} = \dot{V}_E \left( F_{I_{O_2}} \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}} - F_{O_2} \right) \quad (4) \]

Since \( R = \frac{\dot{V}_{CO_2}}{\dot{V}_{O_2}} = \text{Respiratory exchange ratio} \)

Substituting equations (3) and (4)

\[ R = \frac{F_{E_{CO_2}} - F_{I_{CO_2}} \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}}}{F_{I_{O_2}} \frac{F_{E_{N_2}}}{F_{I_{N_2}}} - F_{O_2}} \]
FEN₂ and FIN₂ can be eliminated by substituting

\[ F_{E N₂} = 1 - F_{E O₂} - F_{E CO₂} \]

and

\[ F_{I N₂} = 1 - F_{I O₂} \text{ (when } F_{I CO₂} \text{ is negligible)} \]

P can be substituted for F since

\[ F_x = \frac{P_x}{P_{B-47}}, \quad x = O₂, CO₂, N₂ \]

\[ (P_{H₂O} = 47 \text{mm Hg at body temperature}) \]

With these substitutions one can solve for

\[ P_{A CO₂}, P_{A O₂} \text{ and } R \]

On the other hand, it is incumbent upon the engineer and designer to assure that an individual will not be exposed to levels of oxygen much increased over sea-level concentrations. The effect of oxygen in increased partial pressures (hyperoxia) is tissue poisoning. The effect is especially pronounced in the lungs, and breathing an atmosphere composed primarily of oxygen for a day may result in death. When the PO₂ is raised to three atmospheres or more, the effects on the central nervous system are so sudden that lung edema seldom is the critical problem. The subject may collapse or experience convulsions which may precipitate death. These considerations obviously limit the therapeutic uses of oxygen and call for care in the design of respiratory support equipment and facilities.

Factors Relevant to Respiratory Support Equipment Design

Temperature, Humidity, and Respiratory Water Loss

*Humidity, Temperature, and Comfort.* The humidity standards for air conditioning have been set at approximately 50 percent Relative Humidity (RH), a level which subjective data indicate to be generally comfortable for the
entire body. Respiratory system comfort, however, demands considerably higher humidity levels (viz. speakers in climate-controlled auditoriums who must take frequent drinks of water to maintain respiratory system comfort).

At very high whole-body environmental temperatures, low humidity is comfortable because of the cooling effect produced by evaporation of water from the mucous membranes, in spite of the discomfort occasioned by drying of these membranes. The discomfort associated with breathing dry oxygen is well known among aviators. If the temperature of the inspired gases can be kept low enough, the respiratory system experiences (within limits) greater comfort at higher humidity. Because the gases are always essentially 100 percent saturated by the time they reach the lungs, saturation of the inspired gases is of little importance to the welfare of the mucous tissues deep in the respiratory system.

**Humidity and Engineering Considerations for Respiratory Support Equipment Design.** Expired breath is at body temperature, i.e., 37°C, and essentially saturated. Because it is desirable to maintain the temperature of the inspired gases considerably below this, there is a condensation of moisture in respiratory equipment from the expired breath as it is cooled. High humidity level has at least two implications for engineering consideration. First, wet surfaces are more susceptible to all types of corrosion, particularly when bathed in an atmosphere of essentially pure oxygen. Also, the higher the level of humidity the greater the tendency for valves or flow orifices to freeze.

From an engineering viewpoint then, it is desirable to keep the humidity as low as possible. This consideration has resulted in the requirement for the maintenance of essentially dry oxygen derived from compressed or liquid oxygen. Because of the great cooling occasioned by the expansion of these gases, even a small amount of moisture would result in the freezing of the valves and orifices.

The optimum level of humidity must be determined by a resolution of the opposing physiological and engineering considerations. Freezing and corrosion problems may well dictate that relative humidities be kept below levels that might be optimally desirable from a physiological viewpoint. It is therefore recommended that no arbitrary upper or lower levels of humidity be specified for breathing support equipment, but that the final level of humidity be determined by the temperature of the inspired gas, which relates to comfort, and by the engineering requirements to limit corrosion and freezing. To require specific levels of humidity without regard to the several parameters which will ultimately dictate the level of humidity is to place artificial constraints on the engineering design, and this may produce an undue complication in the final system implementation.

**Standardization of Gas Volumes for Temperature and Humidity.** Gas volumes are usually measured at the ambient temperature and pressure of the recording instruments and variable relative humidities. Because these conditions are not constant from one test to another, the volumes need to be converted to some standard form for interpretation or comparison with other data.
The conversion usually employed is the following:

- Volumes which relate to uptakes or evolution of gas by the body are converted to standard conditions, i.e., 760 mm Hg and 0°C.
- Other gas volumes are reported saturated and at body temperature and ambient pressure.

These notations are usually abbreviated:

- **ATP**: Ambient Temperature, Pressure, and humidity
- **ATPS**: Ambient Temperature and Pressure and Saturated with water vapor
- **STPD**: Standard Temperature and Pressure and Dry, i.e., 0°C, 760 mmHg
- **BTPS**: Body Temperature and Pressure and Saturated with water vapor.

The relationship between them can be expressed:

\[
V_{STPD} = V_{ATP} \times \frac{273}{273 + t} \times \frac{P_b - P_{H_2O}}{760}
\]

\[
V_{BTPS} = V_{ATP} \times \frac{310}{273 + t} \times \frac{P_b - P_{H_2O}}{P_b - 47}
\]

With these equations one can convert from one set of notations to another. The use of table 11-4 makes the process simpler.

**Respiratory Water Loss.** Respiratory water loss can be calculated for any given condition if minute volume of pulmonary ventilation, inspired gas temperature, and the relative humidity of inspired gases are known. For usual minute volumes, one can assume near saturation of the inspired gases at body temperature.

**Energy Cost of Breathing**

Whenever respiratory-protective equipment is used, the work of breathing increases. This increase may be expressed in three ways, the first two quantitative and the last one qualitative:

1. The Physical Work of Breathing. This can be expressed as foot-pounds per minute or, more commonly (using the pressure-volume loops), as gram-centimeters per breath or per minute.
Table 11-4
Factors for Conversion of Volumes from ATPS to STPD and BTPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient Temperature °C</th>
<th>Aqueous Vapor Pressure (mmHg) at Saturation</th>
<th>Factor to Convert to:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STPD</td>
<td>BTPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>0.936</td>
<td>1.133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>0.932</td>
<td>1.128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>0.928</td>
<td>1.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>1.118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>0.920</td>
<td>1.113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>0.916</td>
<td>1.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>0.911</td>
<td>1.102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>18.7</td>
<td>0.906</td>
<td>1.096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>0.902</td>
<td>1.091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>0.897</td>
<td>1.085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>0.893</td>
<td>1.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>0.888</td>
<td>1.075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>0.883</td>
<td>1.069</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>26.7</td>
<td>0.878</td>
<td>1.063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>28.3</td>
<td>0.874</td>
<td>1.057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>0.869</td>
<td>1.051</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>31.8</td>
<td>0.864</td>
<td>1.045</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>33.7</td>
<td>0.859</td>
<td>1.039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>0.853</td>
<td>1.032</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>0.848</td>
<td>1.026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>39.9</td>
<td>0.843</td>
<td>1.020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>42.2</td>
<td>0.838</td>
<td>1.014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>0.832</td>
<td>1.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>47.1</td>
<td>0.826</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>49.7</td>
<td>0.821</td>
<td>0.994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>0.816</td>
<td>0.987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>55.3</td>
<td>0.810</td>
<td>0.980</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. The Physiological Work of Breathing. This is the energy cost of breathing. With an appropriate apparatus it is easy to measure. It is the real cost of breathing and is easily related to respiratory gas storage requirements.

3. Fatigue Effects. Increased breathing work loads of identical increased energy costs can produce vastly different fatigue effects. As an example, pressure breathing produces fatigue effects out of all proportion to the relative increase in energy cost.

The simplest way of determining the energy cost of breathing is to determine the increased oxygen consumed coincident with the increased breathing activity. Figure 11-28 shows the typical effects of increased ventilation. The scatter diagram shows the relation of pulmonary minute volume to minute oxygen consumption with increased external respiratory dead space in a single subject. Both parameters were plotted as increases over resting values. The curve was visually fitted to the points. Points in the areas marked A, B, C, and D were determined with 2780 cc, 2280 cc, 1780 cc, and 780 cc externally added dead space, respectively. Extrapolation into lower left quadrant permits an estimate of the energy cost of breathing at resting ventilation volumes. It can be seen further that total cost of moving a given volume of air may be determined from the curve by adding 6 cc to a value indicated on the ordinate. The triangle and star represent the average of 10 tests on each of 2 additional subjects. To obtain an estimate of the calorie cost, assume an R value and multiply by the appropriate calorie equivalent. If R is 0.825, the calorie equivalent of a liter of oxygen is 4.825. Note the estimate of the oxygen cost of resting ventilation (0.5 ml O₂ per liter ventilation, which is in agreement with the generally cited figure).

Figure 11-28. Oxygen cost of increased ventilation produced by breathing through four different added dead spaces. (Reprinted from Journal of Applied Physiology, 1957, 11(1), 84-86)
The data for the above curve were obtained using a breathing rate of 26 breaths per minute. Minute volumes approaching 80 liters per minute require very large tidal volumes. Figure 11-29 shows the oxygen cost of breathing over a range of breathing frequencies using only the data for the more efficient breathing, i.e., the lowest oxygen cost for a given minute volume of ventilation. There is good reason to believe that the body will inherently choose the optimum combination of rate and depth of breathing for a given circumstance. This curve should, therefore, be reliable for design purposes.

![Graph showing the relationship between pulmonary ventilation and oxygen consumption](image)

Figure 11-29: Relation of increased pulmonary ventilation and O\textsubscript{2} cost of increased ventilation for "efficient" breathing. Curve was visually fitted to points. (Reprinted from *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 1958, 12(3), 413-424)

Because even very hard work rarely increases ventilation above 120 liters per minute, the energy cost of breathing is a very small portion of the total energy cost of work. At 120 liters, it is just over 300 ml O\textsubscript{2} per minute. A work load to produce such a large increase in pulmonary ventilation will produce a total oxygen consumption of well over 4 liters per minute. Thus, the oxygen cost of breathing is less than 8 percent of the total cost of the work. Because the relationship is not linear, the percentage of energy cost is much lower at lower work loads. Table 11-5 shows this relationship for a single subject. It should be noted that there may be considerable variability among individuals. The table illustrates the point that any increased breathing work load that can be easily tolerated will not result in meaningful increases in oxygen consumption.
Table 11-5
Oxygen Cost of Breathing as Related to Total Oxygen Cost of Exercise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total O₂ Cost of Exercise (l/min)</th>
<th>O₂ Cost of Ventilation (ml/min)</th>
<th>O₂ Cost of Ventilation (%/min of Total O₂ Cost)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rest 0.30</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.37</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some Physiologic Parameters Relevant to Respiratory Support Equipment Design

Because breathing is regulated (under all normal circumstances) to maintain a constant arterial blood PCO₂, the amount of oxygen in the respired gas mixture (so long as it is above 120 or so mm Hg), has little effect on the amount of oxygen removed by the blood or on the pulmonary minute volume. Even 100 percent oxygen at sea level, therefore, does not reduce the breathing. Ordinarily about 25 liters of air are moved in and out of the lungs for each liter of oxygen removed. This is called the Oxygen Ventilation Equivalent.

Because only about 4 percent of the respired volume is removed by the lung blood, a closed-loop breathing support system, when the exhaled breath is purged of CO₂ and rebreathed, will represent a considerable economy compared to conventional open-loop systems. Table 11-6 shows these relationships with engineering implications. It should be noted, however, that the comparison shown does not represent the real tradeoff. A closed system must also remove CO₂ and provide an exhalation volume accumulation. The table shows only the stored gas requirements.

Average astronaut activity requires about 2 lb of oxygen per day. In table 11-6 this falls above midway between rest and light work. There may, however, be short bouts of physical exertion with markedly increased metabolic activity. This is more likely to occur with extravehicular activity when the astronaut is being supported by portable breathing gear. (See also chapter 18, Work, Heat and Oxygen Cost.)

Physiological and Engineering Considerations of CO₂ Levels in Respiratory Protective and Support Equipment Design

Long-Term PₐCO₂ Effects. Long-term CO₂ effects are defined here as those effects that might be produced by exposure to elevated PₐCO₂ tensions over a maximum 15-hour period. In considering the effects of altered PₐCO₂ levels on the body, it might be worthwhile to note that in certain disease processes the body PₐCO₂ is considerably elevated and the body seems to adapt without noticeable deterioration in the performance of the individual. Similarly, persons living at high altitudes have a significant decrease in alveolar and arterial PₐCO₂ without any measurable detrimental effects on general performance levels.
Table 11-6
Gas Storage Requirements for Closed-Loop and Open-Loop Systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metabolic Level</th>
<th>Open System</th>
<th>Closed System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minute Volume (l)</td>
<td>Lb Air/Hr (With 150% Container Weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>2.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rest</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>3.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light work</td>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>8.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium work</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mad. heavy work</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy work</td>
<td>59.5</td>
<td>25.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum work</td>
<td>132.0</td>
<td>56.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In a number of studies animals and humans have been exposed for prolonged periods to various levels of elevated carbon dioxide. Although elevated levels produced noticeable physiological changes, particularly in the renal activity necessary for elimination of the buffered acid, no studies have defined any debilitating or compromising effects of modest increases (i.e., up to 3% at sea level) in CO₂ on performance. The reader interested in a detailed treatment of this topic should consult:


**CO₂ Levels in Rebreather Systems.** It would seem desirable to maintain PCO₂ at as low a level as practicable because we ordinarily inspire an atmosphere in which PCO₂ is a small fraction of one percent. However, considerable studies and operational experience have indicated that there are no subjective or performance effects when PCO₂ is allowed to increase to as much as 22 mm Hg partial pressure. It is therefore recommended that for rebreather systems, PCO₂ be kept as low as practicable in terms of engineering requirements. However, if the engineering penalty necessary to keep PCO₂ at 8 mm Hg or below is exorbitant as compared with that required to maintain PCO₂ with no excursions going above 22 mm Hg, it is then suggested that these higher levels should be allowed.

A study report from the U.S. Naval School of Aviation Medicine (1962) indicates that for the full pressure suit helmet or the partial pressure suit helmet with the conventional face seal, CO₂ levels run between 1-1/2 and 3 percent at sea level (i.e., up to 22 mm Hg partial pressure). Subsequent studies by the Air Force and NASA have indicated similar levels of carbon dioxide in helmets of space suits and full or partial pressure suits with no detrimental effect on the wearers.
CHAPTER 12
THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM

by
Ashton Graybiel, M.D.
Naval Aerospace Medical Center

The material presented here represents an attempt to provide the reader with some comprehension of the role that the vestibular system may play in manned space missions involving rotation of a portion of the space vehicle. The "vestibular problem" is one item to be considered, along with others, in reaching a compromise that determines vehicle design criteria. Among the interested parties are (1) specialists knowledgeable in regard to the other human element problems; (2) engineers who must ensure inertial stability of the vehicle, taking into account "cost"; (3) astronauts who must assume partial responsibility not only in self-prevention of vestibular side effects but also, along with astroscientists, participate as subjects or observers in validation experiments; (4) biomedical personnel in charge of long-range and specific-mission plans; and (5) investigators conducting ground-based supporting experimentation. The operational objective of concern is the prevention of vestibular side effects, which encompasses the selection process, adaptation, education and experience, and the use of various countermeasures, including drugs. The greater the understanding of the events and processes underlying the side effects, the better this operational objective will be achieved.

A systematic review of the vestibular system is complicated by the many gaps in knowledge resulting from the fact that the vestibular system only recently has come under intensive study. In areas where information is available, it is mostly of a descriptive nature. For these reasons, the vestibular system will be discussed first in general terms, where the issues are quite clear, before proceeding to more specific features, where our understanding may not be as precise.

In primitive fish the "ear," containing acoustic and nonacoustic sensory organs, developed in association with the hindbrain. The organ of hearing long

Opinions or conclusions contained in this chapter are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect the views or endorsement of the U.S. Navy
Reviewed by G. Melvill Jones, M.D., McGill University, Montreal, Canada.
remained in a rudimentary state, and the evolutionary development of the acoustic system had to await the expansion of the primitive forebrain in higher vertebrates. In striking contrast, the nonacoustic portion of the ear, containing otolith organs and semicircular canals, developed early because these organs of equilibrium were essential. With the appearance of the cerebellum, an outgrowth of the hindbrain, the basic componentry of the vestibular system was complete. Thus, as we view the phylogenetic scale from fish to man, the essential structure and the cardinal purpose of the vestibular system remain unchanged.

The otoliths and canals are uniquely designed to sense linear and angular accelerations; to convert this energy into neural impulses; and, mainly through influencing motor behavior, to aid in orientation to the upright and in eye-head-body coordination. Because the sensory inputs from the vestibular organs are destined mainly for lower portions of the central nervous system, we are not familiar, through personal experience, with the functions they subserve, as in the case of vision or hearing. Indeed, not until the turn of the century was it generally recognized that the organs of equilibrium comprise a portion of the labyrinth of the inner ear.

Under natural stimulus conditions, the behavioral responses to which the vestibular system contributes are characterized by automaticity, reliability, and equality among members of a species or subspecies. There is little if any awareness of vestibular influences when man is engaged in natural activities, implying that the incredibly complex integrative mechanisms intercalated between sensory input and motor output have been effected in elegant fashion. This “silent elegance” is of such importance to the organism that it could only have evolved through natural selection and survival of the fittest. A backward look at our evolutionary development is enormously important in appreciating both the harmony that characterizes functions subserved by the vestibular organs under natural physiological conditions and the inherent limitations in making rapid adjustments to abnormal patterns of accelerative stimuli under artificial conditions.

Long before man was aware that he had organs of equilibrium, he learned to extend his natural powers of locomotion by various means. In these motion environments, he was exposed to abnormal patterns of accelerations to which he could not quickly adapt, and motion sickness resulted. Prior to the “discovery” of the vestibular organs, reports dealing with the etiology and treatment of motion sickness were of little or no value. Subsequently, the major advances were made in the light of the role of the vestibular organs and the institution of studies under laboratory conditions.

Only recently has there been a concerted attempt to study the vestibular system in a comprehensive manner, greatly aided by the new techniques of morphologists, neurophysiologists, psychophysiologists, and others. While most investigations of structure necessarily must be conducted on animals, many behavioral studies are easier to carry out on man than animal and have the unrivaled advantage of using the definitive experimental subject.
Almost all experiments on man depend on using an unnatural stimulus that elicits a response that is always unnatural and usually abnormal. This is done in order to manipulate and measure the stimulus to canal or otolith or both, and to evoke specific measurable responses. Most responses imply that the vestibular system is disturbed and that these disturbances fall into two categories, depending on whether they are system-bound or not. System-bound responses include abnormal eye motions, "sensations," and eye-head-body incoordination, and have characteristics of reflex disturbances. Non-system-bound responses include the symptomatology of motion sickness and do not have the characteristics of reflex disturbances.

The advantages that the investigator gains by eliciting abnormal responses are offset generally by some amount as a result of the departures from natural stimulus conditions. These handicaps include individual differences in susceptibility to a disturbing stimulus and individual differences in the rate of acquisition and decay of adaptation effects. All of these individual differences are more prominent in dealing with motion sickness than with reflex disturbances.

With regard to useful servation, the importance of the vestibular organs to man's performance is far less than in marine forms of life which must remain upright when free-swimming, in birds that fly, and even in subhuman primates. In man there seems to be a disparity between the great potentials of the vestibular system he inherited and its useful servation. This disparity disappears, however, when we come to consider reflex disturbances and motion sickness which may, as a result of exposure to a physically harmless stimuli, create turmoil throughout the body.

In research bearing on the design of a rotating space vehicle, laboratory studies have indicated that vestibular side effects tend to increase as a log function of angular velocity (generating cross-coupled angular accelerations) and that other physiological side effects are the result of short radius and high angular velocities. Thus, it seems that an effective design approach will involve assigning relative weighting factors to the cross-coupled angular acceleration, Coriolis accelerations, and subgravity level (short radius effects would not be involved if the other conditions were satisfied). Observations in space flight and parabolic flight, however, indicate that persons change in their susceptibility to motion sickness in weightlessness, complicating the "vestibular problem." An important missing bit of information concerns the change in susceptibility as a function of subgravity level, an issue presently under study. Inasmuch as nearly all of our information on the vestibular system has been obtained under laboratory conditions, the extrapolation to space flight conditions must be made with appropriate reservations.

The End Organs

Among the organs of special sense that are stimulated by physical means, the vestibular organs are unique in that, under physiological conditions, they are stimulated exclusively by the gravitoinertial force environment; the semicircular
canals (largely if not entirely gravity independent) respond to angular or cross-coupled angular accelerations and the otolith organs to gravity and to linear or Coriolis accelerations. Man has no control over a gravitoinertial force comparable to that of blocking a visual stimulus by closing the eyes in a lighted room or blocking the entry of sound waves to the cochlea. The only control man has is that of manipulation, for example, the nullification of gravity in orbital flight or control over the generation of impulse accelerations.

The paired vestibular end organs are situated in hollowed-out channels in the petrous portion of the temporal bone (figure 12-1) (Anson, Harper, and Winch, 1968). Within the bony labyrinth, the membranous labyrinth is surrounded by perilymph and filled with endolymph. Thus the sensory receptor mechanisms are protected from the effects of superimposed body weight by the bony labyrinth and, by virtue of the contained fluids, from the effects of accelerations except for displacements due to differences in specific weight among fluid and solid tissues and displacement due to inertial lag in fluid-filled ducts which resemble a torus. This “protection” is illustrated by the findings on animal subjects exposed to high peak- and sustained-linear acceleration. In table 12-1 are shown some findings on squirrel monkeys tested at a wide range of linear accelerations immediately after exposure to sustained accelerations. At levels below 60G (Igarashi and Nagaba, 1968), none demonstrated abnormal eye motions and only a few manifested slight ataxia. Moreover, none sustained any damage to the vestibular organs, as revealed by histologic study of the gross and fine structure. At levels of 60G and above fragmentation appeared in the otolithic zone.

Figure 12-1. Reconstruction of membranous labyrinth and related anatomy. (Anson, Harper, & Winch, 1968)
### Table 12-1
Gross Ataxia and Spontaneous Eye Movement Immediately After Exposure to High-Intensity Acceleration Stimuli

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>g-Level</th>
<th>Number of Animals</th>
<th>Ataxia</th>
<th>Spontaneous Eye Movement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>Bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 p</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250 p</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 p</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350 p</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 p</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450 p</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 p</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[p, peak-g exposure; ++++, severe; ++, moderate; +, slight; ±, questionable; -, negative].

### The Otolith Apparatus

The four otolith organs appear as thickened portions, termed macular plates, on the inner walls of the paired utricle and saccule (figure 12-2). Taken together, these four curved macular plates occupy, without overlap, a significant portion of a sphere. A cross section of the saccular macula of a squirrel monkey, which is similar to that in man, is shown in figure 12-3, and a sketch of the zonal structure is shown in figure 12-4 (Igarashi, 1966).

The otolithic membrane contains otocnia (figure 12-5) (Lindeman, Ades, and West, 1970), concretions of calcium carbonate with a specific weight of about 2.71, embedded in a gelatinous material. This membrane is the only tissue within the bony labyrinth that differs much from the specific gravity of the lymph fluids. The otolith membrane rests on the cupular membrane into which protrude the hair-like projections of the sensory cells. It is the movement of the otolithic membrane relative to these sensory “hairs,” or cilia, that constitutes the effective stimulus to the organ (figure 12-6) (Lindeman, Ades, and West, 1970).
Figure 12–2. Labyrinth of left ear as viewed from medial aspect.

Figure 12–3. View of macula saccula from squirrel monkey. Zonal structure is clearly seen. (Igarashi, 1966)
The Vestibular System

Figure 12-4. Schematic of zonal structure of macula sacculi in squirrel monkey. (Igarashi, 1966)

Figure 12-5. Scanning micrograph showing statoconia from macula utriculi in cat. (Lindeman, Ades, & West, 1970)
The sketch in figure 12-7 was drawn from electronmicrographs of the sensory epithelium of the utricular macula of the squirrel monkey (Spoendlin, 1966). Two types of hair cells, each with two types of cilia, are depicted. Each cell has 60 to 70 stereocilia and one kinocilium laid out in strict geometrical arrangement. It is considered likely that the kinocilium plays the major role in the energy transfer. In different regions of the macula, kinocilia are polarized in different directions (figure 12-8); hence, a shearing force in one plane will result in kinocilia moving in different directions with reference to the kinociliar pole (Spoendlin, 1965).

The "power train," constituting the cilia-otolith mechanism, is initiated by the acceleration of gravity and by impulse linear accelerations so directed as to cause a shearing displacement between the otolithic membrane and the membrane supporting the hair cells. The result is mechanical deformation of the cilia (kinocilium) which, in turn, causes chemical changes affecting the generation of bioelectricity (nerve action potentials). After a suprathreshold stimulus, the resting spike discharge is altered in its temporal and spatial patterning, constituting the propagated discharge which, traveling along nerve fibers to the central nervous system, is the way in which otolith sensory inputs affect behavior. Most receptor cells have a resting discharge but some do not. An example of typical responses is shown in figure 12-9 (Wernåll and Lundquist, 1966): i.e., deviation toward or away from the kinociliar pole has opposite effects. In some cells stimulation may result in abolition of the resting discharge.
Figure 12-7. Schematic drawing of an area from a vestibular sensory epithelium, with haircell of type I (HC I) and type II (HC II). Typical arrangement of the stereocilia (St) and kinocilia (KC), modified kinocilia (kc) with their basal bodies and roots (b) in the supporting cells (S) and (B) in the hair cells, Nerve fibres (N), Nerve-chalice (NC) and Nerve endings (NE), Synaptic structures (Sy), Golgi membranes (G), Multivesicular bodies (V), and endoplasmic reticulum (E). Reticular membrane (RM) Microvilli (MV). (From Spoendlin, 1966, p. 41)

Figure 12-8. Schematic representation of polarization pattern of sensory cells in macula utriculi of guinea pig. Arrows indicate direction of polarization showing fanlike spread from one side of macula up to line beyond which polarization is reversed. Kinocilia on either side of dividing line face each other. (Spoendlin, 1965)
Figure 12-9. Electrical discharge rate of hair cells as function of displacement of the sensory hairs. (From Wersäll & Lundquist, 1966)

The Semicircular Canals

The orientation of the six semicircular canals with reference to the head is shown in figure 12-10. It will be noted that, although the three canals on one side lie approximately in mutually perpendicular planes, only the horizontal canals lie close to one of the coordinate planes of the skull, the superior and posterior canals deviating by 45 degrees from the sagittal and frontal planes. Thus, rotary motions in the horizontal plane, generating impulse angular accelerations, would stimulate the horizontal pair of canals, although not maximally. Rotation in the sagittal and frontal planes would generate angular accelerations in planes almost 45 degrees from the planes of vertical (superior and posterior) canals. The operational significance is seen when the canals are stimulated in a pilot during pitch, roll, and yaw of the aircraft (Clark and Stewart, 1962; Hixson, Niven, and Correia, 1966).

The so-called "semicircular" canals form a complete circuit by virtue of their connections with the utricle (figure 12-1). One extremity of each canal is dilated to form the ampulla, which contains the sensory receptors. A cross section of the ampulla of a horizontal canal of the squirrel monkey is shown under low magnification in figure 12-11 (Igarashi, 1966). The crista is a transverse ridge of tissue covered with the sensory epithelium containing sensory cells whose cilia extend into the cupula. This structure completes a fluid-tight gate across the ampulla, hinged at the crista and free to move back and forth in response to movements of the endolymph. This constitutes the so-called cupula-endolymph system. Clockwise rotation about an axis at right angles to the plane shown in figure 12-11 would result in an inertial lag of the endolymph in the torus-like canal, causing the cupula to be displaced counterclockwise. The fine structure of the sensory epithelium is provided with hair cells similar to those of the macula. The kinocilia in the hair cells
are uniformly polarized; in the horizontal canals they are toward the utricle (utricular pole) and in the vertical canals toward the opposite pole.

![Figure 12-10. Orientation of semicircular canals (enlarged) as viewed in skull from above.](image)

It is apparent that the power train involved in the transformation of angular acceleration forces to electrical energy in the semicircular canals is quite different from the corresponding mechanisms in the otolith organs. In the first place, the acceleration of gravity, which plays the major role under natural stimulus conditions in the cilio-otolith system, may be neglected. The cupula-endolymph system, responding to impulse angular accelerations in the plane of the canal, has been likened to a fluid-filled torus, with the cupula responding to movements of the endolymph in the manner of a spring-mass system with viscous damping. Head motions under natural conditions generate a high angular acceleration with the onset of rotation, transient in character, followed by a very brief period of rotation approaching constant velocity, and ending with another transient acceleration of opposite sign. The duration of angular accelerations is usually measured in fractions of a second and, inasmuch as the areas under the curves depicting acceleration and deceleration are the same, the cupular deflection is immediately restored to, or almost to, its natural resting place. In sharp contrast to the otolith organs, the variations in G-loading encountered in space flight may be neglected in dealing with the stimulus to the canals. In the absence of angular or Coriolis accelerations (cross-coupled angular accelerations) there is no accelerative stimulus present. The resting discharge presumably is of chemical origin.
Central Nervous System Connections

This section summarizes the exceedingly complex vestibular reflex mechanism, and points out some of the important functional neuroanatomical relations. Figure 12-12, indicating the principal nervous pathways (Rasmussen, 1952), and figure 12-13 (Graybiel, 1969), indicating some additional features, will serve as visual aids.

Afferent impulses from sensory receptors in the canals and otolith organs are propagated along first-order neurons that terminate in the vestibular nuclear complex, cerebellum, reticular formation, and, according to one authority at least (Camis, 1930), some primary fibers reach the motor nuclei of the extraocular muscles, although not verified in a more recent investigation (Carpenter, 1960). These terminations are sites of origin for monosynaptic vestibular pathways and receiving sites for reciprocal or outside influences. The widespread distribution of these neuronal chains and networks, along with the less well-known efferent fibers terminating in the receptor cells of the canals and otolith organs, constitutes the reflex vestibular system.

The vestibular nuclear complex is the chief center, both with regard to anatomical organization and functional control of the vestibular system. The vestibular nuclei have important reciprocal linkages with the cerebellum and
reticular formation; they send out major projections that ascend, descend, and cross the neuraxis; they contain sites for interconnection with other sensory systems and other neural mechanisms coordinating reflex activity (Fredrickson and Schwarz, 1970; Gernandt, 1967, 1968; Ito, 1970; Nyberg-Hansen, 1970; Pompeiano, 1970; Snyder and Lowy, 1970; Wilson, 1970).

In addition to well-defined vestibular pathways, there is evidence that vestibular activity reaches areas to which specific tracts have not yet been identified. Representation in the cerebral cortex of the brain has been established using the evoked potential method (Mickle and Ads, 1953, 1954; Spiegel et al., 1970). Connections between the vestibular system and visceral nervous system have been demonstrated, using electrophysiological methods upon animal subjects (Megirian and Manning, 1967; Tang and Gernandt, 1969) and behavioral indicators for man exposed to unusual periodic accelerations.

The vestibular system, almost entirely concerned with the control of movement, is subject to strong modulating influences. Specific control over...
afferent impulses may be in the nature of gating mechanisms subserved by efferent vestibular fibers (Gacek, 1960, 1968; Smith and Rasmussen, 1968). The cerebellum, which contributes greatly to the fine control of movement, exercises a strong tonic inhibitory control over vestibular reflexes. Cortical influences also are inhibitory, as are those having their origin in the reticular formation.

![Diagram of the brain and its connections](image)

Figure 12-13. Depicting possible (abnormal) irradiation of vestibular activity (dotted lines) following strong Coriolis acceleration; first order refers to effects. NF = fastigial nucleus; U = uvula; N = nodulus; F = flacculus; EOMN = extraocular motor nuclei; MLF = medial longitudinal fasciculus; RF = reticular formation; PVN = paraventricular nucleus; SN = supraoptic nucleus; Ant. H. = anterior hypothalamic area; DMN = dorsomedial hypothalamic nucleus; VMN = ventromedial hypothalamic nucleus; Post. N. = posterior nucleus; L.H.A. = lateral hypothalamic area; M.N. = medial nucleus.

The extensive connections of the vestibular system with the motor nuclei of the extraocular muscles deserve special attention. Stimulation of a branch of the vestibular nerve supplying a single canal in the cat may result in conjugate deviation of the eyes (Fluur, 1959). Such a movement, involving agonists and antagonists, implies that messages with highly specific physiological “meanings” are sent to the extraocular motor nuclei. The close relation between the vestibular system, on the one hand, and vision and control over eye motions, on the other, has a firm foundation in the underlying neuroanatomical relations.

Extensive connections, some of them monosynaptic (Wilson, 1970), also exist between some of the vestibular nuclei and the spinal cord, particularly to those portions controlling movement of the head and trunk. These underlying neuroanatomical relationships provide the foundation for the
powerful control exerted by the vestibular system upon coordinated movements of eyes, head, and trunk.

The reciprocal influences between canaliculic and otolithic inputs and the integration between right and left vestibular inputs are of great importance, and some of the anatomical pathways and sites of interaction have been identified and studied in detail. With regard to the advantages of having paired organs, the benefits must lie in synergism effected in the central nervous system, inasmuch as loss or even damage to one labyrinth results not only in loss of serivation but also in severe vestibular disturbances. These disturbances, that may be severe in man, would be fatal in many animals and stand in sharp contrast to the little or no disturbance following unilateral loss of visual or auditory function. Inasmuch as vestibular influences do not reach the neocortex to any great extent, the possibility of right-left differences based on learning would be negligible, a matter of practical significance.

Static and Dynamic Characteristics

There is an important body of information dealing with the class of phenomena under this heading, much of recent date. This information is widely scattered in scientific journals, ranging through publications devoted to the medical, psychological, engineering, and even mathematical sciences. A relatively large amount of this information is in the nature of “facts,” but a very important amount represents attempts to formulate theories based on these facts and, insofar as possible, express them in the form of nomographs or in mathematical notation. There are reasons why this is difficult even for the simplest of all input-output responses; i.e., those due to stimulation of the horizontal pair of horizontal canals. The basic difficulty is that this cannot be done based on information obtained under natural stimulus conditions (although Nashner’s sophisticated experiments, mentioned in the next section, approach near-normal stimulus conditions). As soon as one departs from natural stimulus conditions he is usually dealing with perturbed responses, representing instability of the canalicular system, that may implicate the otolithic system; in any event, there is an attempt to restore stability through the adaptation process.

If one attempts to extend the scope of his theory to include the vertical pairs of canals by using facts obtained by exposure to angular accelerations in the sagittal and frontal planes of the head (body), which is commonly done, none of the canals lie in these planes; indeed, they are 45 degrees from this “ideal.” Central nervous system processing somehow compensates for this anatomical state of affairs, but the underlying mechanisms have not been fully elucidated.

Much less information is available with regard to the otolithic system, and here one must contend with nonvestibular somatosensory receptors that constitute, in effect, a second system. It is further complicated by the constant stimulus due to gravity. Finally when all systems are operating and interacting under abnormal stimulus conditions, the input-output relations are difficult to stabilize, and the question of relevance is raised. Insofar as they simulate an operational situation they have relevancy, but extrapolation to natural stimulus conduction must be done with caution.
Natural Stimulus Conditions

Under natural stimulus conditions the semicircular canals are stimulated only as a result of angular accelerations with reference to the skull. Under these conditions, a person does not perceive a true sensation of rotation or visual illusions or manifest nystagmus, all of which are used as indicators under many experimental conditions. Positional nystagmus observed in some normal persons is an exception. The canals furnish information with regard to angular velocity and displacement, and some investigators are of the opinion that they furnish information at two or three higher derivatives than angular velocity. Head motions under natural conditions generate a high angular acceleration with the onset of rotation, transient in character, followed by a very brief period of rotation approaching constant velocity, and ending with another transient acceleration of opposite sign. Although the acceleration and deceleration magnitude may be different, the time-integral of angular acceleration at the onset and offset are equal (area under the curves). Thus under most natural conditions the end organ is thought to respond as an integrating accelerometer.

The otolith organs pose an interesting question that would seem to be of more than academic interest; namely, whether they always act as accelerometers. This relates to the fact that even if the head is “fixed” in the gravitational field, the receptors are stimulated, giving rise to a tonic input over and above the resting discharge. There is general agreement that if the head is rotated in the gravitational field in such a manner as to cause relative motion between otolithic and cupular membranes, this constitutes an effective stimulus, in addition to whatever suprathreshold tangential accelerations are generated. In the head-fixed situation, the question arises whether receptor elements continually fire (respond) due to the weight or pressure of the otoconia, or whether the fixation is sufficiently imperfect, as in the case of the eye, to stimulate receptor elements as a result of fine or imperceptible motions of the head relative to the direction of gravity.

There are a number of stimulus conditions which meet or nearly meet the criterion of natural terrestrial conditions, as will be discussed later.

Unnatural Stimulus Conditions

This section is devoted mainly to experimental findings in subgravity states, which are of operational and theoretical interest. The central feature in all of the findings pertains to the role of the otolith system. Additional information is presented in a later section dealing with unnatural stimuli in “Vestibular Servation in Man” as well as in Appendix A, which contains a summary of vestibular modeling efforts.

Ocular Counterrolling. Ocular torsion may be defined as the involuntary conjugate rolling movement of the eyes around their lines of sight in the direction opposite to the leftward or rightward tilted position of the head (and body) with respect to the gravitational upright. The measurements are made by comparing the position of a metal frame, to which the subject is thoroughly secured (head secured by individually fitted dental appliance), and the relative
position of the uncovered eye from colored photographs made in the upright and tilt positions. The amount of the roll is measured in degrees of arc. Findings on a large number of subjects are shown in figure 12-26, presented in the section on functional tests.

One experiment dealt with the problem of response decline as function of length of exposure. The findings, figure 12-14, indicate fluctuations in the amount of roll but no significant decline over a period of about 8 hours (Miller & Graybiel, 1970c). These findings bear on the question raised above regarding the nature of the stimulus responsible for the tonic output. In figure 12-15 (Miller, Graybiel & Kellogg, 1966) the amount of roll as a function of G-loading is compared in seven normal and six labyrinthine-defective (L-D) subjects; the decline manifested in the L-D subjects may have been due to residual otolithic function. In figure 12-16 is shown a log plot with extensions into the supragravity range based on data from other experiments (Miller & Graybiel, 1965). It is seen that the S-shaped curve becomes linear at around 0.6 G, i.e., proportional to the log of the stimulus; the upper limit to this logarithmicity has not been determined.

Figure 12-14. Counterrolling manifested by normal and labyrinthine-defective subjects during 8-hr period of sustained tilt.
Figure 12–15. Counterrolling as a function of magnitude of gravitational force (zero g, 1/2 g, 1 g) and body position with respect to direction of force in normal and labyrinthine-defective subjects. (Miller, Graybiel, & Kellogg, 1966)

Figure 12–16. Relative otolith activity (mean counterrolling response of 3 subjects) as a function of logarithm of gravitational stimulus. (Miller & Graybiel, 1965)
Oculogravic Illusion. When a person is subjected to a change in direction of the gravitoinertial vertical with reference to himself, this is rightly interpreted as body tilt away from the upright, and the visual framework tends to tilt concordantly. The latter has been termed the oculogravic illusion (Graybiel, 1952). It is mainly dependent on the integrity of the otolith system, although nonvestibular proprioceptors may contribute to its perception. When a person views an objectively vertical luminous line in the dark, it will appear to tilt when the direction of the resultant force vector has inclined about 1.5 degrees from the Earth vertical. The observer's estimates of the tilt correspond closely to the change in direction of the resultant vector up to about 30 degrees, but beyond this the subject increasingly overestimates the angular change. In figure 12-17 are shown estimates made of the illusion by normal and L-D subjects under dry and head-out water immersion conditions on a human centrifuge (Graybiel et al., 1968a). There was greater individual variation in the settings made by the L-D compared to the normal subjects, but the contribution of (mainly) nonotolith gravireceptors under dry conditions in the case of the L-D subjects is evident. Water immersion simulated to some extent the weightless condition with regard to nonotolith but not to otolith receptors.

In figure 12-18 are shown the settings made by normal subjects during prolonged exposure on a human centrifuge (Clark & Graybiel, 1963a). The body was restrained and the head fixed by means of a fiberglas helmet. As in the case of ocular counterrolling, there was little or no decay in the magnitude of the illusion during periods measured in hours.
Up to this point the illustrations of the oculogravic illusion suggest that it falls into the near-normal type of vestibular response, but in some circumstances this is not the case. One is when the strength of the stimulus is increased while the subject is riding in a lighted circular room at the end of the arm of the centrifuge. Everything in the field of vision appears to tilt 90 degrees to the Earth vertical. Visual cues to the Earth vertical are literally overpowered by the strength of the stimulus to the otoliths, receptors, and other gravireceptors.

A and E Phenomena. Wade (1968) has recently reviewed the literature dealing with visual orientation to the upright, and how it is influenced by body position with reference to the gravitational vertical, and has analyzed the contributory role of postural mechanisms in terms of the otolith, neck, and trunk systems. In brief, it is readily demonstrated that when man is upright, orientation of a visual target to the gravitational vertical and horizontal, in the absence of visual cues to the upright, is accurate and that with rightward or leftward tilt, a bias appears first in a gradual displacement of the visual vertical to the opposite side of the gravitational vertical, the Muller (1916) or E effect; after tilting through 65 degrees the bias reverses and eventually is displaced toward the same side, the Aubert (1861) or A effect.

The curves in Figure 12-19 A and B demonstrate differences between normal and L-D subjects, respectively, in perceiving the A and E effects,
which clearly point to a contributory influence of the otolith apparatus. Some evidence that this bias is lost in weightlessness was demonstrated in Gemini flights V and VII (Graybiel et al., 1967), suggesting its dependence under terrestrial conditions on otolithic and nonotolithic gravireceptors.

_Inversion Illusion._ In space flight the inversion illusion has been experienced by some cosmonauts on making the transition into weightlessness (Billingham, 1966; Yuganov et al., 1966). Its probable dependence on physiological deafferentation of the otolith receptors is suggested by the observation in parabolic flight that some normal subjects but none of the L-D subjects experienced the illusion (Graybiel & Kellogg, 1967).

_Nystagmus._ Caloric nystagmus has been elicited in parabolic flight missions (Kellogg & Graybiel, 1967). With eyes open, nystagmus was manifested during pushover and pullup but not during the weightless phase. An experiment was repeated (Graybiel et al., 1970a) using a similar procedure except that the subject's eyes were closed. Figure 12-20 illustrates typical findings. Note that in the first two parabolas, nystagmus (velocity of the slow phase) declines but is present; that, in the third parabola, the primary gives way to a secondary nystagmus in the weightless phase; and that during the pullout, primary nystagmus reappears. In the last three parabolas only secondary nystagmus is seen. The modulating influences of changing strength of the caloric stimulus and changing G-loadings on the otolith receptors are apparent. Under laboratory conditions secondary nystagmus did not appear.

_Motion Sickness._ In a later section, the problem of motion sickness experienced in orbital flight and in the weightless phase of parabolic flight is discussed. Symptoms are elicited as a consequence of head motions generating angular accelerations that stimulate the canals, despite the fact that these stimuli are normal. The tonic afferent impulse from the otolith receptors is absent in weightlessness; hence, the normal integration in the (combined) vestibular system has been altered. Thus the basic cause is physiological deafferentation of the otolith receptors, yet the events triggering the abnormal response are natural head motions.

Not easily explained are the great individual differences in susceptibility to motion sickness in weightlessness, resulting not only from normal stimulation of the canals but also from cross-coupled angular accelerations that would result from head motion in a rotating vehicle. It would appear that some persons have unusually low and some unusually high susceptibility. Thus, the subgravity level is a parameter that must be taken into account as well as the angular velocity. The curves describing susceptibility to motion sickness as a function of subgravity level can be determined from experiments in parabolic flight but require validation under actual space flight stimulus conditions. The American experience with regard to motion sickness in space missions has recently been reviewed in detail (Berry & Dietlein, 1970).
Figure 12-19: A: Change in Ephenomena as a function of increasing g level in normal subjects.
B: Change in E and A phenomena as a function of increasing g level in L-D subjects. (Graybiel et al., 1967)
Vestibular Servation In Man

Under Natural Stimulus Conditions

Astonishingly little is known concerning the normal functions of the vestibular system in man under natural conditions. The canals and otoliths serve mainly as "participants" in motor functions, and it is exceedingly difficult to elucidate their contributory roles. A classical experimental approach to this question involves the use of human or animal subjects with bilateral loss of canalicular and otolithic functions. Experiments on animals alone, however, will never suffice, because the findings are not directly applicable to man. The identification of human subjects with bilateral loss of vestibular functions has been accomplished by screening groups of deaf persons, but experimentation on subjects identified in this way is complicated by the great differences between persons who hear and those who do not. Moreover, in all such subjects not only is there the need to make sure that the pathologic changes are quiescent and that adaptive changes are complete following any loss of function, but also there is the need to take into account the unmeasurable factor of "compensatory adjustments." Despite these limitations, the best information we have has been derived from a comparison of performance of persons with and without vestibular defects.

Clinical Studies. Under ordinary present-day living conditions, severe losses of vestibular function have gone undetected. This is dramatically illustrated by the rare cases in which there has been loss of vestibular function early in life but
retention of hearing (Graybiel et al., 1970b). Two such persons, discovered fortuitously, revealed that neither they, their families, nor their physicians was aware of the loss. Despite the fact that loss of function was readily revealed in our laboratory, this takes little away from the fact that they met not only the ordinary demands of present day living but also were proficient above the average in a variety of sports. When apprised of their loss, it was brought out that they had experienced difficulties under circumstances in which visual cues were inadequate and, possibly, in eye-head-body coordination when visual cues were adequate.

Laboratory Studies. Although a variety of behavioral tests has been proposed to demonstrate the effects of loss of vestibular function, only a few well-controlled systematic investigations have been conducted.

The postural equilibrium test battery. These tests have a limitation in the sense that many systems in addition to the vestibular reflexes are challenged, but a great advantage is that they test natural behavioral mechanisms. Findings in the case of subjects with partial loss of vestibular function (Graybiel & Miller, 1970a) suggest that postural equilibrium is more dependent upon canalicular than on otolithic function. A useful test battery, described elsewhere in detail (Graybiel & Fregly, 1966), comprising six individual items, requires the subject to stand or walk in the stringent position of body erect, arms folded against chest, wearing shoes with flat heels and leather soles. The below-listed test items constitute this battery:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Maximum Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sharpened Romberg (SR)</td>
<td>Stand on floor, eyes closed, feet in heel-to-toe position.</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk eyes open (E/O)</td>
<td>Walk heel-to-toe, eyes open, on ¾-inch wide rail.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand eyes open (E/O)</td>
<td>Stand heel-to-toe, eyes open, on ¾-inch rail.</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand on leg eyes closed (SOLEC)</td>
<td>First right leg (SOLEC-R), then left leg (SOLEC-L).</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk a straight line heel-to-toe on floor (WALEC)</td>
<td>Maximum score zero.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The scores are normalized in percentile equivalents. Some comparative scores are shown in table 12-2. Scores below the 6th percentile are regarded as abnormal, and above the 40th, in the typical normal range. In general, improvement in scores suggests normality, and its absence, abnormality.

Nashner (1970) has just published the results of a sophisticated study on postural sway under near-normal baseline conditions. Based on available information, he developed a general postural control model that, in turn, was used in devising a series of experiments dealing with postural sway resulting from rotation about the ankle. The experimental findings were combined with the
Table 12-2
Group Differences in the Percentage of Abnormal Ataxia Test Battery Scores

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Groups</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Walk E/O (%)</th>
<th>Stand E/O (%)</th>
<th>Stand E/C (%)</th>
<th>SR (%)</th>
<th>SOLEC-R (%)</th>
<th>SOLEC-L (%)</th>
<th>WALEC (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normals</td>
<td>240*</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with vertigo</td>
<td>76**</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenitally deaf</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head injury deaf</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral labyrinthine-defective</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meniere's patients</td>
<td>4***</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral labyrinthine-defective</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* N = 198 on SOLEC-R and SOLEC-L; N = 147 on WALEC.
** N = 31 on SOLEC-R and SOLEC-L; N = 38 on WALEC.
*** N = 3 on SOLEC-L and WALEC.
general model to develop specific models for the sensory-motor interfaces. Three normal subjects and one L-D subject participated. The latter was 20 years of age and had compensated "to the extent possible" following bilateral transection of the VIIIth nerve, 2 years prior to testing. Four types of tests were conducted:

1. Reflex response gains. In normal subjects the average gain of the stretch reflex response induced by small rotations was about one-third that necessary for postural stability. In the L-D subject with eyes open the gains were larger than in the normals but below those necessary for postural stability; with eyes closed the average gain increased markedly, and, for extensor muscles, resulted in "rigid" postural stability.

2. Induced sway: thresholds for perception with eyes open. Threshold values in terms of response time and body angle are shown in figure 12-21 (Nashner, 1970).

![Figure 12-21](image)

3. Continuous recording of postural response and body angle motion. With eyes open the "control strategy" is the same for the L-D subject and normal controls, but in making corrections for transient disturbances (higher center
commands), performance was better for the normals than the L-D subjects. With eyes closed the strategy remains the same for normal subjects (periods of reflex stability and transient disturbances), but changes for the L-D subject in that reflex stability gives way to continuous oscillation.

4. Frequency spectra of body angle motions. Comparative values are shown in figure 12-22A and B (Nashner, 1970).

![Figure 12-22. Fourier coefficients of body sway motion for vestibular defective subject standing on rigid, flat surface—A: with eyes open; B: with eyes closed. (Nashner, 1970)](image)

In summary, the normal subject regulates posture with a combination of high-frequency (canal and somatosensory receptors) stabilization and low-frequency (otolith and optic receptors) stabilization; with eyes closed he still has otoliths functioning. The L-D subject with eyes closed is without low-frequency stabilization, resulting in a "rigid" stability.
Perception of postural vertical. Perception of the postural vertical was compared in normal and L-D subjects (eyes closed) immediately after right or left displacement of 30 degrees from the upright in a series of 30 trials. The findings in figure 12-23 (Clark & Graybiel, 1963b) show that although the normal subjects exhibited smaller average errors than the L-D subjects, the differences between these groups were not statistically significant. Moreover, the improvement with practice was about the same for both groups.

![Graph showing errors in setting to postural vertical.](image)

Figure 12-23. Errors in setting to postural vertical. (Clark & Graybiel, 1963b. Copyright 1963 by the American Psychological Association and reprinted with their permission)

In another study the same subjects were tested under four conditions of tilt and two conditions of delay before setting themselves to the upright. The findings in table 12-3 (Clark & Graybiel, 1964) indicate the somewhat greater average errors in the L-D compared with normal subjects and suggest that the error in setting is a function of both the degree of tilt and length of delay.

Table 12-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delay in Setting</th>
<th>Normal Subjects (S = 9)</th>
<th>Labyrinthine Defective Subjects (S = 10)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10° 20° 30° 40°</td>
<td>10° 20° 30° 40°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.2 1.5 2.0 1.9</td>
<td>2.4 2.7 3.0 3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 min</td>
<td>2.2 3.5 3.8 4.2</td>
<td>3.4 6.1 6.5 6.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Taken together, these findings emphasize that the vestibular contribution to nonvisual perception of the upright was relatively small under the conditions of the experiment. These findings are in accord with those of Schock (1960) who demonstrated large decrements in the ability of normal subjects to set a luminous rod, in darkness, to the vertical or horizontal when under water, compared with settings made out of water.

Tentative Conclusions Based on a Review of Clinical and Laboratory Studies.

1. In young persons with normal hearing, severe losses of vestibular function have gone undetected under ordinary living conditions. Handicaps can be demonstrated, however, under challenging situations, especially in the absence of visual cues.

2. Loss of otolithic function is well tolerated, inasmuch as nonotolithic proprioception subserves quite adequately some of the same functions.

3. Loss of canalicular function is less well tolerated than loss of otolithic function, partly because it subserves more important and unique functions.

Under Unnatural Stimulus Conditions

The schema in figure 12-24 represents an attempt to identify important elements determining input-output relations in which the vestibular organs play either the essential or a contributory role. The main chain of events involves: (1) the accelerative stimuli; (2) the cili-otolith and cupula-endolymph systems; (3) the sensory inputs to the canalicular and otolithic systems; (4) their integration to form the vestibular system; (5) interactions of vestibular and nonvestibular systems, notably the visual system; (6) normal and abnormal system-bound responses; and (7) non-system-bound responses that involve not only a facultative linkage but also nonvestibular servation systems. Listed in the figure are: (1) a categorization of etiologic factors resulting in normal and abnormal sensory inputs, (2) an attempt to illustrate typical sensory input activity patterns, and (3) a listing of important secondary etiologic factors affecting susceptibility to reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness. Not shown in the figure are the many important events and processes involved in the acquisition and decay of adaptation effects. Exposure to unnatural accelerations may stimulate canals, otoliths, or both. The extremely important contribution made by head motions in otherwise stress-free motion environments needs emphasis. In a rotating environment the cross-coupled angular accelerations constitute an ever-changing bizarre stimulus pattern for the canals that do not vary significantly with changes in radius. The otolith organs are stimulated by Coriolis accelerations which are affected by change in radius, but their "positive" contribution, i.e., abnormal sensory input pattern, must be small, inasmuch as susceptibility to motion sickness does not seem to vary within radii ranging from 0 to 19 feet in a rotating environment. Stated differently, any otolith contribution to a disturbance in otolith-canal integration would appear to be independent of a disturbance in the otolithic system caused by the vectorial sum of radial, gravitational, and Coriolis accelerations.
In weightlessness the tonic* sensory output of the otolith organs due to gravity is abolished, thus altering the sensory input to the otolithic system. The semicircular canals, however, are stimulated by angular accelerations generated by head (body) motions that differ little if at all from those generated by making similar head motions under terrestrial conditions. The loss in stability in the (combined) vestibular systems would appear to be due to normal canalicular inputs encountering an otolithic input consisting only of the spontaneous discharge. The resulting disturbance is sufficient to elicit symptoms of motion sickness in some persons but not in others.

Many unnatural patterns of accelerative stimuli elicit only abnormal system-bound responses; i.e., do not evoke the symptomatology of motion sickness. In general, they have the characteristics of reflex phenomena and vary greatly in their departure from normal stimulus conditions. Adaptation may not be manifested under near-normal or under certain abnormal stimulus conditions. If adaptation occurs during continual exposure, it is an indication that the response was elicited as a consequence of insufficient adaptive capacity to cope (immediately) with the stressful stimuli.

*For the purpose of clarity, a distinction is made between a spontaneous discharge and one resulting from stimulation which, in the case of the otolith organs, may be either tonic or periodic or both.
Many reflex vestibular disturbances have the following characteristics in common: (1) short latencies, (2) maximal response to the initial stimulus, (3) possible modulation by secondary influences, (4) little or no evidence of temporal perseveration based on sensory input (some exceptions here), (5) variable time course of adaptation, and (6) possible need for readjustment on change to the initial or a different gravitoinertial force environment.

In the case of stimulus patterns that have the potential for precipitating motion sickness, these symptoms may be avoided, e.g., by short exposure, making it possible to elicit reflex vestibular disturbances as "isolated" vestibular responses. Much of what follows under the etiology of motion sickness applies to stimuli in this category.

The typical overt symptoms of motion sickness are well known, and systematic studies reveal that they have the following characteristics: (1) delay in appearance of symptoms after the onset of the stressful stimuli, (2) gradual or rapid increase in severity of symptoms, (3) modulation by secondary influences, (4) perseveration after sudden cessation of stimuli, and (5) response decline indicating recovery. Further abstractions reveal: (1) great individual differences in susceptibility and in the acquisition and decay of adaptation, (2) transfer of adaptation effects, (3) learning, and (4) conditioning.

The appearance of symptoms always indicates that the adaptative capacity of the person has been exceeded. Indeed, even prior to the appearance of overt responses it can be demonstrated that the individual's susceptibility has risen. Moreover, the order of appearance of symptoms is affected by the strength of the stressful stimuli and length of exposure.

Under all stimulus conditions, secondary etiologic influences, categorized in figure 12-24, are present, tending either to raise or lower susceptibility. Vision plays an important role. A pilot, for example, free of symptoms in the cockpit, may experience motion sickness in the navigator's closed compartment. Mild symptoms of motion sickness have disappeared under the influence of experimenter directed tasks that may have preempted central nervous system pathways used by irradiating vestibular influences. Covert factors may come into play. Covert factors include defects, disease, and functional disturbances that either are not diagnosed or wrongly considered unimportant. Examples are personality defects, which render a person unwilling or unable to cope with functional disorders of vestibular origin, prodromal stages of disease, and undiagnosed vestibular disease or functional disorder.

Little is known concerning the precise nature of the facultative linkage. The fact that irradiating vestibular activity is demonstrably open to modulating influences points to the use of common pathways in the brain-stem reticular formation. This common meeting ground between somatic and visceral systems is essential not only for coordination at the reflex level but also to provide for some voluntary control over otherwise autonomic responses. What makes the vestibular linkage unusual (but not unique) is the readiness with which vestibular activity may get "out of bounds" and elicit the widespread responses that include the typical symptoms of motion sickness. The sometimes long delay
between the onset of stimulation and appearance of motion sickness suggests that a chemical linkage also may be involved.

Recovery during continual exposure to stress is complicated. At some point in time, the tendency toward restoration of homeostasis in nonvestibular systems exceeds the influences having a contrary tendency. At another point in time, nonvestibular systems are freed from vestibular influences (adaptation in the vestibular system and disappearance of any neurohormones released). Then restoration takes place spontaneously through homeostatic events and processes, not only in the systems responsible for first-order effects but in all systems involved in higher order effects and complications. Curves depicting the time course of adaptation in the vestibular system, the disappearance of vestibular influences, and the restoration in the nonvestibular systems tend to overlap and have not been clearly defined. Thus the engagement and disengagement between the vestibular and nonvestibular systems is difficult to follow but an interesting object of study.

Investigations dealing with reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness in man may be directed to the solution of an operational problem, or to the accumulation of facts, the synthesis of which would be applicable to any operational problem.

Individual Assessment

The distinction among functional, provocative, and simulation tests is useful although somewhat arbitrary. Only simulation tests will be discussed in detail, partly because some of the material is not readily accessible elsewhere but mainly because they comprise the most important kinds of tests in the assessment of astronauts.

Functional Tests. There is evidence that functional test scores within the normal range have no value in predicting individual differences in susceptibility to reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness (Khilov, 1969a, b; Miller & Graybiel, 1970a). They are valuable nevertheless from the clinical standpoint (to rule out overt and, if possible, cryptic defect or disease) and from the standpoint of making comparative measurements, the astronaut serving as his own control. The reliability of most vestibular tests is not high compared with vision or hearing tests; hence, the need or desirability for repeated measurements on astronauts serving as experimental subjects. Functional tests should be used not only in the selection of aviators and astronauts but also in the selection of subjects used in vestibular experimentation.

Clinicians have described test batteries (Aschan, Bergstedt, & Stahle, 1956; Henrikson et al., 1966; Jongkees, 1967; McNally, 1969; McNally & Stuart, 1942; Spector, 1967) to which reference might be made for details, but nearly all batteries include tests for spontaneous and positional nystagmus, a modified Hallpike test, and some clinicians use a visual tracking "pendulum test." The latter is not widely used, hence will be described briefly. Eye motions are recorded while the subject "tracks" an oscillating target. The displacement and frequency of the pendulum device can be varied. Normal persons begin to have
difficulty in tracking the target with displacements greater than 20 degrees and a frequency greater than 0.8 Hz (oscillation time = 1.2 sec), and this is declared by the appearance of saccadic perturbation in the record. The testing procedure can be exploited by using one eye for fixation. Some typical results are shown in figure 12-25.

Figure 12-25. Eye movements recorded during pendulum test.

Semicircular Canals. Thermal stimulation consists of delivering a jet of water of known temperature against the ear drum at a predetermined rate and volume. The subject's head is positioned so that the horizontal pair of canals are vertical. Differences in specific weight of endolymph at body temperature and that portion of the canal influenced by the irrigating water causes a displacement of the cupula. The thermal stimulus to one ear is grossly abnormal because of the disturbance created in the delicate right-left synergistic mechanisms underlying normal canalicular function. The great advantage is that each horizontal canal can be stimulated individually (vertical canals also can be stimulated). The nystagmic response may be observed, but nystagmographic recordings are recommended for reasons of objectivity and better opportunity for analysis.

With the well-known Hallpike test (Fitzgerald & Hallpike, 1942), irrigating temperatures of 30 degrees and 44 degrees C are used, which may induce nausea in highly susceptible persons. It has the great advantage of determining what is termed right-left labyrinthine and directional preponderance. We have used the threshold caloric test (McLeod & Meek, 1962). It has advantages for screening purposes and comparative measurements, a person serving as his own control, and the vestibular disturbance is brief and recovery quick. Irrigating temperatures just below body temperature usually suffice, but if not, stepwise
decreases are made until a response is obtained. If irrigating temperatures below 35 degrees C are required to elicit a response, some abnormality should be suspected.

Angular Acceleration Thresholds. Rotating devices have been fabricated that provide not only a stimulus of a physiological character, albeit unusual, but may have excellent performance characteristics, including preprogramming. The most sensitive indicator is the oculo-ocular illusion, but "sensations" and nystagmus are also used routinely.

The oculo-ocular illusion is a form of apparent motion that has its genesis in the cupula-endolymph mechanism and may be viewed under many different circumstances (Graybiel & Hupp, 1946). In measuring "thresholds," favorable conditions include a dimly lighted three-dimensional target viewed in darkness and fixed with respect to the subject. The expected apparent motion is in the direction of acceleration. In a recent report by Clark and Stewart (1969), the mean threshold for the perception of the oculo-ocular illusion in 32 normal subjects was found to be 0.11°/sec² when they were exposed to rotation in the vertical axis for 10 seconds.

Tests of Otolith Function. Ocular counterrolling, described above, has the advantage of not disturbing the vestibular system; hence, it qualifies as a test conducted under near-normal stimulus conditions. The values obtained with different degrees of rightward and leftward tilt describe curves that can be examined for left-right symmetry. The "index" (one-half the sum of the maximal left and right roll) values obtained in a group of 550 presumably normal persons and 10 L-D subjects are shown in figure 12-6 (Miller, 1970). The rare instances when values fall below 120 seconds of arc are unexplained.

There are a variety of other tests available, but none recommended as a substitute for ocular counterrolling; sometimes a second test is desirable if facilities for counterrolling are not available. Among the other tests are: (1) the

![Figure 12-26. Distribution of counterrolling index among normal and labyrinthine-defective subjects. (Miller, 1970; reprinted by permission of Pergamon Press, Oxford)
oculogravic illusion test described above, (2) the elicitation of compensatory eye motions by exposing a person to horizontal oscillations on a horizontal swing or other device, (3) the elicitation of nystagmus in a device that rotates a person about an axis other than the Earth vertical or revolves a person in a counterrotating capsule or room that exposes him to a rotating linear acceleration vector.

As part of our routine, we always include audiometry and the postural equilibrium test battery.

Provocative Tests. Provocative tests serve the important purpose of evaluating a person's susceptibility to reflex vestibular disturbances and to motion sickness and may, in addition, measure his ability to cope with such disturbances either with or without the aid of countermeasures, including the use of drugs. Factors of etiologic significance in addition to the gravitoinertial force environment, may be introduced to simulate more completely the anticipated operational conditions or to explore their role in affecting an individual's susceptibility to novel circumstances. The distinctions between provocative and simulation tests involve primarily their duration and, secondarily, their specificity in terms of the global exposure conditions; thus, the predictive value of provocative tests is less than that of simulation tests. The validity of the findings, as in the case of functional tests, is compromised if the person tested either is suffering from active disease involving the vestibular systems or, indeed, has not compensated completely following permanent injury that is no longer active.

In conducting and interpreting the results of provocative tests, difficulties are encountered and precautions must be taken, which are not unrelated. Difficulties have their origin in: (1) the individual differences in susceptibility with regard to a given test; (2) intraindividual differences in susceptibility, when exposed in different gravitoinertial force environments; (3) preternaturally high susceptibility if insufficient time has not elapsed between exposures; (4) the fact that adaptation occurs as an inevitable consequence of every test, with much individual variation in the rate of acquisition and of loss of adaptation; and (5) the difficulty in expressing the results in absolute values. Great advantage would occur from the use of normalized scores and standardization of techniques.

Some advantages of provocative tests include: (1) the low "cost" in terms of time and equipment that makes a "test battery" feasible, (2) individual testing, and (3) their use in studying vestibular mechanisms and in evaluating countermeasures.

A large number of provocative tests are in use, but brevity dictates limiting what follows to the description of a few representative tests relevant to space flight operations.

The Dial Test. A standardized test has been devised for determining susceptibility to motion sickness in the slow rotation room (SRR), and this came to be known as the "dial test." The stressful Coriolis accelerations are generated
by simultaneous rotations of room and subject. Five dials are so placed in relation to the subject that, to set the needle number on each dial, he is required to move his head and trunk to five different extreme positions, which maximizes the rotation of the head out of the plane of the room's rotation. A "sequence" consists in setting the five dials in accordance with a tape recording, one every 6 seconds, followed by a rest period of 6 seconds. The subject, usually with eyes open, continues the task until either a definite endpoint is reached, usually M111 (severe malaise) (table 12-4) (Graybiel et al., 1968b), or (usually) until 20 sequences or 100 settings have been made. If the original rate of rotation, say, 7.5 rpm, is too stressful, the velocity is reduced, or if too weak, the velocity is increased. With few exceptions, normal persons reach the endpoint at some velocity between 5 rpm and 20 rpm. The results are scored in terms of angular velocity, number of head motions, and level of symptom (e.g., 10 rpm, 78, M111, respectively).

The Coriolis Sickness Susceptibility Index. This represents a modification of the dial test, but a rotating Stille or Litter-chair is used, the subject making standardized head motions usually with eyes closed (Miller & Graybiel, 1970b). Higher angular velocities than those in the SRR are required to reach the same endpoint. A noteworthy feature of this test is the method of scoring, which yields a single value, the "index," enabling the investigator to make comparisons within and among subjects.

Off-Vertical Rotation Test. In contrast to the two tests just described, which mainly "disturb" the canalicular system, a rotating linear acceleration vector mainly stresses the otolithic system. The off-vertical rotation (OVR) test is one of many and may be scored in "duration," which has some but not all of the advantages of an index. The device consists of a rotating chair (figure 12-27) (Graybiel and Miller, 1970b) mounted on a platform that can be tilted either by a hand crank or by an electric motor, and the degree of tilt read from a large protractor. The subject's head, held rigidly against the headrest by adjustable straps across his forehead, is maintained precisely over the center of rotation, with smooth rotation ensured by proper counterbalancing. The rotation, programmed on a time axis, involves periods of acceleration at $0.5^\circ/sec^2$ for 30 seconds, followed by periods of constant velocity for 6 minutes, until either the endpoint is reached or 6 minutes completed at 25 rpm, the cut-off point. In effect, this program represents unit increases of 2.5 rpm every 6.5 minutes after the initial step. The endpoint can be expressed in terms of elapsed time at terminal velocity, as total elapsed time at terminal velocity, or as total elapsed time, which serves as an index of susceptibility to motion sickness. With each revolution of the OVR device, the subject continually changes position with respect to the gravitational upright. Thus, receptors in the paired maculae of utricle and saccule and nonvestibular proprioceptors are continually exposed to an unusual stimulus pattern. The findings in a group of healthy men, the great majority attached to a naval air station, are shown in figure 12-28 (Graybiel and Miller, 1970b). All but twelve men reached the predetermined endpoint (M11A) at a 10-degree tilt; all but five of the remainder reached it only when the angle of tilt was increased to 20 degrees. Thus, the scores ranked 95 subjects in terms of their susceptibility to this unusual gravito inertial force environment and demonstrated that five were highly insusceptible.
### Table 12-4

Diagnostic Categorization of Different Levels of Severity of Acute Motion Sickness

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Pathognomic 16 Points</th>
<th>Major 8 Points</th>
<th>Minor 4 Points</th>
<th>Minimal 2 Points</th>
<th>AQS* 1 Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nausea syndrome</td>
<td>Vomiting or retching</td>
<td>Nausea+ II, III</td>
<td>Nausea I</td>
<td>Epigastric discomfort</td>
<td>Epigastric awareness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td></td>
<td>PALLOR III</td>
<td>PALLOR II</td>
<td>PALLOR I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold sweating</td>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased salivation</td>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drowsiness</td>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Levels of Severity Identified by Total Points Scored**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frank Sickness</th>
<th>Severe Malaise</th>
<th>Moderate Malaise A</th>
<th>Moderate Malaise B</th>
<th>Slight Malaise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(S)</td>
<td>(M III)</td>
<td>(M IIIA)</td>
<td>(M IIIB)</td>
<td>(M I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 16 points</td>
<td>8 - 15 points</td>
<td>5 - 7 points</td>
<td>3 - 4 points</td>
<td>1 - 2 points</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*AQS = Additional qualifying symptoms. + III = severe or marked, II = moderate, I = slight.*
Figure 12–27. Off-vertical rotating chair device. Slide mechanisms for positioning subject now shown. (Graybiel & Miller, 1970b)

Figure 12–28. Susceptibility index in subjects exposed to off-vertical rotation according to programmed stress indicated on abscissa. (Graybiel & Miller, 1970b)
Figures 12-29 and 12-30 are plots comparing susceptibility to motion sickness with scores obtained in testing, respectively, the function of the semicircular canals and otolith organs (Graybiel and Miller, 1970b). Although it appears that significant relationships were not found between functional test scores and susceptibility to motion sickness, it is worth adding that when extreme values are compared, susceptibility was higher in subjects with low rather than high oculogyral illusion threshold test values, and susceptibility was lower in subjects with high rather than low values for the counterrolling index.

Simulation Tests Some of the problems posed in attempting to predict susceptibility to vestibular side effects under the novel conditions in a rotating space base are pointed out in figure 12-31. The slow rotation room (SRR), which can be used to simulate the angular velocity, is a completely enclosed space and provides for prolonged exposures and sudden transitions between the rotating and nonrotating state. The SRR fails to simulate space-base conditions in such notable aspects as weightlessness, subgravity levels, man's orientation when upright with regard to the axis of rotation, and the Coriolis forces while walking and handling objects. Stated differently, the SRR provides a very useful simulation device for the important study of the effects of cross-coupled angular accelerations, except for the fractional subgravity levels and man's orientation with respect to the axis of rotation. The SRR is useful in demonstrating the qualitative aspects of the role of the vestibular organs in postural equilibrium and in walking, but nonvestibular factors play a greater role. The necessary use of small rotating devices poses limitations in terms of visual reference, length of exposure, and postural equilibrium. Parabolic flight offers the opportunity to study the effects of weightlessness and fractional subgravity levels for brief periods. Orbital flights prior to the establishment of a space base offer the opportunity to use small or even fairly large rotating devices for validation of ground-based experimental findings and the advantages of prolonged exposure to study adaptation effects.

It is convenient, although somewhat arbitrary, to distinguish between experiments designed to elicit responses that have their genesis mainly in the vestibular system and those designed to prevent such responses by means of stepwise incremental increases in the stressful stimuli.

The studies now to be reported for elicitation of vestibular side effects, were selected for their operational relevance and were conducted for the most part either in the SRR or in parabolic flight.

Slow Rotation Room. A series of experiments was carried out in the SRR to determine if there were differences in susceptibility to vestibular side effects dependent upon man's orientation to the axis of rotation and if the acquisition of adaptation effects acquired in one orientation mode transferred to the other. A unique feature of this experiment was the provision for subjects to walk on the "wall" of the circular SRR and carry out their tasks while horizontal with respect to the Earth vertical (Graybiel et al., 1968c). This was made possible by the use of air-bearing supports and custom-fitted articulated fiberglass molds. Four subjects participated in two different experiments involving adaptation to the stimulus conditions with the room rotating at 4 rpm
Figure 12-29. Comparison of motion sickness susceptibility with scores on test of semicircular canal function (oculogyral illusion). (Graybiel & Miller, 1970b)

Figure 12-30. Comparison of motion sickness susceptibility with scores on test of otolith function (counterrolling index). (Graybiel & Miller, 1970b)
for a period of either 4 or 5 days. One pair of subjects initially in the horizontal mode was changed to the vertical mode near the middle of the perrotation period when symptoms of motion sickness had disappeared; in the second experiment they began in the vertical mode. The order was reversed for the second pair. When in the horizontal mode, the subjects spent approximately 6 hours a day in the airbearing device, 6 to 10 minutes upright, and the remainder of the time recumbent on a bunk. The findings, summarized in figure 12-32, indicate that there is no significant difference in susceptibility in the two modes and that transfer of adaptation is excellent. On cessation of rotation only mild symptoms of motion sickness were manifested. A by-product of the experiment was the demonstration of important differences between motion sickness and postural disequilibrium during adaptation to the rotating environment and subsequent return to the stationary one. In the start-horizontal mode, adaptation ensuring freedom from symptoms of motion sickness on change to the vertical mode did not prevent ataxia. In the start-vertical mode, the adaptation resulted in a great decrease in ataxia; this adaptation perseverated throughout the finish-horizontal mode and as long as 36 hours afterward. This implied that the dynamic processes underlying postural homeostasis involved muscular activities largely rendered static when subjects were in the horizontal mode.

Figure 12-31. Prediction of susceptibility to motion sickness with prolonged exposure space mission.

In the light of the experiment just described, earlier studies involving prolonged exposures in the SRR were reviewed, particularly from the standpoint of manifestations of motion sickness on cessation of rotation. The experiment in which four subjects were exposed at 10 rpm over a period of 12 days was
notable in this regard (Graybiel et al., 1965). Despite the fact that severe symptoms were experienced, especially in the first half of the perrotation period, manifestations of motion sickness on cessation of rotation were trivial or absent.

![Graph](image)

Figure 12-32. Appropriate mean changes in level of symptoms of motion sickness and in postural disequilibrium in 4 young healthy subjects exposed to continual rotation at 4 rpm.

**Adaptive Capacity Tests.** These tests measure individual differences in the rate of acquisition and decay of adaptation in a rotating environment. They qualify as simulation tests, and measure at once susceptibility to reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness and ability to adapt and to retain adaptation effects. Repeated exposures are required to measure retention of adaptation effects, and the best schedule is yet to be determined. These tests have various options open (Reason & Graybiel, 1969; 1970a, b), but all rely on exposure to stepwise increases in the stressful accelerations.

The findings in one test of this sort are summarized with the aid of table 12-5 (Reason & Graybiel, 1970a). Ten young subjects executed controlled head (and body) motions at each of ten 1-rpm increases in velocity of the slow rotation room. Eight discrete head motions at 2-second intervals comprised a sequence, and 4 seconds elapsed between sequences. At the end of each head motion the subject responded with a yes or no; yes indicated that he experienced one or more reflex vestibular disturbances or symptoms of motion sickness. The adaptation criterion was a negative response during three sequences, at which point the angular velocity of the SRR was increased by 1 rpm. The number of head movement sequences required at different step increases of the subjects are shown in table 12-5. The individual differences in performance were great. Four of the ten subjects experienced motion sickness and dropped out; one at 5 rpm, two at 6 rpm, and one at 10 rpm. One subject
required only nine sequences (72 head motions) to reach 10 rpm, and these were made at velocities below 3 rpm. At the other extreme, one subject required 390 sequences (3120 head motions) to achieve the adaptation criterion at 10 rpm.

Table 12-5
Number of Movement Sequences Prior to Achieving Adaptation Criterion at Each rpm*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10 rpm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JE</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HU</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DI</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>T**(45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>T(23)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>T(10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WE</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>T(225)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This value represents the total number of movement sequences executed at each rpm less the three movement sequences, eliciting negative sensation, which constituted the adaptation criterion.

**T indicates that rotation was terminated without achieving the adaptation criterion. The figures in parentheses show the number of sequences completed prior to termination.

This type of procedure stands somewhere between brief susceptibility tests and incremental adaptation tests designed to prevent reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness. Tests of adaptive capacity, however, are the best available for revealing individual differences in ability to cope with operational stimulus conditions.

Parabolic Flight. Studies dealing with the susceptibility to motion sickness in the weightless phase of parabolic flight have been mainly of two types (Miller, et al., 1969). In one kind, subjects were restrained in their seats and required to make standardized head motions during the weightless phase only. The findings are summarized in figure 12-33 and demonstrate that, among the twelve subjects tested in this manner, six were asymptomatic. Five of the remaining six experienced symptoms only when making head motions; the last subject demonstrated increased susceptibility when making head motions as compared to the head restraint (control) condition. These findings are concordant with those of Russian investigators utilizing parabolic flights (Kas'yan et al., 1965) and with the findings on astronauts (Berry &
Dietlein, 1970) and cosmonauts (Yuganov et al., 1966) who experienced motion sickness in orbital flight.

![Figure 12-33. Effect among 6 susceptible subjects of active head movements relative to restrained condition upon sickness susceptibility measured in terms of number of parabolas required to provoke severe malaise. (Miller et al., 1969)](image)

The second kind of experiment involved the use of a rotating chair device, with subjects required to make standardized head motions similar to those used in the dial test but with eyes blindfolded. Each subject served as his own control, and comparisons were made between susceptibility under terrestrial conditions and during parabolic flight, using similar periods of rotation and nonrotation. The findings summarized in figure 12-34 (Miller, et al., 1969) indicate that some subjects experienced a significant increase in susceptibility aloft while others manifested a decrease. When subjects were ranked in terms of their susceptibility under terrestrial conditions, the higher the susceptibility, the greater the likelihood that there would be an increase aloft, although there were exceptions to this generality.

The following studies were aimed at defining techniques and procedures for the prevention of vestibular side effects.

Incremental Adaptation Tests. Programming the acquisition of adaptation effects is good only in the sense that it is the best means to an end. Although there are a number of factors and trade-offs involved, the basic
The Vestibular System

577

operation consists of establishing new integrative patterns in the nervous system in response to changes in stimulus conditions. One object is to confront the nervous system with the largest change in stimuli possible, short of eliciting unwanted responses. In the absence of any response, there is no guide as to whether the nervous system is being fully tasked; i.e., operating at high efficiency. In practice, however, there are, oftentimes, responses in the nature of delicate indicators. If these indicators are not present spontaneously, they may be evoked with caution, and the degree of provocation required serves as a monitoring guide. However, only persons with experience in this kind of testing can safely task the nervous system to the limit without risk. The smaller the experience, the greater the margin of safety required.

Figure 12–34. Comparison of Coriolis (motion) sickness susceptibility of 15 subjects measured in weightlessness and under terrestrial conditions. O* = no symptoms, except in subject HA who experienced moderate malaise (M11A) on only his first test at 0 g; M111 = severe malaise. (Miller et al., 1969)

A brief review of early experiments representing attempts at incremental adaptation to a given terminal velocity in the SRR is worthwhile, partly to indicate the problems involved and partly to draw abstractions from the findings.

Three attempts to prevent motion sickness by step increases to a terminal velocity of 10 rpm were unsuccessful; two involved three incremental steps over a period of approximately three days, and the third a series of 40 incremental
steps over a period of 40 hours. In the next attempt (Graybiel, Deane, & Colehour, 1969) overt motion sickness symptoms, with the exception of drowsiness, on exposure to otherwise intolerable accelerations were prevented solely by means of nine stepwise increases in rotational speeds over a period of 16 days to a terminal velocity of 10 rpm. The stress profile and the symptomatology are summarized in figure 12-35. The four subjects had a busy schedule, and experimenter-paced head motions were required only for brief periods in connection with provocative tests. On cessation of rotation, ataxia was the most prominent and lasting complaint, and symptoms of motion sickness were either absent or of small significance. The on-board experimenter who was quite susceptible to SRR sickness spent his “nights” at home. He gradually adapted however, and could make the sudden transitions between the rotating and nonrotating states “without malaise or motion sickness”. He did require about 30 minutes to adjust to the change. Important implications include: (1) the feasibility of adapting to 10 rpm, although the “cost” in time was high; (2) the remarkable freedom from symptoms of motion sickness on cessation of rotation, implying that efferent vestibular activity may have played an important role; and (3) the feasibility of making sudden transition between 0 and 10 rpm on a daily basis.

![Figure 12-35. Stress profile and symptomatology in exposing 4 healthy subjects to stepwise increases in rotational speed to a terminal velocity of 10 rpm.](image)

An attempt then was made to effect symptomatic incremental adaptation in an experiment in which the three subjects were required to execute experimenter-paced head-body motions (front, back, left, right). The actual time spent making 1000 head motions was a little over half an hour. In figure 12-36 (Graybiel & Wood, 1969) are shown the stress profile, the number of head motions made at each step, each up-down counting as one motion, and the level
of symptoms experienced by the subjects. One subject, TA, was quite susceptible, becoming very drowsy at 2 rpm, experiencing epigastric discomfort at 5 rpm, and minimizing or refraining from making head motions at the higher rpm. The two remaining subjects experienced mild symptoms at terminal velocity, which became more severe on cessation of rotation. TA resorted to the use of an antimotion sickness drug. Noteworthy features were: (1) the inability of TA to keep up with the schedule, (2) the appearance of symptoms resulting from inadequate adaptation in the remaining two subjects, and (3) the increase in symptoms experienced by all subjects on cessation of rotation.

In figure 12-37 (Graybiel & Wood, 1969) are shown the findings in a similar test, except that more head motions were made at the higher angular velocities. Symptoms of motion sickness were trivial except in subject RO who experienced very mild symptoms at 8 rpm and 9 rpm and on cessation of rotation. Except for ataxia, which was aggravated by head motions, complaints were minimal on cessation of rotation. These findings confirmed inferences drawn from the earlier studies and demonstrated that the time required to effect adaptation can be greatly shortened through control over head motions as well as angular velocity and by setting up an adaptation schedule. It should also be pointed out that the problems encountered were greater at relatively high velocities compared with relatively low ones and that, except in one instance, problems were not experienced if the unit increase was 1 rpm.

The above findings stimulated intensive studies centering on: (1) the best manner to execute a discrete head-body motion, (2) the spacing between head motions, (3) the size of unit increases in velocity, (4) the number of head motions as a function of 1-rpm increases in angular velocity, and (5) the individual differences in rate of acquisition and decay of adaptation effects mentioned above.
Figure 12–37. Stress profile in SRR and manifestations of motion sickness in 3 healthy subjects exposed to rotation for about 2 days. The large number of head motions accounted for rapid adaptation. (Graybiel & Wood, 1969)

The findings in an experiment to be reported (Reason & Graybiel, 1970b) can be briefly summarized with the aid of figure 12-38. Three subjects participated, and the adaptation schedule was the same for all subjects; the procedure was essentially the same as that described above in connection with table 12-5. On Day 1, while rotating counterclockwise, subjects executed 40 head movement sequences at 2 rpm, 50 at 3 rpm, 70 at 4 rpm, 90 at 5 rpm, and 110 at 6 rpm. The subjects, while rotating, then were shifted to highly stressful generalized activities in an attempt to evoke motion sickness. Their performance indicated that the head motions had produced a substantial degree of protection both with respect to reflex vestibular disturbances and motion sickness. On Day 2 the subjects executed 130 head movement sequences at 7 rpm, 150 at 8 rpm, 180 at 9 rpm, and 80 at 10 rpm. The subjects were again transferred to generalized activities and their performance was similar to that on Day 1. On the morning of Day 3 after 120 head movement sequences at 10 rpm, the room was brought to a stop, and the subjects executed the same head motions as during rotation. There were no symptoms of motion sickness, and all reflex effects quickly disappeared.

In figure 12-39 are shown findings obtained on the same three subjects when they executed an incremental adaptation test before and after participating in the 3-day experiment just described. This test is also identical with the incremental adaptation test described in connection with table 12-5. The noteworthy findings are: (1) the small number of affirmative responses 6 hours after the 3-day experiment ended; (2) weekly exposures led to increasingly better performance; and (3) when the subjects were rotated in the opposite direction (clockwise), their performance was far better than on the first pre-experimental test, indicating transfer of adaptation effects acquired during counterclockwise rotation. Again the findings support the conclusion that sudden transfers between the rotating and nonrotating environments are not only feasible in the SRR, but also that the adaptation effects may not decay rapidly and with weekly practice may not only be retained but improved.
The ataxia manifested in the rotating room resembles that experienced aboard ship, and it is possible to demonstrate the contributing role of the vestibular organs by comparing the responses of normal and of labyrinthine defective (L-D) subjects (figure 12-40 A, B). With the onset of rotation, both normal and L-D subjects experience difficulty in walking, which is maximal initially and becomes progressively less over a period of days, after which there is little further change. This may be
shown by a test for postural disequilibrium designed to reveal small differences between the normal and L-D subjects in a stationary environment. One significant difference between the normal and L-D subjects is that the former, on sudden movement of the head, is more disturbed in his postural equilibrium than is the L-D subject. On cessation of rotation, both normal and L-D subjects manifest ataxia on walking. The sensations differ from those experienced on disembarking after a sea voyage in that the subjects report that they feel unstable on a stable platform, whereas after a voyage the platform seems to be unstable too. Again, the normal subject on quickly rotating the head, experiences disequilibrium and may experience dizziness; these are not experienced by the L-D subject.

Figure 12-40. A: Heel-to-toe walking scores for four normal subjects; B: Individual test performance of 4 L-D subjects on a 3-inch wide rail along time axis of rotation. (Fregly & Kennedy, 1965)
Drugs. The dial test has also been used on the SRR in the evaluation of antimotion sickness drugs; a summary of the findings is shown in figure 12-41 (Wood & Graybiel 1970a). It was found that only those drugs with a parasympatholytic or sympathomimetic action and some of the antihistamines were notably effective under the stimulus conditions. Recently it was demonstrated (Wood & Graybiel, 1970b) that a combination of promethazine 25 mg with d-amphetamine 10 mg had the same range of effectiveness as that found for scopolamine 0.6 mg plus d-amphetamine 10 mg and that the substitution of ephedrine 50 mg for the amphetamine, while slightly less effective, was the best combination in terms of freedom from side effects. The drowsiness (sophitic) syndrome and nausea and vomiting require different therapy. Coffee or its alkaloids have long been used to increase alertness, and the amphetamines should be reserved for "contingencies." Once the nausea syndrome is well established, which should be a rarity, drugs taken by mouth may either remain in the stomach or be regurgitated. The combination of preventing head motions and the injection of an antimotion sickness remedy should suffice. The most effective measure would involve the use of a soporific or an antimotion sickness drug in an amount to ensure sleep.

Figure 12-41. Effectiveness of antimotion sickness drugs in preventing SRR sickness in 60 subjects exposed on 500 occasions in rotating environment, using Dial Test. (Wood & Graybiel, 1970a)
Early Guidelines in the Prevention of Vestibular Side Effects on Space Missions Involving The Generation of Artificial Gravity

The limitations in simulating such novel stimulus conditions as those involved in making sudden transitions between rotating and nonrotating portions of a space base force an extension of ground-based studies to include validating observations and experiments conducted aloft. The astronaut necessarily plays the key role in this integration. In the role of subject he can serve as his own control in validating studies; in the role of onboard experimenter he is essential in conducting experiments and making observations aloft; in the role of astronaut he has responsibilities in connection with the prevention of vestibular side effects during the mission. As indicated earlier, prevention involves taking charge rather than responding to events, and this will require close cooperation between the astronaut in the space base and the biomedical representatives in the ground-based control center during the period of adjustment.

Ground-based activities involving the astronaut center around the individualization of the problem in preventing vestibular side effects and the astronaut’s somewhat complementary role as subject and onboard experimenter. Major elements include selection (or secondary selection), instruction, preflight adaptation, monitoring his progress during the mission, and postflight assessment. The astroscientist, who does not double as an astronaut, presents somewhat different considerations. He would not be under the same time-load stress as the astronaut prior to launch, and presumably there would be little restriction in terms of participation in prelaunch assessment, indoctrination, and adaptation. Inasmuch as his tasks aloft would not include items critical for life support, rapid adjustment to stimulus conditions would not be a necessity, which in turn would permit greater freedom in the selection process.

The lines of direction of the ground-based experimental program would be determined in large part by the findings obtained under space flight conditions. Until that time, all guidelines are tentative in nature. A brief status report serves to point up gaps in our knowledge.

In order to keep the discussion within manageable limits it will be assumed that the rotating portion of the space base will have a radius of about 80 feet and that its maximal angular velocity will be 4 rpm. The problem posed by postural instability will not be discussed inasmuch as nonvestibular factors are of chief importance in this case. Only the worst-case situation will be considered: namely, initial transition into weightlessness, subsequent (initial), transition to rotation at 4 rpm with one-third fractional G loading, and sudden transitions between the rotating and nonrotating portions of the space base.

Transition Into Weightlessness

Information presently available indicates that it is possible by means of selection procedures not only to distinguish among astronauts and astroscientists who are or are not susceptible to vestibular side effects in weightlessness, but
also to rank those who are, according to their degree of susceptibility. In other words, rarely, if ever, should one be surprised by unexpected responses from astronauts making their initial transition into weightlessness and seldom surprised even in the case of astroscientists.

Transition Into The Rotating Environment

The principal unknown element of this novel experience concerns the effect of the fractional G load. This information will soon be available, but until then a conservative approach would serve to avoid the selection of persons who are susceptible to motion sickness in weightlessness. Present findings indicate that, with few exceptions, persons who are relatively insusceptible to motion sickness in weightlessness are in the group that is relatively insusceptible to motion sickness in the SRR. Consequently, persons with high adaptive capacity in the SRR and low susceptibility to motion sickness in weightlessness should not have a problem in making a sudden transition to 4 rpm in a space base if prelaunch adaptation has been carried out. This does not obviate the necessity for small rotating devices to permit incremental adaptation in case of need.

Sudden Transitions Between Rotation and Weightlessness

Here too we are dealing with novel stimulus conditions, and again it would be helpful to know the shape of the curves depicting susceptibility to vestibular side effects as a function of subgravity levels. The evidence available strongly indicates that it is possible to rank persons with regard to their acquisition and retention of adaptation to 4 rpm in the SRR and that persons fully adapted can make the transition between the stationary and rotating environments without experiencing either motion sickness or reflex vestibular effects, except insofar as they contribute to ataxia. What is not known is the extent to which adaptation effects acquired in the SRR would transfer to the space base condition. Again this points to the necessity of making provision for incremental adaptation in case of need. In weightlessness, incremental adaptation is more difficult to program than in a rotating environment, unless there are means for substituting passive for active motions.

Frequent transitions (measured in days) are necessary to preserve adaptation to both rotating and nonrotating environments under terrestrial conditions, and this would be a reasonable expectation under space base conditions.
References


Clark, B., & Stewart, J. D. Perception of angular acceleration about the yaw axis of a flight simulator. Aerospace Medicine, 1962, 33, 1426-1432.

Clark, B., & Stewart, J. D. Effects of angular acceleration on man: Thresholds for the perception of rotation and the oculogyral illusion. Aerospace Medicine, 1969, 40, 952-956.


Fregly, A. R., & Kennedy, R. S. Comparative effects of prolonged rotation at 10 rpm on postural equilibrium in vestibular normal and vestibular defective human subjects. Aerospace Medicine, 1965, 36, 1160-1167.

The Vestibular System


Graybiel, A., & Hupp, D. I. The oculogyral illusion: A form of apparent motion which may be observed following stimulation of the semicircular canals. Journal of Aviation Medicine, 1946, 17, 3-27.


Graybiel, A., Kennedy, R. S., Knoblock, E. C., Guedry, F. E., Jr., Mertz, W., McLeod, M. E., Colehour, J. K., Miller, E. F., II, & Fregly, A. R. The effects of exposure to a rotating environment (10 rpm) on four aviators for a period of twelve days. Aerospace Medicine, 1965, 36, 733-754.


Kellogg, R. S., & Graybiel, A. Lack of response to thermal stimulation of the semicircular canals in the weightless phase of parabolic flight. Aerospace Medicine, 1967, 38, 487-490.


McLeod, M. E., & Meek, J. C. A threshold caloric test: Results in normal subjects. NSAM-834. Naval School of Aviation Medicine, Pensacola, Fla., 1962.


McNally, W. J., & Stuart, E. A. Physiology of the labyrinth reviewed in relation to seasickness and other forms of motion sickness. War Medicine, 1942, 2, 683-711.


Reason, J. T., & Graybiel, A. An attempt to measure the degree of adaptation produced by differing amounts of Coriolis vestibular stimulation in the slow rotation room. NAMRL-1084. Naval Aerospace Medical Institute, Pensacola, Florida, 1969.


APPENDIX A

Vestibular Models*

The input-output relationships for the vestibular system relating linear and angular acceleration and gravitational forces to eye movements, perceived orientation, postural reflexes and control commands are shown schematically in figure A-1 (Young, 1969). Models have been developed for semicircular canal and otolith function, and to a limited extent for their interactions on the basis of behavioral experiments. Typically, subjects are rotated through known angular velocity patterns, and the resulting eye movements (usually angular velocity of slow phase nystagmus) or subjective sensation of velocity and perceived orientation with respect to the apparent vertical are monitored. A control engineering model for subjective sensation and slow phase nystagmus velocity for rotation about a vertical axis is shown in the adaptation model for horizontal semicircular canals given in figure A-2 (Young & Oman, 1969). The torsion pendulum canal dynamics represents the second-order equation describing semicircular canal action summarized by van Egmond, Groen, & Jongkees (1949). The differential equation relating angular deviation of the cupula to angular acceleration normal to the plane of the canal is given by:

\[ \theta \ddot{\xi} + \pi \dot{\xi} + \Delta \xi = a \dot{\theta} \]

where

- \( \theta \) = moment of inertia of the endolymph
- \( \pi \) = moment of friction at unit angular velocity of the endolymph with respect to the skull
- \( \Delta \) = stiffness, or torque moment per unit angular deflection of the cupula
- \( \xi \) = angular deviation of the endolymph with respect to the skull
- \( a \) = component of angular acceleration of the skull, with respect to inertial space, normal to the plane of the semicircular canal.

In Laplace transfer notation the cupula deflection is related to the angular acceleration by the relationship:

\[ \frac{\xi(S)}{\dot{\alpha}(S)} = \frac{1}{S^2 + (\pi/\theta)S + (\Delta/\theta)} \]

*The material in this section was kindly furnished by Professor L. R. Young, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.*
Figure A-1. Framework for systems analysis of vestibular function. (Young, 1969)

If the roots of the denominator are real and widely separated, i.e., the system overdamped and $\Delta/\pi \ll \pi/\theta$, the equation may be approximated as

$$\frac{\xi(s)}{a(s)} = \frac{1}{(s + a)(s + b)}$$

where

$$a = \frac{\Delta}{\pi} (0.04 - 0.02 \text{ rad/sec})$$
The Vestibular System

\[ a_{\text{nominal}} = \begin{cases} 
0.1 \text{ rad/sec for lateral canals,} \\
0.14 \text{ rad/sec for posterior and superior canals} 
\end{cases} \]

corresponding to the long time constant of the cupula return phase

and

\[ b = \frac{\pi}{\theta} \left( 4 - 300 \text{ rad/sec} \right) \]

\[ b_{\text{nominal}} = 10 \text{ rad/sec} \]

corresponding to the short time constant of the system

The existence of a nystagmus reversal following an impulse of acceleration and the reduction in nystagmus and sensation during sustained constant angular acceleration led to inclusion of central adaptation blocks for both nystagmus and sensation of angular velocity. The response of this model to an acceleration impulse (velocity step) of 1.0 deg/sec is shown in figure A-3 (Young & Oman, 1969). Notice the apparently shorter time constant for subjective angular velocity than for nystagmus slow phase velocity as has been observed in cupulometry. The model response to a step of constant acceleration is shown to agree with experimental data in figure A-4 (Young & Oman, 1969). Latency to detection of low-level constant angular accelerations is shown in figure A-5 (Young & Oman, 1969). Finally, the semicircular canal model can be used to predict nystagmus and subjective sensation responses to sinusoidal stimuli. For nystagmus, the concept of "cumulative" eye position is used, derived by eliminating all fast phases and piecing together the slow phase nystagmus as in figure A-6 (Young, 1969). The resulting frequency response for nystagmus is shown in figure A-7 (Young & Oman, 1969). It is seen that over a wide range of frequencies (within 0.1 rad/sec-10 rad/sec), the eye angular velocity tends to compensate for head angular velocity with relatively little phase lag or phase lead, but with a gain significantly less than 1. The complementary frequency response for subjective sensation of velocity is shown in figure A-8 (Young & Oman, 1969). The break frequencies are noted in terms of \( \tau_a \) (adaptation time constant) and \( \Delta / \pi \).

The nonlinear model for otolith function relates specific force (gravity minus linear acceleration) to perceived linear acceleration or tilt, as shown in figure A-9 (Young, 1969). The step response of this model shows a rapid rise, an overshoot, and decay of the resting level to about 40 percent of the peak response with a time constant of approximately 5 seconds. The model frequency response is shown in figure A-10 (Young, 1969). It is supported by data on sensation of linear velocity during sinusoidal horizontal acceleration and by the phase angle of dynamic counterrolling during continuous rotations. The model can be interpreted as perceived velocity with respect to actual velocity, or perceived tilt with respect to actual tilt. Figure A-11 (Young, 1969) shows the latency to perception of constant linear acceleration as a function of acceleration level. The
model assumes an absolute threshold of approximately 0.005 g's for gravitationertial force in the plane of the utricular otolith. Figure A-11 is for horizontal acceleration with the head upright which places the latency at 0.01 g's.

Figure A-3. Velocity step response of MIT semicircular canal linearized model to 1.0 deg/sec velocity step. (Young & Oman, 1969)

Figure A-4. Comparison of adaptation model for vestibular response with Guedry and Lauver (1961) experiments for an angular acceleration step (1.5 deg/sec²). (Young & Oman, 1969)
Figure A-5. Adaptation model for subjective response latency to constant angular acceleration. (Young & Oman, 1969)

Figure A-6. Vestibular nystagmus and "cumulative" eye position (f = 0.5 Hz). Note correspondence of slow phase vestibular nystagmus and "cumulative" eye position. (Meiry, 1965)
Figure A–7. Frequency response of compensatory eye movements for linearized model: eye velocity/input velocity = \( \frac{10.5s^2}{(s + 25)(s + 0.0625)(s + 0.008)} \). (Young & Oman, 1969)

Figure A–8. Frequency response of adaptation model for subjective sensation. (Young & Oman, 1969)

Figure A–9. Revised nonlinear otolith model. (Young, 1969)
Cross-coupling between linear and angular sensors has also been a subject of input-output modeling. A preliminary structure of this cross-coupling is shown in figure A-12 (Young, 1969) in which linear acceleration affects nystagmus.
both through modification of semicircular canal nystagmus and through "L
ystagmus" based on otolith stimulation. Numerous examples of "barbeque
spit" nystagmus have been observed, both by constant angular velocity rotation
about a longitudinal horizontal axis and by counterrotating a subject on a
centrifuge. In each case the "steady state" angular acceleration at the
semicircular canals is zero, and yet a consistent nystagmus pattern persists. The
nystagmus contains both a bias (steady level) component and a sinusoidal
component with period equal to that of the rotation. The sensitivity of this bias
and sinusoidal component (as well as the predication of Steer's "roller pump"
model) is shown in figure A-13 (Young, 1969).

Figure A-12. Preliminary structure-model of influence of linear acceleration on nystagmus.
(Young, 1969)

Figure A-13. Summary of available data of normalized bias and sinusoidal amplitude
of vestibular nystagmus from rotation in a 1 g field (L-nystagmus). (Young, 1969)
An overall summary diagram of the vestibular model is given in figure A-14 (Young, 1969).

Figure A-14. Summary diagram. Biocybernetic model of vestibular system. (Young, 1969)

References


Clark, B., & Stewart, J.D. Perception of angular acceleration about the yaw axis of a flight simulator. Aerospace Medicine, 1962, 33, 1426-1432.


Young, L.R., & Oman, C.M., Model for vestibular adaptation to horizontal rotation. Aerospace Medicine, 1969, 40, 1076-1080.
APPENDIX B

Design Criteria for Rotating Space Vehicles*

Mathematical expressions for the unique static and dynamic characteristics (and associated derivatives) in rotating environments are listed in table B-1. Certain aspects of man’s performances are influenced by these characteristics. They are as follows:

Self-locomotion, either walking or climbing, and material handling are, of course elements of gross motor performance; other gross motor performances of concern are force and torque applications. Fine motor performance involves dexterity and eye-hand coordination involving head motions. Postural balance may be influenced by reduced gravity and the Coriolis forces acting due to body motions necessary in the act of balancing or moving. Transition from artificial gravity to zero gravity and return, as may be required in space base operations, can possibly degrade performance because of developed adaptations to either condition. Passive radial locomotion, as with an elevator on a space base, may be influenced by the Coriolis forces involved, dependent on the rate of elevator movement. In addition, the potential rapid onset of g when increasing radius could have an acute influence on orthostatic tolerance as any rapid onset of g might. Work-rest cycles involve the time lines of general and specific performance and the energies involved for performance, and could influence the extent of work and rest periods.

The remainder of this material involves the considered influence of the unique characteristics of artificial gravity on specific elements of performance. A number of criteria have been suggested that relate to these characteristics and the potential influence on performance (table B-2). These criteria are used to draw boundaries on plots of the two independent variables of artificial gravity, radius and rate of rotation, and thus depict areas of these variables where acceptable performance may be expected. It must be remembered that these boundaries are currently based on judgment, as little data exist. It is necessary, therefore, to verify the validity of the criteria and to establish appropriate magnitudes for them. The criteria (table B-2) relate to the gravity level, Coriolis forces, gravity gradient, and cross-coupled angular accelerations. The gravity-level criteria are bounded by 1 g and 0.1 g while moving in the vehicle. There is clearly no need to exceed 1 g and 0.1 g is considered a minimum value for adequate traction. The Coriolis forces relate to human or object motion tangentially and radially and with the annoying factor that objects do not fall where expected. The gravity gradient criteria relate to changes of weight of objects when their radial position is changed, to the gradients along the body, and to variations of hydrostatic pressure along the body relative to that on Earth. The cross-coupling angular acceleration criteria relate to the rotation of objects and to the rotation of the human head in the rotating environment.

*The material under this heading was kindly furnished by Mr. R. W. Stone, Jr., NASA Langley Research Center.
Table B-1
Mathematical Expressions of the Characteristics of Artificial Gravity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Mathematical Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>g level</td>
<td>( a_{cg} = r_{cg} \omega_v^2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g gradient</td>
<td>( \frac{da_{cg}}{dr} = \omega_v^2 = \frac{a_{cg}}{r_{cg}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g ratios</td>
<td>( a_1/a_2 = r_1/r_2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object weight change</td>
<td>( \Delta W/W = (r_1 - r_2)/r_2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity variations along body</td>
<td>( h \left( \omega_v^2 \right) = (h/r) a_{cg} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coriolis acceleration (radial)</td>
<td>( \ddot{y} = \gamma - r \left( \frac{\omega_1^2 + 2 \omega_1 \omega_v + \omega_v^2}{\omega_v} \right) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coriolis acceleration (tangential)</td>
<td>( \ddot{y} = 2i \left( \omega_1 + \omega_v \right) + r \dot{\omega}_1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angular cross coupling</td>
<td>( \dot{\omega}_h = \dot{\omega}_h - \dot{\omega}<em>v \left( \omega</em>{h \theta} \sin \theta \right. )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \left. + \omega_{h \psi} \cos \theta \sin \psi \right) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \dot{\omega}<em>h = \dot{\omega}</em>{h \theta} - \dot{\omega}<em>v \left( \omega</em>{h \psi} \cos \theta \cos \psi \right) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \dot{\omega}<em>h = \dot{\omega}</em>{h \psi} \left( \omega_{h \theta} \sin \theta \right) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance objects fall from expected position</td>
<td>( \Delta F = r_F \left( \sqrt{r_F^2 - r_1^2} \right) \omega_v^2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrostatic pressure variation</td>
<td>( p_{hs} = \rho/2 \left( r_2^2 - r_1^2 \right) \omega_v^2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance objects fall from expected position</td>
<td>( d = r_F \left( \sqrt{r_F^2 - r_1^2} \right) - \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\sqrt{r_2^2 - r_1^2}}{r_F} \right) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table B-2
Potential Criteria for Artificial Gravity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gravity Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$32.2 \geq r \omega_f^2 + 2 r \omega_1 \omega_y + r \omega_y^2 \geq 3.22$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coriolis Forces</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tangential movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dropped objects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gravity Gradient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change in object weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Along body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrostatic pressure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cross-Coupled Angular Accelerations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\omega_y \leq C_7/\omega_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\omega_y \leq C_8/\omega_h$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-1 is a graphic representation of the influence of these characteristics on man moving within a rotating spacecraft. There is radical movement toward and away from the center of rotation with the tangential components of Coriolis forces acting. There is tangential movement with and against the direction of rotation with alterations in the radial forces (weight) shown. Axial motion causes no Coriolis forces except for those created by lateral movement of limbs or lateral body sway. The least influence of the characteristics of artificial gravity on human mobility probably occurs during axial motion.

![Diagram of Direction of Rotation and Coriolis Forces](image)

**Figure B-1.** Graphical representation of influence of artificial gravity on self-mobility.

Figure B-2 shows four boundaries expected to influence walking on the floors of rotating vehicles. The 1 g limit is one below which, when walking at 3 ft/sec, the body will never exceed 1 g. Below the leg weight boundary, the feet, when walking at 3 ft/sec, will not exceed 1 g. Above the 0.1 g traction limit, traction is expected to be adequate. The fourth boundary, $\Delta W/W$, often referred to as the ratio of Coriolis force to artificial weight, is one above which, when walking 3 ft/sec, the change in weight due to the relative motion will not exceed 0.5 of the artificial weight. Also shown in this figure are data for walking in simulated artificial gravity at nominal values of artificial gravity of 1/6 g, 0.2 g, 0.3 g, and 0.5 g. While walking against the rotation at 1/6 g, traction became difficult which tends to verify the traction boundary. At 0.5 g, while walking with the rotation, subjects complain of leg heaviness, indicating that the boundary for leg heaviness may be somewhat high. Walking at 0.3 g seems to be the most amenable g of those studied. The $\Delta W/W$ boundary has not essentially been established at 0.5. It should be noted that these data were obtained for curved floors having a constant value of radius. Flat floors, depending on the radius, can impose difficulties not indicated on this figure.
Figure B-2. Rate of rotation and radius boundaries for acceptable tangential self-locomotion in artificial gravity. Boundaries are for speed of locomotion of 3 ft/sec.

Figure B-3 shows two boundaries for radial motion of the astronaut, as when climbing toward or away from the center of rotation, one for which the Coriolis forces due to 2 ft/sec radial motion does not exceed 0.30 the artificial weight, and the other where it does not exceed 0.30 the Earth weight. There are no data to support either criteria or the magnitude of 0.30. As these are forces not supported by the legs, the boundary that relates to Earth weight may have significance. Clearly, studies to establish proper values are needed.

Figure B-3. Rate of rotation and radius boundaries for acceptable self-locomotion in artificial gravity. Boundaries are for a speed of locomotion of 2 ft/sec.
Figure B-4 shows boundaries for material handling. Three boundaries are shown: one for tangential movement above which the change in weight due to 4 ft/sec of motion will not exceed 0.25 of the artificial weight; a second for radial motion where the tangential Coriolis forces do not exceed 0.25 of the artificial weight; beyond the third boundary, the weight of an object when raised 6 feet does not decrease below 0.50 of its original artificial weight. A fourth possible boundary is not shown but would relate to the rotation of an object out of the plane of rotation. It has been assumed that a torque caused by angular cross-coupling probably can be 0.50 of the applied torque. Rate of vehicle rotation for this value could be rather large, greater than 10 rpm. Research to establish the validity of any of these criteria and proper magnitudes for them are required.

Figure B-4. Rate of rotation and radius boundaries for acceptable material handling in artificial gravity. Boundaries are for speed of material movement of 4 ft/sec.

Figure B-5 relates to boundaries for postural balance. The first is a static boundary or neutral stability, beyond which the vestibular mechanism would sense falling before an unbalance angle for a stationary man would be exceeded. It is felt that this is not a significant boundary for normal man. Two dynamic boundaries are shown, one for the vertical motions and the other for lateral motions present when walking. In both instances, these could have more critical influence when walking axially as the unusual Coriolis accelerations would act in a lateral direction about which man is least stable. When man is walking tangentially, the accelerations act in the saggital plane. It is assumed that these Coriolis accelerations should not exceed 0.25 of the artificial weight.

Figure B-6 is a plot that relates angular head motions and vehicle rate of rotation. The stimulus that causes disturbances in a rotating environment is the cross-coupling that exists between these two angular velocities. The product of these two values gives the maximum stimulus from cross-coupled angular
acceleration. Shown on this figure are curves of constant values of this cross-coupling, ranging from 0.5 to 4.0 rad/sec$^2$. Based on current experience, a value of this cross-coupling of 2.0 rad/sec$^2$ (deg/sec$^2$) seems to be a conservative tolerance criterion. A range of rapid head motions possible for man is from 2.5 to 3.5 rad/sec (140 deg/sec to 200 deg/sec). Vehicle rpm boundaries of 4 (a conservative value), 6 (a nominally acceptable value), and 10 (a tolerable value) are shown. Generally, of course, adaptation is required to attain continued exposure to such rotation.

Figure B-5. Rate of rotation versus radius boundaries for acceptable postural balance in artificial gravity.

Figure B-6. Possible criteria for acceptability of cross-coupled angular accelerations in vehicles with artificial gravity.

Figure B-7 is a compilation of all the previous boundaries shown, superimposed on plots of artificial gravity. The area encompassed by all
boundaries shows a minimum radius between 50 and 55 feet. The material handling boundaries are the critical elements. These boundaries are, of course, not well established and must be validated numerically and for analytical form by experiments. If these are not valid, a much smaller radius may be possible. It must be noted, of course, that all other boundaries require similar verification. The Coriolis force to artificial gravity ratio \( \frac{W}{W} \), which is plotted as 0.5 on this figure, has often been considered to have a maximum desirable value of 0.25. Such a value would impose a radius of the order of 50 feet, as has been noted previously.

Figure B-7. Compilation of boundaries for acceptable human performance in artificial gravity.

Figure B-8 is a log plot based on the material in Figure B-7.

Figure B-8. Log plot of material in figure B-7. (Courtesy of D. B. Cramer)
## SYMBOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$a$</td>
<td>acceleration, feet per second squared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$</td>
<td>angular acceleration, rad/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$r$</td>
<td>radius, feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\omega$</td>
<td>rate of rotation, radians per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$W$</td>
<td>artificial weight, pounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta W$</td>
<td>change in artificial weight due to radius change or relative velocity, pounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$g$</td>
<td>acceleration of Earth's gravity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h$</td>
<td>distance or height along body, feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x$</td>
<td>instantaneous radial distance, feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$y$</td>
<td>instantaneous tangential distance, feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\theta, \phi, \psi$</td>
<td>Euler angles, radians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{hs}$</td>
<td>hydrostatic pressure pounds per square foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$d$</td>
<td>tangential distance, feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subscripts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subscript</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$cg$</td>
<td>center of gravity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$v$</td>
<td>vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 and 2</td>
<td>radial positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>incremental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_x, h_y, h_z$</td>
<td>head or object relative to inertial space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$h_q, h_\phi, h_\psi$</td>
<td>head or object relative to vehicle axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F$</td>
<td>floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$cc$</td>
<td>cross coupling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dot represents the first derivation with respect to time.

Double dot represents the second derivation with respect to time.
CHAPTER 13
VISION

by

John H. Taylor, Ph.D.
University of California
San Diego

The extreme importance of the human visual system in ordinary life is obvious, and the necessity for an intact functional visual apparatus in the performance of ever more critical tasks when man and machine must interact has become increasingly evident. Man is no longer a mere passenger aboard a space vehicle—he is an active element in the system, able to perform intricate tasks, to make scientific observations, to exercise judgment, and to modify the course of a mission. The most important sensory input which he requires for nearly all such activity is visual, and it is therefore imperative that every phase of operation in space be considered in regard to the optimization, maintenance, and protection of man's vision.

This chapter presents some of the facts of human vision which are believed to be important in present and projected space activities. Even though it is limited to the case of normal or superior visual capabilities, as may be assumed to pertain to the astronaut group, the information is necessarily sketchy. For this reason, and because new data are always becoming available, it is to be hoped that the reader will seek supplementary information in the current literature.

Units and Definitions

The quantitative description of the visual process requires a set of meaningful units, and because of the nonlinearity of the eye as receiver, these units differ from the units of physics in that they reflect the properties of the underlying physiological and psychophysical mechanisms of vision. Radiant energy in the band of electromagnetic wavelengths between about 380 and 750 nanometers is capable of stimulating the eye, and that

Reviewed by John Lott Brown, Ph.D., University of Rochester.
which does so is called light. While the measurement of radiant energy in general is called radiometry, the measurement of light is called photometry, and photometric units are based upon the potential of light for stimulating vision. An adequate discussion of the relationship between radiometric and photometric concepts and quantities is beyond the scope of this chapter, and the reader should consult one or more of the available contemporary references (Walsh, 1958; Kaufman, 1966; Meyer-Arendt, 1968). Some of the units most frequently used are shown in table 13-1. The function which relates radiometric quantities to their photometric counterparts is called the luminous efficiency curve, and is shown in figure 13-1. This curve is, in fact, the spectral sensitivity function for the eye at high energy levels, and the photometric units which depend upon it are rigorously appropriate only to the case of daylight vision. It will be seen later that the maximum of the curve is shifted toward the shorter wavelengths as light levels drop, and that for night vision the peak has moved from its daylight position at 555 nanometers (nm) down to 505 nm. There have been efforts to establish photometric units which apply to the low-level case (scotopic, as opposed to photopic vision), but for most purposes the units based on the data of figure 13-1 continue to be used. A notable exception occurs in the treatment of colored stimuli at low levels, where the correction is absolutely mandatory.

Most of the data provided in this chapter are expressed in terms either of luminance or of a kind of ratio of luminances called contrast. Luminance is the photometric term corresponding to radiance, and refers to the amount of visible light coming from an extended surface which is illuminated or self-luminous. In the former (much more usual) case it is the product of the illuminance falling on the surface and the luminous reflectance of the surface, and will generally be dependent on the lighting and viewing geometries. There are many units of luminance which have been used from time to time, and the present trend is to reduce their number to a single unit in the M.K.S. system; the candela per square meter (cd·m⁻²), or nit. But almost none of the data of vision are reported in terms of nits, and it is safe to say that almost none of the engineers who deal with light are yet able to visualize a luminance of, say, 10 cd·m⁻². By far the most used and most familiar units of luminance, at least in English-speaking countries, are the foot-lambert (ft-L) and the millilambert (mL). These two quantities are close enough in magnitude (1 ft-L = 1.076 mL) so that they may be considered equal in most engineering applications, and these are the units which will be used here. Interconversions between some of the more common luminance units and illuminance may be accomplished by use of the values in tables 13-2 and 13-3. Other units and concepts will be defined as needed in the text.

Concept of the Threshold

The quantitative description of visual performance is usually made in terms of that useful construct called the threshold. Simply put, the threshold is some value of stimulus magnitude, or interstimulus difference,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical (source of radiant energy)</th>
<th>Radiation (process)</th>
<th>Photometry</th>
<th>Luminous source of luminous energy</th>
<th>M.K.S. Units</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>M.K.S. Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radiometry</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous energy</td>
<td>joule/m³</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>talbot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiant energy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous density</td>
<td>w/m²</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>watt/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiant flux</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous flux</td>
<td>watt</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>lumen/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiant emittance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous emittance</td>
<td>watt/lumen/candle</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>lumen/1000/lumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiant intensity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous intensity</td>
<td>watt/m²</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>lumen/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminance</td>
<td>watt/candle</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>lumen/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irradiance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Illuminance</td>
<td>watt/m²</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>lumen/m² lux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectral reflectance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Luminous reflectance</td>
<td>watt/m²</td>
<td>t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ratio of photometric quantity to corresponding radiometric quantity (standard unit) = luminosity, K (luminous efficiency, lumens/watt) of radiant energy involved.

*cd m⁻².
to which an observer responds with some selected probability. The general case is suggested by figure 13-2. As the magnitude of the stimulus is increased from low values where seeing never occurs to high values where seeing is essentially certain, the curve of point probabilities rises in an ogival fashion. Since the inflection of the curve (which is commonly believed to be a normal Gaussian integral) occurs at a probability level of 0.50, this value is usually selected for reasons of statistical precision, and the value of stimulus magnitude which elicits the response 50 percent of the time is called the threshold.

![Figure 13-1. Spectral sensitivity of the human eye for daylight conditions.](image)

In most engineering applications, of course, one is concerned with performance levels other than 50 percent—usually with such probabilities as 0.95 or 0.99 or even higher. Conversion to probabilities other than 0.50 can be made with confidence in some cases; the degree of risk depends heavily upon the manner in which the basic data were collected. Useful approximations can be made, for example, in the data for contrast discrimination and visual acuity, where doubling the value of threshold at $P = 0.5$ yields magnitudes where $P$ is close to 1.0.

**Visibility**

The term visibility has been used in a number of ways; by meteorologists in evaluating seeing conditions in the atmosphere, by airframe
Table 13-2
Conversion Factors for Units of Luminance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Multiplied by</th>
<th>cd/m^2 (nit)*</th>
<th>cd/cm^2 (stilb)</th>
<th>cd/ft^2</th>
<th>cd/in^2</th>
<th>apostilb (blondel)</th>
<th>mililambert</th>
<th>foot-lambert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cd/m^2 (nit)*</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10 000</td>
<td>10.764</td>
<td>1550</td>
<td>0.3183</td>
<td>3.183</td>
<td>3.426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cd/cm^2 (stilb)</td>
<td>0.0001</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.001076</td>
<td>0.155</td>
<td>0.00003183</td>
<td>0.0003183</td>
<td>0.0003426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cd/ft^2</td>
<td>0.0929</td>
<td>929</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>0.02957</td>
<td>0.2957</td>
<td>0.3183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cd/in^2</td>
<td>0.000645</td>
<td>6.452</td>
<td>0.00694</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.0002054</td>
<td>0.002054</td>
<td>0.002211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apostilb (blondel)</td>
<td>3.1416</td>
<td>31 416</td>
<td>33.82</td>
<td>4869</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10.764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mililambert</td>
<td>0.31416</td>
<td>3 141.6</td>
<td>3.382</td>
<td>486.9</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.0764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot-lambert</td>
<td>0.2919</td>
<td>2919</td>
<td>3.1416</td>
<td>452.4</td>
<td>0.0929</td>
<td>0.929</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The name "nit" is not in widespread use.*
designers to describe a pilot's field of view, and others. Used in its more technical sense, visibility refers to the total process of seeing and thus reflects the interaction between man's visual apparatus and his physical environment. The description of visibility, therefore, requires data which relate to the properties of the visual stimulus (usually an object seen against a background, illuminated in a specific way), the optical transmission properties of the path of sight (whether it be air, or water, or through an intervening element such as a window or an optical device), and to the visual performance capabilities of the observer. A general treatment of the topic may be found in the papers by Duntley et al. (1964). By and large the solution of problems of visibility of greatest interest has been laborious and slow. Recent developments by the University of California's Visibility Laboratory are leading to the use of high-speed computers which are able to cope with the tremendous numbers of interactions between the dozen or more variables which must be taken into account.

Table 13–3
Conversion Factors for Units of Illuminance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Multipied by</th>
<th>Foot-candles</th>
<th>Im/m² (lux)*</th>
<th>Phot</th>
<th>Milliphot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foot-candles</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.0929</td>
<td>929</td>
<td>0.929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Im/m² (lux)*</td>
<td>10.764</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phot</td>
<td>0.00108</td>
<td>0.0001</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milliphot</td>
<td>1.076</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The symbol for lux is lx.

Figure 13–2. General case of a response curve used to define "threshold." (From the Human factors in air transport design by R. A. McFarland. Copyright 1946 by The McGraw-Hill Book Company. Used by their permission)
The Visual Environment

Earthbound man's visual environment has been determined by the quantity and quality of natural and artificial illuminations available to him, and by the reflectance characteristics of materials present in his world. His visual system has evolved in such a way that he enjoys useful vision over a range of more than ten million to one in natural illumination, by means of a relatively narrow band of wavelengths in the electromagnetic spectrum. The great range of luminances over which the human visual system can function is shown in table 13-4.

Natural illumination reaching the Earth's surface depends upon solar altitude, lunar altitude and phase angle, and cloud cover. An extensive study by Brown (1952) is summarized in figure 13-3. The original reference should be consulted for large scale plots relating to different latitudes and declinations, which show illumination as a function of local apparent time. A more conveniently-sized and readily obtainable version of Brown's charts may be found in Biberman et al. (1966).

The inherent luminance of objects in the visual field depends upon the intensity of the illumination and the reflectance of the objects, each having directional properties. Contrast between object and background will be governed by the same quantities in the case of palpable backgrounds, or by background luminance alone in the case of objects of fixed luminance seen against the sky. The optical properties of objects and backgrounds have been discussed in detail by Gordon (1964), and the reflectance of many natural terrains has been measured by Krinov (1947). The range of luminances in average outdoor scenes on Earth is about 160:1, although extremes of 27:1 and 760:1 were noted by Jones and Condit (1941). In the special case of self-luminous or specularly reflectant objects being included in the field of view, these ratios can become very much higher.

In space the visual environment will differ significantly from that on Earth. In flight, and on the surface of celestial bodies without atmospheres, natural illumination will come from the sun, planets, stars, planetary satellites, galactic light, and the zodiacal light. The lunar surface normal to the sun's rays receives (as does the top of the Earth's atmosphere) about 12 700 foot-candles (ft-c) of solar illumination. But in the absence of atmospheric scattering, this highly directional light will produce extremely high contrasts between lunar features in sunlight and those in shadow. The lunar visual environment has been discussed by Taylor (1967), and some of the photometric properties of the moon's surface, measured during the Surveyor program, have been described by Rennison et al. (1968). Owing to the absence of atmospheric scattering and the generally low reflectance of lunar surface materials, it may be expected that the range of luminances on the moon may extend from about 1000 ft-L for sunlit rock down to about $10^{-6}$ ft-L for areas in shadow. During lunar night, when both sun and Earth are below the local horizon, the only illumination will come from the space background elements noted above. Thus, in the absence of twilight, airglow and aurorae, illumination in the lunar night will fall considerably below the minimum value shown in figure 13-3 for Earth night, and is estimated to be $10^{-6}$ ft-c. Average luminance of the nighttime lunar landscape can therefore fall below $10^{-7}$ft-L, a level at which the human eye performs as if the luminance were zero.
### Table 13-4

**Range of Luminance for Visual Performance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luminance in mL</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$1 \times 10^9$</td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Viewed from outside earth's atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$4.4 \times 10^9$</td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Viewed from the earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$8 \times 10^7$</td>
<td>A-Bomb</td>
<td>Fireball 4 miles from point of detonation of an 800 KT weapon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1 \times 10^9$</td>
<td>Venus</td>
<td>Assume albedo ($\rho$) of 0.59 viewed from outside atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$9.4 \times 10^8$</td>
<td>Earth</td>
<td>Viewed from space with cloud cover ($\rho = 0.8$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$4.3 \times 10^8$</td>
<td>Earth</td>
<td>Viewed in January from outside atmosphere, no clouds ($\rho = 0.39$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2.9 \times 10^8$</td>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>Viewed from outside atmosphere ($\rho = 0.59$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1.2 \times 10^8$</td>
<td>Moon</td>
<td>Average sky on clear day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$9.6 \times 10^7$</td>
<td>Saturn</td>
<td>Average sky on cloudy day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$8 \times 10^7$</td>
<td>Mars</td>
<td>Full moon viewed from outside of atmosphere ($\rho = 0.073$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5 \times 10^6$</td>
<td>Sky</td>
<td>Full moon viewed from earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2.4 \times 10^5$</td>
<td>Uranus</td>
<td>Viewed from outside the earth ($\rho = 0.63$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1.1 \times 10^4$</td>
<td>Neptune</td>
<td>Viewed from outside atmosphere ($\rho = 0.73$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2 \times 10^4$</td>
<td>White paper in good reading light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1.6 \times 10^4$</td>
<td>Movie screen (indoors)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$7 \times 10^3$</td>
<td>TV screen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$8 \times 10^2$</td>
<td>Pluto</td>
<td>Viewed from outside the atmosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$8 \times 10^1$</td>
<td>Snow in light of full moon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2 \times 10^2$</td>
<td>Lower limit for useful color vision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$7.5 \times 10^1$</td>
<td>Earth</td>
<td>Viewed from outside atmosphere with full moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1 \times 10^2$</td>
<td>Upper limit for night vision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 13-4 (Continued)

Range of Luminance for Visual Performance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Luminance (lx)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 x 10^-5</td>
<td>Earth Viewed from outside atmosphere at night with airglow, starlight, and zodiacal light providing illumination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x 10^-5</td>
<td>Absolute threshold for dark adapted human eye; lower limit for night vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 x 10^-6</td>
<td>Sky Moonless night sky viewed from earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x 10^-6</td>
<td>Space background Background luminance formed by starlight, zodiacal and galactic light.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 13-3. The range of natural illumination falling on the surface of the Earth. (Brown, 1952)

Between these extreme values of sunlit lunar day and Earthless lunar night, illumination on the moon is due to light from the Earth. The maximum value occurs with the full Earth at the zenith, which will provide approximately 10 ft-c—with minor variations caused by rotation and differences in cloud cover. As Earth's phase angle increases from zero (full) to 180° (dark), illumination levels will drop in conformity with the curve shown in figure 13-4 which refers to the case of the Earth at the zenith.
Variations in illumination due to altitude of the Earth in the lunar sky may be expected to follow the cosine law of illumination very closely. A more detailed consideration of the lunar visual environment is given by Jones (1967) and by Kuiper (1954). The report of Shoemaker et al. (1967) indicates that there are only minor local color differences to be found in the lunar surface materials, at least for the local Surveyor regions. Earthshine is somewhat variable in color, but is predominantly bluish.

Farther out in space, in interplanetary travel and planetary surface exploration, the visual environment will be determined by distance from the sun, the properties of planetary atmospheres, the presence of natural satellites, and the character of the planetary materials. Solar illumination will vary with the square of the distance, so that average values may be summarized (for the normal plane) as indicated in table 13-5.

The values in the table refer to illumination at the top of the planet's atmosphere, if present, and vary with distance from the sun. Conditions within and beneath the atmospheres will depend upon the characteristics of the planetary aerosols. At present only scant data exist; the cloud cover enshrouding Venus, as well as Jupiter and Saturn, precludes measurement except by remote
probes. Koval (1964) has summarized the data for Mars, and considers both its atmosphere and the properties of the Martian surface with its observed seasonal variations.

Table 13–5
Illumination Levels in Space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planet</th>
<th>Mean Solar Illumination (Foot-Candles)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>84 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venus</td>
<td>24 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth</td>
<td>12 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mars</td>
<td>5430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturn</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uranus</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluto</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The directional luminous reflectances of some selected terrain backgrounds are given in table 13-6. These values not only exemplify the range of luminances, but also their variation with angles of both illumination and path of sight. After correction for transmission losses along appropriate paths of sight, these values may be used in predicting visibility for such activities as reentry (e.g., for the Apollo landmark problem), and the evaluation of Earth resources from earth orbit and other sorts of visual reconnaissance.

Structure of the Visual System

The principal parts of the human eye are shown in figure 13-5 and figure 13-6. Figure 13-5 shows some of the muscles that move the eyeball in its orbit. The superior rectus muscle elevates the front of the eyeball; the lateral rectus muscle pulls the eye to the right (outward). Inferior and medial rectus muscles, not seen in this drawing, balance or oppose these movements. The superior muscle, passing through a pulley, and the opposing inferior oblique, rotate the eyeball, also moving the front surface up or down and laterally. These movements allow the visual image to be consistently aligned on the retina when the head is moved or tilted. Inside the eyeball, the lining of the major cavity behind the lens is the retina, the light-sensitive neural layer (that is detailed diagrammatically in figure 13-7). Arteries and veins to supply this active retinal tissue come through the back of the eyeball with the fibers of the optic nerve, thence to be distributed over the front surface of the retina. Light rays enter the transparent cornea, and in so doing are refracted at the curved interface between air and the tear fluid which bathes the cornea. Most of the optical power of the eye inhere in this initial refraction. After passing through the cornea and the
clear liquid (the aqueous humor) contained in the anterior chamber, the bundle of rays is restricted by a circular variable aperture, the pupil, whose size is changed through action of the muscles of the iris. The rays are further refracted by passage through the lens, traversing the clear, jellylike vitreous humor of the posterior chamber, so that, in a properly focused eye, a sharp image is formed on the retina. Scattering of light within the eye is minimized by a darkly pigmented layer of tissue underlying the retina, called the choroid. The shape of the eye is maintained by reason of its enclosure in an elastic capsule, the sclera, and the fact that the fluids within are maintained at positive pressure.

Figure 13-6 and table 13-7 give dimensions and optical constants of the human eye. Values in brackets shown in the table refer to state of maximum accommodation. The horizontal and vertical diameters of the eyeball are 24.0 and 23.5 mm, respectively. The optic disk, or blind spot, is about 15 degrees to the nasal side of the center of the retina and about 1.5 degrees below the horizontal meridian.

Changes in focus are accomplished by altering the shape of the lens; relaxation of the ciliary muscle results in a thickening of the lens, with a consequent shortening of the focal length so that nearby objects are brought into focus. The action is termed accommodation.

The retina is a thin membrane lining rear of the posterior chamber and containing the light-sensitive cells. These cells are of two functionally discrete types, called rods and cones. Rod cells are the more abundant, there being about 120 million in each eye. They subserve night vision, and are incapable of yielding the information necessary for color discrimination, since they contain a single common photosensitive pigment. Cone cells are both less numerous (6 million or so in each eye) and less sensitive to low levels of luminance. Human cones are of three types, each containing a different photopigment with peak response to a particular part of the visible spectrum. Thus, by differential transmission of nerve impulses upon stimulation, the cones are able to encode information about the spectral content of the image so that the observer experiences the sensation of color.

In addition to the rods and cones, the retina contains other nerve cells of various function. Some of these enable the impulses from many rods to be converged upon relatively few optic nerve fibers; others permit many sorts of excitatory and inhibitory cross-innervations within the retina. Through this arrangement of bipolar cells, ganglion cells, and their various interactions, impulses which arose in the photoreceptors are transmitted to the visual cortex of the brain. A vastly simplified diagram of the retina is shown in figure 13-7. Light must traverse the various layers of cell bodies and synapses before reaching the photosensitive pigments which are contained in the outer segments of the rods and cones. The darkly pigmented choroid serves to absorb unused light and thus to reduce the amount of intraocular scattering. Although there are many more rods (around 125 000 000) than cones (about 6 500 000), the impulses from many rods converge upon relatively few bipolar cells. This convergence is significantly less in the case of the cones, and is one reason for the fact that visual acuity is best at luminance levels high enough to permit adequate cone function, especially in the fovea where only closely-packed cones are found.
Table 13-6
Directional Luminous Reflectance of Terrain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Azimuth of the Path of Sight Relative to the Sun</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>10°</th>
<th>30°</th>
<th>60°</th>
<th>90°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sun Zenith Angle</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Pine trees, small, uniformly spaced. Data are for unresolved terrain over which atmospheric data given in Sec. VI were collected.</td>
<td>41.5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0333</td>
<td>0.0241</td>
<td>0.0214</td>
<td>0.0214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0222</td>
<td>0.0227</td>
<td>0.0194</td>
<td>0.0210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0215</td>
<td>0.0341</td>
<td>0.0317</td>
<td>0.0317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0335</td>
<td>0.0382</td>
<td>0.0392</td>
<td>0.0387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0402</td>
<td>0.0444</td>
<td>0.0758</td>
<td>0.0640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Grass, thick, rather long, pale green, dormant, dryish, little ground showing.</td>
<td>41.5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.088</td>
<td>0.0841</td>
<td>0.076</td>
<td>0.077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.080</td>
<td>0.119</td>
<td>0.146</td>
<td>0.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Asphalt, oily, with dust film blown onto oil.</td>
<td>42.0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.061</td>
<td>0.057</td>
<td>0.058</td>
<td>0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.067</td>
<td>0.080</td>
<td>0.104</td>
<td>0.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. “White” concrete, aged.</td>
<td>42.2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.266</td>
<td>0.264</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>0.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.280</td>
<td>0.313</td>
<td>0.343</td>
<td>0.367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Calm water, infinite optical depth.</td>
<td>41.5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0222</td>
<td>0.0234</td>
<td>0.0297</td>
<td>0.0569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0230</td>
<td>0.0240</td>
<td>0.0272</td>
<td>0.0357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0222</td>
<td>0.0222</td>
<td>0.0254</td>
<td>0.0293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0213</td>
<td>0.0212</td>
<td>0.0220</td>
<td>0.0270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0214</td>
<td>0.0212</td>
<td>0.0216</td>
<td>0.0267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Sun Zenith Angle</td>
<td>Azimuth of the Path of Sight Relative to the Sun</td>
<td>Zenith Angle of Path of Sight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Grass, lush green, closely mowed thick lawn.</td>
<td>40.4 0</td>
<td>0.100 0.006 0.008 0.108 0.120 0.149 0.168</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39.6 90</td>
<td>0.103 0.110 0.121 0.138 0.159 0.168</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39.6 135</td>
<td>0.107 0.125 0.148 0.166 0.178 0.178</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39.9 180</td>
<td>0.100 0.100 0.119 0.122 0.125</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Macadam, washed off and scrubbed.</td>
<td>48.5 0</td>
<td>0.113 0.115 0.119 0.128 0.148 0.194 0.229</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60.1 90</td>
<td>0.110 0.109 0.116 0.122 0.139 0.147</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>46.0 180</td>
<td>0.126 0.141 0.156 0.166 0.172 0.176</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Dirt, hard packed, yellowish.</td>
<td>53.2 0</td>
<td>0.243 0.249 0.289 0.282 0.300 0.330</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>56.5 90</td>
<td>0.243 0.258 0.269 0.276 0.300 0.304</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51.1 180</td>
<td>0.272 0.313 0.370 0.422 0.432 0.434</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mixed green forest, deciduous (oak) and evergreen (pine).</td>
<td>39.0 0</td>
<td>0.0380 0.0325 0.0201 0.0205 0.0205 0.0342</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37.0 180</td>
<td>0.0410 0.0403 0.0403 0.0820 0.263</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Pine forest.</td>
<td>33.5 0</td>
<td>0.0385 0.0385 0.0308 0.0246 0.0246 0.0200</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Grass, dry meadow, dense, midsummer.</td>
<td>45.0 0</td>
<td>0.0655 0.0897 0.0660 0.0652 0.108 0.120</td>
<td>180 165 150 135 120 105 100 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45.0 90</td>
<td>0.0778 0.0800 0.101 0.111 0.130</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45.0 180</td>
<td>0.116 0.131 0.143 0.153 0.170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45.0 270</td>
<td>0.167 0.121 0.154 0.137 0.132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vision 625</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>_</td>
<td>m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Hyas, sparse and dry, yellowish grass on sand at end of summer. (^a)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.231</td>
<td>0.320</td>
<td>0.342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>0.163</td>
<td>0.176</td>
<td>0.198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>0.295</td>
<td>0.353</td>
<td>0.359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>0.262</td>
<td>0.237</td>
<td>0.229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Sand dunes, sharply expressed micro-relief, dry. (^b)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.288</td>
<td>0.183</td>
<td>0.337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>0.284</td>
<td>0.329</td>
<td>0.306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>0.246</td>
<td>0.259</td>
<td>0.276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>0.278</td>
<td>0.410</td>
<td>0.281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Podsol, ploughed, moist. (^c)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0600</td>
<td>0.0680</td>
<td>0.0646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>0.0682</td>
<td>0.0953</td>
<td>0.0715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>0.149</td>
<td>(0.180) (^d)</td>
<td>0.168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)These terrains were measured on the ground by means of a goniophotometer.

\(^b\)Computed from equations by Duntley (1952) for the lighting condition prevailing for items 1 and 2 in this table.

\(^c\)Data taken with a goniophotometer, 10 October 1956.

\(^d\)Data taken with a photoelectric telephotometer from a helicopter at 300 ft (91.4-m) altitude, mountain forested area near Julian, California, 23 September 1959.

\(^e\)Luminous directional reflectance for terrains 11 through 14 were computed from spectrophotometric data by Krinov (1947) using C.I.E. Illuminant B. Disparity between data for azimuths 90° and 270° "is explained apparently by the direction of shallow furrows in relation to the sun" (Krinov-Belkova, 1953, P. 75).

\(^f\)Parentheses indicate estimates based on incomplete spectral data. (From Gordon, 1964)
Figure 13-5. Right eye, viewed from outer side, showing visual axis passing through center of lens to point of sharpest vision at fovea, where cones are concentrated. (White, 1964)

Figure 13-6. Dimensions of the human eye. (Spector, 1956)
Table 13-7
Optical Constants for the Human Eye

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Eye Area or Measurement</th>
<th>Refractive index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.38*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9.2 - 12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.4 - 7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[14.2]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[18.9]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-15.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[-12.4]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-24.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[21.0]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[6.5]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[6.8]**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.7 - 4.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Cornea of lens and its capsule.
**Values in brackets refer to state of maximum accommodation.
The distribution of rods and cones over the retina is by no means uniform. The cones are most numerous at the center of the visual field, and are most densely packed in the region just at the fixational center. In this small central region, whose diameter is about 0.5 mm or 1°40' of arc, there are no rods at all. This is the region of best visual acuity and best color vision. The rods are most dense in a band lying about 20° from the fixational center, and it is for this reason that night vision (at levels when the cones are inoperative) is best for averted vision. The distribution of rods and cones is shown in figure 13-8. Note that there is a hiatus in a region of about 5° diameter centered at about 15° in the nasal retina; this is the "blind spot", where the optic nerve fibers leave the retina.
Rods and cones differ in their response to light of different wavelengths, as well as in their overall sensitivities. Figure 13-9 shows the spectral response curves for each. It will be noted that the sensitivity maximum for rods lies at 505 nm, while that for cones is at 555 nm. For this reason, colors of long wavelength become rapidly darker in appearance as the luminance is decreased.

The distribution of rods and cones in the retina is such that the extent of the visual field for a single eye is as shown in figure 13-10(a). The foveal fixation point lies at the center of the figure. The absolute limits of the visual field are bounded by the black portion of the polar plot, while the limits for the appreciation of various colors are shown by the indicated contours. The chromatic contours are subject to fluctuation with changes in luminance and size of the test patch, while the outer limit is stable and set by anatomical features such as the brow, nose, and cheek. When both eyes are open, the field of view is increased, as shown in figure 13-10(b) and there is a considerable region over which both eyes are operative, that is, there is binocular vision. The central white area is the field of stereoscopic vision. The cross-hatched region in the figure is seen only by one eye, and the blackened area is not seen. Binocular vision is an important factor in good depth discrimination, as well as having other advantages. The visual field represented is for a stationary eye or pair of eyes. Movement of the head and eyes and of the whole body will, of course, extend the limits of the visual field. On the other hand, the use of optical instruments almost always restricts the field. For certain space applications where whole-body movement may be restricted, it is instructive to note the extent of the binocular visual field under various conditions of restraint, as is shown in table 13-8, taken from the data of Hall and Greenbaum (1950).
Figure 13-9. Spectral response of rods and cones, with relative amount of radiant energy for vision at absolute threshold shown as a function of wavelength of light. (Hecht & Williams, 1922)

Detailed description of the structure of the visual pathways to the brain, and the muscles responsible for eye movements is beyond the scope of this chapter. Reference should be made to any good contemporary texts in physiology and anatomy, or to the general references cited (e.g., Davson, 1962).

The size of the pupil of the eye is of concern, especially in the design of optical instruments wherein it may be the limiting aperture of the device. Under conditions of steady illumination, pupillary diameter depends upon the prevailing luminance level, as is indicated in figure 13-11. The dynamics of pupillary change are indicated by figure 13-12. The left part of the figure shows the contraction of a dark-adapted pupil with 8 mm diameter when exposed to bright light, and indicates that the pupil has stabilized at about 3 mm after 4-5 seconds. The right portion of the figure shows that dilation upon going into darkness is a slower process, and that even after 5 minutes the pupil has not reached its fully dark-adapted diameter. It should be noted that the change in diameter is responsible only for about a seven-fold change in the amount of light entering the eye, and hence plays only a miniscule role in the whole process of light and dark adaptation.
Figure 13-10. Human field of vision. (a) Field of view from right eye. (b) Binocular field of vision. (Boring et al., 1948)
Table 13-8  
The Limits of the Visual Field Under Various Kinds of Restraint

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement Permitted</th>
<th>Type of Field and Factors Limiting Field</th>
<th>Horizontal Limits</th>
<th>Vertical Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal Ambinocular Field (each side)</td>
<td>Nasal Binocular Field (each side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate movements of head and eyes assumed as:</td>
<td>Range of fixation</td>
<td>60°</td>
<td>60°***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes: 15° right or left 15° up or down</td>
<td>Eye deviation (assumed)</td>
<td>15°</td>
<td>15°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head: 45° right or left 30° up or down</td>
<td>Peripheral field from point of fixation</td>
<td>90°</td>
<td>(45°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Net peripheral field from central fixation</td>
<td>110°</td>
<td>60°***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Head rotation (assumed)</td>
<td>45°</td>
<td>45°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total peripheral field (from central body line)</td>
<td>155°</td>
<td>106°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head fixed</td>
<td>Field of peripheral vision (central fixation)</td>
<td>90°</td>
<td>60°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes fixed (central position with respect to head)</td>
<td>46°</td>
<td>67°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head fixed</td>
<td>Limits of eye deviation (= range of fixation)</td>
<td>74°</td>
<td>55°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye maximum deviation</td>
<td>Peripheral field (from point of fixation)</td>
<td>90°</td>
<td>Approx(5°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total peripheral field (from central head line)</td>
<td>165°</td>
<td>60°***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48°</td>
<td>55°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18°</td>
<td>16°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66°</td>
<td>82°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head maximum movement</td>
<td>Limits of head motion (= range of fixation)</td>
<td>60°</td>
<td>45°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes fixed (central with respect to head)</td>
<td>72°</td>
<td>72°</td>
<td>80°*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral field (from point of fixation)</td>
<td>95°</td>
<td>60°</td>
<td>46°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total peripheral field (from central body line)</td>
<td>167°</td>
<td>132°</td>
<td>126°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum movement of head and eyes</th>
<th>Limits of head motion</th>
<th>60°</th>
<th>45°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum eye deviation</td>
<td>72°</td>
<td>72°</td>
<td>80°*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range of fixation (from central body line)</td>
<td>74°</td>
<td>55°</td>
<td>48°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral field (from point of fixation)</td>
<td>146°</td>
<td>127°</td>
<td>128°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total peripheral field (from central body line)</td>
<td>91° Approx (5°)</td>
<td>18°</td>
<td>16°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>237°</td>
<td>132°</td>
<td>146°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Estimated by the authors on the basis of a single subject.
**Ignoring obstruction of body (and knees if seated). This obstruction would probably impose a maximum field of 90° (or less, seated) directly downward; however, this would not apply downward to either side.
***This is the maximum possible peripheral field; rotating the eye in the nasal direction will not extend it, because it is limited by the nose and other facial structures rather than by the optical limits of the eye. The figures in parentheses on the line above are calculated values, chosen to give the maximum limit thus indicated.

Notes: 1. All data except as noted are from Hall and Greenbaum (1950). 2. The binocular field is defined here as the total area that can be seen by either eye; it is not limited to the binocular field, which can be seen by both eyes at once. That is, at the sides, it includes monocular regions visible to the right eye but not to the left, and vice versa. 3. The term binocular is here restricted to the central region that can be seen by both eyes simultaneously (stereoscopic vision). It is bounded by the nasal field-limits of the eyes.
Figure 13-11. Pupil diameter as a function of luminance of adapting field. (Kaufman, 1966; I.E.S. lighting handbook. New York: Illuminating Engineering Society, 1966)

Figure 13-12. Pupillary response to light and darkness. (Reeves, 1918; copyright 1918 by the American Psychological Association)
The Stiles-Crawford Effect

A ray of light will be maximally effective if it reaches the retina via the center of the pupil. An identical ray which traverses a peripheral part of the aperture may, according to its eccentricity, need to be made several times more intense in order to produce the same result. This phenomenon is called the Stiles-Crawford effect, after its discoverers. It is primarily of concern for photopic vision, and has been shown experimentally to be related to the structure and optical properties of the cones.

The quantitative aspect of the Stiles-Crawford effect is shown in figure 13-13. It should be noted that the maximum of the curve is displaced nearly a millimeter toward the nasal side, and that the effect therefore is neither strictly symmetrical, nor exactly concentric with the pupil. The magnitude of the effect is dependent upon the wavelength of light, with more diminution in intensity for blue and red than for the center of the spectrum. There are also changes in hue and saturation of colors as the entrant ray is moved across the pupil. In general, most peripheral rays undergo a change toward some longer wavelength, although greens in a narrow band around 520 nm appear to shift toward blue (Stiles, 1939).

![Figure 13-13. Stiles-Crawford effect. Light falling on different parts of pupil is not equally effective in producing sensory end result, even though light reaches same point on retina. Data are those for B. H. Crawford's eye. (Stiles & Crawford, 1933; reprinted by permission of the Controller of Her Britannic Majesty's Stationery Office)](image-url)
There are two practical cases in which the Stiles-Crawford effect is of concern. The first of these relates to the design of optical instruments, where it is evident that distribution of the light flux at the eyepiece should be such that neither instrument nor operator performance is penalized. An example may be found in the case of certain binoculars and monoculars which use reflecting optics. In these instruments light emerges from the eyepiece as a hollow cylindrical beam, so that the most efficient central part of the pupil is not used, and the annular rays may suffer both loss of luminance and distortion of color. The second consequence of the effect is that it is critically necessary, in the determination of retinal illumination, to allow for the fact that simple enlargement of either the natural or an artificial pupil will not produce as large an increase in visual effect as would be expected on the basis of the increase in pupil area. The troland unit of retinal illumination thus has limited utility, for it matters to the retina from what part of the pupil it receives its light. An approximate correction for the Stiles-Crawford effect has been attempted (LeGrand, 1957), but even so the troland remains an imprecise unit.

Chromatic Aberration

The eye is unable to bring rays of all wavelengths to focus at the same retinal plane simultaneously. As in other simple optical systems, light of short wavelengths being more strongly refracted by the lens, is focused at a plane in front of that for the longer, less deviated ones. The eye tends to maintain focus for the wavelengths near the photopic sensitivity maximum, so that, in the white light case, the red and blue components of an image will lie behind and in front of the plane of best focus, respectively. This effect is quite large, and chromatic differences of focus over the spectrum amount to approximately three diopters.

Measurements of chromatic aberration in the human eye have been made by several investigators, and the results are in good agreement (Ivanoff, 1949; Hartridge, 1950; Wald & Griffin, 1947). The data of figure 13-14 are typical.

The consequences of chromatic aberration are many, and although much of ordinary visual activity is affected little or not at all, there are some important implications for engineering design. Normal visual acuity is best for conditions where the color of the illuminant for the task is confined to the spectral region near the peak of the luminosity curve, at least at low to moderate levels of illumination (Schober, 1937; Schober & Whittman, 1938). The effect may be bothersome in certain optical instruments using polychromatic fields, although this may be corrected by incorporation of a specially designed lens (Wright, 1947). It is often impossible to discriminate between white and yellow stimuli of small angular extent, since the eye tends to focus on the yellow-green component of the white and allows the blue and red to blur out so that they are ineffective in the discrimination (Wilmer, 1946). Finally, it is clear that small colored stimuli, such as signal lights, will be perceived to be at different distances according to their spectral composition and that, further instances may occur when critical detail of displays shows serious chromatic disparities, leading to operator error.
Visual Performance

Normal visual performance involves a number of interdependent discriminations which are made in response to factors in the visual environment and mediated by the structure of the visual system. Principal among these discriminations are the appreciation of detail (visual acuity), contrast, color, form, distance, movement and certain temporal aspects of the object of regard. The limiting capabilities of the human observer have been extensively investigated in all of these areas, usually in laboratory studies which isolate the function of interest. It must be recognized, therefore, that the data do not take into account the interactions between functions which are known to occur. Rather, they should be taken as indicative of the limiting case, modifiable for better or worse in accordance with other factors.

Visual Acuity

There are many definitions of the term "visual acuity;" all, however, incorporate the notion of the resolution of detail. A variety of test patterns has been used to measure acuity, from simple single dots to twin stars, gratings, broken rings, checkerboards, and letters. It is unfortunate that no general agreement as to the choice of a test has been reached, and that results from the different patterns are often at odds. The Snellen Letter Test is probably the most familiar, and is widely used in clinical practice, despite the fact that it is a
test of letter recognition rather than of retinal resolution. The most satisfactory expression for visual acuity is in terms of the angular subtense of the critical detail which can just be discriminated. (In the Snellen notation, the width of the letters of the 20/20 line is such that they subtend one minute of arc at 20 feet.) A well-entrenched popular misconception is that 20/20, or 1', represents "perfect" vision. Acuity depends upon the character of the test, and resolutions of a few seconds of arc are not uncommon. Some results from use of various test patterns are shown in figure 13-15.

![Figure 13-15. Approximate relationship between various measures of visual acuity and background luminance. Uppermost curve is obtained using a broken ring (Landolt C) test object, and data are values of angular gap size discriminable over range of luminances tested. Vernier acuity task: discrimination of discontinuity in otherwise smooth edge, or of small linear displacement. Stereoscopic acuity angle: difference in subtense between two test objects of identical size whose distances from eye are just discriminably different. Minimum perceptible acuity: smallest detectable spot, with contrast limited to 1.0. (Adapted from White, 1964)](image)

There are some important variables which affect visual acuity, and which must be taken into account in operational planning terms:

**Luminance.** The level of adaption of the eye has a profound effect upon visual acuity, as might be expected. This dependency is shown for two different test patterns in figure 13-16.

**Position In The Field.** At photopic levels, acuity is best at the fovea, and drops off as the retinal periphery is approached, owing to receptor population differences. Nocturnal acuity is quite poor, with essential blindness at the fovea.
and best resolution appearing in the periphery where rod packing is densest. The variation of visual acuity is indicated in figure 13-17.

Figure 13-16. Variation of acuity with retinal illuminance for resolution of a grating and for recognition of orientation of a Landolt C test object. (Schlaer, 1937)

Figure 13-17. Change in visual acuity (reciprocal of Landolt C gap size) as a function of position on retina for 5 luminances. Eccentricity shown in degrees from foveal center. (Mandelbaum & Sloan, 1947)
Duration. When the pattern is exposed for only a short time, measured acuity diminishes in accordance with the function shown in figure 13-18. It is evident from this figure that the duration effect is related to the luminance of the test.

![Figure 13-18. Visual acuity as a function of time of exposure for several luminance levels. At any given level less time is needed to see larger objects, and, for any given object size, less exposure time is required at higher luminances. (Ferree & Rand, 1922)](image)

Color. For tasks illuminated by monochromatic or narrow-band sources, there is a small but measurable difference in acuity as a function of the dominant wavelength used, provided that all colors have been equated for luminance. In comparison with acuity measured in white light, there is a nominal improvement when sodium vapor lamps are used, while with blue or violet light acuity is poor (Moon, 1961). These statements apply only to photopic vision.

Contrast. Visual acuity decreases as the contrast between pattern and background is diminished. The form of this relationship depends upon the adapting luminance, as was shown by Connor and Ganoung (1935) and by Cobb and Moss (1928), whose results are combined in figure 13-19.

Movement. Detail vision for moving objects is called dynamic visual acuity. Investigations of this problem have been reported by Miller (1958), whose results are summarized in figure 13-20. These data must not be used uncritically, for it was shown by Ludvigh and Miller (1958) that wide differences exist between observers, and that these are not correlated with their measured static visual acuities.
Figure 13-19. Visual acuity as a function of background luminance for a number of contrast levels, here expressed as percentages. (Data on left from Conner & Ganoung, 1935; on right from Cobb & Moss, 1948)

Figure 13-20. Dynamic visual acuity. Note decrease as velocity increases, for 6 levels of test chart illumination. (Miller, 1938)
Contrast Discrimination

Vision requires that there be differentiation of the luminances (or colors) in the field of view. Without these gradients of energy across the retinal image, there can be no information received from the environment by visual means, at least in the ordinary sense. The luminance gradients which we use are distributed both in space and in time, and man is sensitive to both spatial and temporal differences. Simple contrast discrimination is conventionally discussed in terms of the static case, with the phenomena of movement, intermittency and color being treated as separate entities. In a sense, nearly all of visual activity (visual acuity included) may be regarded as contrast discrimination. Here, however, we will restrict its meaning to refer to the simplest case of the appreciation of a luminance difference—generally in white light.

Contrast is defined as the ratio of a luminance change ascribable to the presence of an object, or target, to the luminance of the background. If the luminances of target and background are \( b_t \) and \( b_o \), respectively, then the luminance contrast, \( C \), is:

\[
C = \frac{b_t - b_o}{b_o} = \frac{\Delta b}{b_o}
\]

It is evident that the contrast of targets brighter than their backgrounds can vary between zero and infinity, while those darker than their backgrounds can vary from zero to minus one. In many cases it has been found (e.g., Blackwell, 1946) that targets of equivalent numerical contrast are equally visible irrespective of sign. This generalization has recently been questioned by Patel and Jones (1968) who find higher thresholds for positive than for negative targets; the effect becoming significant at low luminance levels.

The most important variables affecting contrast discrimination are luminance of the background, size and duration of the target, and the portion of the visual field used. Color is relatively unimportant in simple target detection if a luminance gradient exists (MacAdam, 1949), although color is important in many other visual tasks.

Background Luminance And Target Size. These two variables have been investigated quite thoroughly for the case of simple circular targets on uniform backgrounds (e.g., Blackwell, 1946; Blackwell & Taylor, 1970). Their influence on contrast discrimination is seen in figures 13-21 and 13-22, taken from the earlier study. These data have been used extensively in the construction of nomograms for predicting the visibility range of objects under a variety of viewing conditions (Middleton, 1952; Duntley, 1960).

Duration. For very brief exposure times, contrast discrimination depends on the product of the luminous flux and the duration of the flash, that is,
$\Delta B \times t = a \text{ constant at threshold. This is Bloch's law, and it holds for values of } t \text{ up to a critical duration, } t_c, \text{ which varies from 0.002 to 0.1 second, depending upon conditions (Baumgardt & Segal, 1946) although the latter figure is more typical under conditions of practical interest. At exposure times longer than a few tenths of a second, threshold is independent of duration and } \Delta B = a \text{ constant. The character of the transition from } \Delta B \times t = C \text{ and } \Delta B = C \text{ is sometimes abrupt, sometimes gradual, depending upon the conditions. (For details, see, e.g., Kishto, 1968.) Data relating duration to contrast discrimination have been published by Graham and Kemp (1938), by Blackwell and McCready (1958), and by Blackwell and Taylor (1970). Data from the first study are shown in figure 13-23.}

![Figure 13-21. Contrast thresholds as a function of adaptation luminance for 7 sizes of uniform circular targets. (Blackwell, 1946)](image)

**Position In The Visual Field.** In the light-adapted eye contrast discrimination is best at the fovea, where the density of cone receptors is highest, and deteriorates as the target moves out toward the periphery of the visual field. Under dark-adapted conditions, foveal vision is inoperative and optimum discrimination is achieved by use of averted vision, usually at about 10° away from the visual axis. Some data for the daytime case for targets in the near periphery are shown in figure 13-24, from a study by Taylor (1961).
Figure 13-22. Interpolations made from curves of figure 13-21, plotted to show relationship of target size to threshold contrast. Individual curves refer to adaptation luminances over 1000 ft-L–10^-6 ft-L range. (Blackwell, 1946)

Figure 13-23. Relation between ΔB and t. Individual curves are labeled with values of log B, adapting luminance, in m-L. Horizontal lines represent equation Log B⋅t = constant; the inclined lines, ΔB = constant. Critical duration, t_c, is shown to decrease with increase in adapting luminance. (Graham & Kemp, 1938)
Figure 13-24. Threshold contrast as a function of retinal position and target size for binocular photopic vision. Adaptation level, 75 ft-L (257 cd/m²); target duration, 0.33 sec. Curves labeled to indicate angular diameter of uniform circular stimuli; 4 observers, for which plotted average values represent 0.50 probability of detection in "yes-no" experiment; each data point based upon 2400 observations. (Taylor 1961)

Depth and Distance Discrimination

The estimation of depth and distance in ordinary terrestrial seeing is accomplished by use of a number of cues which are available to the experienced observer. Some of these cues are provided by the nature of the scene of interest, while others inhere in the observer himself. Some of the important external and internal cues are indicated in table 13-9. But a number of these cues may be absent in the space environment, and it will be necessary to evaluate any visual task which requires critical judgment of depth or distance in terms of the available information.

In cases where only internal cues to distance are available, that is to say when the objects of interest are of unknown size and shape, and none of the external aids such as aerial perspective or interposition is of help, it is evident that the observer must depend upon his stereoscopic acuity, accommodation and convergence, and, where possible, movement parallax. Accommodation is only an effective cue to distances at ranges of a meter or less, and even here it is inaccurate. Convergence alone is a somewhat
more useful cue, but is limited to a range out to about 20 meters. Stereoscopic acuity, however, provides a powerful cue to distance. Experimentally determined values of stereoscopic acuity are in the range from about 10" to 2" arc. An observer with a stereoscopic acuity of 5", for example, can discriminate that an object at 2600 meters is closer than one at infinity (LeGrand, 1967).

Table 13–9
External and Internal Cues to Depth and Distance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External Cues</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linear perspective</td>
<td>Apparent convergence of parallel lines and related effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apparent size</td>
<td>A strong cue to distance of objects of known size, and texture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion parallax</td>
<td>Relative angular motion as either head or objects move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interposition</td>
<td>Nearer objects eclipse more distant ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial perspective</td>
<td>Contrast and color loss due to aerosols; useless in free space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shading</td>
<td>A cue to three-dimensional form of objects (not to distance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apparent intensity</td>
<td>A cue only to distance of effective &quot;point sources&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Cues</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accommodation</td>
<td>Relatively unimportant (see text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convergence</td>
<td>Useful limit is about 20 meters (see text)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binocular disparity</td>
<td>Most important intrinsic cue to depth and distance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: All cues excepting last two can be utilized by a single eye, and by extension, in unioocular optical devices.

(Adapted from Gibson, 1950)

Movement parallax is another important cue to depth and distance, especially where binocular vision is impossible, as in the use of unioocular optical instruments. The accuracy of this cue depends upon the luminance level, the rate of angular movement, and the direction of movement across the visual field (Graham et al., 1948). Under optimum conditions (high luminance levels, orthogonally-oriented movement, and an angular rate of about 0.1 radian/second of time), the resulting acuity is about 40'/second of time. Thus, even slight side-to-side or up-and-down movements of the head can provide an accurate cue to relative distance.

Temporal Discrimination

The temporal resolution of the visual system is occasionally of concern in space operations. Examples include the discrimination of temporally coded
displays, differentiation between steady and flashing lights, and the time-varying visual signals received from a sunlit, tumbling space object seen against a black background. Experimental data regarding temporal discriminations are exceedingly voluminous, and the reader should consult the general references noted at the end of this chapter for details. Only a small sample of these results will be given here.

As the rate of intermittency of a flashing light is gradually increased, there is a rather sharply defined point at which the light begins to appear as a steady one. The rate at which this transformation occurs depends upon a host of conditions, but two of the most important are the luminance of the background and the position in the visual field. (Size, of course, is an important variable, but it may be assumed that intermittent stimuli in the space environment will be angularly small.) The transition point between steady and intermittent appearance is called the “critical frequency of fusion”, and is often abbreviated “CFF.” In figure 13-25 the value of the CFF is plotted as a function of background luminance, for a 2° circular test target located at the fovea and at 5° and 15° above the fovea. Had the target subtended 0.3°, the CFF values would have been about 5 Hz lower for the foveal case (Hecht and Verrijp, 1933).

![Figure 13-25. Relation between critical frequency and log retinal illuminance for white light for three different retinal locations: at the fovea and 5 and 15° above the fovea. (Hecht and Verrijp. Reprinted by permission of The Rockefeller Institute Press from The Journal of General Physiology, 1933, 17, 251-265, Fig. 2, p. 257)](image_url)

There are other considerations regarding intermittent illumination. Spacecraft internal illumination, for example, should not exhibit perceptible flicker, owing to possible performance decrements suffered by the crew. Temporally-coded display systems, likewise, should be designed so that the crewman’s temporal resolution capabilities are never exceeded.
Movement Discrimination

Several sorts of tasks are subsumed under this category, and several modes of movement must be considered. The more common cases of interest may be listed as follows:

1. Movement across the visual field in the fronto-parallel plane, with or without stationary reference objects in the field of view.
2. Movement in depth, toward and away from the observer and with or without reference objects.
3. A combination of the above.
4. A change in the rate or direction of movement.
5. The discrimination of rotational movement, usually centered on the line of sight, but not always.

In space operations, movement discrimination is especially critical in instrument reading, rendezvous and docking maneuvers, and in spacecraft landing procedures. It is abetted by the presence of reference objects in the field (especially familiar ones), high luminance levels, and optimum rates of movement.

The variables influencing movement discrimination of any sort are identical with those affecting other visual functions (luminance, size, contrast, and retinal position), but with the additional factors of velocity and rate of change of velocity as complications. The recent book by Spigal (1965) should be consulted for detailed treatment of the subject, as should the general references.

Some specimen data are shown in figures 13-26 to 13-28.

Color Discrimination

Color vision is mediated by the retinal cones, and is therefore best at photopic luminance levels and in those parts of the visual field where the cones are most densely packed. Color discrimination may be general, as in differentiating between different colors, or it may be specific, as in the appreciation of some one color characteristic such as hue, saturation, or luminance. When color is used in coding and in displays, only general discrimination is usually required (wiring, signals, pipelines, warning and clearance lights, etc.). In space tasks involving naturally occurring colors, however, it may be necessary to make subtle discriminations of chromatic differences (lunar and planetary exploration, spacecraft landing, vehicular maintenance, and observations of the terrestrial surface from orbit).

Hue, the psychophysical counterpart of the physical dominant wavelength of a stimulus, can be discriminated very well under conditions of adequate luminance (10 ft-L or more) provided that the angular size is large enough. The data of figure 13-29 refer to the case of a 2° field and photopic luminance (Wright and Pitt, 1934). About 150 hues can be discriminated under these conditions; with larger fields, the number of hues would be larger (Wright, 1947).
Figure 13-26. Sensitivity to change in velocity of a moving ($\Delta \omega$) as a function of angular speed ($\omega$). Formula for straight line with unit slope: $\log_{10} \Delta \omega = -1.00 + \log_{10} \omega$. (Brown, R. H., 1960; copyright 1960 by The American Association for the Advancement of Science)

Figure 13-27. Sensitivity to movement in depth, expressed in terms of percent distance traveled by a 3.5 in. luminous disc at mean distance of 25 ft against dark background, as a function of luminance of disc. Both monocular and binocular curves refer to 75% level of movement detection. Target was a lamp 3.5 in. in diameter, moved back and forth on a tract from an initial distance of 25 feet. At the initial distance, the lamp subtended 40 min. at the eyes. 2% change in distance represents a 2% change in visual angle, or about 0.8 min. Target speeds ranged from 1.65 to 13.2 in./sec producing initial changes in visual angle from about 0.25 to 2 min of arc. (Baker & Steedman, 1961)
Figure 13-28. Sensitivity to movement in depth as a function of rate of movement. Conditions as in figure 13-27, but target luminance was fixed at 1 ft-L while target speed was varied. Values on ordinate are times required to detect movement at probability 0.75. (Baker & Steedman, 1961)

Figure 13-29. Hue discrimination. Shows the amount of change in wavelength (Δλ) needed to produce a noticeable change in hue for various parts of the visible spectrum. (Wright, 1947)
Saturation, the psychophysical equivalent of spectral purity, refers to the degree to which a color of given hue differs from white. Pale pink, for example, is a red of low saturation. Discrimination of saturation is best at the center of the visible spectrum (570 nm), as seen in figure 13-30.

![Saturation discrimination graph](image)

**Figure 13-30.** Saturation discrimination. Values on ordinate represent amount of color added to white for color change to be discriminable, assuming equality of luminance for the two conditions. The expression $F_\lambda/F_\lambda + F_w$, where $F_\lambda$ is light flux of wavelength and $F_w$ is flux of white illuminant, is called colorimetric purity. (Wright, 1947)

In most practical cases one is interested in the discrimination of a combination of hue and saturation - a quantity known as chromaticity. Investigations of chromaticity discrimination by MacAdam (1942) have yielded data of the sort shown in figure 13-31, in which the ellipses indicate the fineness of this discrimination in various parts of the chromaticity diagram. (For a discussion of the chromaticity diagram, see Wright, 1947, or other general reference.)

There are some special considerations which should be taken into account in the design of systems and in the planning of missions if color discrimination is to be successful. Some of these have already been alluded to (chromatic aberration, luminance level); others should be noted.

**Small Subtense Color Vision.** The ability to discriminate colors is drastically reduced in the case of angularly small targets. Under this condition, only three colors may be reliably differentiated: red, green, and another color which may be yellow, or white, or gray. For this reason, the coding of signal lights is restricted to three colors whenever they are to be seen at any appreciable distance.
Peripheral Color Vision. Best color vision occurs at and near the center of the field. As stimuli are moved toward the periphery, discrimination becomes poor, and colors are not seen (although the loss of color occurs at different distances from the fovea). Some typical data are shown in figure 13-32, from the report of the Committee on Colorimetry (1953). This figure shows in a very general way the limits of color discrimination in the parafoveal retina for the colors shown. The use of larger or more luminous stimuli would cause expansion of these fields; perhaps to the outer limit shown for achromatic (white) luminance discrimination.

Visual Search

The visual acquisition of objects in the field of view when their location is unknown is called visual search. The important variables in the search process include size and structure of the field, characteristics of the target object, including its size and complexity, luminance level, contrast, uniqueness, and so on. Although a great deal of work has been done on the problem, there is no simple set of rules which may be used to formulate optimum search procedures.
From the standpoint of engineering design for space operations it may be assumed that the usual objective will be to assist the search process (as opposed to concealment and camouflage). Accordingly, it will be desirable to increase the probability of visual acquisition by careful attention to the factors which are known to assist in the search process. A number of such factors have been summarized by Taylor (1969), and a collection of papers edited by Morris and Horne (1960) should be consulted for additional suggestions.

**Size Discrimination**

The size of an object is usually discriminated by the aid of such cues as known distance, comparison with other objects of known size, and such factors as perspective and familiarity. In space operations, however, these cues may be lacking, or conditions may be such as to deceive the observer. A very important phenomenon is that called irradiation. Simply put, two objects of identical size and at the same range will appear of the same size if they are illuminated equally. If one is very much more intensely lit, it will appear larger. The effect is especially great in the case of angularly small objects. Recent work by Haines (1967) should be consulted for the quantitative aspects of the irradiation phenomenon as it affects both size and shape discrimination.

**Form Discrimination**

The form of an object is of undoubted interest in all phases of space exploration, and especially so in the discrimination and description of planetary and lunar surface features as well as in the differentiation of
orbiting objects and terrestrial formations. The many variables which affect the form discrimination process are discussed in Wulfeck and Taylor (1957). Observer experience and training are important, and the task will depend upon the level of discrimination desired.

Dark Adaptation

Optimal visual discrimination under conditions of very low luminance can be made only if the visual system is adapted to the level of the prevailing photic environment, or even lower. If a fully light adapted eye is suddenly plunged into darkness, its sensitivity is initially very poor. With time, however, sensitivity begins to increase as a result of photochemical regeneration, certain functional neural changes, and (to a much smaller degree) enlargement of the pupil of the eye. If the eye remains in total darkness for 30 to 60 minutes, the adaptation process will be nearly complete and the sensitivity of the eye in those parts of the retina where both rods and cones are present will have increased by a factor of 10 000 for white light.

The course of dark adaptation is influenced by many factors, such as the intensity, duration, and color of the preadapting light, the size and area of the retinal area stimulated, and the nature of the visual stimulus used to test the effect. Summaries of the many parametric studies of dark adaptation may be found in Graham et al. (1966), Davson (1962), LeGrand (1957) and in Jayle and Ourgaud (1950). A general curve, obtained with white light, is shown in figure 13-33. The early portion of the curve, extending to about 10 minutes, is here reflecting the adaptation of cones. The subsequent increase in sensitivity is due to activity of the rods. The curve is an average from the data of 101 observers. It clearly indicates that adaptation of the cones is complete after about 10 minutes. Later increase in sensitivity is caused by activity of the rods.

There are several important operational consequences of the dark adaptation process and its properties:

1. Best performance on a task at low luminance requires that the eye be preadapted to an appropriately low level for sufficient time so that maximum sensitivity obtains.

2. Since the rods are more sensitive than the cones at low luminances, best detection capability will occur on those parts of the retina where rods abound (10 to 30 degrees from the fovea), and averted vision is required for optimal performance.

3. Since the rods are relatively insensitive to extreme red wavelengths, dark adaptation will proceed if the observer dons suitable red goggles or if the illumination provided, in a spacecraft for example, is very deep red. By this means it is possible to continue to use the high-acuity capability of the central fovea at elevated luminance levels for reading instruments, etc., while the adaptation process goes on; although vision will naturally be monochromatic in this case.
4. Because the two eyes are essentially independent as regards adaptation, it is possible to maintain dark adaptation in one (e.g., by means of an eye patch) while the other is used for tasks at high luminance.

![Graph showing the course of dark adaptation following exposure to a luminance of about 1000 ft-L. Measurements made using a test spot 1° in diameter imaged on a retinal region 15° in nasal periphery where both rods and cones are present.](image)

**Figure 13-33.** Course of dark adaptation following exposure to a luminance of about 1000 ft-L. Measurements made using a test spot 1° in diameter imaged on a retinal region 15° in nasal periphery where both rods and cones are present. (Stoan, 1947: adapted from How we see: A summary of basic principles, by A. Chapanis, in Human factors in undersea warfare, by permission of the National Academy of Sciences)

**Vision Under Stress**

Environmental stresses to which astronauts may be subjected have been studied in some detail. Most of these are of a transient nature, occurring only during some relatively short part of the mission, such as launch, extravehicular activity, or reentry. Others, however, will be a necessary part of extended missions, and a potential part of system malfunctions. Added to environmental factors may be individual stresses induced by anxiety, boredom, interpersonal
frictions or sensory deprivation*. The latter class of stresses has been only partially amenable to test, and the practical importance of these factors remains a matter of conjecture. The physical environmental stresses thought to be important may, however, be quantitatively evaluated in many instances.

**Acceleration**

The effects of acceleration on vision have been summarized by White and Monty (1963). As is well known, the decrement in performance is a function of the g vector, and less impairment is incurred in the case of transverse g loads. Central and peripheral contrast discrimination are affected differentially, and central losses in acuity are suffered. Figure 13-34 shows the nature of these effects, and their implications for system design and mission profile planning are clear.

*Sensory deprivation refers to the condition wherein the individual is kept in an environment with drastically reduced sensory input. Laboratory experiments in which subjects were immobilized (e.g., in a tank of water at skin temperature) and isolated from all visual and auditory stimuli, have led to bizarre behavior, hallucinations, delusions, etc. It is no longer believed that these phenomena are of any interest in biotechnology, even for extended interplanetary missions.*
Vibration

Whole body vibration produces a loss in visual acuity and the accuracy of dial reading. The effects are related to the axis of vibration, the nature of the task, and the frequency, but appear to be relatively independent of the amplitude, at least over the range from 0.025 to 0.05 inches (Mozell and White, 1958). Recent studies have shown visual performance decrements to depend upon the kind of head restraint used (Taub, 1966) and the use of various helmet and liner combinations (Schoenberger, 1968). Y-axis vibration applied to the head alone (Rubinstein and Kaplan, 1968) shows acuity to be a U-shaped function of frequency, with poorest acuity in the range from 25 to 35 Hz. The same study showed that acuity gradually returns to normal as frequency is increased, and that the effect has vanished at 78 Hz. It should be noted that the decrement in acuity could be overcome by increasing the contrast of the resolution pattern used. The data for both constant acceleration (1.0g) and constant displacement (0.03 cm) are shown in figure 13-35.

Weightlessness

As it is impossible to simulate zero-g conditions in the laboratory, or for long periods in parabolic aircraft flights, the effects of prolonged weightlessness on vision are only imperfectly known. The existing data were collected on Gemini flights, GT5 and GT7, of approximately 7 and 14 days' duration, respectively. Visual acuity was the only task which was evaluated, and no significant differences were found between preflight, inflight, and postflight results (Duntley et al., 1968).

Hypoxia

The effects of oxygen lack on vision are well known from many studies. Some of the effects of G-forces may be attributed to the fact that blood supply to the head is diminished, and that an anoxia is thereby produced both in the retina and the visual cortex. The effects of oxygen lack on the visual threshold are exemplified by figure 13-36 (McFarland, 1946), which also shows the effect of cigarette smoking on this function.

Glare

Visual performance is degraded when a source of high luminance intrudes upon the field of view. The disability and discomfort which result are functions of the size and intensity of the glare source, and its position in relationship to the object of regard. Whether the glare source is small and intense, as when the sun is in the field of view, or large and diffuse, as in looking through a spacecraft window which is scratched or dirty and illuminated by a strong source, the effect is to reduce the apparent contrast of the desired object. The quantitative expression of glare is usually done in terms of an hypothetical uniform veiling luminance which would produce the same performance decrement, although this is at best only an approximation. (For a discussion, see LeGrand, 1957).
Figure 13-35. Vibration effects on visual acuity at (a) constant acceleration and (b) constant displacement. (Rubinstein & Kaplan, 1968)
Empty Fields and Low Luminance Levels

It has been noted that the refractive power of the resting eye changes significantly (in the direction of myopia) when the visual field is unstructured, as in a dense fog, or when the average luminance level is very low, as in dark night conditions. This effect is not insignificant, and typically results in refractive errors from 0.75 to 1.5 diopters in the negative direction. The importance of these phenomena in space operations is not clear except in the case of foglike atmospheres and darkened environments where no cues to distance exist. The empty field problem has been discussed by Whiteside (1954), and the night myopia effect by LeGrand (1967). The possibility of crew disorientation from this cause should be considered.

Flash Blindness

Momentary exposure to a very intense flash of light results in a loss of visual sensitivity which may take some time to be restored. Such exposures are likely to be accidental through loss of a protective visor, inadvertent looking at the sun, or chance reflections from the polished metal surfaces of space vehicles. Recovery time depends upon the intensity and duration of the flash and on the nature and luminance of the task of interest. For any given task, recovery time can be shortened by increasing the task luminance in the period immediately following the flash, as may be seen in figure 13-37. A detailed study of the flash blindness problem may be found in Brown (1965).

Visual Tasks in Space Operations

It is evident, from the experiences gained in manned spaceflight by both the United States and the USSR, that the human operator can be relied upon to perform a number of visually mediated tasks. The trend, therefore, has been toward giving the man ever greater responsibility in the conduct of
Figure 13.37. Recovery time in flash blindness. Ordinate values are times required to discriminate test objects after brief exposure to intense light. Luminescence was adjusted for individual sensitivity of human observers to appropriate levels of target luminance. Corrected luminance required visual acuity of 0.08 rad (a) and 0.26 rad (b). Note that disabling effect of flash blindness at all levels used was overcome by use of sufficiently bright targets. (Brown, 1961)
space missions. It is now thought that any or all of the following activities will depend significantly upon vision, either in a primary sense, or in a backup mode:

1. Orientation, both personal and vehicular
2. Rendezvous and docking, including detection and interception; estimates of distance and closure rates
3. Navigation, including star tracking and angle measurements
4. Observation, from the upper atmosphere, of the Earth, other planets, and the Moon
5. Astronomical observations from space
6. Lunar surface observation from lunar orbit
7. Planetary surface observation from orbit
8. Lunar landing, including estimates of distances and closure rates
9. Observation of the lunar surface from the lunar surface
10. Planetary landing, including estimates of distance and closure rates
11. Translation on the lunar surface
12. Extravehicular maintenance and other activity.

The effects of certain environmental variables upon the ability of man to perform the above tasks, as well as the visual functions necessary in each, have been discussed by Taylor (1964), and that document should be referred to for detailed consideration of the list.

References


Reeves, P. Rate of pupillary dilation and contraction. Psychology Review 1918, 25, 330.


Schober, H., & Wittman, K. Untersuchungen über die sehscharfe bei verschiedenfarbigen licht. Das Licht 1938, 8, 199-261.


CHAPTER 14
AUDITORY SYSTEM

by
Harlow W. Ades, Ph.D.
University of Illinois

The importance of effective communication cannot be overstated. Progress in all facets of civilization depends on the exchange of ideas, messages, and commands. The orderly flow and management of information has become a sine qua non in all the complex activities of a modern world.

Communications, whether occurring between humans in normal day-to-day association or occurring during the operation of complex man-machine systems, depend primarily on the auditory and visual systems. This chapter deals with the former. In designing any system in which communications plays some part, the unique characteristics of any auditory system must be considered. An understanding of its structure and eccentricities will allow this receptor system to be matched with other system elements to achieve efficient system design. However, the responsibility of the designer does not end here. He must attend not only to system efficiency but to the impact of system operation on the environment of which it becomes a part. In this regard, noise pollution has become an issue of major concern. While noise-free systems are usually not feasible, the design engineer still bears the responsibility for understanding the noise characteristics of his system and their likely effects on audition.

This chapter is divided into three major sections. The first deals briefly with the physical correlates of hearing, i.e., the acoustic stimulus. In working with a psychophysical phenomenon such as hearing, one must be able to define and measure the stimulus parameters with precision since the stability of measurement for any psychophysical relationship generally comes from the physical (or stimulus) side; however, the reader is referred to other recent works for most of the detail.

The second section describes in some detail the auditory system itself. Here one is confronted with the time-honored question, "How much information should a designer have concerning the morphology and neurology of a body

Reviewed by William D. Neff, Ph.D., Indiana University

667
system in order to work with it effectively?" Although it is possible to work in a system design dealing only with input-output relationships, a certain level of sophistication concerning system elements will provide confidence to the designer if nothing else. Here again, except for the inner ear itself, the reader is referred to recent works on the subject.

The third section of this chapter presents recent data concerning hearing loss and structural change caused by carefully controlled over-stimulation of the auditory system. The main purpose of this section is to provide information concerning the physiological response of the auditory system, as evidenced by physical damage. The section serves further as a caution against subjecting the auditory system to stimulation for which it was not designed. It also sets the stage for the next chapter which deals with the response of the auditory system under conditions of noise and overload.

Physical Correlates of Hearing

Hearing is the total of the transmission of sound from the external environment to the brain. It involves the conversion of mechanical impulses to neural impulses, the transmission of these impulses to the brain, and their "perception" by the brain. The sensation of airborne sound is produced when vibrations of the molecules of air strike the ear drum in alternating phases of condensation and rarefaction. A graph of these movements as changes in pressure on the tympanic membrane per unit of time shows a series of waves. The speed of sound increases with temperature and with altitude. Water also conducts sound, at speeds over four times as fast as air (775 mph versus 3215 mph), but here we are concerned mostly with airborne sound. The loudness of a sound correlates with the amplitude of a sound wave. The pitch of a sound correlates with the frequency or number of waves per unit of time, with greater amplitude meaning louder sound and greater frequency, i.e., higher pitch.

The presence of one sound decreases an individual's ability to hear other sounds. This phenomenon is known as masking. It is believed to be due to the relative or absolute refractoriness of previously stimulated auditory receptors. The degree to which a given tone masks other tones is related to its frequency. (For curves of masking effect as a function of frequency, see chapter 15, Noise and Blast.) The masking effect of a background noise raises the auditory threshold a definite and measurable amount.

In describing an auditory stimulus, one must specify the frequency of the sound and its intensity. When dealing with pure tones, frequency is expressed as "cycles per second" or the preferred synonymous term "Hertz" (Hz). The intensity of a sound wave is a function of the amplitude of the wave and is measured in pressure units. Three terms are widely used in referring to intensity. These are decibels (dB), perceived noise (PNDdB), and effective perceived noise (EPNdB).

The decibel is based on the ratio of the acoustic energy being measured to a reference energy. The standard sound reference level adopted by the Acoustical
Society of America is 0.0002 dynes per square centimeter, a value just at the auditory threshold for the average human. The ratio of the two energy or intensity measures is transformed into a logarithmic scale for greater manageability. A value of zero decibels does not mean the absence of sound, but a sound level equal to that of the arbitrary standard, the least sound the average human ear can hear. Zero to 140 dB, a range extending from threshold intensity to an intensity generally assumed to be painful to the ear, actually represents a $10^{14}$ or 100 million million-fold increase in sound intensity.

The perceived noise (PND) is a calculated unit used to express unwanted or unacceptable sound; that is, noise. The unit, used frequently to describe aircraft noise, is calculated by combining actual sound level with a weighted annoyance factor based on a variation in frequencies since some frequencies are more troublesome to the human ear than others. Kryter (1970) feels that the relationship between the sound pressure level and judged perceived noisiness, or annoyance, as a function of the frequency content of random noise is reasonably well established. Frequency weightings for noisiness and for loudness given by a number of investigators are in close agreement. Weightings given by Stevens' loudness index contours (1961) are similar to the equal noisiness contours developed by Kryter and Pearson (1963), and Wells (1967).

The effective perceived noise decibel (EPND) is also a calculated unit, which is little used, and which carries the weighting concept further by accounting for the effects of pitch and duration of noise.

A concept which is gaining rapidly in usefulness is the use of the noise exposure forecast (NEF) in conjunction with the compatible noise exposure limit (CNEL). In these terms, the noise around an airport, for example, may be expressed. All of the foregoing terms are expressed in the NEF which can be monitored and checked periodically and, in addition, can be predicted for the future by computer calculation. Kryter (1970) describes these terms in much more detail.

The Auditory System

The process of sound transmission can be very briefly summarized as follows. Sound waves impinge upon the tympanic membrane and are transformed by this organ and the bones of the middle ear into mechanical waves, and, by the action of the footplate of the stapes into fluid-borne waves, since the inner ear is fluid-filled. The action of these waves on the organ of hearing proper, the organ of Corti, in the inner ear, triggers impulses in nerve fibers which supply the organ. These nerve fibers transmit coded information regarding sound to the brain.

The audible range of frequencies for humans is generally given as 20 to 20,000 Hz, though few individuals can hear as high as 20,000. In other animals, much higher frequencies can be heard. The greatest sensitivity is in the range of 1000 to 3000 Hz. Pitch discrimination is less sensitive at frequencies outside this range.
The ear has three anatomical subdivisions containing, along with numerous other structures, all of the conductive and some of the nerve elements of the hearing mechanism. Figure 14-1 shows the human ear in cross section. The external ear, a trumpedlike structure, comprises the pinna and the external auditory canal or meatus. The middle ear houses the auditory ossicles. The inner ear contains the organ of hearing proper, the organ of Corti, together with the nonacoustic labyrinth, the vestibular apparatus.

![Figure 14-1. Drawing of cross section through human ear. (Naval Flight Surgeon's Manual, 1968)](image)

**External Ear**

The pinna, the fleshy and cartilaginous outer ear, has little effect on hearing in the human. The ear canal, or external auditory meatus, on the other hand, can affect hearing seriously if it should become occluded. The canal is bounded medially by the drum membrane, or tympanic membrane.

**The Middle Ear**

The tympanic membrane is also the lateral boundary of the middle ear. Some of the sound waves that strike the tympanum are reflected back into the auditory canal. The rest are transmitted across the membrane to the air-filled middle ear. The middle ear contains, in addition to nerves and vasculature, the bony chain of the sound conduction system, the malleus, the incus, and the
stapes. These bones functionally connect the ear drum with the inner ear, transmitting the waves imposed on the drum across the middle ear to the footplate of the stapes which rocks to and fro, delivering the agitation to the perilymph of the cochlea.

The ear bones of the middle ear function as a lever system. A small mechanical advantage is gained because the handle of the malleus is longer than the long crus of the incus. Much more important, however, is the ratio of the area of the tympanic membrane to the footplate of the stapes at the oval window. This ratio is effectively 14 to 1, and corresponds to an increase of 23 dB. The total force at the oval window is about the same as at the tympanic membrane, but it is concentrated in a much smaller area. Pressure exerted on the fluid of the inner ear is therefore only 3 to 5 dB less than that exerted by the sound pressure wave on the tympanum.

**The Inner Ear**

The inner ear is a closed fluid-filled chamber. It communicates with the middle ear at the oval and round windows (see figure 14-1). The oval window, closed by the stapes which is fixed by means of an annular ligament, links the middle ear with the vestibule of the inner ear. The round window provides the means of relieving the pressure imparted to the cochlea by connecting the middle ear with the basal turn of the cochlea through a flexible membrane. The cochlear wall is rigid and incompressible.

The cochlear partition, including basilar membrane and Reissners’ membrane, ends a little short of the apical end of the cochlear canal. There the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani join through the helicotrema while the cochlear duct ends blindly. At the other end of the scala tympani is the round window. The scala vestibuli opens into the central chamber of the labyrinth, the vestibule, close to the oval window. The length of the cochlear partition in man, from its origin between the oval and round window to the helicotrema, is about 35 mm. The sensory surface of the cochlea is thus a long narrow ribbon, coiled in spiral form, mounted on an elastic membrane, between two fluid-filled channels. This membrane is moved by the fluid which is driven acoustically at the oval window by the stapes.

**The Organ of Corti**

The organ of Corti occupies the cochlear duct between the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani (see figure 14-2a). The cochlear duct is bounded by the thin vestibular (Reissners’) membrane and the basilar membrane on which the organ of Corti is situated. The organ of Corti, otherwise known as the acoustic papilla, consists of hair cells, supporting structures, and nerve endings, the hair cells being the sound sensitive elements (figure 14-2b).

The organ of Corti is divided by one variety of the supportive elements, the inner and outer pillar cells, which slant toward each other to meet at the free
surface, forming a triangular space, the tunnel of Corti. On the medial (modiolar) side of this, the inner hair cells are situated, and on the outer side are the three rows of outer hair cells. The pillar cells are stiffened by bundles of tonofibrils. The outer hair cells reach the surface of the epithelium, but not the base, being supported underneath and held in place above by the phalangeal cells (also called Deiters' cells). Outside the outer tunnel is a solid bank of less differentiated cells, the cells of Hensen. These gradually diminish in height to merge with the cells of Claudius which form a simple epithelium merging, in turn, with the stria vascularis at the side of the cochlear duct.

Figure 14–2. A: Drawing of section through one turn of cochlea. B: Enlarged drawing of section of acoustic papilla showing all essential parts. (From Rasmussen, 1943)
Medial to the inner hair cells is a comparable, though more abrupt, bank of cells which are called border cells, and which diminish rapidly to a simple epithelium composed of cuboidal cells comparable to the cells of Claudius, covering the surface of the limbus spiralis. The limbus has a projection, the tectorial membrane, an acellular organ which extends outward, covering, and in contact with, the hairs of the hair cells.

The structure of the organ of Corti might be summed up as being an organization in which the hair cells are suspended in a fluid-filled space supported by their accessory cells, sitting on a membrane (basilar membrane) which is capable of passive movement, and covered by a membrane (tectorial membrane) which is capable of exerting a shearing action on the tips of the hairs upon such movement. The space in which the hair cells hang is open throughout the length of the organ of Corti. It is filled with a fluid, the cortilymph, and it is covered top and bottom by the surfaces of hair cells and phalangeal cells, and by the basilar membrane. This is significant because the electric potential of the endolymphe within the cochlear duct, according to Davis (1959), has been determined to be +80 relative to the cortilymph, which is -70, which means about a 150 mV differential.

The organ of Corti is the organ by which the complex sound waves are analyzed into their component frequencies. A mechanical disturbance beginning at the oval window becomes a wave which moves from the base to the apex of the cochlea along the basilar membrane. This in turn moves the entire acoustic papilla in such a way that a shearing force is exerted on the hairs by their motion against the tectorial membrane. In some way, this is translated into excitation of the hair cells, which is transmitted to the nerve endings at the base of the cells, and transmission of what are now no longer mechanical, but electrical impulses to the brain.

The Basilar Membrane

The basilar membrane (figure 14-2b) has distinct properties which enable it to participate in the analysis of complex sounds. First, the membrane is much wider at the apex than at the base, the ratio being between five-fold and eight-fold in man (Wever, 1949). This characteristic is related to the fact that the membrane is a low-pass filter, permitting low frequency sounds to travel further along than high frequency sounds. The question of how sound waves move along the membrane was once thought to be explained by a theory that suggested that the entire membrane resonated. This theory presupposed that the membrane was under tension, which has been proven not to be the case. The membrane does, however, vary in stiffness along its length, and is about one hundred times stiffer at the basal than at the apical end (Bekesy, 1947). This characteristic is the one primarily responsible for movement of energy waves.

Relying on mechanical models, Bekesy (1960) determined that when periodic forces are applied to a system with a stiffness gradient, traveling waves are generated. He had earlier demonstrated the existence of such waves in the cochlea by stroboscopic illumination. Figure 14-3 shows the amplitude and
phase relations of the vibrating membrane at various points. At low frequencies, the membrane vibrates in phase. At higher frequencies, the rate of change in phase increases with distance. The result is a wave train of several cycles. Also as frequency is increased, the amplitude envelope, described by the dotted lines in figure 14-3, moves toward the basal end of the basilar membrane.

Figure 14–3. Successive positions of the traveling wave along the basilar membrane. The dotted envelope shows the maximum amplitude of vibration at each point. (From Whitfield, 1967; after Bekesy, 1953)

One final point should be made concerning propagation of waves along the basilar membrane. Although the waves always travel from the base to the apex, this property is independent of the direction of the mechanical driving force. If this were not the case, conduction of sound through the bones of the skull, bypassing the stapes entirely, would not be possible. The driving force results from pressure changes in the fluid surrounding the cochlear duct; it is not provided directly by movement of the stapes. This has been confirmed experimentally by Wever and Lawrence (1954); however, since the time of transmission of waves along the entire length of the cochlea is only 10 to 20 msec, any pressure is applied almost simultaneously to all points along the length of the membrane, setting a considerable fraction of the membrane in motion.

Hair Cells

The ear converts sound waves to nerve impulses. It is relatively clear how sound waves become mechanical vibrations of the basilar membrane and that nerve impulses are generated in the cochlear nerve. The transducer mechanism involves the hair cells of the organ of Corti, but how it does so is a more difficult question. These cells are illustrated diagrammatically in figure 14-2, as they appear to the scanning microscope (figure 14-4), and when specimens have been prepared by the surface specimen technique (Engström, Ades, & Andersson, 1966) as seen in figure 14-5. The sensory cells are known as hair cells because of
the tufts of stereocilia which extend from the free ends of the cells. The cilia are embedded in the cuticle and make contact with the overlying tectorial membrane. There are some 25,000 hair cells in the human ear (Guild, 1932) which are arranged in a regular mosaic as a single row of inner hair cells and three to five rows (the number increases toward the apical end of the cochlea) of outer hair cells.

![Figure 14-4. Scanning photomicrograph of a segment of organ of Corti of guinea pig. IHC = inner hair cell row; OHC 1, 2, 3 = outer hair cell rows as numbered; PC = pillar cells; D = Deiters' (phalangeal) cells.](image)

**Inner Hair Cells**

The upper surface of the inner hair cell is bounded by a membrane with an underlying cuticle in which the roots of the stereocilia are embedded. The stereocilia have different lengths and form three or four slightly irregular lines. Each inner hair cell is provided with a single basal body placed at the side of the rows of stereocilia away from the modiolus. The inner hair cells have a characteristic shape with a relatively slender upper portion terminating in the cuticular plate, a bent neck and a thicker cell body containing the nucleus. They are slanted toward the tunnel of Corti (figure 14-2b).
Outer Hair Cells

The outer hair cells form three regular rows. They slant inward, that is, toward the modiolus, at an angle of 25 to 30 degrees (figure 14-2b). They have a flat upper surface with a thick cuticle, a cylindrical body, and a rounded base. It is customary to distinguish a cuticular, an infracuticular, a supranuclear, and an infranuclear region. On their cuticular surfaces the cells are provided with about 120 stereocilia and one modified kinocilium consisting only of the basal body. The stereocilia of the outer hair cell form a regular W-pattern with a basal body located below the W (figure 14-4). The angle between the outer ends of the W is wide (120 to 130 degrees) in the basal coil of the cochlea and narrows gradually to about 70 degrees in the apical coil. The rootlets of the stereocilia are inserted in the cuticular plate which is thicker toward the modiolus and thinner toward the basal body. Surrounding the basal body is a region where there is no cuticular plate at all, but only a plasma membrane. The infracuticular region contains many mitochondria and other organelles grouped around the basal body. Among these structures are rounded granules containing osmiophilic particles which increase in size in old animals and animals that have been exposed to intense noise (Engström, & Ades, 1960).
The central part of the supranuclear region is rather homogeneous in structure containing few mitochondria or cytoplasmic organelles. The nucleus is rounded or slightly ovoid in shape. The infranuclear region contains large groups of mitochondria. The base of the hair cell is surrounded by the cup-shaped Deiters' cell and by the nerve endings. The cochlear sensory cells are provided with two kinds of nerve endings at their base. One type has a centripetal or afferent, and the other a centrifugal or efferent, conducting property (figure 14-6). The afferent fibers form a major part of the acoustic nerve and consists of a large number of myelinated fibers, their myelin sheaths being continuous with the myelin coating of the spiral ganglion cells. This sheath continues along the peripheral dendrite of the neuron to the region immediately below the medial attachment of the basilar membrane where the myelin ends.

Each ganglion cell in the spiral ganglion is surrounded by a distinct myelin coating. The myelin of the ganglion cell is much less regular than that of the nerve. The myelin coating is externally bordered by the nuclear region of the Schwann cell. After prolonged treatment with neomycin, the ganglion cells demonstrate varying stages of degeneration and the myelin and Schwann cells show a highly pathological structure with irregular myelin folds and vacuolated mitochondria. Similar severe destruction may also occur after exposure to high intensity noise.

At the outer margin of the spiral osseous lamina the myelinated nerves all shed their myelin sheaths within a very restricted zone. The Schwann cell protoplasm follows the nerve fibers all the way to the basilar membrane whereas the nerve fibers, surrounded only by their axolemma, penetrate the basal layer and enter the organ of Corti where they run as unmyelinated fibers.

**Innervation of Hair Cells**

The afferent neurons of the auditory nerve are bipolar cells. They are arranged in a long spiral ganglion parallel to the organ of Corti but within the bony modiolus. The axon-like dendritic processes pass outward through the sieve-like bony and fibrous habenula perforata into the organ of Corti. They are myelinated up to the habenula. Some of them pass directly to the inner hair cells, innervating the outer hair cells. There is a spiral bundle under each row of outer hair cells. These fibers may then pass great distances in the spiral bundle and innervate many outer hair cells. Thus there is a great difference between the innervation of inner hair cells and outer hair cells. The inner hair cells are innervated directly -- no fiber passes to more than three to six cells and no cell is innervated by more than three to six fibers. The outer hair cells may be innervated by fibers which pass for considerable distances under them, and great segments of outer hair cells may be innervated by the same fiber. Each cell receives typically more than one fiber.
In addition to the afferent fibers, an efferent olivo-cochlear bundle runs lengthwise of the organ of Corti as the intraganglionic bundle within the modiolus just peripheral to the spiral ganglion. These fibers end as highly granulated endings on the base of the hair cells. Some of them may end as well on afferent fibers. There are fewer of them than there are hair cells.
innervated, so that each one ends on many hair cells. They innervate particularly the inner hair cells and the first row of outer hair cells. Their function is not well known, but is tentatively assumed to be inhibitory.

A detailed explanation of the physiology of the central auditory pathways is beyond the scope of this chapter. For additional information, the reader is referred to the chapter entitled “Central Auditory Mechanisms” in the Handbook of Physiology (Ades, 1959).

Transducer Mechanisms
The ear, as stated above, converts the mechanical energy of sound waves to nerve impulses in the auditory nerve. It is clear that the basilar membrane of the organ of Corti is displaced as a result of the force imparted to the fluid in the inner ear by the action of the stapes moving in and out at the oval window. It is also clear that nerve impulses are discharged in the nerve endings surrounding the base of the hair cells. The mechanism of stimulation of the hair cells is not known, although it is now generally assumed that a shearing force is exerted by the tectorial membrane on the stereocilia and that this somehow results in stimulation. It may be because of the displacement imparted by the stereocilia to the basal body, the residue of the kinocilium, which is all that remains on cochlear hair cells (although a kinocilium is present on vestibular hair cells and fetal cochlear hair cells).

The phenomena of electrical potentials associated with the cochlea during stimulation and at rest are germane to this discussion, but not to the main emphasis of this chapter. For the interested reader, they are summed up in Davis’ (1959) chapter in the Handbook of Physiology.

Hearing Loss
Damage to or lesions of any one or several elements of the hearing chain can result in reduced or complete loss of sensitivity to sounds of various frequencies. This loss of sensitivity, referred to as threshold shift, is treated in some detail in chapter 15. In this section we shall discuss some of the physiological changes which accompany hearing loss. Loss of hearing can be either temporary or permanent and is considered, practically speaking, total when the threshold is 85 to 90 dB above normal.

Two broad types of hearing loss are generally identified. These are conductive hearing loss and perceptive hearing loss. Hearing loss that is hysterical in origin will not be treated here, since obviously there is no question of demonstrable damage. Conductive hearing loss involves the external ear, the tympanic membrane, and/or the auditory ossicles. Perceptive or sensorineural hearing loss involves the organ of Corti or any one of a number of sites along the auditory pathway, that is, the cochlear nerve or the auditory centers of the brain. Figure 14-7 indicates the audibility curve in man under ideal conditions (solid line) and under conditions
(broken line) of audiometry. The threshold for feeling is also shown. At sound pressure levels in excess of 130 or 140 dB, sensations in addition to hearing are perceived. These can include discomfort, tickling, and, finally, pain.

![Figure 14-7. Audibility curve in man, showing thresholds of feeling and hearing. (After Licklider, 1951; reprinted from Naval Flight Surgeon's Manual, 1968)](image)

Conductive Hearing Loss

Persons with pure conductive hearing loss have normal inner ears. The hearing decrement in these instances results from the fact that sound cannot reach the cochlea for one reason or another. The abnormality may be in:

1. the external canal
2. the ear drum
3. the middle ear bones, including the footplate of the stapes.

Hearing loss can result from obstruction of the auditory canal. The canal may be impacted with wax or foreign bodies or be swollen during infection. In the case of a birth defect, the external ear may be closed or the canal missing entirely. Damage to the drum by blast injury, for example, causes hearing loss either by perforation or scarring. Repeated middle ear infections also leave the drum scarred or perforated.

Hearing loss related to the bones of the middle ear is the most common type of conductive hearing loss. Figure 14-8 shows hearing loss in otosclerosis. In this
hereditary defect, the footplate of the stapes may become progressively fixed. If the disease is purely conductive and does not involve sensorineural elements as well, hearing can be improved by surgery.

The conductive apparatus of the ear is equipped with a feature that provides a limited amount of protection from prolonged intense noise. The mechanism is called the stapedial reflex. Two muscles, one attached to the malleus and the other to the stapes, act synergistically to limit the amount of stimulation reaching the inner ear. The muscles contract, after a brief latency, in response to loud sound. It is, at best, poor protection.

Finally, conductive hearing loss can never be total since sound can bypass the middle ear entirely and be conducted to the inner ear through the bones of the skull.

Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Sensorineural hearing loss is caused primarily by loss of hair cells or acoustic ganglion cells or both. It may be caused by lesions to the central auditory pathway also, although this is an unlikely cause due to the fact that beyond the first synapse the pathway is essentially doubled, with elements
for both ears ascending in right and left tracts. Unlike conductive loss, sensorineural loss can be complete.

Sensorineural loss comes about by a variety of agencies or events. These include hereditary and congenital conditions, disease, drug toxicity, presbycusis, and exposure to noise. Of these, the latter may well be far and away the greatest single cause. It may, indeed, include "presbycusis." Sensorineural hearing loss affects high frequency perception primarily, with ultimate progression to lower frequencies. Figure 14-9 is an audiogram showing hearing loss characteristic of the gradual degenerative process in "presbycusis." High tones are lost first.


When the human ear is exposed to excessively loud sounds, it shows a loss of acuity to sound, that is, a rise in threshold. This is called "temporary threshold shift," and it will return to normal over a time regulated by the parameters of the sound causing it. If the sound is repeated, the return to normal may be less than complete and this may progress with repeated exposure, the residual hearing loss being designated as "permanent threshold shift." We presume that this is due to loss of hair cells in the organ of Corti.

There is reason to believe that repetition of exposure over many years causes a gradual loss of hair cells, and consequent loss of hearing. This is known as
boilermakers' disease, a tribute to a bygone profession, the like of which is reduplicated many times over in modern industry. The same thing has been noted to occur among individuals who have engaged in frequent small arms fire, such as soldiers, persistent hunters, skeet shooters, and the like. Significantly, Bredberg (1968) found many examples of a similar affliction in his review of a large number of elderly cases whose ears he examined at autopsy. Although he had relatively few whose noise-exposure history was known, there were enough to create the definite suspicion that he was dealing with chronic acoustic trauma rather than merely the ravages of age.

Effects of High Intensity Pure Tones

Total or partial deafness can result from damage to the hair cells of the cochlea. It is widely believed that there is a relationship between tonal frequency and position on the cochlear partition at which it vibrates with maximum amplitude. This vibration, if great enough, is believed to cause mechanical injury to hair cells. Further, it is believed that there is an approximately inverse relation between the logarithm of frequency and the distance from the base of the cochlea with relation to the site of damage. Greenwood's function is probably the best available expression for this relationship. It may be stated as follows:

\[ f = 253 \cdot (10^{0.105 \cdot x} - 1) \]

Since stress equals mass times acceleration per unit area, and the mass of the cochlear partition is thought to be the same over its entire length (Schuknecht & Tonndorf, 1960), the stress on any segment of the cochlear partition during displacement will be directly proportional to its acceleration. Since acceleration varies directly with frequency, high frequencies will produce greater stress in the region of maximum amplitude than do lower frequencies. High frequencies should, therefore, cause greater hair cell damage.

In addition to mechanical stress, it is thought that prolonged exposure to acoustic stimuli damages the hair cells by exhausting cytochemical or enzymatic materials in the cells (Beagley, 1965; Engström & Ades, 1960). Outer hair cells are more sensitive to this type of destruction.

Recently, Stockwell, Ades, and Engström (1969) studied the effects of high intensity noise (130 to 150 dB) on the hair cells of the guinea pig cochlea, which is similar in all important respects to the human cochlea. Various aspects of both the mechanical and chemical theories of hair cell destruction were investigated as were the relationship between exposure frequency and the site of hair cell damage and the effects of exposure time on damage. Table 14-1 shows the plan of exposure for the animals in this experiment.

The study reconfirmed that maximum damage bears some relation to exposure frequency, but as frequency increases, the position of maximum damage tends to move in the basalward direction. Figure 14-10 shows mean damage curves for animals exposed to 130 dB. (The arrows indicate the position
of maximum stimulation for exposure frequency calculated with Greenwood's formula.) Figure 14-11 shows mean damage curves for 150 dB exposures. These indicate that inner hair cell damage is complete after 1 hour, but outer hair cell damage increases between 1 and 4 hours.

Table 14-1
Plan of Exposures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Exposure Duration</th>
<th>1 Hour</th>
<th>4 Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4000 Hz</td>
<td>130 dB</td>
<td>16 ears/10 animals</td>
<td>8 ears/4 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 ears/1 animal</td>
<td>8 ears/4 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 ears/2 animals</td>
<td>6 ears/3 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 ears/3 animals</td>
<td>6 ears/3 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 ears/2 animals</td>
<td>4 ears/2 animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000 Hz</td>
<td>150 dB</td>
<td>4 ears/2 animals</td>
<td>2 ears/1 animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 ear</td>
<td>2 ears/1 animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 Hz</td>
<td></td>
<td>18 ears/9 animals</td>
<td>1 ear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(From Stockwell, Ades, & Engström, 1969)

These results suggest that at higher frequencies, mechanical stress is the important mechanism of hair cell damage; furthermore, outer hair cells are more affected than inner hair cells. At lower frequencies, the same sound pressure levels produce less mechanical stress, so hair cell damage may result from gradually accumulating effects of stimulation, that is, enzyme exhaustion. Outer hair cells also appear to be more sensitive than inner hair cells to this latter type of damage.

Effect of Impulse Noise

Impulse noise (see also chapter 15) is the type of noise produced, for example, by small arms fire and certain children's toys, notably cap pistols. This type of noise, considered dangerous when it exceeds 140 dB at a distance of less than 20 cm (NAS, 1965), produces mechanical destruction of hair cells comparable in severity to that produced by prolonged exposure to high intensity pure tones. Figure 14-12 shows hair cell damage demonstrated by Poche, Stockwell, and Ades (1969) in a guinea pig exposed to impulse noise and one exposed to pure tone. Distribution of damage along the organ of Corti is indicated. Table 14-2 indicates overall hair cell damage. The figure shows considerable variation in susceptibility to damage. In ears that did sustain damage in this study, outer hair cells (OHC) were more susceptible than inner
hair cells (IHC) (a finding one might expect when the mechanism of damage is mechanical stress). When damage due to cap gun exposure is plotted against damage caused by pure tone noise (figure 14-13), it is clear that cap gun exposures produce damage equal in severity to a 4-hour exposure to 2000 Hz tone of 125 to 130 dB.

The scanning electron microscope has been a further blessing for the study of the structure of the ear. For example, this device has made it possible to see changes in the surfaces of hair cells not visible by other means. We have observed the hair cells of the cochlea alongside a serious lesion, that is, one in which the acoustic papilla had been reduced to a simple epithelium (figure 14-14). On either side of the lesion, numbers of hair cells are distorted in that the hairs are fused, overgrown, or both (figure 14-15). It is not known to what extent these cells are functional, but it seems probable that they are not, inasmuch as the
damage to hearing is considerably wider in terms of frequency than would be true if only the cells visibly damaged in surface specimen (Engström, Ades, & Andersson, 1966) were functionally impaired. This then, would represent an intermediate stage of damage in which the hair cell was not completely destroyed, but was functionally impaired while retaining its viability.

Figure 14–11. Mean damage curves for groups exposed to 150 dB SPL. The small arrow above each curve indicates the position of maximum stimulation for the exposure frequency. (Stockwell, Ades, & Engström, 1969; reprinted by permission of the Annals of Otology, Rhinology, and Laryngology)

It is important to note that in these experiments, among the methods of light/phase contrast, electron, and scanning electron microscopy, each has its place in the study of the pathological cochlea, and none will stand alone. Similarly, in the study of the noise-damaged cochlea, it is imperative that each cell be seen in its proper place in relation to the other hair cells, for otherwise, it is impossible to observe all the damage and relate it appropriately to the intact regions.
Figure 14–12. Percent hair-cell damage plotted as a function of distance from basal end of the organ of Corti. (a) Left ear of an animal exposed to 500 rounds of cap-gun fire at 30 cm. (b) Right ear of an animal exposed for 4 hours to a 2000-Hz tone at 130 dB. (Poche, Stockwell, & Ades, 1969)
Figure 14–13. Comparison of overall hair cell damage produced by a 2000-Hz tone and by cap-pistol fire. Damage is plotted separately for IHC and OHC as a function of pure-tone exposure intensity. (Poche, Stockwell, & Ades, 1969)

Table 14–2
Overall Hair Cell Damage (Percent) in Ears From Unexposed Animals and From Animals Exposed to 500 Rounds of Cap-gun Fire

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IHC</th>
<th>OHC 1</th>
<th>OHC 2</th>
<th>OHC 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>3.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>2.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>3.08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Normals (12 ears)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IHC</th>
<th>OHC 1</th>
<th>OHC 2</th>
<th>OHC 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum</td>
<td>33.04</td>
<td>56.19</td>
<td>56.84</td>
<td>54.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>2.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>10.37</td>
<td>17.80</td>
<td>18.86</td>
<td>21.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cap Gun (27 ears)

(From Poche, Stockwell, & Ades, 1969)
Figure 14—14. Scanning electron micrograph of one-quarter turn of cochlea of guinea pig exposed to 4000 Hz. MO = modiolus; OC = organ of Corti; TM = tectorial membrane. Lesion between arrows. Note abrupt character of lesion, and simple epithelium replacing acoustic papilla. (Bredberg, Ades, & Engström, in press)

Figure 14—15. Highly magnified scanning electron micrograph of ten outer hair cells of guinea pig, showing abnormal stereocilia. Arrow points to a giant stereocilia. Other cells show varying degrees of abnormality. (Bredberg, Ades, Engström, in press)
References


Noise and blast problems may occur in all phases of aerospace activities. Tremendous quantities of acoustical energy are developed by rocket engines on the launch pad and during lift-off, and this may affect ground personnel as well as the crew on board the space vehicle. As payloads become larger and boosters increase in size and power, significant increases in noise and blast problems may be expected. Noise from equipment used in assembling and static testing of boosters and payloads may adversely affect ground-support personnel. In mission-control centers, noise from computers and monitoring devices may interfere with voice communications. Current evidence suggests that noise and blast problems in future space operations may be more severe at ground-service crew locations and in nearby communities than in the space vehicles themselves. However, control of noise levels inside spacecraft will still require consideration in assessing the likelihood of mission success.

The most significant effects of noise and blast on man are damage to hearing, masking of speech and warning signals, and annoyance. In addition, noise interferes with some of man's sensory and perceptual capabilities and thereby may degrade critical task performance. Noise also produces temporary or permanent alterations in body chemistry.

This chapter describes the noise and blast environment. It provides a definition of units and techniques of noise measurement and gives representative booster-launch and spacecraft noise data. It reviews the effects of noise on hearing sensitivity and performance and discusses briefly community response to noise exposure. Physiological, or nonauditory, effects of noise exposure are also reviewed by Henning E. von Gierke.
treated, as are design criteria and methods for minimizing the effects of noise on hearing sensitivity and on communications. The references cited in this chapter relate primarily to research conducted during the past 10 years in the United States and several foreign countries.

Description of the Noise and Blast Environment

Definitions and Units

Airborne sound refers to a rapid variation in ambient atmospheric pressure. By definition, noise is unwanted sound. Steady-state noise is a periodic or random variation in atmospheric pressure which has a duration in excess of 1000 milliseconds. Impulse noise is a nonperiodic variation in atmospheric pressure which has a duration of less than 1000 msec, and a peak to root-mean-square (RMS) ratio greater than 10 decibels (dB). Blast is an anomalous term, but is most frequently used to describe very large amplitude and/or long duration pressure waves accompanying the discharge of large-caliber weapons, the ignition of rocket motors, or the detonation of conventional and nuclear explosives. Taken together, sound, noise, and blast all refer to airborne acoustical phenomena whose energy may be described both in terms of their physical characteristics (amplitude, frequency content, and/or duration) and their effects on man’s physiology and behavior.

Amplitude

The amplitude of sound at any given point is expressed as sound-pressure level (SPL). Its physical unit is the decibel which is given as:

$$SPL = 20 \log \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right) \text{ in dB}$$

where $p$ = the sound pressure being measured; and $p_0$ = a reference pressure, usually 20 microneutons per square meter ($\mu$N/m²). The reference pressure of $20 \mu$N/m² is approximately equal to the lowest pressure which a young person with normal hearing can barely detect at a frequency of 1000 Hertz (Hz). Other measures of sound pressure may be encountered in the literature, such as dynes per square centimeter (dyn/cm²), microbar ($\mu$bar) and pounds per square inch (psi). Table 15-1 shows the relationship between four such measures.

Common examples of representative SPL include:

- A business office: 50 dB
- Speech at 3 feet: 65 dB
- Subway at 20 feet: 95 dB
- Jet aircraft at 35 feet: 130 dB
- Atlas launch at 150 feet: 150 dB
- On gantry during Saturn V launch: 172 dB.
Table 15-1
Relationship Between Decibels, Newtons/Meter$^2$, Microbar$^*$, and Pounds/Inch$^2$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dB</th>
<th>N/m$^2$</th>
<th>μbar</th>
<th>PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00002</td>
<td>0.0002</td>
<td>2.94 $\times$ 10$^{-9}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.0001</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>14.70 $\times$ 10$^{-9}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>147.0 $\times$ 10$^{-9}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1.47 $\times$ 10$^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>14.70 $\times$ 10$^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>147.0 $\times$ 10$^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47 $\times$ 10$^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>14.70 $\times$ 10$^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>10 000</td>
<td>147.0 $\times$ 10$^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td>10 000</td>
<td>100 000</td>
<td>1.47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Also note that 1 μbar = 1 dyn/cm$^2$.

**Velocity.** The speed of sound is dependent only upon the absolute temperature of the air, assuming that air behaves as an ideal gas. The equation for the speed of sound ($C$) in meters per second is:

$$C = 20.05 \sqrt{T} \text{ m/sec}$$

where $T$ is the absolute temperature in degrees Kelvin (273.2° plus the temperature in degrees Centigrade). Thus the speed of sound at 21.1° C is about 344 m/sec.

In English units:

$$C = 49.03 \sqrt{R} \text{ ft/sec}$$

where $R$ is the temperature in degrees Rankine (459.7° plus the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit). Again, at 70°F, the speed of sound is about 1128 ft/sec.

**Wavelength.** The wavelength ($\lambda$) of a sound is the distance the wave travels during one period or cycle. It is related to the speed of sound and to frequency by the equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f}$$
where \( c \) = speed of sound (m/sec or ft/sec), and \( f \) = frequency (Hz). For example, during one period a 100 Hz wave would move 3.44 meters or 11.3 feet at 70°F (21.1°C). It is helpful to keep in mind that as frequency increases, wavelength becomes shorter.

**Frequency.** The unit of frequency is Hertz (Hz) or cycles per second (cps). Nominally, the range of aurally detectable sounds is 20 to 20,000 Hz. Pressure oscillations at frequencies above this range are called ultrasonic. These frequencies cannot normally be heard by man but they do produce some biological effects and will be discussed in a later section. The effects of infrasonic frequencies (<20 Hz) will also be discussed briefly. The terms supersonic and subsonic, which are related to the speed of sound, should not be confused with those terms which describe frequency range.

When describing sound, noise or blast, it is not sufficient to measure only the overall SPL. The noise must also be analyzed to determine how the sound energy is distributed over the frequency range. A noise is usually analyzed by passing it through a constant-percentage bandwidth filter, such as an octave-band analyzer, in which each passband has upper and lower limiting frequencies having a ratio of 2:1. An octave-band analysis is usually sufficient to determine the effect of steady-state noise upon humans and the surrounding community. A 1/3-octave (or narrower) analysis is required when it is desired to localize which component in a system is the major contributor to a noise problem, or if the noise contains a pronounced narrow-band frequency component.

The preferred series of octave bands for acoustical measurements are identified as multiples and submultiples of 1000 Hz which describe the center frequency of each band. Another series of octave bands which has been widely used in the past are the commercial octave bands. These are normally described by their band-limiting frequencies.

Another type of frequency analysis which is gaining importance is the "weighting network" which is included in all sound-level meters which meet the requirements of the current American National Standards Institute's (ANSI) specification for sound level meters (ANSI, 1971). The weighting networks consist of three alternate frequency response characteristics, designated A-, B-, and C-weighting. Whenever one of these networks is used, the reading obtained must be identified properly. For instance, if an A-weighted sound pressure level of 90 is obtained, it would be reported as 90 dBA. The A-weighting network is particularly valuable if a quick estimate of the interference of noise upon speech is required (Klumpp & Webster, 1963). Also there has been a recent movement toward using the A-weighting network for evaluating the hearing hazard of steady-state noise when it is not possible or practical to perform a complete octave-band analysis (Botsford, 1967).

**Definitions Peculiar to Impulse Noise and Blast.**

Peak Pressure is the highest pressure achieved, expressed in dB re 20 \( \mu N/m^2 \), or in psi.
Rise Time is the time taken for the single pressure fluctuation that forms the initial or principal positive peak to increase from ambient pressure to the peak pressure level.

Pressure Wave Duration (A-Duration) is the time required for the pressure to rise to its initial or principal positive peak and return momentarily to ambient pressure.

Pressure Envelope Duration (B-Duration) is the total time that the envelope of pressure fluctuations (positive and negative) is within 20 dB of the peak pressure level. Included in this time would be the duration of that part of any reflection pattern that is within 20 dB of the peak pressure level.

Psychological Terms. The measures of loudness are the phon and the sone. Sones are obtained by a conversion of eight octave bands into sones from an appropriate table. The phon is merely a transformation of the sone into a logarithmic scale. Sounds that are perceived as equally loud to the human ear will have the same sone or phon value. The mel is used as a subjective measure of the pitch differences in frequency between sounds.

Propagation of Sound

In an ideal, homogeneous, loss-free atmosphere SPL decreases, through spherical divergence, inversely with distance in the far field. That is, there is a 6 dB decrease in SPL for each doubling of distance from the source. In addition, when sound travels through still, homogeneous air, a significant amount of energy is extracted through "molecular absorption" which is related to the relaxation behavior of the oxygen molecules. This excess attenuation depends not only on frequency, but also on temperature and humidity and is in addition to losses resulting from spherical divergence. Figure 15-1 shows engineering estimates of excess attenuation as a function of distance and frequency for air temperatures ranging from 0° to 100°F and over a relative humidity range from 10 to 90 percent. Data are given for the preferred octave bands ranging from 500 to 8000 Hz. While there is some absorption in the lower bands, it can usually be neglected. A more complete discussion of atmospheric absorption is provided by the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) (1964).

In certain cases "classical absorption" should also be considered. Classical absorption is proportional to the frequency squared, is independent of humidity, and its effects typically are much less than those of molecular absorption (Nyborg & Mintzer, 1955).

In addition to the preceding, the refraction of sound waves produced by meteorological conditions between the earth's surface and altitudes of 3 to 5 kilometers must be considered. This phenomenon may cause sound waves produced at or near the surface of the earth to be focused near residential areas adjacent to rocket launch sites (Perkins et al., 1960). This refraction is due to changes in velocity of sound with altitude, and it is caused by variations in temperature, humidity and wind with altitude. The SPL for various refraction
Figure 15-1. Atmospheric absorption coefficients for octave bands of noise for different temperatures. (Society of Automotive Engineers, 1964)
conditions and their focal points may be calculated by a modified ray acoustic method if the directivity characteristics of the source are known. Experience has shown, though, that quite often the effects of refraction and focusing do not occur and the SPL approaches that predicted for a homogeneous medium. Although those conditions causing focusing do sometimes occur in the Cape Kennedy area, they are not prevalent (Chenoweth & Smith, 1961).

Noise Measurement.

The basic measuring system for evaluating the physical characteristics of noise to relate them to their effect on man consists of the following elements:

1. transducer (microphone)
2. electronic amplifier and calibrated attenuator
3. data storage
4. octave-band analyzer
5. read-out.

The choice of instrumentation for a particular situation must be based upon a knowledge of the limitations and capabilities of the various types of instrumentation available. Normally, the weakest item of a measuring system is the transducer (microphone). Most of the discussion will, therefore, center around the selection of transducers and the techniques to be used in measuring steady-state and impulse noise. The associated equipment will naturally require characteristics which are as good as, or better than, those of the microphone selected.

Steady-State Noise. Microphones are available in a variety of sensitivities. When very low noise levels are to be measured, the minimum SPL to which a microphone can respond should be the determining factor in selection. It must also be ascertained that the self-noise of the microphone (and the entire measuring system for that matter) is at least 10 dB below the noise that is to be measured in each octave band of interest. On the other hand, for measuring high-level noises such as those produced by rocket engines, the choice of microphone to be used will be limited by the maximum SPL to which the microphone can respond without excessive distortion or failure. After the preceding two considerations have narrowed the selection, the microphone that should be selected is the one having the smoothest frequency response over the range of interest.

The frequency response of most microphones varies with the direction of arrival of the sound wave. At low frequencies (below 1 kHz), where the size of the microphone is small in relation to the wavelength of sound, microphones are omnidirectional. However, at higher frequencies the direction in which the microphone is pointed, or its incidence angle*, must be carefully considered.

---

*The incidence angle for most microphones is that angle subtended between its longitudinal axis and a line drawn between the noise source and the microphone.
The manufacturer's specifications should be consulted to obtain the incidence angle which provides the smoothest possible frequency response.

If a moving noise source is to be measured, a microphone which has its best response at 0° (normal) incidence should not be used since the measured spectrum will change with noise-source location. Therefore, in this case, it would be desirable to select a microphone with good response at 90° (grazing) incidence and to position it so the moving noise source is always at 90° incidence to the microphone.

Impulse Noise and Blast. The measurement of impulse noise presents several problems which must be discussed separately. The principal limitations in the measurement of impulse noise lie in the ability of the transducer and its associated equipment to respond to the pressure pulse accurately (Garinther & Moreland, 1965; Coles & Rice, 1966). The minimum qualities of the transducers and associated equipment for such measurements are:

1. A good phase response.
2. A uniform amplitude response characteristic over a wide frequency range. [A bandwidth of from 100 Hz to 70 kHz is adequate for measuring most short duration impulses such as from small arms, but longer duration impulses such as from large caliber weapons and sonic booms require an extension of the low frequency response, and may permit relaxation of the upper limit (Crocker, 1966).]
3. Less than 1.5 dB ringing and overshoot at the pressure being measured (ringing should be completely damped after 100 μsec).
4. Rise time capability of 10 μsec or less at the pressure being measured.
5. Sufficient robustness to withstand damage from the pressure pulse being measured.
6. Mounting of all apparatus to eliminate microphonics.
7. Sufficient sensitivity to allow a signal-to-noise ratio of 25 dB or greater.
8. Minimum drift caused by temperature instability.

The angle of microphone incidence is even more important for measuring impulse noise than for measuring steady-state noise. Garinther and Moreland (1965) have shown that at 0° (normal) incidence, the measured peak pressure level of various microphones may differ by as much as 10 dB. Since the peak readings obtained from various microphones should theoretically be, and were in fact found to be, in good agreement at 90° incidence, the transducer should be oriented for impulse-noise measurements at an angle of 90° (grazing incidence) between the longitudinal axis of the transducer and the direction of travel of the pressure pulse or shock wave.

With the transducer positioned at grazing incidence, rise-time characteristics will be affected by the transit time of the wave across the sensing element. Therefore, it is necessary that the transducer selected have a sensitive diameter of about 4mm or less.
Two precautions must be stated regarding the measurement and analysis of short-duration impulse noise. First, great care must be taken in interpreting the results of a frequency analysis. [Pease (1967) has published a computer program for spectrum analysis of impulse noises.] Second, in tape recording impulse noise it has been found necessary to use FM recording equipment. "Direct" (AM) tape recording produces phase shift of frequency vs. time which distorts the pressure-time history of an impulse noise.

**Prediction of Launch Noise**

The primary sources which must be considered in assessing mission-associated noises are: (1) static and preflight tests, (2) launch, and (3) flight operations. Consideration must be given to how each of these phases of propulsion system noise affects the crew, ground-support personnel, and the surrounding community.

In addition to the propulsion system, noise generated within the command module must be carefully assessed with regard to its long-term effects upon the crew. In space, the only sources which need to be considered are those generating noise within the capsule and any structure-borne noise.

The potential noise environment should be defined as early as possible in the development of a system. Techniques are available for predicting from a knowledge of certain parameters the sound spectrum of a propulsion system. These have been shown to be accurate to within a few decibels. A brief discussion of these follows, but the reader should consult Wilhold et al. (1970) to obtain an understanding of the computations.

The area surrounding the rocket must be divided into three regions to be properly analysed. In the acoustic near field (within 1\(\lambda\)) no accurate predictive technique exists. The second region is the mid-field (3-5\(\lambda\)). Here it is possible to calculate a dimensionless spectrum function and source position which is dependent upon frequency, using techniques outlined in Dyer (1958). From these, and the known parameters of the propulsion system, the acoustic environment may be determined. The far field of the noise produced by the launch of a rocket is the area with which we are most concerned in dealing with the effects of noise upon man. The predictive method for this region is quite involved and is described in detail by Wilhold et al. (1963). Excess attenuation and meteorological effects described in an earlier section must, if appropriate, be included in computation. This technique has proven to be very accurate in predicting the band pressure levels of several rocket systems.

The acoustic environment of advanced Saturn V vehicles has been calculated for strap-on configurations having 13.1 million and 32 million pounds of thrust (Wilhold et al., 1970). These are shown in figures 15-2 through 15-5.
Figure 15-2. Maximum anticipated overall SPL for Saturn V MLV configuration of 32.0 million lb of thrust, as a function of distance from launch pad. (Wilhold et al., 1970)

Figure 15-3. Predicted octave band pressure level spectrum at 4.5 km from Saturn V MLV launch (32 million lb thrust). (Wilhold et al., 1970)
Figure 15-4. Predicted octave band pressure level spectrum at 16.5 km from Saturn V MLV launch (32 million lb thrust). (Wilhold et al., 1970)

Figure 15-5. Predicted spectra for 3 vehicle stations for a 13.1 million lb thrust configuration. (Saturn V with four 1.4 million lb thrust strap-on units.) (Wilhold et al., 1970)
Apollo Launch Noise

Detailed measurements of Apollo launch noise have been made at many positions in and around Cape Kennedy Launch Complex 39A. The range of octave-band SPL around the vehicle at a distance of 400 meters is shown in table 15-2. Also shown are the maximum levels achieved on the side of the gantry closest to the rocket 10 m above ground.

Table 15-2
Octave Band Pressure Levels Around an Apollo Launch at a Distance of 400 Meters and on the Gantry 10 Meters Above Ground

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Center Frequency (Hz)</th>
<th>Sound Pressure Level (dB)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>At 400 Meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>122 – 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>136 – 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>141 – 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>136 – 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>135 – 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>130 – 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>129 – 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>127 – 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>125 – 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>120 – 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>116 – 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>118 – 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>110 – 131</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*re 20 μN/m².

(J.F. Kennedy Space Center, 1969a)

The SPL to which the Apollo astronauts are exposed remains above 85 dB for about 80 seconds during liftoff (French, 1967). The maximum SPL achieved at the crew position is shown in table 15-3. Since the crew will be wearing helmets and space suits during launch, a conservative estimate of the actual SPL at the ear is also shown in table 15-3.

It is important to note that the maximum SPL for the Apollo system occurs at very low frequencies, below 100 Hz. This noise, which is produced by the turbulent mixing of the booster propulsive flow with the surrounding atmosphere, will continue to become higher in intensity, and lower in frequency, as boosters increase in size and thrust. The very large boosters, such as Nova, will probably produce their maximum noise energy in the infrasonic region (below 20 Hz) (National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Marshall Space Flight Center, 1961).
Table 15-3
Sound Pressure Level in Crew Area and at Ear Position
of Apollo Astronauts at T + 60 Seconds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Center Frequency (Hz)</th>
<th>Sound Pressure Level (dB)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crew Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(French, 1967)

Low-frequency sounds must be measured accurately so research may be continued on the effects of these sounds on man. Hearing protective devices, such as helmets and circumaural muffes, provide their poorest protection at low frequencies (discussed further in a later section), so research must be continued on providing more efficient means of protecting man from the possible damaging effects of low-frequency sound. Also, as was discussed in the section on propagation of sound, low-frequency energy is least affected by excess attenuation. Therefore, these are the frequencies which are most likely to produce both physical and psychological effects in the communities surrounding launch areas.

Spacecraft Noise Levels During Non-Powered Flight

Apollo crew compartment noise measurements are shown in figure 15-6 for non-powered flight. These data were acquired in the 2TV-1 command module which was used for combined thermal/vacuum tests at the NASA Marshall Space Flight Center (MSFC) facility. Measurements were made with the internal environment controlled by the spacecraft life support system, and compartment pressure was maintained at about 5 psia. During this simulated flight, the interior noise sources included the glycol pumps, cabin fans, suit compressors, B mags, inverters, and guidance and navigational systems.

Effects of Noise and Blast on Hearing

This section treats the factors influencing the acquisition and recovery of hearing loss for steady-state and impulse noise, and for blast (a special case of impulse noise). A basic understanding of the anatomy, physiology and functioning of the human auditory system is assumed. Readers not possessing this background may find a preliminary reading of chapter 14 helpful.
Figure 15-6. Apollo crew compartment noise.
Types of Hearing Loss

The sensitivity of human hearing at a particular test frequency is referred to as the threshold of audibility. Thresholds stated with reference to standard criteria [such as ANSI-1951 or ISO-1964 audiometric zero (International Standards Organization)] are called hearing levels re the appropriate reference level. When a loss of sensitivity is temporary, i.e., returns to baseline after a suitable recovery interval, it is referred to as a temporary threshold shift, or TTS. A loss of sensitivity which does not return to baseline is called a permanent threshold shift, PTS. TTS is usually measured at 2 minutes or longer after exposure, and is referred to as $TTS_{2\text{ min}}$ or, simply, $TTS_{2}$.

Relation Between TTS and PTS

Some relation is assumed to exist between $TTS_{2}$ experienced on a near-daily basis and the likelihood of eventual accumulation of PTS. CHABA (Committee on Hearing, Bioacoustics and Biomechanics) Working Group 46 (1965) assumed that 10 years of near-daily exposure would result in $PTS_{10\text{ yr}} = TTS_{2\text{ min}}$. TTS measures are widely used in assessing noise effects on hearing because (1) TTS is a valid measure of the temporary effects of noise exposure, and (2) TTS can affect man's ability to perform tasks requiring maximum hearing sensitivity. In fact, where life-or-death decisions rest on the acuteness of man's hearing, as in astronauts' reception of speech signals, or in the perceiving of auditory warning signals, prevention of excessive TTS is the most important consideration. Absence of TTS may be responsible for saving a life or many lives. TTS will be used here as the primary indicator of noise effects on hearing threshold sensitivity.

Susceptibility to TTS

The concept of susceptibility refers jointly to the fact that for a given noise exposure, different ears demonstrate varying amounts of TTS, and for a given sample of ears, different noise conditions may produce varying distributions of TTS. Because of the unpredictable and uncontrollable variability in ears' responses to noise—between days and among noise conditions—the possibility of developing criteria for protecting specific ears from excessive TTS is at best slim (Ward, 1968; Hodge & McCoombs, 1966). As a result, criteria for determining what constitutes hazardous vs. nonhazardous noise exposures are, in reality, a form of actuarial or statistical tables in which the responses of certain proportions of noise-exposed populations are predicted.

Steady Sounds and Noise

Acquisition of TTS. The many factors influencing the acquisition of TTS from steady sound and noise exposure have been reviewed by Ward (1963, 1969) and Nakamura (1964). Some of the salient aspects are summarized below. When reading these, it should be kept in mind that the interaction of variables is a most important consideration. The present discussion will be limited primarily to TTS measured 2 minutes or longer after exposure.
Stimulus Amplitude. TTS$_2$ increases linearly with average SPL over the range of 75 to 120 dB and possibly higher. The difference between TTS produced by 85- and 90-dB noise is about the same as the difference between that produced by 90- and 95-dB SPL. This relationship is illustrated in figure 15-7.

![Figure 15-7. TTS at 4 kHz as a function of SPL for exposure to octave band of 2–4 kHz. Parameter is exposure time in minutes. (Shoji et al., 1966)](image)

Exposure Frequency. For equal SPL in octave-bands of noise, low frequencies present less hazard to the ear than higher frequencies up to 4 kHz. This is due to the frequency-response characteristics of man's ear. Figure 15-8 illustrates the general relation between exposure frequency and TTS for octave bands of noise.

Pure tones produce more TTS than corresponding octave bands of noise of the same amplitude. Carter and Kryter (1962) showed that the overall level of an octave band had to be about 5 dB higher than a pure tone at the octave center frequency to produce an equal amount of TTS; this 5 dB correction was later adopted for use in the CHABA (1965) steady-state noise damage-risk criterion.

Cohen and Bauman (1964), investigating TTS from broad-band noise, showed that when pure tones below 2 kHz were present the combined tone and noise condition produced more TTS than noise alone, even though the overall SPLS for the two conditions were equated.

Jerger et al. (1966), and Alford et al. (1966) investigated TTS from infrasonic tones, concluding that the most hazardous conditions were at or above 141 dB SPL in the range of 10 to 12 Hz.
There is evidence that exposure to ultrasonic tones up to 120 dB SPL is unlikely to produce TTS (Acton & Carson, 1967). No clear evidence exists upon which to assess the effect of higher SPL.

Duration of Exposure. TTS2 from steady noise grows linearly with the logarithm of exposure time, as illustrated in figure 15-9. Most experiments have involved relatively short exposures (8 hr), but Yuganov, et al. (1967) have suggested that the rule is valid for exposure times of up to 720 hours.

The effects of intermittent noise exposure have been reviewed by Ward (1963, 1966) and Cohen and Jackson (1969), and others have compared the effects of continuous and intermittent exposures. In general, intermittent exposures produce less TTS than continuous exposures.

Test Frequency. TTS involves areas, not points, on the basilar membrane (Ward, 1963). Thus, virtually any type of tone or noise exposure affects auditory thresholds at a range of test frequencies. For SPL above 60 dB, maximum TTS occurs at a frequency on the order of one-half to one octave above the stimulating frequency for pure tones and bands of noise. The relative TTS occurring at various frequencies with a broad-band ("white") noise exposure is shown in figure 15-10.

Preexposure Hearing Level. The foregoing discussion has been based almost entirely on ears with normal sensitivity. Impaired ears may demonstrate different results. Ears with conductive hearing losses, for
example, would be expected to show less TTS because less energy is transmitted to the cochlea. Ears with pure sense organ losses should also show less TTS than normals, but this is due to their having less remaining sensitivity to lose.

![Graph showing TTS at 4 kHz from exposure to 2–4 kHz octave band noise. Parameter is noise level in SPL. (Shoji et al., 1966)](image)

**Figure 15–9. TTS at 4 kHz from exposure to 2–4 kHz octave band noise. Parameter is noise level in SPL. (Shoji et al., 1966)**

Sex and Age. No systematic difference in TTS as a function of sex and age have been reported (Ward et al., 1959b; Loeb & Fletcher, 1963), nor have any systematic trends in TTS growth been reported solely as a function of age. For a discussion of the PTS which normally accompanies the aging process (presbycusis), see chapter 14.

**Monaural vs. Binaural Exposure.** Ward (1965) showed that monaural exposures were accompanied in general by about 5 dB more TTS than binaural exposure to the same condition.

**Recovery of TTS.** When TTS₂ does not exceed about 40 dB, and is induced by relatively short exposures to continuous blocks of steady-state noise, TTS recovers linearly in log time and occurs within a maximum of 16 to 48 hours (Ward, 1963; Smith & Loeb, 1969). Under these conditions recovery rate is also independent of test frequency. The slope of the recovery function may, however, vary as a function of the amount of TTS₂. Representative recovery functions are shown in figure 15-11.
Figure 15-10. Distribution of TTS resulting from 5-min exposure to broad-band noise. Parameter is amplitude in sensation level. (Nakamura, 1964)

Figure 15-11. Course of recovery at 4 and 6 kHz following 3 different exposures to 1.2 – 2.4 kHz octave band noise. (Ward et al., 1959a)
Since subsequent recovery is usually quite predictable once the value of TT$S_2$ is known, generalized recovery functions can be developed for TT$S_{H40}$ dB. Such functions permit TTS measured at various times after exposure to be converted backward or forward to TT$S_2$ for purposes of direct comparison. Kryter (1963) published such a graph for converting TT$S_1$ to TT$S_2$ as shown in figure 15-12.

![Graph for conversion of TTS to TT$S_2$ with TTS as the parameter](image-url)

**Figure 15-12.** Graph for conversion of TTS to TT$S_2$ with TTS as the parameter. Example: for TTS of 25 dB measured 500 sec after exposure, add 10 dB to arrive at TT$S_2 = 35$ dB. Graph is based on exposure of subjects to continuous periods of steady-state noise, and is probably invalid for application to TTS induced by other types of exposures. (Kryter, 1963)

When TTS is induced by exposures to steady noise longer than 8 hours, or by intermittent noise, these generalized recovery functions are probably invalid. Ward (1970) found that intermittent noise caused a significant increase in recovery time, for equal TTS, and Yukanov et al. (1967) and Mills et al. (1970) reported similar findings for exposures of 12 to 720 hours.

As TT$S_2$ exceeds about 40 dB a change in the recovery function may be noted. Recovery from high values of TTS is linear in time, rather than linear in log time, as illustrated in figure 15-13.

**Impulse Noise**

An impulse may be defined as an aperiodic pressure phenomenon of less than 1000 msec duration, having a fast rise time and a peak-to-RMS ratio greater than 10 dB. Such a definition leaves much to be desired, including a 'gray' area of pressure phenomena which may be considered either as long impulses or short, steady sounds. Impulses are, however, characteristic of many working
environments, and common examples include the sound of gunfire, impact and power-operated tools, drop forges, pile drivers, etc.

Figure 15-13. (a) Average course of recovery at 3 and 4 kHz following exposure to 105 dB SPL 1.2–2.4 kHz noise whose duration was sufficient to produce 50 dB TTS2. Time is represented logarithmically. (b) Data replotted in terms of time, rather than log time (abscissa). (Ward, 1960)
The literature on impulse noise effects has been reviewed by Ward (1963), Chaillet et al. (1964), Coles et al. (1967, 1968), and Rice (1968). Some of the more important findings are summarized below. As was the case with steady noise, the interaction of variables is an extremely important consideration.

Acquisition of TTS...

Peak Pressure Level. The higher the peak pressure level, the greater is the risk of TTS, other parameters being equal. This relation is illustrated in figure 15-14 by data from the classic studies of Murray and Reid (1946), and in figure 15-15 by data from Ward et al. (1961). The peak pressure level where TTS is first produced depends in part on other parameters such as impulse duration or the number of impulses presented, as well as on individual susceptibility.

![Figure 15-14. TTS as a function of peak pressure level for ears exposed to 10 impulses produced by various weapons. Notation “105 H” on abscissa indicates peak pressure level found in crew area of a current Army howitzer. Graph underscores need for protection of personnel exposed to high noise levels. (Murray & Reid, 1946)]](image)

Impulse Duration. Fletcher and Loeb (1967) have shown that, for a peak level of 166 dB, 10 to 25 impulses of 92 \( \mu \text{sec} \) duration had about the same effect as 75 to 100 impulses of 36 \( \mu \text{sec} \) duration. Similar results were later obtained by the same investigators (1968). Acton et al. (1966) showed that 0.22 caliber rifles fired in the open (short duration) did not constitute a hazard to hearing, whereas the same rifles fired in an indoor reverberant range (long duration) did constitute a borderline hazard. The relation between impulse
duration and risk of TTS is best described by reference to the CHABA damage-risk criterion for impulse-noise exposure (discussed later).

Rise Time. Many impulses have rise times less than 1 μsec since a shock wave is a major component of the event. To date, however, no serious attempt has been made to relate impulse rise time to the risk of TTS, and this variable is not treated systematically in damage-risk criteria.

Spectrum. Recently it has become possible to perform spectral analyses of impulses with a computer (Pease, 1967). There are, however, few data relating the spectrum of impulses to risk of TTS, and considerably more investigation will be required before such information will be of any real benefit.

Number of Impulses. TTS appears to grow linearly with the number of impulses, or linearly in time for a constant rate of presentation, as illustrated in figure 15-16.

Rate of Impulse Presentation. TTS growth rate from impulses does not differ significantly when the inter-pulse interval is between one and 9 seconds. At less than one second between pulses, TTS growth rate is reduced because of the protective action of the aural reflex. Also, when as much as 30 seconds elapses between successive impulses, TTS grows more
slowly because of the recovery which takes place between impulses (Ward, 1962; Ward et al., 1961).

![Diagram of TTS growth over exposure time and number of pulses](image)

**Figure 15-16.** Average growth of TTS from pulses as a function of exposure time (lower abscissa), or of number of pulses (upper abscissa) when pulses are presented at a constant rate. TTS from impulses increases linearly with time or with number of pulses. (Ward et al., 1961)

Ear Orientation. When the impulse noise includes a shock wave, the orientation of the external ear with respect to the shock front is of considerable importance. Hodge et al. (1964) showed that when the ear is at normal incidence to the shock wave, the TTS produced is approximately equivalent to that produced by an impulse having 5 dB greater amplitude but arriving at grazing incidence. Golden and Clare (1965) reported a similar difference. Hodge and McCommons (1967b) have also shown that when the shockwave strikes one ear at normal incidence, the other ear, which is shadowed (protected) by the head, evidences considerably less TTS. This explains why it is usually found that right-handed rifle shooters demonstrate more TTS in the left, than right, ear: the right ear is at least partially protected by the head’s shadow.

Test Frequency. TTS from impulse-noise exposure occurs at a wide range of frequencies, with the maximum TTS usually occurring in the region of 4 to 6 kHz. This effect is illustrated in figure 15-17. Note that whereas mean and median TTS was between 0 and +10 dB at all frequencies, the range of
effect was from -25 dB (sensitization) at 3 kHz to +55 dB (loss) at 4 kHz. Also note that this exposure produced TTS at frequencies up to 18 kHz. Loeb and Fletcher (1968) believe that high-frequency TTS is a precursor of speech range TTS, and they suggest that when speech range TTS exceeds the CHABA (1968) allowable limits there is a chance of producing permanent high-frequency hearing loss.

![Figure 15-17. Distributions of TTS following exposure to 25 gunfire impulses.](Hodge & McCommons, 1966)

**Monaural vs. Binaural Exposure.** Hodge and McCommons (1967a) found that, on the average, TTS growth rates for binaural and monaural exposure did not differ significantly when the interpulse interval was 2 seconds. There were large individual differences among the subjects, but no consistent trend favoring either type of exposure.

**Recovery of TTS.** A growing body of data indicates that recovery from TTS induced by various types of intermittent noise differs radically from that caused by steady noise exposure. Rice and Coles (1965) observed instances of individual subjects with TTS ≈25 dB who showed little or no recovery for periods of up to one hour after exposure, but thereafter recovery became approximately linear in log time. Luz and Hodge (1971) have found four types of recovery curves for impulse-noise-induced TTS in humans and monkeys: (1) recovery linear in log time; (2) no apparent recovery for periods of up to one hour, followed by linear in log time recovery; (3) slight recovery followed by an increase in TTS; and (4) slight recovery followed by a long plateau of no change, and then further recovery. These diverse functions occur to TTS ≈30 dB in humans, and suggest...
that considerable further research will be required to derive averaged, generalized recovery functions for impulse noise induced TTS.

For TTS $40 \text{ dB}$ recovery may be very slow; Fletcher and Cairns (1967) suggest that 6 months of recovery may be necessary to accurately assess residual PTS from excessive exposure to gunfire noise.

**Blast**

Blast differs little from impulse noise so far as the hearing mechanism is concerned. The term “blast” is typically used to refer to much higher pressures and/or longer durations than are usually associated with common impulse-noise sources. However, so far as the development of TTS is concerned, the preceding discussion of impulse-noise parameters is equally applicable to the parameters of blast.

Single, large-amplitude blast waves may rupture the eardrum. The threshold for eardrum rupture is about 5 psi; at 15 psi 50 percent of eardrums will probably be ruptured (Hirsch, 1966). When the eardrum is ruptured loss of hearing is severe in the affected ear, although after healing (2 to 6 weeks), the ear’s sensitivity may return to normal, particularly if the middle ear ossicles are intact (Hamberger & Lidén, 1951; Akiyoshi et al., 1966). Rupture of the eardrum thus serves as a “safety valve.” If the eardrum is not ruptured by the blast, profound PTS may result from a single exposure, particularly at the higher frequencies of hearing (Ward & Glorig, 1961; Singh & Ahluwalia, 1968).

**Long-Term Exposure to Spacecraft Noise**

Short-term exposure to the high level, low frequency noise of spacecraft launch will not likely adversely affect astronauts, especially when earmuffs, helmets, and other protective gear are worn (Mohr et al., 1965). On the other hand, the relatively lower level steady background noise to which they will be exposed could adversely affect astronauts’ hearing. Such background noise is produced by the life support system and other items of onboard equipment, such as glycol pumps, cabin fans, suit compressors, guidance and navigation systems, and inverters.

Yuganov et al. (1967) reported an extensive series of studies of the effects of spacecraft background noise on hearing. Their studies were conducted in a simulated spacecraft environment (complete with confinement and hypoactivity) during ground static testing. Figure 15-18 illustrates the growth of TTS resulting from successively longer exposures to 75 dB levels. Yuganov et al. reported that recovery time for noise-induced TTS became progressively longer with increased exposure time. This phenomenon has been verified by NASA-sponsored studies conducted under the Gemini program, and was also reported by Mills et al. (1970).

*Although it is not clearly stated in their report, it is assumed from the description of procedure and instrumentation that the noise levels stated refer to dBA.*
In followup studies with 60 to 65 dB noise levels, Yuganov et al. found no evidence of TTS (or behavioral or physiological alterations) in astronauts exposed up to 60 days (1440 hours). Thus these authors concluded, and recommended, that for extended space flights of up to 60 days the background noise levels inside spacecraft should not exceed 65 dB. The 65 dB overall background noise limit recommendation compares favorably with the design criterion for background noise for Apollo spacecraft, indicated by Dr. B. O. French of the Manned Spacecraft Center (personal communication) to be NC-55, or approximately 60 dBA.

Effects of Hearing Loss on Performance

Some persons are likely to suffer TTS or PTS from noise exposure in spite of the application of safety criteria or the use of protective equipment. Other persons may have PTS from disease or trauma. Accordingly, in this section the effects of TTS and PTS on performance will be briefly considered.

Detection of Low-Level Sounds

Earlier, it was noted that an ear's threshold sensitivity (hearing level) is stated with reference to audiometric zero, such as the ANSI-1951 or ISO-1964 values. Audiometric zero at various test frequencies represents the lowest SPL.
which can be detected, on the average, by listeners having "normal" hearing. Table 15-4 shows the SPL representing ISO-1964 audiometric zero at selected frequencies and the "allowable TTS" permitted by the CHABA (1965, 1968) damage-risk criteria for steady and impulse noise. The column at the far right shows the minimum SPL detectable, on the average, by a listener whose baseline hearing sensitivity equals ISO audiometric zero and who has CHABA-limit TTS at the various frequencies. These values are also descriptive of the detection limits for a listener who has PTS of the amounts shown in column 3.

Table 15-4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency (Hz)</th>
<th>SPL for ISO Zero (dB re 20 μN/m²)</th>
<th>CHABA Allowable TTS (dB)</th>
<th>Minimum Detectable SPL (dB re 20 μN/m²)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6000</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>29.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This interpretation assumes that the listener's preexposure hearing sensitivity was equal to ISO audiometric zero.

Given a knowledge of the spectral characteristics of a low-level sound which must be detected, and the lowest SPL at various test frequencies which a particular listener can detect, predictions can be made of the listener's ability to detect the low-level sound. A convenient example from a military context, well-known to the authors, may be cited. It has been shown that sounds created by people walking over various types of terrain contain energy primarily in the 3 to 8 kHz range. Knowing this, it would be hypothesized that persons having TTS or PTS in this range of frequencies would be less able to detect such sounds than persons with normal hearing sensitivity. This hypothesis has been confirmed by experimental test, and these results suggest that, for example, military personnel receiving TTS from daytime exposure to weapon noise should not be assigned nighttime duty as perimeter sentry where the preservation of a life, or many lives, may depend on maximum hearing sensitivity, unimpaired by slowly-recovering TTS. These results further suggest that in any detection situation the listeners selected should have the most sensitive hearing possible, free of TTS or PTS.
Reception of Speech

The spectral characteristics of speech must be considered in assessing the effects of TTS or PTS on speech reception. Speech sounds range in frequency from 0.2 to 7 kHz; peak energy occurs at about 0.5 kHz. Speech sounds are of two basic types: vowels and consonants. Vowel sounds fall roughly into the frequencies below 1.5 kHz, and consonants are above 1.5 kHz (Sataloff, 1966). Vowels are thus more powerful (i.e., contain more energy) than consonants. Vowel sounds indicate that someone is saying something, but consonants aid in discriminating what is being said. Thus, consonants may be said to convey more information than vowels.

A person with TTS or PTS in the range of 0.2 to 1.5 kHz has difficulty hearing speech unless it is quite loud, and is unable to hear soft voices. If the talker raises his voice level the listener will be able to understand what is being said.

The person with TTS or PTS in the range of 1.5 to 7 kHz, on the other hand, hears vowels normally but finds it difficult to discriminate consonants. Increasing the speech level aids little, but careful enunciation by the talker is of great benefit. This type of TTS or PTS is a particularly severe problem in occupational deafness since the loss of hearing sensitivity frequently occurs first in the 3 to 6 kHz range. The problem is compounded by the presence of background masking noise, since the low-level consonant sounds are masked to a greater extent by broad-band noise than the higher-level vowel sounds. This fact has led some hearing conservation groups to develop criteria for protecting hearing at frequencies up to 4 kHz (e.g., Piesse et al., 1962). In the United States, however, this has not been done: only frequencies of 0.5 to 2 kHz are considered in assessing occupational hearing impairment (Bonney, 1966).

Table 15-5 shows classes of hearing handicap which are defined by the average of PTS at 0.5, 1, and 2 kHz, as recommended by the Committee on Conservation of Hearing (1969). In general it may be said that TTS of the same amount will constitute an equivalent degree of impairment, although of course the impairment disappears when the individual has recovered from the TTS.

Subjective and Behavioral Responses to Noise Exposure

An earlier section considered the effects of noise demonstrated after exposure and indicative of a decrease in the responsiveness or neural activity in the auditory receptors. In this section, by contrast, noise effects which occur currently with exposure and result in increased neural activity will be considered. These responses will be discussed in terms of (1) general observations, (2) masking of auditory signals, (3) masking of speech, and (4) annoyance. Methods for measuring speech intelligibility and assessing the effect of noise on speech intelligibility will be presented. The treatment of annoyance will introduce the notion of "community response" to noise exposure.
Table 15–5
Chart for Determining Class of Hearing Impairment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Degree of Handicap</th>
<th>Average Hearing Level (dB re ISO 1964) at 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz in Better Ear*</th>
<th>Ability to Understand Ordinary Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At Least</td>
<td>Less Than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Not significant</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Slight</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Marked</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Extreme</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*If average of poorer ear is 25 dB or more greater than that for better ear, add 5 dB to average for better ear.

(Committee on Conservation of Hearing, 1969, p. 43)
General Observations

Broadbent and Burns (1965) and Cohen (1969) have reviewed the effects of noise on behavior and psychological state. In some respects the existing literature does not yet support firm conclusions, but representative subjective and behavioral responses are summarized in table 15-6.

Masking of Auditory Signals

The amount of masking is the number of decibels that the quiet threshold of a signal must be raised to be intelligible because of the presence of masking sound. Masking effects may be classed as monaural or interaural. Monaural masking occurs when the signal and noise reach the ear(s) at the same time; this type of masking is most critical in working environments where personnel are not wearing earphones, and will be discussed below. (Interaural masking occurs when the signal reaches one ear and noise the other ear. No interaural masking occurs unless the noise exceeds about 40 to 50 dB SPL, since below this level the listener can readily distinguish between the sounds heard separately in his two ears. At higher levels the noise is transmitted to the "signal" ear via bone conduction; thus this situation may be regarded as a special case of monaural masking with the head serving as an attenuator. Interaural masking is a particular problem when the telephone is used in a noisy environment, and when the SPL in one ear is much higher than in the other.)

The monaural masking effect of a pure tone, or of a noise having a strong pure tone component, is greatest near the frequency of the tone but also extends to frequencies adjacent to the masking tone. Curves of masking effects as a function of frequency are shown in figure 15-19. Audible beats near the frequency of the masking tone increase the audibility of the signal and thus reduce the degree of masking at these frequencies. For tones of low intensity masking is confined to a region near the masking tone; for higher intensities the masking is extended, particularly at frequencies above the masking tone. The masking effect of narrow-band noise is quite similar to that for pure tones, except that the dips due to audible beats are absent. Masking of signals by wide-band noise whose level does not exceed about 60 to 70 dB SPL is governed by the critical band concept. At low noise levels pure tones are masked by only a narrow range of frequencies whose width defines the critical band for that signal frequency. The width of the critical band varies from about 40 to 200 Hz, over the tonal range of 0.5 to 8 kHz. Within this range, and for low noise levels, an increase of 10 dB in noise level results in about 10 dB additional masking of tones within the critical band. Above masking levels of about 70 dB SPL, however the width of the critical band increases markedly in both directions. A 10 dB increase in noise level will still cause about 10 dB more masking of frequencies within the noise band, but it may also increase the masking effect at more distant frequencies by as much as 20 dB.
Table 15–6
Representative Subjective and Behavioral Responses to Noise Exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPL (dB)</th>
<th>Spectrum</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Reported Disturbances</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150*</td>
<td>1 – 100 Hz</td>
<td>2 min</td>
<td>Reduced visual acuity; chest wall vibrations; gag sensations; respiratory rhythm changes</td>
<td>Mohr et al., 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Broadband</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced ability to balance on a thin rail</td>
<td>Nixon et al., 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Machinery noise</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chronic fatigue</td>
<td>Cohen, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Aircraft engine noise</td>
<td>8 hr</td>
<td>Reduced visual acuity, stereoscopic acuity, near-point accommodation</td>
<td>Panian, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Broadband</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>Vigilance decrement; altered thought processes; interference with mental work</td>
<td>Broadbent &amp; Burns, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>1/3-octave @ 16 kHz</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>Fatigue, nausea, headache</td>
<td>Acton, 1968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Background noise in spacecraft</td>
<td>10 – 30 days</td>
<td>Degraded astronauts' performance</td>
<td>Yuganov et al., 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>SIL</td>
<td>80 sec/hr</td>
<td>Annoyance reactions in 50% of community residents</td>
<td>Borsky, 1958</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In this study subjects wore protective devices to prevent hearing loss.
Figure 15-19. Masking as a function of frequency for masking by pure tones of various frequencies and levels. Number at top of each graph is frequency of masking tone. Number on each curve is level above threshold of masking tone. (Wegel & Lane, 1924)

Masking of Speech by Noise

Most of the energy required for near-perfect speech intelligibility is contained in the range of 0.2 to 7 kHz. This range may be narrowed to 0.3 to 4.5 kHz without significant loss in intelligibility. (In reducing the frequency range it must be remembered that 1.5 kHz constitutes the “center of importance” of speech, and narrowed pass bands of a communications system should be centered on about 1.5 kHz.) Consonants contain energy at frequencies above 1.5 kHz, whereas vowels contain lower-frequency energy. Unfortunately, the consonants, which convey most of the information in English speech, contain very little energy. Thus, they are more subject to interference (masking) from noise than are vowels. Conversely, vowels contain more energy but transmit less information.

Communication System Design. It is desirable to maintain as high a speech signal-to-noise ratio as possible in each frequency band, with particular emphasis on those bands which contribute most to intelligibility. Another consideration is the point of overload of the hearing mechanism: the level above which intelligence is no longer extracted from the stimulus. The overload effect can be demonstrated quite readily in a noisy environment when a voice comes over a loudspeaker at a very high level. A listener will find the amplified speech more intelligible when his ears are plugged than when listening without earplugs. This effect occurs because with the ears plugged the speech signal does not overload the hearing mechanism and, at the same time, the signal-to-noise ratio remains constant. Overloading of the ear due to speech amplitude begins to occur when the overall RMS level of the speech signal is about 100 dB at the listener’s ear. (The average overall RMS level of speech in a quiet environment may be
Factors in Speech Intelligibility. Two types of communications must be considered in discussing speech intelligibility: electrically-aided, and direct. The effectiveness of both types of voice communication are determined by the following parameters: (1) level and spectrum of ambient noise at the ear (includes both acoustical noise, and electronically-induced noise); (2) voice level and spectrum of speech; (3) distance between the speech source and the listener's ear; and (4) the complexity and number of alternative messages available to the listener. Electrically-aided speech more specifically also depends upon the characteristics of all of the components of the transmission and receiving systems.

Recommended Approaches to Measurement of Speech Intelligibility. Speech intelligibility is measured by determining the percentage of words correctly received by listeners. This may be done by conducting subjective tests with talkers and listeners, or by calculations based on the signal-to-noise ratio in various frequency bands. The choice of approach will be determined by the amount of time, personnel and/or instrumentation available.

PB Word Intelligibility Test. In the bioastronautics field one usually attempts to discriminate among, or evaluate, highly effective communications systems. This requires a sensitive test of speech intelligibility—one that is capable of detecting small differences between systems. Therefore, the use of the "Phonetically Balanced (PB) Monosyllabic Word Intelligibility Test" (ANSI Standard S3.2-1960) is recommended for applications requiring maximum accuracy.

Some aspects of the test procedure are as follows. The test material consists of 20 lists of 50 phonetically-balanced words each. Each list is of approximately the same difficulty. The talker reads the words in a "carrier sentence" at 4-second intervals and the listener writes down each key word. The hearing level of both talkers and listeners must average no more than 10 dB overall, with no more than 15 dB at any of the frequencies 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, and 4 kHz (re ANSI Standard Z24.5-1951). Talkers must have no obvious speech defects or strong regional or national accents. Test personnel must be completely familiar with each of the 1000 words and with the speech characteristics of the talkers. The test must always be given in its entirety (i.e., all 1000 words must be used), and if the test is to be repeated several times with the same personnel, it is recommended that the order of words within lists be randomized for each presentation. Normally, 8 to 10 hours of talker and listener training are required to properly utilize the PB intelligibility test.

PB intelligibility score may be acceptable in certain instances with values as low as 50 percent (of words correctly received). Only rarely is an intelligibility score of 90 percent required. Single digits may be transmitted with greater than 99 percent reliability with a system providing a PB score of 60 to 70 percent,
since the listener has only 10 alternatives from which to choose. The criterion of acceptability for communication systems should be a *mandatory score of 70 percent* and a *desirable score of 80 percent* when the ANSI PB method is followed.

**Modified Rhyme Test.** If testing time is limited, or time is not available to thoroughly train subjects for the PB method, the second recommended choice is the Modified Rhyme Test (MRT) described by House et al. (1963). The test material consists of 300 words which are printed on an answer sheet in 50 groups of six words each. The talker reads one of the six words in the first group and each listener selects one word from the closed set of six alternatives. Unlike the PB test, little account is taken of word familiarity or of the relative frequency of occurrence of sounds in the language. This test has the advantage of requiring little or no training, and does not require a written response as is the case with PB tests. A chart for converting MRT scores to PB test scores is shown in figure 15-20.

![Figure 15-20. Relationship between MRT test scores and PB test scores. (Based on unpublished data from K. D. Kryter, 1964)](chart.png)

**Articulation Index Calculation.** Intelligibility of speech in noise may also be calculated from measures of the speech and noise levels through use of the Articulation Index (AI) (Kryter, 1962). AI can be calculated from octave-band measurements using the worksheets shown in figure 15-21 and table 15-7, provided the noise does not have any severe pure tone components and is steady in character without an extremely sloping spectrum. (Additional worksheets are available in the source document if the situation requires the use of 1/3-octave band measurements.)
Figure 15-21. Worksheet for calculating Articulation Index by the octave band method using ANSI preferred frequencies. (Kryter, 1962)

Table 15-7
Worksheet for Calculating Articulation Index by the Octave Band Method
(Preferred Octave Bands)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Col 1</th>
<th>Col 2</th>
<th>Col 3</th>
<th>Col 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Octave Band</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Speech Peak-to-Noise Difference in dB</td>
<td>Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. 180-355 Hz</td>
<td>250 Hz</td>
<td>0.0018</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 355-710</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.0050</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 710-1400</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.0075</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 1400-2800</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0.0107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 2800-5600</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0.0083</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( AI = \)
The octave band method of calculating AI is as follows: (1) Plot the measured octave band SPL of the noise. (2) Adjust the idealized speech spectrum shown on the worksheet to reflect its actual level. (3) Measure the difference between the speech and noise in each band, and assign a value between zero and 30 dB. (4) Multiply this assigned value in each band by the appropriate weighting factor (this accounts for the difference in the importance among the several bands) and add the resultant numbers. This number, which is between zero and one, is the AI which may then be converted to PB intelligibility score through the use of figure 15-22.

![Figure 15-22. Relation between Articulation Index and various measures of speech intelligibility. (Kryter, 1970b)](image)

The AI method of calculating speech intelligibility may be used for either direct or electrically-aided communication, provided only that the speech signal and noise levels at the ear are known.

**Annoyance: Community Response to Noise Exposure**

The term annoyance refers to the perceived noisiness, unwantedness, objectionableness, or unacceptableness of noise. Communities of noise-exposed residents may be annoyed and may respond collectively, or as individuals, in attempts to rid themselves of the intruding noises. Individual differences among group members make it very difficult to predict individual responses; however, group response prediction has achieved a high degree of sophistication and reliability.
Quantification and prediction of community response to noise exposure involves identification and/or measurement of many variables, including level, spectrum, duration, time of day, frequency of occurrence, type of residential neighborhood and amount of previous noise exposure. Integrating these data, with appropriate weighting, into a predictive scheme results in a single "composite" rating of the annoyance reaction to be expected. Such reactions range from no response, through occasional complaints by individuals, to concerted legal action by groups.

Two general approaches to the prediction of annoyance reactions enjoy wide acceptance. The first approach, typified by the Composite Noise Rating of Rosenblith and Stevens (1953), results in a qualitative prediction of community response without attaching to it a precise numerical value. Botsford (1969) has simplified this approach, as illustrated in figure 15-23, by reducing the measurement of level and spectrum to A- and C-weighted sound levels. This figure can thus be used to predict community responses to noise levels up to 95 dBA and 110 dBC.

The second approach involves computation of a numerical index of perceived noisiness which is then used to predict community response. Kryter's (1968) Effective Perceived Noise Level (EPNL) expressed in EPNdB, has found particular application in the evaluation of community response to aircraft noise [although, as Kryter (1970) indicates, the method is applicable to all types of community noise exposure]. The general relationship between EPNL and annoyance reactions is illustrated in figure 15-24.

It is not practical to recommend a single, optimum procedure for calculating EPNL since many new developments are rapidly taking place. The various existing procedures differ primarily in terms of the weighting to be assigned to the highest SPL during an occurrence of a noise, and the length of the integration time used in calculating perceived noise level. Sperry (1968) presents the calculation procedure used for Federal Aviation Agency certification of new commercial aircraft. Kryter (1968) reviews a variety of computation procedures, and (Kryter, 1970) describes his latest recommendations for EPNL calculation, including a discussion of its application to sonic boom problems. Department of Defense (1964) reports related procedures helpful in land use planning. Cole and von Gierke (1957) discuss community response to noise from missile static testing and launch operations.

Physiological (Nonauditory) Responses to Noise Exposure

Low Level Stimulation

It is now well established that noise exposure can affect human physiological processes and that measurable effects are obtained with noise exposure conditions involving little or no risk of TTS. The main concern of researchers is whether these effects of noise, which in some instances appear to be correlated with pathological effects and/or behavioral alterations, may represent a real hazard to the health and well-being of exposed persons.
Jansen (1969) dichotomizes physiological responses to noise into stress reactions and vegetative reactions. Stress reactions to unfamiliar stimuli, in general, show adaptation with repeated exposure as the stimuli become familiar and gain meaning to man, and hence are of less concern in the present context. It is the vegetative reactions to meaningless noise stimulation which is of primary concern here. Meaningless noise refers, for example, to the background noise found in industry, in the community and in the home. Adaptation to such noises has not been reported in many instances, and continued exposure may involve some risk of eventual interference with the health and well-being of workers.

---

**Figure 15-23.** Annoyance of neighborhood sound levels. To use graph, locate in curved grid at bottom, point corresponding to sound levels of neighborhood noise under consideration and project directly above it into first of the 6 correction sections bounded by horizontal lines. Follow correction lane entered until reaching position opposite condition listed at left which applies to noise under consideration, and then proceed vertically, disregarding lanes, until next section is reached. Work upward through lanes of correction sections until reaching response to be expected at the top, e.g., if truck movements at a new loading station are to be cued by a whistle that will produce 65 dBA and 70 dBC at the nearest homes 10 to 15 times/day, then few complaints would be expected according to the line traced through the chart above. (Botsford, 1969)
Figure 15–24. General reactions of people and communities to environmental noise. (Kryter, 1970)

Representative observations from studies cited by Anticaglia and Cohen (1969) and Jansen (1969) are summarized below:

- Noise exposure causes increases in the concentration of corticosteroids in the blood and brain and affects the size of the adrenal cortex. Continued exposure is also correlated with changes in the liver and kidneys and with the production of gastrointestinal ulcers.

- Electrolytic imbalances (magnesium, potassium, sodium and calcium) and changes in blood glucose level are associated with noise exposure.

- The possibility of effects on sex-hormone secretion and thyroid activity is indicated.

- Vasoconstriction, fluctuations in blood pressure, and cardiac muscle changes have been reported. Vasoconstriction in the extremities, with concomitant changes in blood pressure, have been found for noises of 70 dB SPL, and these effects become progressively worsened with higher levels of exposure.

- Abnormal heart rhythms have been associated with occupational noise exposure and this and other evidence supports the tentative conclusion that noise may cause cardiovascular disorders.

- Panian (1963) states that in Russia the cardiovascular symptoms outlined above are collectively referred to as "noise sickness."

- Yegunov et al. (1967) found that 10 to 30 days of exposure to noise levels of 75 dB produced electroencephalographic and cardiovascular alterations in astronauts similar to those described above. Reduction of the noise level to 65 dB resulted in no such observations at all for exposures of up to 60 days.

- With respect to impulse-noise exposure, Yegunov et al. (1966) reported that repeated exposure to simulated sonic booms having peak levels up to 9 kg/m² (133 dB re 20 μN/m²) caused alterations in electrocardiogram and
electroencephalogram traces as well as moderate bleeding in tympanic membrane epithelium, and they said that subjects reported headache, tinnitus and “fullness” in their ears.

Risk of Injury or Death from Steady Noise

Studies of very intense steady acoustic stimulation have been carried out primarily with animals, and few data are available for human exposures. Three relevant observations follow:

- One instance of a ruptured human eardrum has been reported for exposure to 159 dB SPL at 6.5 kHz for 5 minutes (Davis et al., 1949).
- Mohr et al. (1965) reported no risk of bodily injury to astronauts from the intense, low-frequency noise simulating a space rocket launch, but a number of questions remain unanswered in this regard. Exposure to tones in the 1 to 100 Hz range should not exceed 2 minutes or 150 dB SPL, as these values appear to be close to the limits of human tolerance.
- Parrack (1966) calculated that for a 2 kHz whole-body exposure (probably not attainable in a practical situation) human lethality from overheating would require from 5 minutes at 167 dB SPL to 40 minutes at 161 dB. At 6 to 20 kHz the exposures required for lethality range from 5 minutes at 187 dB to 40 minutes at 181 dB SPL. Parrack’s paper further indicates that ultrasonics pose no special hazard to man’s life until the SPL exceeds 180 dB.

Blast and Impulse Noise Effects

The effects of high-intensity blast waves on man are classed as primary, secondary and tertiary: primary effects are those resulting from the impact of blast waves on tissues; secondary effects are caused by flying debris set in motion by the blast; tertiary effects result from propulsion of the body. Only the primary effects of blast will be briefly summarized here.

The following extrapolations of animal data to human exposures are valid only for exposure to single, fast-rising blast waves involving classical or near-classical waveforms:

- Risk of injury or death increases with increased pressure and/or duration, and with the presence of nearby reflecting surfaces.
- Risk of injury is lessened with increased rise time, and higher-than-normal ambient pressures.
- Gas-containing organs (ears, lungs, intestines) are very susceptible to blast injury.
- The eardrum is most susceptible: its threshold for rupture is about 5 psi.
- The lungs are most critical with regard to possible lethality: the threshold for lung damage (minor hemorrhage) is about 10 psi.
• Animals exposed to blast show evidence of central nervous system (concussive) damage—ataxia, paralysis, convulsions, dazed appearance, and lethargy—and often do not respond to noxious stimuli.

• Figure 15-25 shows 99 percent survival limits and lung damage thresholds as a function of peak overpressure and blast duration.

![Graph of blast exposure limits as a function of peak overpressure and duration.](image)

Figure 15–25. Blast exposure limits as a function of peak overpressure and duration. (A: 99% survival limits; B: threshold for lung damage; 1: long axis of body parallel to blast wave; 2: long axis of body perpendicular to blast wave; 3: thorax near a reflecting surface which is perpendicular to blast wave.) All curves relate to subjects facing any direction. (Bowen et al., 1968)

Few studies have been made of the effect of repeated, high-amplitude blast waves and impulse-noise waves. De Candole (1967) states that repeated blast exposure is responsible for the syndrome known as "battle fatigue." Anecdotal reports indicate that large caliber weapon instructors exposed to 50 impulses per day at about 10 psi complain of chest pains, nausea, and sleeplessness. Jacobson
et al. (1962) felt that it was necessary for subjects exposed to repeated impulses from a howitzer to wear a foam rubber "chest protector" at levels of 6 psi and higher. Tanenholtz (1968) recommends that artillery crewmen not be exposed to repeated blast at pressures above 7 psi, even when utilizing protection.

Design Criteria

Design Goals

It seems unlikely that noise and blast will ever be completely eliminated from man's environment. Therefore, steps must be taken to insure that the noise which reaches man's receptors is tolerable. The term "tolerable" may be interpreted in several ways. (1) It refers to the prevention of excessive hearing loss and unpleasant subjective sensations; criteria for this purpose are discussed below. (2) Prevention of injury from blast is also considered. (3) Further, tolerable noise exposure refers to limiting background noise levels to the extent required to minimize masking of speech communications, and (4) to providing noise levels in work areas that do not interfere with the performance of duties. (5) Also, community noise levels must be limited to prevent annoyance, complaints or threats of legal action.

Finally, one method of achieving tolerable noise levels at a person's ear is by the use of hearing protectors. Various protective devices and techniques are presented at the end of this section.

Noise Exposure Limits

Documents developed to aid in specifying noise exposure limits are variously referred to as damage-risk criteria (DRC), damage risk contours, and hearing conservation criteria. The first two names point to a consideration which must not be ignored. "Damage risk" implies just that: there is always the risk of some TTS or PTS in a portion of the noise-exposed population. Because of the wide range of susceptibility to hearing loss (discussed earlier), it is neither philosophically realistic nor economically feasible to enforce DRC which will protect everyone (Cohen, 1963). Always, there is a risk that someone will lose a portion of his hearing sensitivity either temporarily or permanently. Thus, it is incumbent upon the user of any DRC to insure that he understands the risks involved.

It should be noted that the noise limits imposed by DRC refer to the noise which actually enters the ear canal. If the environmental noise exceeds the allowable limits, several means are available for reducing the levels to or below acceptable limits.

Steady-State and Intermittent Noise DRC.

CHABA DRC. The CHABA Damage Risk Criteria (DRC) (1965) was developed through the efforts of Working Group 46 of the NAS-NRC Committee on Hearing, Bioacoustics and Biomechanics. The acceptable limits
for end-of-day TTS2 are: 10 dB at or below 1 kHz, 15 dB at 2 kHz, and 20 dB at or above 3 kHz, in 50 percent of exposed ears. These TTS limits are considered to be equal to the maximum acceptable amounts of PTS after about 10 years of near-daily exposure. The allowance of less TTS in the lower frequencies is designed to provide additional protection for the speech-range frequencies, and the 10-15-20 dB TTS limits are related to the borderline criteria for compensable hearing loss. It is not safe to attempt to extrapolate the criteria to prevent PTS at intermediate number of years, nor the protection of different amounts of hearing. For such individualized applications, special criteria should be developed.

The CHABA steady noise DRC is presented in the form of 11 graphs relating the trade-offs among (1) spectrum, (2) exposure time up to 8 hours and, (3) SPL. Figure 15-26 shows the exposure limits for octave (and narrower) bands of noise, and figure 15-27 gives the limits for exposure to pure tones.

The CHABA DRC’s 8-hour exposure limit makes it inapplicable as a design criterion for extended space flight, but it is applicable to the protection of ground-service crews and other personnel who typically work 8-hour shifts each day. (See below for design criteria for extended space flight.)

Those regulations, which apply to noise, under the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 include the limits on occupational noise.
exposure. Noise exposure limits are stated in terms of A-weighted sound levels, and Table 15-8 shows the permissible levels for exposures of 15 minutes to 8 hours per day. For octave band SPL data, a graph is provided for determining equivalent A-weighted sound levels, as shown in Figure 15-28.

![Graph of Noise Exposure Limits](image)

Figure 15-27. Damage risk contours for 1 exposure/day to pure tones. (CHABA, 1965)

### Table 15-8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration (hr)</th>
<th>Sound Level (dBA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When the exposure is intermittent at different levels the fraction \( C_1/T_1 + C_2/T_2 + \ldots + C_n/T_n \) should not exceed unity to meet the exposure limit.

\[ C_n = \text{total exposure time at the specified noise level.} \]

\[ T_n = \text{total exposure time permitted at the specified level.} \]
Noise Limits for Extended Space Flight. To obviate the possibility of TTS during extended space flights (up to 60 days) the background noise level inside spacecraft should not exceed 65 dB overall (Yuganov et al., 1967).

Ultrasonic Noise Limits. To prevent TTS and unpleasant subjective responses to ultrasonic noise, the SPL must not exceed 75 dB in 1/3-octave bands centered at 8 to 16 kHz or 110 dB at 20 to 31.5 kHz (Action, 1968).

Low-Frequency and Infrasonic Noise Limits. To prevent physiological injury from low-frequency and infrasonic noise (1 to 100 Hz) the limits shown in table 15-9 must not be exceeded. Even at these limits, experienced astronauts may report transient unpleasant sensations. Above these levels wearing of hearing protective devices is mandatory.

Table 15-9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency* (Hz)</th>
<th>SPL (dB)</th>
<th>Duration** (min/day)</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 - 7</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Use of ear plugs will reduce unpleasant sensations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 - 11</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 - 20</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Without protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 - 100</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 - 100</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>With ear plugs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Refers to pure tones or to octave bands with center frequencies as indicated.
**Refers to one exposure per day with at least 24 hr elapsing between successive exposures.
(Wilhold et al., 1970)
Impulse-Noise Limits. The most comprehensive DRC for impulse noise exposure is that published by CHABA (1968) and based on the formulations of Coles et al. (1967, 1968). This DRC assumes the same TTS limits as does the CHABA (1965) steady noise DRC. However, the impulse noise DRC is designed to protect 95 percent of ears exposed. The basic DRC (figure 15-29) assumes a daily exposure of 100 impulses distributed over a period of from 4 minutes to several hours and that the impulses reach the ear at normal incidence.

Two correction factors are included in the DRC. First, if the pulses reach the ear at grazing incidence (rather than normal) the curves can be shifted upward by 5 dB. Second, if the number of impulses in a daily exposure is some value other than 100 (i.e., 1 to 1000) an adjustment can be made according to the curve shown in figure 15-30.

Blast Exposure Limits

To minimize temporary or permanent hearing loss from blast, the impulse noise criteria stated above should be used. To avoid other physiological injury from fast rising, long duration blast waves, the following pressures must not be exceeded:

- 5 psi (unprotected) to prevent eardrum rupture
- 10 psi (ears protected) to prevent lung damage. (See figure 15-25)

Speech Interference Criteria

In a preceding section, calculation of the Articulation Index was discussed. AI, as a method of estimating the masking effect of noise on speech
intelligibility, is quite involved. A relatively simple method was devised by Beranek (1947) and later modified by Webster (1969). Webster's method, called the three-band preferred octave speech-interference level (PSIL), is obtained by averaging the noise levels in the 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz octave bands.

![Figure 15-30. Correction factors to be added to ordinate of figure 15-29 to allow for daily impulse noise exposures different from 100 impulses. (CHABA, 1968)](image)

Once the PSIL value has been calculated, reference to figure 15-31 may be made to determine what voice level is required to provide acceptable intelligibility at a given talker-to-listener distance. “Acceptable intelligibility” here corresponds to a PB intelligibility score of 75 percent and assumes that no lipreading occurs. The “expected voice level” results from the fact that a speaker tends to raise his voice level about 3 dB for each 10 dB increase in ambient noise starting at about 50 dB PSIL when he receives no feedback from the listener. The “communicating voice” is that effort produced when a talker receives instantaneous feedback of success or failure from the listener.

**Workspace Noise Criteria**

Beranek (1960) presents criteria for limiting workspace background noise where communications interference, loudness, or annoyance of noises are an important design consideration. These noise criterion curves, or “NC” curves, are widely used as workspace design criteria. Figure 15-32 shows the allowable octave-band SPL (for both commercial and preferred octave bands) and table 15-10 identifies typical work spaces with the appropriate NC curves. These curves were derived in such a way that each octave band contributes about equally to the loudness of the background noise. To be acceptable, the noise level in each octave band must not exceed the level permitted by the selected NC curve. It should be noted that when using commercial frequencies the NC number is also the SIL for that particular spectrum.
The recommended NC level inside a spacecraft without engines operating is NC-55.

Community Noise Criteria

It should be clearly recognized that the final decision as to criteria for community noise exposure is an administrative one. Scientific and technical data may aid in answering questions, but it remains the province of society and legal administrative officials to make ultimate decisions (Galloway & von Gierke, 1966). Only society, and its official representatives, can decide what price it is willing to pay for community noise control.


Hearing Protection

Four general approaches may be taken to prevent sound from reaching the ear: (1) The person may be removed to a distance from the noise source such that spherical divergence and excess attenuation reduce the noise level to an
acceptable extent. (2) A physical barrier may be placed between the noise or blast source and the man. (3) The natural "aural reflex" action of man's middle-ear muscles may be stimulated as a means of protection. (4) A mechanical hearing protector may be placed over, or in, the ear canal to attenuate sound energy. Discussion of this latter approach to noise reduction will occupy the bulk of this section.

Figure 15-32. Noise criteria (NC curves) referred to preferred octave bands (lower abscissa) and commercial octave bands (upper abscissa). (From Schultz, 1968) NC 75-90 curves are present authors' own extrapolations which have been found to be very useful in practical applications. NC-55 is design criterion for Apollo spacecraft during nonpowered flight.

**Mechanical Hearing Protection.** Situations often arise in which it is neither economical nor practical to remove people to a distance from a noise source or to place a barrier between them and the source. In such cases the use of mechanical hearing protection is recommended to reduce the noise to a level which is not hazardous to hearing and/or will permit effective communication.
### Table 15–10
Recommended NC Curves for Various Work Spaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NC Curve</th>
<th>Type of Work Space</th>
<th>Communication Equivalent</th>
<th>Office Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>_noise-attenuating headset required</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td>Communication very difficult; telephone use unsatisfactory</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 – 90</td>
<td></td>
<td>Raised voice range 1—2 ft; shouting range 3—6 ft; telephone use very difficult</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 – 70</td>
<td></td>
<td>Raised voice range 1—2 ft; telephone use difficult</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 – 60</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very noisy; not suited for office; telephone use difficult</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Spacecraft during nonpowered flight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 – 55</td>
<td>Restaurants, sports coliseums</td>
<td>Unsatisfactory for conferences of over 3 people; telephone use slightly difficult; normal voice at 2 ft; raised voice at 3 ft</td>
<td>Areas with typists and accounting machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 – 50</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conferences at 4—5 ft table; telephone use slightly difficult; normal voice at 3—6 ft; raised voice at 6—12 ft</td>
<td>Large drafting rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 – 40</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conferences at 6—8 ft table; telephone use satisfactory; normal voice at 6—12 ft</td>
<td>Medium sized offices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 – 35</td>
<td>Libraries, hospitals, motion picture theatres, home sleeping areas, assembly halls</td>
<td>Quiet office; conferences at 15 ft table; normal voice at 10—30 ft</td>
<td>Private or semi-private offices; reception rooms; conference rooms for up to 20 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 – 30</td>
<td>Courtrooms, churches, home sleeping areas, assembly halls, hotels and apartments, TV studios, music rooms, schoolrooms</td>
<td>Very quiet offices; large conferences</td>
<td>Executive offices; conference rooms for 50 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 – 25</td>
<td>Legitimate theatre, concert halls, broadcasting studios</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Modified from Beranek 1960)
Hearing protectors will often improve person-to-person and loudspeaker-to-person communication in noise (Acton, 1967). The same speech signal-to-noise ratio reaches the ear with and without protection in such cases, but the use of protection may cause the speech signal to reach the ear at a level in the optimum range for speech intelligibility (i.e., overall RMS level of about 70 dB). This effect may, therefore, influence the selection of hearing protection for use in a given situation. It would be undesirable to recommend a highly effective hearing protector for use in a relatively low noise level, for example, since this might reduce the speech signal to below the optimum speech level.

Mechanical hearing protectors fall into four general categories: earplugs, semi-inserts, earmuffs, and helmets.

Earplugs are available in two forms: (1) preformed rubber or plastic plugs supplied in up to seven sizes, and (2) disposable plugs, such as wax-impregnated cotton, or “glass down” (a very fine, nonirritating glass wool).

Dry cotton is not recommended for use since it provides negligible sound attenuation (2 to 5 dB in the lower frequencies; 6 to 10 dB at the higher frequencies) and may provide a false sense of security.

In order to be maximally effective, earplugs must be properly fitted for size. It is not unusual to find people who require a different size plug for each ear. Furthermore, the plugs must be properly inserted each time they are used: they must be tight to be effective. Finally, the plugs must be kept clean to minimize the possibility of ear infections.

Semi-inserts are available in one size only and are pressed against the entrance to the ear canal by a light, spring-loaded headband. If frequent donning and doffing are required they are very convenient and, unlike bulky earmuffs, may easily be hung around the neck when not in use. On the other hand, semi-inserts may not provide as effective a seal against sound as either earplugs or earmuffs.

Earmuffs are made in one size only and almost everyone can be fitted satisfactorily with little difficulty. They attenuate sound as well as, or better than, earplugs at high frequencies, but are slightly poorer than plugs below 1 kHz. The primary disadvantages of earmuffs are their bulk and relative expense. They do not, however, entail the fitting and insertion problems of earplugs. Another advantage, in certain situations, is that a supervisor can readily determine from a distance that all of his personnel are wearing their hearing protectors. Where very intense noise levels exist, it may be desirable to wear both earplugs and earmuffs. The total sound attenuation does not, of course, equal the sum of the individual protector attenuations, but this combination will ordinarily provide increased attenuation at most frequencies, with particular benefit being derived at the low frequencies (Webster & Rubin, 1962).

Helmets can provide more attenuation than the aforementioned devices if they cover the greater portion of the head. The acoustical importance of a helmet increases when the SPL reaches a point where bone-conducted sound
transmission through the skull becomes a controlling factor. In cases other than this the use of helmets for hearing-protective purposes alone is not justified. The maximum attenuation which can be provided by a plug, muff or semi-insert is about 35 dB at 250 Hz and is greater at higher frequencies (Zwislocki, 1955). After reductions of this magnitude, the remaining sound is conducted through the bones of the skull directly to the inner ear (Rice & Coles, 1966). An astronaut's helmet, which seals off the whole head, can provide an additional 10 dB of protection. Beyond this point, conduction of sound by the body is the limiting factor.

References


Bowen, I. G., Fletcher, E. R., & Richmond, D. R. Estimate of man's tolerance to the direct effects of air blast. DASA Report 2113, Lovelace Foundation, Albuquerque, New Mexico, October 1968.


Hill, R. E. Space Division, North American Rockwell Corporation, Downey, California, 20 November 1969. (Unpublished data)


Kryter, K. D. Personal communication with D. C. Hodge, 1964.


Murray, N. E., & Reid, G. J. Temporary deafness due to gunfire. Laryngoscope, 1946, 61, 91-121.


Noise and Blast


CHAPTER 16
HUMAN CONTROL CAPABILITIES

by
Laurence Retman Young, Sc.D
Massachusetts Institute of Technology

This chapter concentrates on the capabilities and limitations of man as an element in a closed loop control system under normal environmental conditions. Only by careful consideration of the engineering aspects of man as a control element can performances of man-vehicle systems be assessed, stability and power assist be designed, and trade-offs between manual and automatic functions be determined objectively.

The usual breakdown of man's functions in a piloting task is shown in figure 16-1. The human operator uses his various senses to gain information on vehicle state and the command situation, integrates this information centrally where the appropriate control actions are decided upon, and through the use of effectors such as control sticks, changes the inputs to the vehicle or plant which is being controlled. In the typical piloting application, man participates in two levels of this man-machine system; control and guidance. In his control function, man establishes an equilibrium state of vehicle motion and regulates departures of the vehicle from equilibrium. In guidance man determines the appropriate course and speed to reach a desired point under constraints of time, fuel, position error, and accelerations. Typically the progression from control to guidance involves manual control functions which are successively slower in their characteristics but require a higher level of decision-making. The remainder of this chapter considers the human controller, controls, and displays. The effects of other-than-normal environments on the human senses and effectors are discussed in other chapters of this book.

Controller Characteristics

Nature of Manual Control

The controller characteristics considered in this section correspond to continuous piloting tasks. Information is received by observing meters, CRT

Reviewed by Duane T. McRuer, M.S., Systems Technology, Inc.
displays, or other continuous information presentations, and responses are made by continuous movements of control sticks, rudder pedals, or other manual devices. This section includes empirical data on performance limitations and relative ease of controlling in different types of situations. It also summarizes mathematical models for the human operator proposed as attempts to make engineering approximations to the pilot which can be used in systems design. Some of the more important variables which affect the human controller characteristics are: task variables (dynamics of the controlled element, characteristics of the manipulator, command inputs), environmental variables (temperature, vibration, acceleration), operator-centered variables (experience, training, alertness, fatigue, motivation), and procedural variables (instructions, order of presentations in competing configurations, analysis procedures).

Modes of Tracking: Compensatory, Pursuit, and Precognitive

Three major modes of human tracking are distinguished and illustrated in figure 16-2.

In compensatory tracking the operator observes only the system error or the difference between the system command and the actual system output. He has no explicit information on whether changes in this error result from a change in the command or a change in the vehicle output. Of course he may always estimate the contribution of changes in vehicle output to the observed error changes on the basis of the controls he has applied. Typical examples of compensatory situations are tracking a target through a telescopic sight or following a glideslope descent schedule by nulling ILS needles. In the next stage of manual control, pursuit tracking, the human operator has explicit displays of system command and vehicle output separately. He can derive system error by direct comparison of the two. The pursuit situation simplifies the problem of stability by allowing the operator to observe the vehicle output directly without interference from changing inputs. It also enables him to somewhat predict input by extrapolating from the current input and its derivatives. Examples are following a descent schedule in which command altitude and actual altitude are displayed simultaneously on the same altimeter, or tracking a moving object in which the azimuth and elevation of both the target and the tracking device are simultaneously displayed on the same instrument using different symbols. Finally, for precognitive tracking the operator has explicit or implicit information about future values of the input. Thus for driving an automobile on a curved road or lining up an airplane for a landing on a runway, the future
required path as well as the current position of the vehicle are explicitly available. Similarly, displays, which show where obstacles or desired paths will be in the future, lead to precognitive tracking. In addition, the operator may perform precognitive tracking if he is able to extract reliable predictive information about input or disturbance from the periodicities or predictability of these signals. In general, the operator is able to overcome most of the limitations associated with his decision times and neuromuscular dynamics in the cases of precognitive or preview tracking.

Figure 16-2. Successive organization of perception. (McRuer et al., 1968)

Quasilinear Models

Precision and Approximate Models. The most generally applied model of the human operator used in analysis of man-machine performance is the quasilinear model, so named because it represents the human operator as a “best linear approximation” plus a remnant to account for the human control outputs other than those predicted by the linear approximation (figure 16-3).
The linear approximation generally used is the Gaussian input describing function. It varies significantly with the dynamics of the controlled element, as well as with the nature of the display and the bandwidth of the input. It is applicable only for tracking situations involving random or random appearing continuous inputs or disturbances and without additions, does not accurately predict responses to transient input such as steps or impulses, or in situations where one can preview the input. The most detailed form of this model is the precision model of McRuer et al. (1965), leading to a human operator describing function given in the following equation:

\[
Y_p(j\omega) = K_p \left( \frac{T_1 j\omega + 1}{T_1 j\omega + 1} \right) \left( \frac{T_K j\omega + 1}{T_K j\omega + 1} \right) \left( \frac{1}{T_N j\omega + 1} \right) \left[ \frac{1}{\omega_N} \right] e^{-j\omega T} \]

(1)

The use of this equation in systems design is limited to cases where accurate characterization at very high frequencies (>4 rad/sec) or very low frequencies are required (McRuer et al., 1965). Primary adjustment of operator characteristics is through the gain \(K_p\) and the lead and lag time constants \(T_L\) and \(T_1\). The neuromuscular characteristics change primarily with forcing-function bandwidth and with manipulator (control stick) restraints. A typical Bode plot for the neuromuscular system portion is shown in figure 16-4.

\[
Y_p(j\omega) = K_p \left( \frac{T_L j\omega + 1}{T_1 j\omega + 1} \right) e^{-j\omega T_c} \]

(2)
For practical systems design purposes, the above simplified model is generally adequate. $\tau_e$ is the effective time delay comprising the delays associated with reading and interpreting the display, deciding upon the appropriate control motion, and the high frequency neuromuscular lags. $T_L$, the lead time constant, expresses the ratio of the weight the operator attributes to the displayed velocity compared to the displayed position. $T_I$, the integral time constant, represents the amount of data smoothing the operator applies.

There have been a number of attempts to generate empirical and theoretically based adjustment rules for selecting the variable parameters of the pilot describing function appropriate to each compensatory tracking case. The simplest of these is the crossover model popularized by McRuer and his associates.

The Crossover Model. The crossover model is based on the notion that the human operator adjusts his parameters so that the open loop frequency response $[Y_p(j\omega) Y_c(j\omega)]$ satisfies conditions for closed loop stability and reasonably low error. The pilot adjusts his own transfer function to compensate, insofar as
possible, for the transfer function of the controlled element. To quote from McRuer and Jex (1967, p. 234):

The pilot adopts sufficient lead or lag equalization so that the slope of \(|Y_{OL}| = |Y_p Y_c|\) lies very close to -20 dB/decade in the region of crossover frequencies. Besides the -90 deg phase shift associated with the 20 dB/decade amplitude ratio, there is an accumulation of additional lags due to transport delays and high frequency neuromuscular dynamics. All of these can be represented (near crossover frequencies) by an effective time delay \(\tau_e\).

[The crossover frequency \(\omega_c\) is the frequency at which the open loop amplitude ratio is unity, or zero dB.] The crossover model is:

\[
Y_{OL}(j\omega) = Y_p Y_c = \frac{\omega_c e^{-j\omega \tau_e}}{j\omega}; \text{ near } \omega_c.
\]  

(3)

Thus the open loop transfer function approximates an integrator and time delay in the region of the crossover frequency. Notice that in this simplified model only two parameters, \(\omega_c\) and \(\tau_e\), are functions of the task variables; plant dynamics, \(Y_c\), input bandwidth, \(\omega_i\), and manipulator characteristics. In situations involving rotational motion, the first-order effects of motion can also be accounted for in \(\tau_e\).

Using the simple human operator describing function model of Equation 2, the parameters are varied according to the form of \(Y_c\), such that the system is stable, the magnitude ratio \(Y_p Y_c\) has a slope of approximately -20 dB/decade near \(\omega_c\), and the low frequency amplitude ratio is much greater than 1. Forms of the pilot's describing function for a variety of common controlled elements are given in table 16-1.

Selection of actual values of \(\omega_c\) and \(\tau_e\) for particular values of plant dynamics and input bandwidths is somewhat empirical.

\[
\omega_c (Y_c, \omega_i) \approx \omega_c (Y_c) + \Delta \omega_c \text{ and}
\tau_e (Y_c, \omega_i) \approx \tau_c (Y_c) - \Delta \tau (\omega_i)
\]

(4)

The following are useful linear approximations to the dependency of crossover frequency and time delay on input bandwidth:

\[
\Delta \omega_c = 0.18 \omega_i \text{ and }
\Delta \tau = 0.68 \omega_i
\]
Table 16-1
Pilot Equalization Adjustment for Various Controlled Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Controlled Element Approximate Transfer Function in Crossover Region $Y_c(s)$</th>
<th>Pilot's Equalizer Form</th>
<th>Pilot's Describing Function $Y_p(j\omega)$</th>
<th>Location of Equalization Break Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$K_c$</td>
<td>Lag-lead</td>
<td>$K_p e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{T_i} \ll \omega_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{K_c}{s}$</td>
<td>High-frequency lead</td>
<td>$K_p e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{K_c}{s^2}$</td>
<td>Low-frequency lead</td>
<td>$K_p(T_L(j\omega + 1)e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{T_L} \ll \omega_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{K_c}{s(T(s + 1))}$</td>
<td>If $T &gt; T_e$ use mid-frequency lead</td>
<td>$K_p(T_L(j\omega + 1)e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{T_L} \ll \frac{1}{T}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If $T &lt; T_e$ use high-frequency lead</td>
<td>$K_p e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{K_c}{\left(\frac{\omega_n}{\omega_n}\right)^2 + 2\omega_n^2 s + 1}$</td>
<td>If low natural frequency ($\omega_n &lt; 1/T_e$) use low-frequency lead</td>
<td>$K_p(T_L(j\omega + 1)e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{T_L} \ll \omega_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If high natural frequency ($\omega_n &gt; 1/T_e$) use lag lead</td>
<td>$K_p e^{-j\omega T e}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{T_i} \ll \omega_c$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(McRuer & Jex, 1967)
The crossover frequency increases with input bandwidth until $\omega_i \approx 0.8 \omega_{c0}$, when it is again reduced. Data on $\omega_c$ and $\Delta \tau$ is given in figure 16-5. The dependency of $\omega_{c0}$ and $\tau_0$ (the values for crossover and effective time delay with no forcing function) for several plants are summarized in table 16-2. The value of $\omega_{c0}$ can be used if the effect of input bandwidth on $\omega_c$ is ignored. Note that the operator effective time delay also varies with the amount of lead equalization he must supply. When the pilot is acting as a pure amplifier with a delay ($Y_c = K/j\omega$), the effective time delay is of the order of 0.36 second. As more lead is required ($Y_c = K_c/(j\omega)^2$) then the operator's effective time delay also increases. When the operator introduces lag, however, in the case of controlling a pure gain, his effective time delay is slightly reduced.

Figure 16-5. Variation of describing function parameters with forcing function bandwidth.
(McRuer et al., 1965)
Table 16–2

Summary of Crossover Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$Y_c$</th>
<th>$\tau_0$ (sec)</th>
<th>$\omega_{c_0}$ (rad/sec)</th>
<th>$\bar{\omega}_c$ (rad/sec)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$K_c$</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_c/\omega$</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>4.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_c/(\omega - 1/\tau)$</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_c/(\omega^2)$</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(McRuer et al., 1966)

The performance expected of a closed loop system including a human operator using the crossover model can be approximated very simply on the basis of the crossover model. If the input spectrum is assumed to be rectangular and band limited (maximum frequency $\omega_m$, uniform power spectral density $\Phi_\omega$, and mean square input power $\sigma_i^2$), then the ratio of mean square error to mean square input is easily found by use of figure 16-6.

Figure 16–6. Mean square error calculated from the crossover model.
A typical example of measured open loop frequency response for a simple rate control plant at three input bandwidths is shown in figure 16-7.

\[ Y_c = \frac{K_c}{\omega} \] as parameter. (McRuer et al., 1965)

Remnant. In addition to the quasilinear portion of describing functions, the remnant, or added disturbance injected by the operator, must be considered to establish the total error in a tracking loop. For certain conditions in which pilot behavior is particularly nonstationary and nonlinear (especially in tracking high order systems requiring pulsatile control), the contribution of remnant to error may be very significant. Levison et al., (1969) have shown certain simplifications if the remnant is referred to equivalent observation noise appearing at the operator's input, that is, added to the system error. (In most literature prior to 1968, the remnant is given as additive noise at the operator's output.) By normalizing the observation noise spectrum with respect to the input noise spectrum, the injected observation noises seem to be relatively constant at approximately (-20 dB) and independent of frequency, input amplitude, vehicle dynamics, or input bandwidth (figure 16-8). The observed remnant in terms of
normalized observation noise spectrum increases significantly when the display is used peripherally rather than foveally. The effect of remnant on system error can be minimized by control design which does not require the operator to generate low frequency lead. Optimum controlled element gain and filtering of the operator’s output can further reduce the contribution of remnant to error or to exciting high order system modes.

(a) Effect of mean squared input on the normalized observation noise spectrum.
Vehicle dynamics = K/s
Input bandwidth = 0.5 Rad/Sec
Average of 3 subjects

(b) Effect of vehicle dynamics on the normalized observation noise spectrum.
Average of 3 subjects (K and K/s²)
Average of 4 subjects (K/s)

Figure 16-8. Remnant expressed as normalized observation noise spectrum.
(Levison et al., 1969)
Pursuit Tracking. Little experimental data on pursuit tracking is available. It is surmised that the pilot uses information on input alone to attempt open loop tracking. To this extent, he can be considered to operate on the input signal with a transfer function $Y_{pi}$, which is just equal to the reciprocal of the controlled element ($Y_{pi} = 1/Y_c$). The remaining errors associated with inaccuracies in open loop tracking and injected remnant are compensated by closed loop compensatory tracking. The effect of pursuit tracking is to permit the operator to overcome
internal delays and reduce his phase lag, thereby producing higher gains than for compensatory tracking at frequencies above 0.4 Hz. Figure 16-9 shows some compensatory-pursuit frequency response comparisons for $Y_c = K$.

Figure 16-9. Pursuit and compensatory $Y_c(j\omega)$ frequency characteristics for $Y_c = K$ and various input bandwidths. (Elkind, 1956)
Figure 16-9. Pursuit and compensatory $Y_c (j\omega)$ frequency characteristics for $Y_c = K$ and various input bandwidths. (Elkind, 1956) – Continued

Further study of pure pursuit tracking with input only $[i(t)]$ or pursuit plus disturbance $[g(t)]$, shown in figure 16-10, has explored pursuit behavior as the sum of an operation on the inputs, output, and error. Precision pilot model
parameters, using the model of Equation 1, are given for the various cases in table 16-3. The use of pursuit tracking in the presence of disturbances yielded no improvement in performance over simple compensatory tracking.

Figure 16-10. Pure pursuit tracking: a. with input only \([i(t)]\); b. plus disturbance \([g(t)]\). (Reid, 1969)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Experimental Conditions</th>
<th>( K_p )</th>
<th>( \beta )</th>
<th>( \gamma )</th>
<th>( \lambda )</th>
<th>( \alpha )</th>
<th>( \phi )</th>
<th>( \psi )</th>
<th>( \chi )</th>
<th>( \delta )</th>
<th>( \epsilon )</th>
<th>( \zeta )</th>
<th>( \eta )</th>
<th>( \theta )</th>
<th>( \iota )</th>
<th>( \kappa )</th>
<th>( \lambda )</th>
<th>( \mu )</th>
<th>( \nu )</th>
<th>( \xi )</th>
<th>( \omicron )</th>
<th>( \pi )</th>
<th>( \rho )</th>
<th>( \sigma )</th>
<th>( \tau )</th>
<th>( \upsilon )</th>
<th>( \phi )</th>
<th>( \chi )</th>
<th>( \psi )</th>
<th>( \omega )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L C 1/s Y</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>0.129</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>2.78</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L PD 1/s Y1</td>
<td>– 2.31</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>–0.04</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L PD 1/s Y2</td>
<td>2.18</td>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>–0.04</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L PD 1/s Y4</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M C 1/s Y</td>
<td>8.75</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M PD 1/s Y1</td>
<td>– 7.43</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M PD 1/s Y2</td>
<td>6.68</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M PD 1/s Y4</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.250</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H C 1/s Y</td>
<td>5.52</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>3.22</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PD 1/s Y1</td>
<td>– 3.24</td>
<td>0.115</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PD 1/s Y2</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>0.145</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PD 1/s Y4</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.270</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Display:  
- C — Compensatory  
- PP — Pure pursuit (no disturbance)  
- PD — Pursuit tracking with additional disturbance

A(s) dynamics  
- K — Pure gain  
- 1/s — Rate control

Input Power Spectra  
(\(\Omega_{ie}\) = equivalent input bandwidth)  
- VL — Very low  
- L — Low  
- M — Medium  
- H — High

\(\Omega_{ie}\) = 1.28 rad/sec  
\(\Omega_{ie}\) = 1.41 rad/sec  
\(\Omega_{ie}\) = 2.80 rad/sec  
\(\Omega_{ie}\) = 4.30 rad/sec

(Reid, 1969)
Pilot Opinion and Ratings

In addition to satisfying specifications on performance (e.g., stability and error) it is important to consider the operator acceptability of a given vehicle system. Pilot rating for aerospace vehicles is usually given in terms of the Cooper rating shown in table 16-4. In general the pilot can make wide compensation for controlled element dynamics resulting in equivalent performance but with varying Cooper ratings.

A review of pilot rating scales to eliminate uncertainty in definitions and increase the reliability of ratings led to the handling qualities rating scale proposed by Cooper and Harper (1969) shown in figure 16-11.

Particular emphasis in flight and ground base simulation has been paid to pilot opinion and aircraft handling qualities. Handling qualities for longitudinal aircraft attitude control are governed by the short period natural frequency \( \omega_p \), the short period damping ratio \( \zeta_p \), the numerator time constant \( T_{\theta_p} \), and the airplane gain. Figure 16-12 shows approximate boundaries of pilot opinion for one value of \( T_{\theta_p} \) as a function of \( \omega_p \) and \( \zeta_p \). These boundaries would be different for other values of \( T_{\theta_p} \). Figure 16-13 shows similar trends of acceptable and controllable regions plotted in a somewhat different format for longitudinal control of a reentry vehicle. A discussion of lateral handling qualities is beyond the scope of this chapter. Pilot rating depends upon gain, roll mode time constants, spiral mode time constant, and dutch roll mode natural frequency and damping. (For further discussions, see Harper, 1961; Ashkenas & McRuer, 1962.)

Pilot ratings can also be related to parameters of the pilot model. The gain which the pilot adapts for a particular application affects his rating. Although the absolute level of the optimum gain depends upon a great number of factors, including the type of control stick, deviations from this optimum result in poorer ratings, as shown in figure 16-14. Pilot ratings also suffer when the pilot is forced to introduce lead compensation (figure 16-15). No particular penalty is apparently associated with increased lag compensation. Pilot rating also has been observed to show a decrement of 2 to 3 points as the pilot’s effective time delay \( \tau_e \) decreases, associated with greater lead generation, as discussed earlier.

To handle multiaxis tracking situations it has been suggested that the decrements in pilot rating (relative to optimum) for each axis individually be added to indicate the resulting decrement in the multiaxis rating (McRuer and Jex, 1967). A recent attempt to predict pilot ratings for VTOL on the basis of weighted sums of performance and pilot lead time constants shows some promise. The empirical relationship is

\[
R = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + 1.0
\]
Table 16-4
Original Cooper Rating Scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective Rating</th>
<th>Numerical Rating</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Primary Mission Accomplished</th>
<th>Can Be Landed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal operation</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>1 Excellent, includes optimum</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Good, pleasant to fly</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 Satisfactory, but with some mildly unpleasant</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>characteristics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 Acceptable, but with unpleasant characteristics</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency operation</td>
<td>Unsatisfactory</td>
<td>5 Unacceptable for normal operation</td>
<td>Doubtful</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6 Acceptable for emergency condition only*</td>
<td>Doubtful</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No operation</td>
<td>Unacceptable</td>
<td>7 Unacceptable even for emergency condition*</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Doubtful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprintable</td>
<td>8 Unacceptable - Dangerous</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9 Unacceptable - Uncontrollable</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10 &quot;Motions possibly violent enough to prevent pilot escape&quot;</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Failure of stability augmenter.
(Cooper, 1957)
Figure 16-11. Proposed handling qualities rating scale. (Cooper & Harper, 1969)
Figure 16-12. Pilot opinion vs. vehicle dynamic response — second order system.
(Adapted from Chalk, 1958)
$R_1$ is the weighted sum of pitch and displacement errors relative to a criterion level

$$0 \leq R_1 \leq 2.50$$

$$R_2 = 2.5(T_{L\theta})$$

and is limited to $R_2 \leq 3.25$. $T_{L\theta}$ is the pilot lead time constant in the inner pitch loop.

$$R_3 = 1.0(T_{L_x})$$

is limited to $R_3 \leq 1.20$. $T_{L_x}$ is the pilot lead time constant in the outer displacement loop (Anderson & Dillow, 1970).

Figure 16-13. Pilot opinion boundaries for longitudinal control. (Kidd & Harper, 1964)
Human Control Capabilities

Figure 16-14. Decrement in pilot rating for off-optimal gain. (McRuer & Jex, 1967; used by permission of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers)

Figure 16-15. Decrement in pilot opinion due to pilot lead. (Ashkenas, 1965; symbols refer to various cases within the reference)
“Rule of Thumb” for Compensatory Tracking

A useful rule of thumb which includes some aspects of the dependence of pilot workload on lead and lag equalization as well as the easily achieved levels of crossover frequency for single axis compensatory tracking may be stated as follows: Design the controlled element and display so that the controlled element is approximately a pure integrator, input frequencies are limited to less than 0.5 Hz, and the human can act as a simple amplifier with a time delay.

Although the optimum control and display depends upon input spectrum and performance criteria in a somewhat complex way, it is generally true that a pure integral plant is easily controlled for low frequency inputs. By the same token, without special training or assistance in display, men should not be expected to control elements with dynamics containing more phase lag than \( Y_e = K/s^2 \). (Under certain conditions, using pulsatile control, plants as high as \( Y_e = K/s^3 \) may be controllable for short periods.)

Optimum Control Models

Several attempts have been made to reduce some of the arbitrariness of the quasilinear describing function model for describing human operator characteristics by substituting the techniques of optimal control theory. The goal is still to estimate loop closures, pilot dynamics, crossover frequencies, etc., but the desire is to substitute the systematic optimal control calculation techniques for the previously described artistic conventional methods. This requires that a cost function to be minimized be specified. The peculiar nature of this function must be such that when the input and vehicle dynamics are given, the minimization of the cost function results in control law(s) which mimic those the human would adopt. The artistry has now shifted to the selection of the cost function. A promising approach using optimal control is shown schematically in figure 16-16. The block \((e^{-sT})\) represents an approximation to the human operator's invariant equivalent simple time delay. State feedbacks for the human are assumed to be only gains and first derivatives of explicitly displayed information. The effect of the usual remnant, including motor uncertainties, and the effects of visual scanning are represented by a vector observation noise \( Y_\omega(t) \). Because of his inherent delay and the observation noise, the human operator must estimate the true state which had existed \( T \) seconds ago [estimated state \( \hat{x}(t-T) \)], predict the current state [\( \hat{x}(t) \)], and generate the optimum control law control vector [\( u(t) \)] which minimizes the cost functional, subject to the constraints on state variables fed back. Although the application of optimal control techniques to estimation of human operator dynamics is still a very new art, reasonable agreement with conventional results for several simple plants and a V/STOL vehicle in hovering flight has been achieved (Elkind et al., 1968).
Motion Cues

Describing function data for human operators gathered in laboratory fixed base experiments frequently must be extrapolated to moving base or flight tests. The presence of motion cues in flight, as sensed by the vestibular and tactile senses, influences the describing functions. At extremes of high vibration and acceleration levels it results in important performance decrements; for moderate motions, however, the information is generally useful to the pilot. In particular, angular rate information sensed by the semicircular canals may be used to generate additional lead compensation and reduce the effective reaction time. Gravicaptor cues help alignment to the apparent vertical. Roll motion cues are most useful at high frequencies and for plants in which high frequency variations in roll can occur. The effect of roll motion cues in allowing the operator to exhibit additional lead, and thereby increase his crossover frequency and reduce RMS error, is shown schematically in figure 16-17.

Table 16-5 gives approximate linear models of the human operator describing function for a wide variety of controlled elements under fixed base or roll motion. (The 0.1 sec delay in all controlled elements approximates the dynamics of the simulator utilized). When motion is in yaw rather than roll or pitch, presumably the linear acceleration sensors of the body are not stimulated. Experiments indicate that although the additional linear acceleration contributes to a higher gain of the human operator, the contribution is relatively less significant than that attributable to sensation of rotation (Dinsdale, 1968).
Multiple-Input Tracking

When multiple inputs are presented on separated displays the operator tends to adopt an optimal scanning pattern, devoting most time to those displays having the most information and linking scans between related displays. The implications for display layout and details of optimization are beyond the scope of this chapter (see Carbonell et al., 1968, and Clement, Jex, & Graham, 1968). One of the effects of multiple inputs on separated displays is a net increase in effective time delay associated with the scanning time.

When multiple inputs can be displayed on a single integrated display, the effects of more than one input can be assessed according to the following cases: (a) homogeneous dynamics and homogeneous input, (b) homogeneous dynamics and heterogeneous inputs, and (c) heterogeneous dynamics. Two-axis tracking performance is nearly as good as single-axis performance with compatible integrated displays, when the dynamics in the two axes are the same, whether or not the inputs are identical. However, when the dynamics are different in the two axes, requiring different operator equalization, significant increases in normalized mean square error occur, ranging from 15 to 125 percent (Levison and Elkind, 1966). The equalization associated with one axis seems to affect that used on the other, resulting in an increase in error on both axes. Figure 16-18 shows the describing function for tracking with dynamics K in one axis, with and without a second axis task of K/s^2 dynamics.

![Diagram](image-url)
Table 16-5
Human Operator Describing Functions for Various Dynamics – Compensatory Roll Tracking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Controlled Element $Y_c$</th>
<th>Fixed Base Pilot Model $Y_p$</th>
<th>Roll Moving Base Pilot Model $Y_p$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-1s}/s$</td>
<td>$4.5e^{-0.8s}(7s+1)\ (1.9s+1)$</td>
<td>$4.5(7s+1)\ (5s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$20e^{-1s}/s(s+20)$</td>
<td>$10e^{-0.7s}(6s+1)\ (1.1s+1)$</td>
<td>$10(6s+1)\ (2.5s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5e^{-1s}/s(s+5)$</td>
<td>$8e^{-1s}(7s+1)\ (0.85s+1)$</td>
<td>$8(7s+1)\ (1.6s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$4e^{-1s}/s(s+4)$</td>
<td>$16e^{-1s}(7s+1)\ (1.55s+1)$</td>
<td>$16(7s+1)\ (4s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2e^{-1s}/s(s+2)$</td>
<td>$10.5e^{-1s}(7s+1)\ (2s+1)$</td>
<td>$15(7s+1)\ (2s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-1s}/s(s+1)$</td>
<td>$4.3e^{-1s}(7s+1)\ (3.8s+1)$</td>
<td>$5.5(7s+1)\ (3.8s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-1s}/s^2$</td>
<td>$0.15e^{-2.5s}(10s+1)\ (3s+1)$</td>
<td>$0.18e^{-1.5s}(10s+1)\ (3s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$e^{-1s}/s(s-1)$</td>
<td>$0.2e^{-2s}(10s+1)\ (3s+1)$</td>
<td>$0.4e^{-1.5s}(10s+1)\ (3s+1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5e^{-1s}/s^2+5$</td>
<td>$3e^{-3s}(1.75s+1)\ (s^2+2s+5)$</td>
<td>$5e^{-2s}(1.75s+1)\ (s^2+2s+5)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$20e^{-1s}/s^2+20$</td>
<td>$9e^{-3s}(1.5s+1)\ (s^2+2s+20)$</td>
<td>$20e^{-2s}(1.5s+1)\ (s^2+2s+20)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$-2.5e^{-1s}/s^2+s-2.5$</td>
<td>$3e^{-1.5s}(s^2+1.5s+2.5)$</td>
<td>$5e^{-0.5s}(s^2+2.5)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5e^{-1s}/s^2+5s+5$</td>
<td>$11.5e^{-2s}(1.9s+1)\ (s^2+4s+5)$</td>
<td>$20e^{-1.4s}(1.8s+1)\ (s^2+4s+5)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$10e^{-1s}/s^2+2s+10$</td>
<td>$19e^{-3s}(2.5s+1)\ (s^2+3s+10)$</td>
<td>$23e^{-2s}(2.5s+1)\ (s^2+3s+10)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 16-5 (Continued)
Human Operator Describing Functions
for Various Dynamics – Compensatory Roll Tracking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Controlled Element</th>
<th>Fixed Base Pilot Model $Y_p$</th>
<th>Roll Moving Base Pilot Model $Y_p$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{5e^{-1s}}{s^2 + 5s + 5}$</td>
<td>$\frac{19e^{-28s}(4s+5)\frac{1}{s^2+5s+4.5}}{4.5(10s+1)\frac{1}{.65s+1}}$</td>
<td>$\frac{30e^{-15s}(4s+5)\frac{1}{s^2+5s+4}}{4.5(10s+1)\frac{1}{.8s+1}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{25e^{-1s}}{s^2 + 5s + 25}$</td>
<td>$\frac{4.5e^{-3t}(1.75s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+5s+24}}{25(9s+1)\frac{1}{.17s+1}}$</td>
<td>$\frac{6.8e^{-2s}(1.75s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+5s+2}}{25(9s+1)\frac{1}{.17s+1}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{10e^{-1s}}{s(s^2 + 10)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{.9e^{-4s}(3s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+s+5}}{(12s+1)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{1.5e^{-35s}(3s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+s+5}}{(12s+1)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{4e^{-1s}}{s(s+4)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{.4e^{-32s}(10s+1)\frac{1}{3s+1}}{(1.2s+1)(.01s+1)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{.48e^{-25s}(10s+1)\frac{1}{3s+1}}{(1.2s+1)(.01s+1)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{10e^{-1s}}{s(s^2 + 2s + 10)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{.45e^{-43s}(8s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+4s+10}}{(.15s+1)(.15s+1)}$</td>
<td>$\frac{.8e^{-43s}(8s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+4s+10}}{(.15s+1)(.15s+1)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{10e^{-1s}}{s(s^2 + 4s + 10)}$</td>
<td>$e^{-35s}(9s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+4s+10}$</td>
<td>$1.15e^{-35s}(9s+1)\frac{1}{s^2+4s+10}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Adapted from Shirley, 1968)

Figure 16–18. One- and two-axis describing functions $Y_c = K$ (other axis = $K/s^2$).
(Levison & Elkind, 1966)
Multiple Loop Tracking

On many occasions, the operator is faced with a multi-loop control task in which he must participate in one or more coupled loops. Examples are control of aircraft pitch angle and angle of attack which, in turn, affects the control of airspeed and altitude. As another example, control of VTOL roll angle affects lateral position. A discussion of the extension of the single-axis models to multi-loop situations is given in McRuer and Jex (1967). A cascade model of the human operator suffices as an example of VTOL control (figure 16-19). The pilot adopts an inner loop equalization to stabilize pitch attitude and a separate slower outer loop equalization for commanding altitude to achieve the desired longitudinal position.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 16–19. A multi-loop pilot model. (Vinje & Miller, 1967)

Transmission Delays

Manual control with transmission delays is a practical problem for remote manipulation across great distances. Delay in transmission of command information to the remote element and delay in receiving feedback information from the remote element forces manual controllers to adopt a move and wait strategy to cope with the delay. (The round trip delay from earth to moon is 2.6 seconds.) The time to complete a task depends on the delay and the number of discrete moves required.
Completion time can be lowered by reducing the number of discrete motions (making larger open loop steps) at the expense of accuracy. For delayed manipulation, Ferrell (1965) uses two approximations ($t_{c1}$ and $t_{c2}$) to total movement time:

$$t_{c1} = t_0 + N(t_d + t_r) + t_d$$

$$t_{c2} = t_N + (N + 1)t_d$$

where

- $t_0$ = time to complete a task with no time delay
- $N$ = number of open loop steps required to perform the task
- $t_d$ = transmission delay
- $t_r$ = reaction time
- $t_N$ = average time to perform the task with no delay and no feedback between looks.

Completion time estimates for $t_{c1}$ are consistently lower than average times, and for $t_{c2}$ are consistently higher. The average of these two

$$t_{ca} = \frac{t_{c1} + t_{c2}}{2}$$

is a good predictor of actual completion time.

The average number of times feedback is required is nearly independent of the delay time and depends only on the difficulty of the task. Task difficulty may be measured by the information index of difficulty proposed by Fitts (Fitts & Peterson, 1964).

$$I = \log_2 \frac{\text{distance moved}}{\text{average clearance of final placement}}$$
Both task difficulty and delay increase completion time, as seen in figure 16-20. For more complex remote manipulation tasks, involving movement and operation of tools, the same accuracy of prediction of completion time as a function of delay time seems to hold. The average number of open loop moves to perform a task depends on the task difficulty and can be estimated for simple one dimensional tasks from figure 16-21.

![Figure 16-20. Effects of transmission delay and task difficulty on completion time. (Ferrell, 1965; used by permission of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers)](image)

For continuous control of a dynamic system with transmission delay, phase lags associated with human operator and system delay would lead to instability unless the human reduced his gain and the crossover frequency. For a fixed input spectrum tracking errors increase with transmission time delay. To maintain a constant error level the input bandwidth must be reduced. Stated in terms of operating a remotely controlled vehicle, the vehicle speed must be reduced with increasing time delay for a constant path spatial frequency of path. Experiments on remotely controlled vehicles with variable time delay and two types of control (velocity and acceleration control) are summarized in figure 16-22. Notice that the curves indicate a relative trade-off between time lag and speed or speed and accuracy, as in the remote manipulation experiments referred to above.
Adaptive Manual Control

The ability of the human controller to adapt his control according to requirements in changing conditions constitutes one of his major virtues as an element in closed loop systems. The major classes of adaptation of interest are shown in figure 16-23.

**Input adaptation** and prediction refer to man's ability to detect familiar or repeated patterns in the input and track these in a predictive or open loop fashion.

**Controlled element adaptation** refers to the well-known ability of men to adapt different control strategies appropriate to changing dynamics of the system being controlled.

**Task adaptation** encompasses the complex matter of optimization of the manual control loop on the basis of various control objectives. Thus, the human changes his strategy, for the same input and controlled elements, depending on the relative penalties associated with system error, vehicle accelerations, time to reach a terminal state, fuel penalties, or control effort.
Figure 16.22: Effects of transmission delay upon remote control. (Adams, 1961)
Programmed adaptation, or open loop adaptive control, and the role it plays must not be overlooked. In this mode the environmental status, for example, attitude, road surface condition, sea state, or time-to-go, is used by the human to adopt control strategies which he has been taught (programmed) are appropriate for that situation.

Behavior of the human operator following sudden failures of the controlled element is fundamental to assessing the overall reliability of a manual, automatic, or manual backup system. The process of adaptive control is thought to consist of four phases: retention of prefailure dynamics, detection of the failure, identification of the failure and adaptation of appropriate dynamic form for the postfailure situation, and, finally, optimization of postfailure control. In the model reference schema, detection occurs when the observed change in error deviates from the expected change in error (based upon an internal model) by more than some threshold level. Typical detection times for laboratory experiments with sudden changes in gain or velocity range from 0.5 to 3 seconds. Times to detect failures involving higher order plants are increased to several seconds and may be considerably longer if emergency training is insufficient.

![Diagram](image)

Figure 16–23. Major adaptive functions in manual control. (Young, 1969)

Controls and Manipulators

Control-Display Compatibility

A control function and the corresponding display should be geometrically compatible. Linear translations of the controls should correspond to colinear translations of the displayed variable. (The direction of display motion is opposite to control motion in a "fly-to" or inside-out display.) Rotations of controls corresponding to translation of a display are inherently ambiguous.
In certain cases, a rotation between display axes and control axes is unavoidable. The resulting ambiguity can be overcome partially by indicating the instantaneous deflection of the control stick resolved in display axes on the display itself, as in configuration c of figure 16-24. Controls should be in conventional positions, well separated, associated with the task, and easily distinguished by touch (see figure 16-25).

Figure 16-24. Display configurations for rotated display reference. (Bemotat, 1969)

Figure 16-25. Control knob shapes. (Chapanis, Garner, & Morgan, 1955)
Control Forces

A wide variety of manipulators are in common use in vehicle control, including steering wheels, “joy sticks,” pencil controllers, and pedals. (Less commonly used are head position and eye position.) As a general rule, satisfactory control feel requires the normal use of forces well below maximum without being so sensitive that inadvertent muscular movements or tremors result in errors in control. Control stick specifications include consideration of flexibility, springback, minimum control increment, friction, preload and hysteresis. For a review of this problem see Glenn (1963).

Control Stick Characteristics

The two basic modes of control stick operation are position control, in which the displacement or angle of the control stick is the control signal, and force control (or pressure control), in which the force on the control stick (which is usually maintained nearly stationary) is the control signal. Pressure control yields significantly less phase lag at high frequencies and is consequently preferable for use in situations such as control of high order systems, where excessive delay is a problem. Pressure control, spring restrained position control, and free moving control yield similar tracking results at low frequencies. For spring restrained position control sticks, an optimum value of spring constant usually exists. Increasing the moment of inertia of the control stick decreases the crossover frequency and increases tracking error for high order controlled elements (Magdaleno & McRuer, 1966).

Effects of Control Stick Nonlinearities

Common control stick nonlinearities include coulomb friction, control stick preload, control displacement limits, nonlinear gearing, control system hysteresis and backlash, and control stick velocity limits. In a vibrating environment, low levels of static friction may improve tracking performance. In controlled fixed base simulations using fore and aft motion of a light center stick and simple rate control, control stick friction and preload are found to have no significant effect on tracking performance.

For the case of control velocity limits, however, the effects on error are quite noticeable and show a marked decrement in performance as the control velocity limit is lowered, accompanied by rapid deterioration of the pilot rating. Graham (1967) concludes that human operators tend to linearize the nonlinearities of control sticks where possible by use of dither and high gain feedback around the nonlinearity. However, in the case of velocity limit, this linearization is not possible and performance degrades.

Quantization and Pulsatile Control

Deliberate quantization of the control stick output into relatively few discrete levels may be desirable for stability and ease of operation. For example, a common five-position control stick would permit fast slewing or slow control
As mentioned earlier, the pursuit display permits the pilot to generate greater lead and anticipate the input, and consequently is of particular use for high frequency inputs or for controlling high order plants. On the other hand, error magnification can be far greater in a compensatory display, since the scale need only accommodate maximum tracking error rather than maximum output. Thus, highly accurate null readings can be achieved for low frequency inputs and well controlled vehicles.

**Inside-Out versus Outside-In**

The inside-out display, which is the conventional attitude instrument for aircraft, takes the aircraft as the fixed frame of reference and shows vehicle motion by movement of external reference lines or grids: the view from the inside of the vehicle looking out at the horizon.

The alternative view takes the external reference frame as fixed and shows the moving vehicle motion with respect to this frame. This approach is the outside-in method and corresponds to the view of a moving vehicle seen by an observer on the earth. Both are shown in figure 16-27. An interesting alternative suggestion by Fogel (1963) is the “Kinalog display,” in which the pilot’s sensation of rotation in a turn, attributable to interpretation of vestibular stimuli, is made compatible with the display format, so that both the aircraft symbol and the horizon rotate in conformity with the pilot’s kinesthetic adaptation to a turn.

Where problems of vertigo may be present, general practice is to rely upon inside-out displays and to train pilots to suppress or ignore motion cues.

![Figure 16-27. Inside-out and outside-in attitude displays.](image)

**Figure 16-27. Inside-out and outside-in attitude displays.**
(The aircraft is pitched nose-up and rolled left.)

**Display Formats**

Information is usually displayed in either a digital format, as numbers on a counter, or in a pure analog format such as length of a line or position of a pointer. There are, however, a number of mixed analog-digital displays, in which information is either presented both ways or in which the slowly changing portion is displayed digitally for unambiguous readout (as in the case of
to left or right, as well as null. The three-level controller of either the on-off or the pulse modulated type is useful for tracking situations requiring considerable operator lead. In controlling systems containing several integrators, for example, operators may prefer counting pulses to integrating their continuous control output (Young and Meiry, 1965).

**Displays**

This section discusses techniques for visual displays. Hardware, including developments in cathode ray tubes, electroluminescence, holographic displays, and other new techniques, is discussed fully in NASA SP-159 (1967), Poole (1966), and Luxenberg and Kuehn (1968). Some interesting aerospace applications of audio and tactile displays for control have been explored, but these are mostly in the research stage and are not, therefore, discussed here.

**Compensatory and Pursuit Displays**

Pursuit and compensatory displays correspond to pursuit and compensatory tracking, as discussed previously. In a pursuit display, the commanded state of the system (input) as well as the actual system state (output) is displayed separately, and the operator's task is to control the actual output so that it tracks the command. An example of a pursuit display is shown in figure 16-26(a). When only the error between ordered and actual system state is displayed, as in figure 16-26(b), the display is compensatory.

![Figure 16-26. Pursuit and compensatory displays.](image-url)
altimeters) and the rapidly moving portion is shown in an analog fashion. A variety of single quantitative instrument displays is shown in figure 16-28. Some of the pros and cons of various indicators are summarized in table 16-6.

Moving tape displays have the advantage of permitting a very wide range of readings to be displayed (as in the case of pursuit displays) while still offering a large magnification or error between command input and actual output. However, they may be difficult to read when they are in motion.

Combined analog and symbolic displays of submarine pitch angle with an increasingly symbolic emphasis: (a) pictorial; (b) moving pointer (angular correspondence preserved); (c) moving pointer (angular correspondence distorted); (d) rotating scale; (e) moving dial; (f) electronic digital display.

(a) (Kelley, 1968)

Figure 16–28. Various display formats.
Figure 16-28. Various display formats. – Continued
### Human Control Capabilities

#### Table 16-6

**Recommended Indicators According To Use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method of Use</th>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>Moving Scale</th>
<th>Moving Pointer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Quantitative reading | Good  
Minimum time and error in obtaining exact numerical value | Fair | Fair |
| Qualitative and check reading | Poor  
Numbers must be read. Position changes not easily detected | Poor  
Difficult to judge direction and magnitude of deviation without reading numbers and scale | Good  
Location of pointer easily detected. Numbers and scale need not be read. Change in position easily detected |
| Setting | Good  
Most accurate monitoring of numerical setting. Relation to motion of setting knob less direct than for moving pointer. Not readable during rapid setting | Fair  
Somewhat ambiguous relation to motion of setting knob. No pointer position change to aid monitoring. Not readable during rapid setting | Good  
Simple and direct relation of pointer motion to motion of setting knob. Pointer position change aids monitoring |
| Tracking | Poor  
No gross position changes to aid monitoring. Ambiguous relation to control motion. Not readable during rapid changes | Fair  
No pointer position changes to aid monitoring. Somewhat ambiguous relation to control motion. Not readable during rapid changes | Good  
Pointer position readily monitored and controlled. Most simple relation to manual control motion |

(Baker & Grether, 1954)

### Peripheral Displays

While most conventional displays are designed for foveal viewing, and require fixation and accommodation for accurate reading of the instrument, there are a number of applications for displays which can be read in peripheral vision. Peripheral displays may be used to avoid interference with the primary scan pattern and to present additional information outside the central instrument display area. Although the rods of the eye are capable of poorer resolution than are the cones, they respond well to motion. Several examples of motion displays are shown in figure 16-29. Peripheral motion displays are particularly appropriate for displaying vehicle rates of turn or linear velocities. Flashing lights are useful principally as warning indicators.
Coding of Visual Information

Further information can be added to the two dimensions of a displayed point by appropriate coding of the symbol. Coding may help in identifying the particular point (as in the case of air traffic control displays) or giving information on other dimensions. Use of alphanumeric identification tags is of great value, providing there is sufficient room to present legible alphanumerics without cluttering. A summary of other coding dimensions is given in table 16-7.

Integrated Displays, Contact Analog Displays, and Head-up Displays

In complex multi-axis control tasks, such as are typical of piloting aircraft or space vehicles, considerable assistance can be given the pilot by integrating related information on a single display. Generally, integrated displays show the rates of change of variables in proximity to the variable itself. Integrated displays permit the pilot to view a single display containing all relevant information and simplify his problem of reconstructing the geometrical status of a vehicle.

If the integrated display contains symbols or lines unrelated to real geometrical variables it is a symbolic display. If the elements of the display bear some relation to a picture of the outside reference frame, such as a pilot might view looking through a window, then the display is of the contact analog variety. (This is analogous to flying in “contact” or under visual flight rule conditions.) Examples of contact analog displays for terrain avoidance and for submarine control are given in figure 16-30.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Number of Steps</th>
<th>Evaluation</th>
<th>Combines With</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>4 – 5</td>
<td>Fair</td>
<td>Shape, color, brightness</td>
<td>Requires considerable display space. Limited usefulness. Best when used in combination codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>Size, color, motion, flash brightness</td>
<td>Certain shapes easily recognized. Requires good contrast and resolution. Combines well with other codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alphanumeric</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>Color, brightness</td>
<td>Requires good contrast and resolution. Easily learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>Size, shape, alphanumeric, motion, flash</td>
<td>Recognizable colors on CRTs limited to 4 – 7. Combines well with other codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion</td>
<td>1 – 2</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Shape, color, brightness</td>
<td>Hard to discriminate. Not recommended except for getting attention or to supplement other codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>1 – 3</td>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>Shape, color</td>
<td>Distracting and fatiguing. Not recommended except for getting attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Fair – good</td>
<td>Size, shape, alphanumeric, motion</td>
<td>Requires good contrast. Best when combines with other codes, as in shades of gray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Ketchel & Jenney, 1968)
(a) Terrain avoidance display. (Ketchel & Jenney, 1968, from Kaiser Aerospace and Electronics data)

(b) Simulation of the Norden contact analog perspective quickened display. (McLane & Wolf, 1968)

Figure 16–30. Contact analog displays.
An integrated display presented by reflecting a CRT-generated picture at optical infinity, so the operator can view the display while continuing to look out the window, is known as a *head-up display*. This configuration and an example are shown in figure 16-31. Integrated displays of the schematic or contact analog variety have been used with integration of pictures of the outside environment, which may be gathered from T.V., sonar, or radar data. Displays which emphasize attitude and position in a vertical plane may be thought of as forward-looking for a vehicle in level flight, and are known as vertical situation displays. Those which emphasize geographical information or position over the ground are horizontal situation indicators. Examples of each are given in figure 16-32.

![Diagram of head-up display](image)

**Figure 16-31.** Head-up display.
Figure 16-32. Vertical situation, horizontal situation and pictorial displays.
(Ketchel & Jenney, 1968)
Control Augmentation and Display Quickening

The human operator has difficulty controlling systems which contain more than two integrations, and operates best in systems approximating a single integration. When the controlled element is of a higher order than desired from a point of view of manual control, the designer can improve the dynamics of the total man-machine loop by control augmentation or quickening, as shown in figure 16-33. In control augmentation the dynamic compensation is performed on the man's output, by feedback of system output and its derivatives to the controlled element. Position and rate feedback in stability augmentation systems is a common technique to change the handling qualities of vehicles. As a consequence of control augmentation, however, man loses his direct control over the controlled element actuators, and controls the vehicle only indirectly through a servomechanism. Typically, with control augmentation the man has full information on vehicle output and operates with a status display.

An alternative method of improving the loop dynamics by derivative feedback is adding lead through the addition of output derivatives in the display, thereby operating on the operator's input. When the displayed signal is a weighted sum of output and several of its derivatives, the technique is known as quickening (figure 16-34a). If some derivative signal is added to the display but the human operator must still generate lead equalization to perform the task, then it is known as a partially quickened display. If, on the other hand, just enough derivative feedback is added to the display so that the operator need merely move the control stick in proportion to the deflection on the display, then the display is fully quickened.

The appropriate gains on the output derivatives for fully quickened displays are selected by assuming that the operator is a pure time delay of 0.2 to 0.3 second for single axis tracking. The principal disadvantage of the display quickening technique is that the operator functions merely as a control amplifier and no longer has status information on the vehicle output. He is thus deprived of his ability to exercise choice in the method of control. The pros and cons of display augmentation versus control augmentation are summarized in table 16-8.

Command and status displays are closely related to the question of control display quickening and control augmentation. A status display presents
information on the ordered system output, the current system output, and whatever additional state variables may be necessary to help its operator control the system. The additional status information may include derivatives or integrals of system output, or settings of intermediate control variables, such as rocket gimbal angles or aerodynamic surfaces. The operator uses the status display to choose an appropriate control action, which may take into account many additional constraints, such as acceleration, fuel, or time. By having

![Quickened Display](image1)

![Supplementary Velocity Display](image2)

![Phase Plane](image3)

![Supplement Derivatives](image4)

Figure 16-34. Display quickening.

Table 16-8
Display vs. Control Augmentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Augmentation</th>
<th>Control Augmentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operations performed on man’s input</td>
<td>Operations performed on man’s output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attention is transferred from outer-loop goal to inner-loop functioning</td>
<td>Attention is transferred from inner-loop functioning to outer-loop goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can employ man’s muscular strength at the control junction in the inner loop to move a control surface, open a hydraulic valve, etc</td>
<td>Can employ man’s senses in the outer loop to observe the controlled variable and the environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man is kept aware of control signal</td>
<td>Man is kept aware of system output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires higher frequency, more complex human output</td>
<td>Requires simpler, lower frequency output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Kelley, 1968)
complete status information the operator can exercise his judgment in selecting a control sequence. To help him in this control, he may be assisted by varying degrees of control augmentation, as discussed above.

In the case of a pure command display, the operator is given information on required control action to achieve the desired system output. The display may be quickened or include other computation to ease the operator's task and, in the extreme, he need merely act as a proportional controller. Although the results may be satisfactory according to the computed response, the operator loses the ability to adapt to changing situations.

Frequently, command and status displays are combined, so that the pilot can follow the commanded control if he wishes or take alternative action based on the status information.

Supplementary Velocity Indication

Several techniques have been used to present supplementary velocity indication without the loss of output state or error information associated with quickening. For example, supplementary velocity may be displayed by a variable length vector attached to the display spot, as shown in figure 16-34(b) or by use of a second axis to indicate velocity, as in the phase plane of figure 16-34(c). Finally, separate needle indicators on the derivatives for a two-axis display when appropriately arranged can yield supplementary velocity information to be used by the pilot, as shown in figure 16-34(d).

Predictor Displays

A powerful technique for stabilizing man-machine loops by putting lead information into the display, without removing the human operator from his role as an adaptive controller, is the use of a predictor instrument. A trace extends from the current output or error into the future. The trace representing future output is generated rapidly and repeatedly by use of a fast time model of the controlled element, which has the same initial conditions and control signals as those being applied to the actual controlled element. When used with systems having several integrations or with very slowly responding systems, the predictor display is of great value. It allows the operator to experiment with several different control possibilities off-line before actually applying one to the controlled element. Possible formats for the predictor display are shown in figure 16-35.

Preview Displays

Preview displays are related to predictor displays. In most control applications involving human operators, some explicit information concerning the input which will reach him in the future is available, and his control actions are based to a great extent on this preview. A view of the road and obstacles ahead or of the runway on which he will be landing is used by the operator in his role as a preview controller. Displays which can incorporate information on
Figure 16–35. Predator displays.
future inputs may be presented in a manner analogous to those of predicted future outputs for the predictor display. Models of the human controller, developed for compensatory tracking situations and extendable to pursuit tracking, are clearly inappropriate for the preview situations so common in controlling vehicles with a view of the external surround. Some optimal control models applicable to the preview situation have been developed and tested (Sheridan, 1966).

Display Intermittency

Intermittent flashing of a display, or low frequency updating of a display, may lead to increased tracking errors. Well below the theoretical limits of sampling (twice the highest input frequency), tracking degrades because of interference with the ability to extract rate information and the appearance of flicker. The on-time of the display as well as the flash rate influences the performance, as shown in figure 16-36.

![Figure 16-36. Display intermittency. (Senders et al., 1966)](image-url)

Display Layout

Most display layouts follow usual workspace guidelines and common sense. Related instruments should be grouped together. Instruments requiring frequent attention should be in the optimum viewing zone. Null indicating instruments should be oriented so that the pointers are all directed the same way for normal conditions, to assist monitoring. Recommended console dimensions and viewing angles for a seated operator are given in figure 16-37. Other such layout considerations exist for aircraft panel design (for example see A. F. Systems Command, 1969).
Figure 16-37. Recommended console dimensions and viewing angles. (Kubokawa, 1968; used by permission of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers)
Figure 16-37. Recommended console dimensions and viewing angles. (Kubokawa, 1968; used by permission of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) – Continued

References

Adams, James L. An investigation of the effects of the time lag due to long transmission distances upon remote control: Phase I—tracking experiments. NASA TN D-1211, Stanford University, Stanford, Calif., December 1961.


Harper, R. P. In-flight simulation of the lateral directional handling qualities of entry vehicles. WADC TR 61-147, Wright Air Development Center, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, 1961.


Sheridan, T. B. Three models of preview control. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers Transactions on Human Factors in Electronics, 1966, HFE-7(2), 91-102.


Young, L. R., & Meiry, J. L. Bang-bang aspects of manual control in high order systems. 
*Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers Transactions on Automatic Control*, 
CHAPTER 17
ATMOSPHERE CONTROL

by
Walton L. Jones, M.D.

and
A. L. Ingelfinger

National Aeronautics and Space Administration

The life support system regulates the temperature, pressure and humidity of the spacecraft atmosphere. In addition, the system controls the constituents of the atmosphere, removing carbon dioxide and trace contaminants; supplying oxygen to replace that lost by leakage and metabolic consumption; and supplying nitrogen to replace that lost by leakage. In order to design an acceptable life support system a number of design parameters must be established. Many of these parameters are related to the requirements of the crew and, therefore, are established in large degree by medical personnel. In addition, vehicle configuration will significantly influence the requirements for the life support system. When the man, mission and vehicle characteristics are established, however, then subsystem parameters must be selected which best integrate into the most effective life support/environmental control system. This chapter examines all functions of the atmosphere control system and presents representative performance data and physiological data for the most promising subsystems developed to date.

Figure 17-1 indicates schematically the principal functions of an atmosphere control system and the interconnection of the various subsystems. An operational system is, of course, greatly more complicated than the schematic suggests, but the figure is included as an aid to those who may be unfamiliar with the essentials of providing breathable atmospheres in spacecraft. Very briefly stated, the system operates as follows. Cabin air laden with humidity is dried, and trace gas contaminants generated by the crew and equipment are removed. Carbon dioxide is then extracted and concentrated in the carbon removal unit and purified air is returned to the cabin. The concentrated carbon...
Figure 17-1. Schematic atmosphere control system for space vehicle application.
dioxide is then processed to recover oxygen, and carbon compounds are dumped overboard (or, in future systems, possibly cracked or used in attitude control). It should be emphasized that a typical system is being illustrated here. Particular processes will depend upon both mission parameters and available technology.

Table 17-1 shows a materials mass for a one-man life support system. It also includes urine and wash water reclamation units (Jackson, 1971).

**Table 17-1**

Space Cabin Mass Balance

(Pounds/Man-Day, Based On 2800 KCal/Day)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Potable Water Recovery</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Output</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 3.45 lb urine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 3.08 lb respiration and perspiration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- .25 lb feces and H2O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Output</td>
<td>6.78 lb H2O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- .66 lb metabolic H2O from 1.3 lb dry food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total required</td>
<td>6.12 lb/men for drinking and rehydrating food</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oxygen Recovery**

- 2.12 lb CO2 from concentrator
- .24 lb H2 (electrolysis and stores—Sabatier reactants)

To produce:
- 1.01 lb H2O from Sabatier
- 1.06 lb H2O from storage

Total:
- 2.07 lb H2O electrolyzed

To produce:
- 1.83 lb O2

**Wash Water**

- 25 lb recovered and recycled

**Oxygen and Nitrogen leakage**

- 1.5 lb/day

(Jackson, 1971)

**Carbon Dioxide**

Man functions as a combustion heat engine, continuously consuming oxygen and producing carbon dioxide and water vapor as a part of the life processes. In closed atmospheres, the concentrations of these waste products must be controlled. Carbon dioxide management implies its removal from the breathing
gas supply and its disposal. The removal process can be accomplished by a variety of different methods, including adsorbents, solid and liquid absorbents, diffusion cells, and electrochemical cells. The carbon dioxide which is separated from the breathing gas can be dumped overboard, stored onboard, or processed to recover the oxygen contained therein for reuse. Presented in this section are representative data for the most promising carbon dioxide removal and/or collection methods, discussed in the following order:

1. Lithium Hydroxide
2. Solid Amines
3. Hydrogen-Depolarized Cells
4. Molecular Sieves

Lithium Hydroxide

Of all the CO₂ removal methods, lithium hydroxide has been used most in spacecraft application. This choice was based on the relatively high CO₂ absorption capacity of LiOH per unit mass of material, coupled with a lower-than-average heat of absorption. Table 17-2 compares the performance of LiOH with a number of other CO₂ absorbents.

Table 17-2: Theoretical Performance of Carbon Dioxide Absorbents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Theo. CO₂ Capacity (lb CO₂/lb Absorbent)</th>
<th>Heat of Absorption (Btu/lb CO₂)</th>
<th>Carbonate Decomposition Temperature (OF)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lithium oxide</td>
<td>Li₂O</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>2210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithium hydroxide</td>
<td>LiOH</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>875</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium oxide</td>
<td>Na₂O</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>3140</td>
<td>1290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium hydroxide</td>
<td>NaOH</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1228</td>
<td>1290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium oxide</td>
<td>K₂O</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>3620</td>
<td>1340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium hydroxide</td>
<td>KOH</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>1395</td>
<td>1340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium oxide</td>
<td>MgO</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>1150</td>
<td>840-1020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium hydroxide</td>
<td>Mg(OH)₂</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>840-1020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium oxide</td>
<td>CaO</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>1738</td>
<td>1345-1515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium hydroxide</td>
<td>Ca(OH)₂</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>1345-1515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver oxide</td>
<td>Ag₂O</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>250-300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium oxide</td>
<td>CdO</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>975</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Coe et al., 1962)

LiOH absorbs CO₂ from a gas mixture and in the presence of water vapor. A cabin relative humidity of 50 to 70 percent usually provides sufficient water
vapor for the absorption reaction to take place. The reaction is given by the following equation:

$$2\text{LiOH} + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

This reaction is exothermal, producing 875 BTU per pound of CO$_2$ absorbed, assuming the water of reaction is evolved as vapor. Table 17-3 lists some of the properties of LiOH as a CO$_2$ absorbent.

Table 17-3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties of Lithium Hydroxide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical formula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melting point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density of crystals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulk density of granular LiOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical CO$_2$ absorption capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat of absorption (H$_2$O gas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water of reaction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Coe et al., 1962)

The dynamic removal efficiency which expresses the reduction in CO$_2$ concentration across the bed varies with time in the operation of a LiOH canister as the absorbent is used up. Usually, as shown in Figure 17-2, removal efficiency remains high (in excess of 70 percent) until the "breakthrough" point in time is approached. The breakthrough point is defined as the time when the CO$_2$ concentration in the effluent gas from a given canister reaches a specified value. It is apparent that utilization efficiency to some extent will be a function of the breakthrough point specified. Typically, a breakthrough point corresponding to a $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ of 8.0 mm Hg is used for rating or performance comparison purposes.

Figure 17-3 shows the temperature rise across a lithium hydroxide canister assuming that all of the water of reaction is evolved as vapor.

Inspection of a psychrometric chart shows that, for any case where the temperature of the air is not lower than 32°F and the pressure is not higher than one atmosphere, the slope of the process line in the LiOH bed is such that the increase in temperature of the air will be ample to provide vaporization of all the moisture produced in the chemical reaction. Operation of the LiOH canister with inlet gas temperatures around 120°F appears to result in higher utilization efficiencies than does operation at lower temperatures.
Solid Amines

Another type of chemical CO₂ absorption is based on the use of organic amines. These compounds are highly basic and react with CO₂ to form carbonates. At elevated temperatures, the reaction can be reversed, enabling the use of amines in a regenerative system. Liquid amines have been used in industrial applications and on submarines. These systems usually employ monoethanol amine (MEA), although other members of the same chemical series are also effective. The attractive regenerative properties of the aliphatic amines have led to research on the possibility of employing solid amines, preferably in the form of resins, in order to avoid the zero-g liquid handling problems associated with solutions.

Investigations of the use of amine resins for CO₂ absorption have been carried out using both commercially available ion exchange resins and special resins synthesized for this purpose. Tests of the commercial resins have indicated that the strongly basic resins absorb CO₂ at relatively rapid rates, but that only limited regeneration is possible with the application of heat. The weakly basic resins, on the other hand, exhibit slow CO₂ absorption rates but permit greater thermal regeneration. Specially prepared amine resins, in which excess aliphatic amines are added to epoxy resins, in certain cases yield resins that can be regenerated completely by heating and that show rapid CO₂ absorption rates. Solid amine systems remove CO₂ from cabin air by means of cyclic absorption/desorption in suitable granular amine resins. The chemical nature of the bonding between CO₂ and these resins provides a CO₂ removal method which is feasible for cabin PCO₂ levels of 3 mm Hg or less.
Dynamic CO₂ absorption and desorption processes, as well as equilibrium CO₂ bed loading conditions, are extremely sensitive to the amount of water present. For example, for Rohm and Haas IR-45 resin, increases in bed water content up to as high as 40 percent weight result in correspondingly increased absorption efficiencies. However, for this resin, water vapor content higher than 25 percent causes excessive pressure drop and flooding. Table 17-4 lists some of the physical and chemical characteristics of IR-45. Also shown in Figure 17-4 is the transient outlet PCO₂ as a function of time and bed water content. Representative dynamic removal efficiency curves and the overall time integrated removal efficiency, which may be used in sizing IR-45 beds, are also presented in Figure 17-4.

With the solid amines bed cooler than approximately 140°F, the absorption process takes place according to the following relationship:

\[
R \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{RNH}_3^+ + \text{HCO}_3^-
\]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical Characteristics</th>
<th>Chemical Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physical form</td>
<td>Uniform, beadlike particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>39-43 lb/ft(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture content</td>
<td>37-45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen grading</td>
<td>20-50 mesh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective size</td>
<td>0.35-0.50mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniformity coefficient</td>
<td>1.6 max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voids</td>
<td>35-45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange capacity</td>
<td>43 Kg/ft(^3) max as CaCO(_3) (27 Kg dynamic capacity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH Range</td>
<td>0-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical stability</td>
<td>Excellent; completely insoluble and inert in strong acids (except nitric), coned alkalies, aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons, alcohols, ethers and all other common solvents; prolonged exposure to strong oxidizing agents should be avoided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability at elevated temperatures</td>
<td>Outstanding; exchange capacity unchanged after prolonged exposure to boiling water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Martin & Brose, 1970)

The desorption of solid amines may be accomplished by the application of heat and/or vacuum, or steam. For the case of steam desorbed resins, desorption is accomplished by flowing superheated steam into the bed in the axial direction. The steam condenses on the resin, heats the resin and displaces the CO\(_2\) and air. The process occurs in "chromatographic" fashion. That is, steam, CO\(_2\), and air are found in individual zones which travel along the length of the bed. The displaced CO\(_2\) is reabsorbed immediately ahead of the steam zone and the air is displaced ahead of the CO\(_2\)-rich zone. This chromatographic feature of the desorption process facilitates separation of CO\(_2\) from air and steam. Flows of the separate quantities of gas in each of the zones have associated physical properties which can be sensed and used in control schemes for diverting the CO\(_2\)-rich flow to the CO\(_2\) accumulator and also for diverting the air and steam flows back to the cabin via a condensing heat exchanger. Figure 17-5 shows representative performance data for the steam desorbed resin CO\(_2\) concentrator used in the NASA Langley Research Center/McDonnell Douglas 90-day manned test. The lower curve shows the mixed P\(_{CO_2}\) downstream of the two absorption
Atmosphere Control

Hydrogen-Depolarized Cells

Hydrogen-depolarized cells are basically electrochemical concentration cells which employ an aqueous carbonate electrolyte to transfer CO$_2$ from the cathode side of the cell, where CO$_2$-laden cabin atmosphere is introduced, to the anode side where hydrogen is introduced. The chemical and electrochemical reactions occurring in the cell are as shown in Figure 17-6.

The necessary number of hydrogen-depolarized cells should be series connected. Tests (Heubscher & Blakely, 1970) have indicated that uniform distribution of hydrogen flow could not be continuously achieved when the cells were in a parallel H$_2$ flow configuration. On the other hand, when a series configuration was used in which the first of 10 cells received pure hydrogen and the last cell received 70 percent hydrogen and 30 percent CO$_2$, stable performance was obtained. Figure 17-7 shows performance curves for the series connected hydrogen-depolarized cell module tested in the study referred to here. Cesium carbonate was much more desirable in the CO$_2$ collection application than other electrolytes with lesser solubility in water (Heubscher & Blakely, 1970). Electrochemical devices that employ aqueous electrolytes are especially sensitive to water balance. When the electrolyte becomes too concentrated as a result of a water imbalance, precipitates form at the anode of the cell, reducing cell voltage and CO$_2$ transfer rate and may even result in gas crossover from anode to cathode. Consequently, electrolytes with high solubility in water are favored. The physical characteristics of a hydrogen-depolarized cell module currently undergoing development testing are shown in Table 17-5. The hydrogen-depolarized cell system readily lends itself to zero gravity operation.
since mass transfer occurs only in the gaseous state. There are no free liquids or components dependent upon gravity operation.

**Figure 17-5. NASA Langley Research Center/McDonnell Douglas manned test: amine resin CO₂ concentrator performance. (Jackson, 1971)**

**Molecular Sieves**

Regenerative molecular sieve units use granular synthetic zeolites as the basic CO₂ collecting material. The zeolites are metal ion alumino silicates which have a relatively high affinity for CO₂, but a still higher affinity for water. Thus, desiccants must be used to reduce the moisture content in the cabin atmosphere before it is introduced into the zeolite beds. Desiccant materials may be either silica gel or another synthetic zeolite. Molecular sieve units usually include air coolers to lower the temperature of the atmosphere being fed to the zeolite canisters to increase the CO₂ adsorption capacity of these beds. The synthetic zeolites of interest for CO₂ adsorption have a heat of adsorption of 300 BTU/lb of CO₂, a specific heat of 0.25 BTU/lb°F, a thermal conductivity of 0.34 BTU/hr ft°F, and a density of approximately 45 lb/ft³. Figures 17-8 and 17-9 show equilibrium adsorption isotherms for molecular sieves and silica gel.
Figure 17–6. Hydrogen depolarized cell. (Wynveen & Quatrone, 1971)

Table 17–5
Physical Characteristics of Developmental Hydrogen Depolarized Cell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electrode area</td>
<td>35 in² (per cell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrode type</td>
<td>AB-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte matrix</td>
<td>Asbestos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte</td>
<td>Cs₂CO₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell material</td>
<td>Injection molded polysulfone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas cavity spacer</td>
<td>Expanded titanium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat removal plates (current collectors)</td>
<td>Titanium-clad copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seals</td>
<td>Flat, ethylene-propylene gaskets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell size (overall)</td>
<td>7.7 x 13.7 x 0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current density (max)</td>
<td>40 ASF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of cells per module</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module size (overall)</td>
<td>7.7 x 13.7 x 4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂ transfer rate</td>
<td>0.234 lb/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂ partial pressure</td>
<td>3.8 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Huebscher & Babinsky, 1970)
Three typical methods of CO₂ removal by molecular sieve materials which may be used for different spacecraft applications are considered here. These are all of the regenerative type. They are: (1) a two-bed adiabatic system utilizing two types of sieve material within each bed (one type for water adsorption, one for CO₂ adsorption); (2) a two-bed system similar to the first type but having silica gel as the desiccant and a fluid heat exchanger in the silica gel; and (3) an isothermal four-bed system whereby the silica gel and molecular sieve materials are contained in separate beds and in which each bed is provided with integral fluid heat exchangers. The first two methods vent both water and CO₂ to space. The third provides water recovery and, if desired, CO₂ collection for oxygen recovery. The operating characteristics for each of these methods are discussed in the following paragraphs.
**Two-Bed Molecular Sieve – Water Adsorption/CO₂ Adsorption.** This type system is primarily for low gas flow rate application. It has a small pressure drop and high removal efficiency. The molecular sieve beds are provided with a Linde Type 13X zeolite for water removal and a Linde Type 5A zeolite for CO₂ removal. Electrical heaters are provided for bakeout of the beds should they become “poisoned” with water; otherwise, normal regeneration simply involves venting the beds to the space environment. This system usually operates on a 15-minute adsorption/desorption cycle. Inlet process air is 45° to 55°F and saturated.

**Two-Bed Molecular Sieve – Silica Gel Desiccant and Fluid Heat Exchanger.** This system utilizes silica gel as a desiccant in each bed. The silica gel bed contains an integral fluid heat exchanger to improve its water adsorption and desorption characteristics. The molecular sieve portion of the bed also contains electrical heaters to aid adsorption and desorption of the molecular sieve bed if it becomes “poisoned” with water. This system is also a low gas flow, small pressure drop, high removal efficiency type. Operation usually involves a 30-minute adsorption/desorption cycle, 120°F heating fluid, 60°F cooling fluid, and 45 to 55°F saturated inlet air.

**Isothermal, Four-Bed Sieve.** In this method, the silica gel and molecular sieve materials are packaged in separate beds. Each bed is provided with an integral heat exchanger to improve adsorption and desorption characteristics. A schematic of the system is shown in Figure 17-10. In the operational mode shown in the schematic, silica gel bed No. 1 and molecular sieve bed No. 1 are being cooled and are in their adsorption cycle. The gas from molecular sieve bed No. 1 is then passed through silica gel bed No. 2 which is concurrently heated to desorb trapped water and return it to the cabin. At this time, molecular sieve bed No. 2 is being heated and desorbed. The CO₂ may be vented to space. If, however, an oxygen recovery subsystem is used, recovered CO₂ is pumped into an accumulator or recovery unit. When pumps are used, a higher temperature is required for CO₂ desorption because of the pump limitations. The isothermal, four-bed molecular sieve system usually operates on a 30-minute adsorption/desorption cycle, with process air supplied saturated at 40°F. Cooling fluid is supplied at approximately 40°F, and heating fluid at approximately 300°F.

Experimental work with molecular sieves (Houck et al., 1970) shows that as the heating fluid temperature decreases, the equilibrium chamber CO₂ concentration increases. This fact is illustrated in Figure 17-11. Heating fluid temperature in the study represented was varied over a range of 200°F to 338°F.

The high weight penalties associated with providing fluids at the elevated temperatures required for efficient molecular sieve operation led to the search for other CO₂ concentration methods, notably solid amines and hydrogen-depolarized cells. Another factor militating against the use of molecular sieves is their decreased adsorptive capacity at low CO₂ partial pressures (negligible at 1.0 mm Hg) which is incompatible with the current trend toward low cabin PCO₂ levels.
Oxygen Regeneration

The recovery of oxygen from exhaled carbon dioxide is essential for long-duration space flights. The recovery process of choice involves, first, carbon dioxide reduction, and, second, electrolysis of the product water to liberate oxygen. Several techniques for the reduction of CO₂ have been under consideration. The four methods which have received the most intensive study and development efforts are described in this section. These are: the Sabatier, Bosch, solid electrolyte, and molten carbonate processes.
Carbon Dioxide Reduction

Sabatier Process. The Sabatier process involves the hydrogenation of CO₂ over a 400° to 700°F catalyst in a reactor. The Sabatier reaction is summarized by the following equation:

\[ \text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \]

The Sabatier water product is electrolyzed to oxygen, for breathing, and to hydrogen for return to the Sabatier reactor. The methane produced may be disposed of in one of the following ways:

1. Overboard dumping.
2. Decomposing the methane to carbon and hydrogen, with return of the hydrogen to process streams and collection of solid carbon.
3. Converting the methane to a compound containing a smaller proportion of hydrogen (e.g., acetylene), separating the gases, dumping the acetylene overboard, and returning hydrogen to process streams.

From the equilibrium equation for the Sabatier reaction, Gibb's free energy relation, enthalpies and standard heat of formation, the theoretical degree of CO₂ conversion can be related directly to the equilibrium temperature (Jackson, 1971). This relationship is depicted in Figure 17-12, which shows the maximum possible CO₂ conversion at atmospheric pressure and any given temperature for a stoichiometric H₂:CO₂ ratio of 4:1. From this curve it can be seen that, from equilibrium considerations, it is desirable to operate the reaction at temperatures approximating 300°F for 100 percent CO₂ conversion, or up to 400°F for 99 percent conversion; operation at temperatures higher than these prohibits this high degree of CO₂ conversion. At low temperatures (300° to 500°F), conversion occurs only with the proper choice of catalyst. The precious metals ruthenium, rhodium, and iridium are the most effective catalyzing materials for promoting the reduction reaction, with 0.5 percent ruthenium-on-alumina the best of these (Thompson, 1964–1967).

The Sabatier stoichiometric H₂:CO₂ ratio of 4:1 for complete conversion of CO₂ to methane is not optimum in an actual unit. Optimum reaction rates have been experimentally determined to be a molar ratio of 4.35:1 (Yakut & Barker, 1969). However, the ratio used should be based on mission tradeoffs, including water availability, stored O₂ and H₂ gas weight penalties and water electrolysis penalty. For some mission applications, it may be advantageous not to store H₂ onboard but to use a CO₂-rich mixture to insure maximum conversion of hydrogen. Such a mission application was simulated in a 90-day manned test conducted by the NASA Langley Research Center and McDonnell Douglas Astronautics Company. Figure 17-13 shows the Sabatier feed gas mixture ratio for this test.

Hydrogenation catalysts are poisoned by halogen or sulfur-containing compounds, so these must be excluded from the feed gas. The effect of contaminants on the conversion of CO₂ to CH₄ is shown in Figure 17-14. As
the figure indicates, halogen-containing compounds are more poisonous than sulfur-containing compounds.

\[ \text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \]

\[ R = \frac{\text{H}_2}{\text{CO}_2} \text{ ratio, volumetric} \]

\[ \pi - \text{REACTION PRESSURE, psia} \]

Figure 17-12. Theoretical CO\(_2\) equilibrium conversion vs temperature for Sabatier reaction. (Remus et al., 1965)

Other factors also influence the efficiency of CO\(_2\) conversion. Extremely short reactor beds may introduce channeling and extremely long beds result in a large pressure drop, both of which reduce conversion efficiency. Space velocity appears to have a much greater negative influence on the reaction rate than mass velocity. Space velocity is volume-dependent and is characterized by the volume of feed in a unit time per volume of catalyst. The reaction products, CH\(_4\) and water, have little effect on the Sabatier reaction rate.
Figure 17–13. NASA Langley Research Center/McDonnell Douglas 90-day test Sabatier mixture ratio. High mixture ratios resulted from reducing the catalyst with hydrogen to overcome poisoning. (Jackson, 1971)

Figure 17–14. Effect of contaminants on the conversion of CH₂ to CH₄. (Adlhart & Hartner, 1967)
A summary material balance for the 90-day test Sabatier reactor is presented in Table 17-6. The table shows that the overall conversion of H₂ to water and CH₄ was 95 percent and overall CO₂ conversion was 66 percent.

Table 17-6
Sabatier Subsystem Material Balance for 90-Day Test

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material In</th>
<th>636.9 lb</th>
<th>Material Out</th>
<th>332.0 lb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>636.9 lb</td>
<td>Water to electric cell</td>
<td>332.0 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>Methane</td>
<td>152.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>217.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>16.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water vapor</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water exhausted</td>
<td>25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>748.1 lb</td>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>748.2 lb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bosch Reaction. The Bosch carbon dioxide reduction reaction is usually summarized by the following equation:

$$\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{C} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 595 \text{ W-hr/kg CO}_2$$

The reaction occurs in the presence of an iron catalyst at temperatures of 1100° to 1800°F. Partial conversion is achieved, ranging from 30 percent at the lower temperatures up to 98 percent at higher temperatures. Unfortunately, maximum carbon formation occurs in the Bosch reaction temperature range. Within this range, additional reaction also occur. This results in the production of carbon monoxide and methane, as follows:

$$\text{CO}_2 + \text{C} \rightarrow 2\text{CO}$$
$$2\text{H}_2 + \text{C} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4$$

The gases resulting from the side reactions above are usually recycled to achieve a higher degree of conversion.

The rate of the Bosch reaction is controlled by many apparently independent but nonetheless interrelated variables. The most important variables relate to the conditions in the reactor. Reaction kinetics are, for example, influenced by reactor temperature and gas flow rate or recycle rate, which is
controlled by the recycle compressor. Increasing the flow rate through the reactor increases the probable number of collisions per unit time, thereby increasing the reaction rate, and this, in turn, calls for higher compressor power requirements. Experiments conducted to investigate the effects of reactant gas \( \text{H}_2 : \text{CO}_2 \) volume ratio on conversion rates (Clark, 1967) have shown that conversion rates are somewhat insensitive to gas ratios. However, a hydrogen-rich ratio appears more conducive to higher conversion rates.

One of the major development problems encountered with the Bosch reactor is that of solid carbon collection. Two catalyst configurations have been utilized. One consists of an expendable static cartridge of steel wool and the other is a rotating assembly of low-carbon steel plates. Emphasis is placed at the present time on developing a Bosch \( \text{CO}_2 \) reduction unit with expendable catalyst cartridges. Typical test data from a Bosch system are shown in Table 17-7. The data in the table were taken after a 12-hour leadtime for warm-up.

**Solid Electrolyte System.** The solid electrolyte system utilizes a solid electrolyte reactor and a carbon monoxide disproportionation reactor for the complete reduction of carbon dioxide to carbon and oxygen. A typical solid electrolyte reactor (Weissbart & Smart, 1970) is comprised of a number of two-cell drums. Each drum consists of two electrolyte disks, each having 20-cm\(^2\) electrodes, sealed to a 6.3-cm diameter zirconia-calcia ring body. Disks (0.08 to 0.22 cm thick) are made from hot-pressed compacts of scandia-stabilized zirconia. Typical electrolyzer modules are assembled by connecting drums to alumina manifold tubes by means of metal gas-feed tubulations. Modules incorporate parallel gas flow through the drums and series electrical connection between the cells. For a gas stream including \( \text{CO}_2 \) and water vapor the following reactions occur at the cathode:

\[
2\text{CO}_2 + 4e^- \rightarrow 2\text{CO} + 2\text{O}^2-
\]

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} + 2e^- \rightarrow \text{H}_2 + \text{O}^2-
\]

At temperatures of 525\(^\circ\) to 700\(^\circ\)C (1000\(^\circ\) to 1300\(^\circ\)F), the \( \text{O}^2- \) ions are transported across the oxide film by the potential gradient. (The reactions are enhanced by the presence of water in the gas stream.) The oxygen ion then migrates through vacancies in the crystal lattice of the solid electrolyte material to the anode, where the ion is converted to an oxygen atom. The cell material is essentially impermeable to non-ionic species (in particular to CO) so that pure \( \text{O}_2 \) is formed at the anode and may be sent to the cabin with no further processing other than cooling. The cell consumes power for decomposition of \( \text{CO}_2 \) and resistance heating of the solid electrolyte. The unit must be well insulated to prevent heat leakage which would decrease performance. An auxiliary heater in the cell is designed to bring it to operating temperature.

The free energy change involved in the decomposition of \( \text{CO}_2 \) to CO and to \( \text{O}_2 \) is 123 kcal/gram-mole of \( \text{O}_2 \). This corresponds to a theoretical power requirement for a cell of 136 W/kg of \( \text{CO}_2 \) per day. The mixture of CO and \( \text{CO}_2 \)
from the cell cathode is passed through a catalytic reactor which converts CO to CO$_2$ (returned to the electrolytic cell) and to solid carbon. The free energy change in this reaction is 29 kcal/gram-mole of carbon. This corresponds to a heat dissipation requirement of 735 W/kg of CO$_2$ per day.

Table 17-7
Typical Bosch Carbon Dioxide Reduction System Test Data*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Collection Time</th>
<th>1535</th>
<th>1600</th>
<th>1630</th>
<th>1700</th>
<th>1730</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$ Feed Rate, lb/day</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>11.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$ Feed Rate, lb/day</td>
<td>0.900</td>
<td>0.960</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycle Rate, cfm</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge Rate, cfm</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Separator Pressure, psig</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>2.16</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosch Reactor Pressure, psig</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>8.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature, °F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosch Reactor</td>
<td>1230</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>1240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Collector</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Separator</td>
<td>47.3</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>44.7</td>
<td>44.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressor Discharge</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosch Reactor Inlet</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>810</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosch Reactor Power, watts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Heater **</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary Heater</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas Analysis, volume %</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$</td>
<td>43.0</td>
<td>69.4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>56.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_4$</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N$_2$</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O$_2$</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Rate, lb/day</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical Water Rate, lb/day</td>
<td>7.91</td>
<td>8.31</td>
<td>8.88</td>
<td>8.94</td>
<td>8.94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* NASA/Langley ILSS Bosch reactor operated at 10 psia.
** Main heater started at 500 W and reduced gradually to 200 W as reactor came up to temperature. (Armstrong, 1966)

A flow diagram of a typical solid electrolyte system is presented in Figure 17-15. The regenerative heat exchanger pictured cools the gas products to approximately 950°F, which is the operating temperature of the catalytic reactor. The catalyst used in the reactor is nickel or stainless steel. Carbon build-up is sensed by a pressure switch which signals for a
change of catalyst bed when necessary. The catalytic reaction is exothermic and no heating is needed once the system has reached operating temperature.

Figure 17-15. Solid electrolyte system schematic. (Weissbart et al., 1971)

A comparison of a number of solid electrolyte reactors is presented in Table 17-8.

*Molten Carbonate Process.* The molten carbonate process involves both chemical and electrochemical reactions. When CO₂ is introduced into a molten lithium carbonate electrolysis cell, first, Li₂CO₃ is electrolyzed to Li₂O, carbon, and O₂. Lithium oxide then reacts with CO₂ to reform Li₂CO₃. Carbon, from the first reaction, is deposited on the cathode, while the O₂ to be collected is generated at the anode. Electrolysis of pure molten carbonate can be satisfactorily accomplished in a gravity field (Stein, 1965); however, a satisfactory solution for phase separation of the gases from the molten salts in zero gravity has not been found. The high operating temperature also requires heat-resistant materials and accelerates corrosion of the equipment.
### Table 17-8
Components and Performance Characteristics of Several Solid Oxide Electrolyte Electrolysis Units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drums unit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cells/unit</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint sealant</td>
<td>Au and Au-Pd³</td>
<td>Au and Au-Pd³</td>
<td>Au and Au-Pd³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte configuration</td>
<td>Disk</td>
<td>Disk</td>
<td>Disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disk thickness, cm</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.08 - 0.22</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical connection</td>
<td>Series</td>
<td>Series</td>
<td>Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas flow pattern</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active area/cell, cm²</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating temperature, °C</td>
<td>870</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte composition</td>
<td>((\text{ZrO}<em>2)</em>{0.92}(\text{Sc}_2\text{O}<em>3)</em>{0.08})</td>
<td>((\text{ZrO}<em>2)</em>{0.95}(\text{Sc}_2\text{O}<em>3)</em>{0.08}) &amp; ((\text{ZrO}<em>2)</em>{0.93}(\text{Sc}_2\text{O}<em>3)</em>{0.07})</td>
<td>((\text{ZrO}<em>2)</em>{0.93}(\text{Sc}_2\text{O}<em>3)</em>{0.07})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current density, mA/cm²</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial average cell voltage, V</td>
<td>1.94</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td>1.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final average cell voltage, V</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>2.04</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time in operation, hr</td>
<td>750⁴</td>
<td>250⁴</td>
<td>1800⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen purity, %</td>
<td>100⁶</td>
<td>96⁷</td>
<td>100⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen current efficiency, %</td>
<td>Initial</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Final</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolysis power, W/m³</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Initial</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Final</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>40 – 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion of CO₂, %</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Reactor for disproportionation of CO from electrolyzer gas stream to carbon and CO₂ was operated at 556°C and reactor exit gas stream was vented. 2 Two-cell basic building block of electrolyzer modules, consisting of 2 electrode disks attached to a ceramic body or ring, containing metal gas inlet and outlet tubes, and current collector leadthroughs. 3 Gas-tight, gold and gold-palladium alloy brazed to platinum plated surfaces. 4 Operation discontinued to allow examination of unit. 5 Unit continued on life test with constant performance characteristics. 6 Less than 0.01% of CO₂ in oxygen by gas chromatographic analysis. 7 For first 110 hrs, O₂ purity remained at 96%, after which a large leak developed in one 42-amp module. Only a gradual rise in CO₂ content by a factor of 2 to 3 occurred in the other two modules. 8 0.3% CO₂ in O₂. 9 CO₂ generation rate of 2 lb/day or 127 amp.

(Weissbart & Smart, 1970)
Water Electrolysis

An electrolysis unit is required in the oxygen recovery system to convert water generated in either the Sabatier or Bosch carbon dioxide reduction process to oxygen and hydrogen, so that oxygen can be returned to the atmosphere for breathing. With an electrolysis cell available, water can be used for making up oxygen lost through leakage or extravehicular operations, which simplifies the resupply process.

Commercial electrolysis units have been used reliably for many years, but they cannot operate in zero-g. The phase separation problems of the space environment complicate the design and make more difficult the achievement of a reliable system. The design of a flight-type electrolysis unit for long duration usage has been one of the most difficult technological problems to solve. Yet it is a major "key" to both low-weight oxygen supply, ease of resupply, and recovery.

The several most attractive concepts under development are discussed in this section.

Static Feed Electrolysis Unit. This electrolysis cell uses a potassium hydroxide electrolyte (35 percent KOH in water) which is contained in an asbestos matrix held between electrodes. O₂ and H₂, generated at the anode and cathode, respectively, are collected in cell cavities and passed into integral gas manifolds. Water is fed to the water pocket behind the water transport matrix, which also contains a potassium hydroxide solution. Water is transported to the electrolyte matrix by diffusion of water vapor across the H₂ gas cavity to the more concentrated electrolyte solution. Zero-g capability of the electrolysis cell design is provided by containing the electrolyte and water feed in asbestos matrices. Capillary retention of the liquid at the matrix interfaces prevents mixing of the gases and liquids. In addition, the matrix prevents O₂ and H₂ from mixing as they are produced.

The unit operates at about 150°F and consists of a number of modules, a condenser-separator, current controllers (one for each module), back-pressure regulators, and necessary plumbing, wiring, and control devices. Major development problems encountered with the unit include difficulties in startup, shutdown, automatic electronic control, cell flooding with KOH in startup and shutdown, and cell drying. Data from a representative life test and performance tests of a static-feed water electrolysis system are given in Figures 17-16 and 17-17, respectively.

Circulating Electrolyte Electrolysis Unit. In this unit, the alkaline (potassium hydroxide) is circulated between the dual asbestos matrix of the cell and is cooled by a heat exchanger external to the cell. The electrolyte temperature is well regulated with the external heat exchanger and, consequently, so is the water vapor content of the O₂ and H₂ gases generated in the cell. The circulation of the electrolyte helps to minimize concentration polarization and decrease the time required to reach steady-state operation after either starting up or adding makeup water to the electrolyte. The purposes for the asbestos matrix were previously described.
A typical continuous flow electrolysis system uses 30 percent KOH diluted in water, operates at near-ambient temperature and pressure, and has the following design features. The body and matrix screen and spacers are cast of epoxy resin. The dual matrix located on either side of the electrolyte pocket consists of an asbestos fuel cell sandwiched between a nickel matrix-support screen and a fuel cell electrode (type AB). Spot-welded to the electrodes are nickel electrode support screens and electrical leads. The electrical lead is nickel sheet cut in a picture frame configuration and spot-welded around the edge of an electrode. The modules are sealed by O-rings and fastened together by end plates and bolts. The electrodes from adjacent cells are supported by four intercell spacers. A liquid-level sensor in the electrolyte reservoir, located external to the cell, provides the signal for adding makeup water to the module when it is in operation. To prevent the electrolyte from passing through the matrix and into the gas manifolds, a differential pressure controller maintains the pressure in the gas manifolds higher than the electrolyte pressure ($\Delta P = 3$ psig).
Some of the more serious development problems encountered with the unit have included: (1) difficulty in maintaining differential pressure control; (2) a small increase in cell voltage required at startup to maintain a constant current; (3) slow deterioration in cell performance; and (4) some degradation of the epoxy resin plates. A continuous flow KOH electrolysis unit was tested in the NASA Langley Research Center/McDonnell Douglas 90-day test. Figure 17-18 shows the O₂ generation characteristics of the unit during the test (Jackson, 1971).

_Vapor Feed Electrolysis Unit._ The vapor feed cell is unique among electrolysis cell concepts because it is designed to operate directly off humid cabin air. Therefore, the cell can assist the cabin air-conditioning system in controlling humidity. Furthermore, since the vapor cell uses expired and perspired water vapor for its water supply, it is not contaminated by dissolved solids normally present in undistilled, liquid water. The vapor cells have an acid rather than alkaline electrolyte and, thus, are not contaminated by expired CO₂. The vapor cell utilizes a wicking material which holds the electrolyte, usually sulfuric acid, between the anode and cathode. The unit is made of a number of cells, each consisting of anode and cathode screens with a pad of microporous rubber,
or the like, acting as the wicking material. Electrolysis dehydrates the electrolyte and delivers H₂ at the cathode and O₂ at the anode. New moisture then rehydrates the electrolyte, and the process is continued. Theoretically, 1520 amp-hr are required for the electrolysis of water to produce one pound of O₂. On a 24-hour operational basis, this corresponds to 63.3 amp/lb of O₂ per day. The corresponding theoretical reversible voltage necessary to electrolyze liquid water at room temperature is 1.23 V, an unusually high operational voltage (Figure 17-19). As Figure 17-19 illustrates, the observed voltage, \( E_{\text{cell}} \), between the connecting terminals of the electrolysis cell is the summation of \( E_0 \), the theoretical minimum reversible potential, and the polarization voltages. The following equation expresses this relationship.

\[
E_{\text{cell}} = E_0 + E_{\text{aa}} + E_{\text{ca}} + E_{\text{ac}} + E_{\text{cc}} + E_{\text{IR}}
\]

where,

- \( E_{\text{aa}} \) = Activation polarization at anode
- \( E_{\text{ca}} \) = Activation polarization at cathode
- \( E_{\text{ac}} \) = Polarization at the anode created by concentration (diffusion) gradient at the anode
- \( E_{\text{cc}} \) = Polarization at the cathode created by concentration (diffusion) gradient at the cathode
- \( E_{\text{IR}} \) = (Ohmic) polarization, the voltage loss due to ohmic resistance of the electrolyte or electrolyte media, leads, and electrode metal.

Figure 17–18. Oxygen generation characteristics of a continuous flow KOH electrolysis unit operated in the NASA Langley Research Center/McDonnell Douglas 90-day test. (Jackson, 1971)
Solid Polymer Electrolysis. Solid polymer electrolysis utilizes an ion-exchange membrane (cation exchange membrane about 12 mils thick) which, when saturated with water, is the only electrolyte used. The system uses no free acid or alkaline liquids. Water is supplied to the \( O_2 \) evolution electrode (anode) where it is electrochemically decomposed to provide oxygen, hydrogen ions, and electrons. The hydrogen ions move to the hydrogen-evolving electrode (cathode) by migrating through the solid polymer electrolyte (SPE). The electrons pass through the external circuit to reach the hydrogen electrode, where hydrogen ions and electrons recombine electrochemically to produce hydrogen gas. An excess of water is usually supplied to the system and recirculated to remove any waste heat. The gases are generated at a stoichiometric ratio of \( H_2 \) and \( O_2 \) at any pressure required of the system. The SPE can withstand large differential pressures (>1000 psia) as well as high generating pressures which can easily be attained simply by back-pressuring the system.

The ion-exchange membrane in a system under development is a perfluorinated sulfonic acid which meets the stability and performance requirements of a long-lived electrolysis system. The development of electrocatalysts, made of platinum-iridium or other noble metals, has reportedly (Nuttal & Fiterington, 1971) reduced cell voltage from values over 2.0 VDC at 200 amp/ft\(^2\) to less than 1.60 VDC at 200 amp/ft\(^2\) in an acid SPE electrolysis cell (figure 17-20), thereby reducing power...
consumption. Figure 17-21 indicates the performance capability of a
one-man SPE module developed for the NASA Langley Research Center
with current density inputs up to 260 amp/ft², which were obtained prior
to subjecting the unit to life testing.

![Graph showing performance data for a seven-cell module solid polymer electrolyte tested for the NASA Langley Research Center.](image)

Figure 17–21. Performance data for a seven-cell module solid polymer electrolyte tested for the NASA Langley Research Center. (Nuttal & Fiterington, 1971)
Trace Contaminants Removal

Trace contaminant removal equipment maintains atmospheric contaminants at a physiologically acceptable level. Contaminants may be separated into the broad categories of particles and gases. Particles include solids such as dust and small liquid droplets. Those gases which have been identified as potential contaminants and those which have been detected in the Mercury and Gemini space vehicles, submarines, Apollo outgassing tests, and Earth-based space cabin simulator tests are rather extensive. Discussions of these gases and the measured generation rates are available in the literature (Olcott, 1970; see also Chapter 10, Toxicology). Table 17-9 shows the major trace contaminants identified in the NASA/McDonnell Douglas 90-day test (Jackson, 1971). Contaminant levels during the test were at all times below the allowable levels established by the National Academy of Sciences.

Trace contaminant removal equipment includes particulate filters, activated charcoal, sorbent beds, and catalytic burners. Particulate filters may include not only a debris filter but also an absolute filter used in conjunction with charcoal or other sorbent beds. The debris filter traps coarse particles entering the atmosphere purification loop and the absolute filter removes particles as small as 0.3 μ.

Trace Contaminant Removal by Solid Adsorbents

Activated charcoal is used primarily to remove trace contaminant gases having high molecular weights, including many hydrocarbons, alcohols, ketones, aldehydes, mercaptans, organic acids, halogenated materials, and ozone. Figure 17-22 shows adsorption capability of activated charcoal for NO₂. Most of the odor-causing and toxic materials expected to accumulate in a space cabin are effectively adsorbed by charcoal. Activated charcoal, however, is a poor adsorbent of CO₄, CO₂, and CO. Water is adsorbed but not retained. Activated charcoal is sometimes impregnated with phosphoric acid for the removal of ammonia and basic (i.e., high pH) compounds.

Other solid adsorbents, notably molecular sieves and silica gel, have been shown to adsorb most of the organic contaminants found in low concentrations in a space cabin simulator as well as those normally adsorbed by activated charcoal (Mader, 1969). However, they have a great affinity for CO₂ and/or water and, thus, cannot be used effectively without prior removal of these compounds.

Trace Contaminants Removal by Catalytic Oxidation

Catalytic burners are used to oxidize various low molecular weight gases in the cabin atmosphere to CO₂, water vapor, or other compounds. Catalytic burners are not necessary for short missions (of the Mercury, Gemini, and Apollo type) but they are likely to be included in life support systems for future, long-term missions in which contaminant level buildup could become a problem.
Table 17-9
Major Atmospheric Contaminants in Space Station Simulation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contaminant</th>
<th>Accuracy</th>
<th>Normal Operations</th>
<th>Lower End of Contingency Operations</th>
<th>Abort Level</th>
<th>Allowable Level Specified By NAS/NRC Committee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CO (ppm)</td>
<td>±2.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO2 (mm Hg)</td>
<td>±0.4</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocarbons (ppm)</td>
<td>±2.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH3 (ppm)</td>
<td>±1.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aldehyde (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.005</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO2 (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.25</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2S (ppm)</td>
<td>±1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NOx (ppm NO2)</td>
<td>±0.1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O3 (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.001</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorine (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.04</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanides (ppm)</td>
<td>±1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosgene (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethanol (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluene (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-ethanol butanol (ppm)</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-Butanol</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Butanone</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroform</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloromethane</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioxane</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethylacetate</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Methylbutanone</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroethylene</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 1, 2- Trichloroethane</td>
<td>±0.2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and related congeners</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formaldehyde</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichloroacetylene</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Detected</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinylidene Chloride</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* >60 (3 min), 60 to 40 (10 min), 40 to 30 (30 min), 30 to 20 (60 min), 20 to 15 (48 hours)

(Jackson, 1971)
A typical catalytic burner includes a catalytic bed, electrical heaters, and a regenerative heat exchanger, all contained within an insulated jacket. The pre- and post-sorbent bed filters are connected to the catalytic burner with tubing, and the filter canisters and catalytic burner are assembled on a lightweight structural frame. A number of catalysts have been used in catalytic burners, including 0.5 to 1.0 percent palladium or platinum deposited on alumina, Hopcalite, and other proprietary materials. Hopcalite, a mixture of the oxides of manganese, copper, cobalt, and silver, has been used for many years as a catalyst for removal of CO in air. Pre- and post-sorbent beds are used to prevent catalyst poisoning and to remove undesirable oxidation products. These beds utilized acid-impregnated activated charcoal, Linde-type 13 zeolite, and lithium hydroxide sorbents. Of these, LiOH is the most desirable. During use, the presorbent LiOH is partially converted to LiCO₃ as it absorbs CO₂. The combination of LiOH and LiCO₃ presorbent effectively removes such compounds as SO₂, H₂S, HCl, and HF. As a postsorbent, LiOH-LiCO₃ removes such acid gases as HCl and HF resulting from the catalytic oxidation processes.

Figure 17-23 shows the concentration of CH₄ and CO₂ during a 90-day test referred to previously. The catalytic burner was purposely turned off between test days 68 to 82. After test day 68, the CO level had increased from about 16 ppm to 26 ppm. When the catalytic burner was reactivated, the level was gradually reduced to 17 ppm by the end of the test.
Humidity Control

Humidity control in spacecraft may be achieved by one of two methods: (1) condensation of atmospheric water vapor, followed by phase separation of condensate from the air, or (2) drying of cabin air by passage through a bed of granular material. The moisture in this case is either absorbed chemically, by, for example, sodium hydroxide, or adsorbed physically by silica gel or molecular sieves. However, because of the high penalty associated with drying air over granular material, this method is used only in low flow, essential applications, such as drying air prior to CO2 adsorption on molecular sieves.

Humidity control by condensation/water separation is now universally used in spacecraft. In this method, a heat exchanger cools the cabin air below its dew point, thus condensing water from the moist airstream. Most of the water droplets are then separated from the main airstream in a water separator and channeled to the water management equipment. The air, now reaching the saturation state, is returned to the cabin or routed to another subsystem for further processing. Airflow through the condenser is a function of (1) the inlet and outlet water concentrations in the process airstream; (2) the cabin pressure; and (3) the water separator efficiency. Figure 17-24 is a graphic presentation of the flow requirement and heat load for a humidity control condenser utilized to collect 2.2 lb/man-day of water and operating with a 35°F process airflow. Figure 17-24 also shows a sharp rise in flow requirement and cooling load at low cabin relative humidity with a flattening characteristic at about 60 percent relative humidity. This points to the desirability of maintaining high cabin humidity. It also indicates the savings ensuing from low condenser outlet temperatures. The latter is, however, more difficult to satisfy than the former. Heat sink
temperatures lower than about 40° to 45°F normally impose very high weight penalties on space vehicle liquid cooling loops. These penalties result from the large radiator areas required to cool the heat transport fluid to the temperature level desired for operation of the humidity control system.

(*) NOTES:

1. Condenser temperature = 35°F
2. $\eta_{\text{sep}}$: Water Separator efficiency;
3. $W_g$: Process air flow, Lb. man-day.

Figure 17-24. Flow requirement and heat load for humidity control. (Rousseau, 1963)

Water separation may be accomplished in a number of ways. These include wick condenser/separators, hydrophobic-hydrophilic types and centrifugal, porous plate, elbow, and vortex separators. Of these, the hydrophobic-hydrophilic and the wick condenser separators are considered superior.
Hydrophobic-Hydrophilic Separator

The hydrophobic-hydrophilic separator unit is based on two capillary concepts, the hydrophobic (non-wetting) and hydrophilic (wetting) liquid/gas separation phenomena. The moist gas stream contacts a conical-shaped screen, with the apex of the cone facing the gas stream. The screen cone is coated with a hydrophobic material. The free water droplets are deflected to the base of the cone while the gas flows through the screen. A hydrophilic sump is provided at the base of the cone around its circumference. A pressure differential maintained across the sump by a pressure-controlled pumping system transfers the water to storage tanks. A hydrophobic-hydrophilic water separator was tested in a 60-day chamber study where it operated for the full 60 days with free water separation of 99 percent or better (Lamparter, 1970).

Wick-Type Condenser/Separator

In wick-type condenser/separators, wicking material is located in the unit between layers of heat exchanger surfaces. Moisture condenses on the fins and coolant passage surfaces of the heat exchanger. The condensed water is transferred along the fins by surface tension forces to the wick material. The flow of water within the wick occurs by a combination of capillary action and pressure gradient. If the pressure gradient is kept below a certain value, there is no air leakage through the wick. If the pressure gradient is not large enough (i.e., either the pressure source is too weak or the wick material is not dense enough), a cellular material may be installed at the wick-drain interface. The wick material acts in a manner similar to the hydrophilic screen. This type of water separator was used in Gemini and Apollo spacecraft.

Table 17-10 presents an excellent compilation of data on the important characteristics of existing water separators including those already flight-tested in the Gemini and Apollo programs.

Storage Systems for Atmospheric Constituents

Three methods for storing atmosphere gases in the gaseous phase are considered for spacecraft applications:

1. High-pressure storage at ambient temperature
2. Supercritical storage at cryogenic temperature
3. Subcritical storage at cryogenic temperature

High-pressure gaseous storage is usually heavier than cryogenic storage because of the heavy vessels dictated by the high storage pressure (about 6000 psi). The primary advantages of high-pressure storage are that the equipment is relatively simple and the gas is readily available for the requirements of rapid repressurization and emergency operation.

Storage of atmospheric constituents at cryogenic temperatures generally entails lower tankage weight. This reduction in weight is attributed mainly to two effects: (1) smaller volumes because the gas is stored as a fluid, and
### Table 17-10
Comparison of Existing Water Separators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Lockheed Separator</th>
<th>Hamilton Standard LM</th>
<th>AirResearch Gemini</th>
<th>AirResearch Apollo</th>
<th>Hamilton Standard PLSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrophobic/hydrophilic static</td>
<td>Centrifugal-hydrophobic screen with pilot pickup</td>
<td>Integral heat exchanger water separator</td>
<td>Integral heat exchanger water separator</td>
<td>Elbow type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Associated equipment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Cyclic accumulators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Most likely failure modes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Water pump</td>
<td>2. Power supply</td>
<td>2. Accumulator seal leakage</td>
<td>2. Accumulator seal leakage</td>
<td>Below 98%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Efficiency</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Pressure switch</td>
<td>3. Pressure switch malfunction</td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td>99+%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$O in – H$_2$O out</td>
<td></td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td>99+%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$O in (Condensed)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Qualification status</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ground development test completed</td>
<td>Flown in LM</td>
<td>Flown in Gemini</td>
<td>Flown in Command Module</td>
<td>Flown in PLSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Envelope (Does not include associated equipment)</strong></td>
<td>4 in. dia X 8 in. long (Approximate)</td>
<td>5.6 in. dia X 7.25 in. long</td>
<td>8 in. X 10 in. X 7 in. (Heat exchanger included)</td>
<td>8 in. X 10 in. X 7 in. (Approximate)</td>
<td>1.5 in. dia X 4 in. long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 lb (Approximate)</td>
<td>2.2 lb</td>
<td>19.32 lb, dry (includes heat exchanger)</td>
<td>36 lb, dry (includes heat exchanger)</td>
<td>0.20 lb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

842 Bioastronautics Data Book
Table 17–10 (Continued)
Comparison of Existing Water Separators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Lockheed Separator</th>
<th>Hamilton Standard LM</th>
<th>AiResearch Gemini</th>
<th>AiResearch Apollo</th>
<th>Hamilton Standard PLSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Porous material</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrophobic 230 mesh X 0.014 in. wire, CRES with teflon coating. Hydrophilic same without teflon coating</td>
<td>CRES</td>
<td>Fabric wick with glass plates</td>
<td>Fabric wick with sintered metal plates</td>
<td>Fabric wick with glass plates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas inlet flow</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.16 lb/min air at 7.3 psia and 36°F</td>
<td>0.75 lb/min O₂ at 5.3 psia and 40°F</td>
<td>0.628 lb/min O₂ at 5 psia and 135°F</td>
<td>0.632 lb/min O₂ at 3.71 psia and 138°F</td>
<td>0.12 lb/min O₂ at 80°F and 3.85 psia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inlet gas humidity</td>
<td></td>
<td>108 grains H₂O/lb dry gas</td>
<td>336 grains H₂O/lb dry O₂</td>
<td>346 grain H₂O/lb dry O₂</td>
<td>438 grains H₂O/lb dry O₂</td>
<td>614 grains H₂O/lb dry O₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas ΔP</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.6 in. H₂O</td>
<td>1.20 in. H₂O</td>
<td>3.5 in. H₂O max (Includes heat exchanger ΔP)</td>
<td>0.20 in. H₂O (Includes heat exchanger ΔP)</td>
<td>0.2–0.8 in. H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂O removal rate</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.8 lb/hr (Above conditions)</td>
<td>0.5 lb/hr (Above conditions) (Approximate)</td>
<td>0.90 lb/hr with 8 in. H₂O ΔP across plates</td>
<td>1.2 lb/hr (Above conditions)</td>
<td>0.54 lb/hr (Maximum) (Above conditions)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) lower working pressures which permit thinner pressure vessel walls. On the other hand, cryogenic systems have the relative disadvantages of more complex control systems, more sophisticated hardware, loss by boiloff, greater electrical power requirements, lower reliability and higher maintenance requirements.

References


Clifford, J. E. Water vapor electrolysis cell with phosphoric acid electrolyte. SAE Paper No. 670851, presented to Society of Automotive Engineers Aeronautical and Space Engineering Manufacturing Meeting, Los Angeles, California, 2 October 1967.


Jackson, J. K., & Blakey, R. L. Application of adsorption beds to spacecraft life support systems. SAE Paper No. 67-0470-842, presented to Society of Automotive Engineers Aeronautics and Space Engineering Manufacturing Meeting, Los Angeles, California, 2 October 1967.


Human energy exchange is discussed in this chapter in terms of the whole man. The physical work a man does, the heat he produces, and the quantity of oxygen he takes from the air to combine with food, the fuel source of his energy, are described. Work, heat, and oxygen all are closely tied together in animal energetics, as Kleiber (1961) has written in a historically interesting review, *The Fire of Life*. At the cellular level, not dealt with here, Lehninger’s *Bioenergetics* (1965) is an excellent and readable introduction to the biochemistry involved.

The human animal, like most machines which do work, oxidizes fuel to obtain energy. But unlike man-made engines that convert the heat of combustion into work, the body oxidizes fuel at a low temperature, $37^\circ$C, and converts chemical energy directly into work. In other words, humans are chemical engines.

The work man does is not impressive. A man cannot generate a lot of power. Humans fancy themselves as thinkers and manipulators of tools. Machines do the heavy work. Nevertheless, man is a muscular animal, with some 40 percent of his weight in skeletal muscles. He moves about under his own muscle power, and does some mechanical (external) work in certain activities.

Whether performing mechanical work or not, just staying alive requires energy. Cells do chemical work in biosynthesis; there is work involved in active transport of solutes across cell membranes; and there is osmotic work in concentrating solutes. Some cells, especially muscle, do mechanical work, much of which is internal and only visible from outside as heat. For example, the work done by heart muscle in pumping blood against the resistance of the vascular distribution network, and the work done by skeletal muscle in supporting ourselves upright in Earth’s gravity field, are all internal.

Reviewed by John B. West, Ph.D., University of California, San Diego.
There is continual energy exchange in living and doing things. Quantifying energy exchange is important in designing life support equipment since it determines food supplies, the oxygen to be carried, waste products to be removed, and the heat to be dissipated. The design of respiratory equipment and oxygen supplies must allow the man to do the heaviest work a mission may require, and the cooling of protective clothing, e.g. a space suit, must carry off the greatest amount of heat he can generate.

Heat is the dominant expression of human energy exchange. Heat is generated within the body while one sleeps and during all waking hours. The more active one is, the more heat there is to be dissipated. When a task is carried out in which mechanical work is done, 10 to 30 percent of the energy expenditure is applied to the external load; the rest comes out as heat.

The rate of energy exchange varies over a wide range. A man asleep may operate at a level as low as 1.1 kcal/min (77 watts, or 262 BTU/hr). When doing sustained hard work he may operate at 15 kcal/min (1046 watts, or 3571 BTU/hr).

Units for the description of energy exchange are varied. Physiologists think in terms of kilogram calories (kcal); the calories used in nutrition are kcals, and body heat production is generally expressed as kcal/min. In international convention the basic energy unit is the joule, or its rate derivative, the watt (W), which is 1 joule/sec. Older units which have been in common use are the met (1 met = 50 kcal per square meter of body surface an hour), and the BTU, or BTU/hr.

1 kcal = 4184 joules = 1.162 watt-hours = 3.968 BTU
1 kcal/min = 69.7 watts = 238 BTU/hr
100 watts = 1.43 kcal/min = 341 BTU/hr
100 BTU/hr = 0.42 kcal/min = 29.3 watts

In this chapter the energy unit will be the kcal, with rates expressed in both kcal/min and watts.

It has been noted that living involves heat production as a major by-product of the oxidation of fuel to supply energy for “work.” The work of staying alive is hard to measure since it takes place in a closed and hidden system—the body—but the total heat produced by all the separate activities is known and measurable. It is possible to estimate the internal work done individually by the heart, the kidneys, the brain, and other organs and tissues. Data of this kind based on measuring blood flow and oxygen use appear in table 18-1.

Some organs, particularly the brain, oxidize fuel at a high and steady rate throughout the 24 hours; the liver is typical of organs which oxidize fuel at slowly changing levels depending on the work required; some tissues oxidize at a slow pace, like the skin. Skeletal muscle changes its level of fuel consumption and heat production manyfold between quiescent and active states. Since skeletal muscle is 40 percent of the body mass, this change in muscle heat production is the dominant factor when total heat production varies over a 10:1 range.
Table 18-1
Oxygen Consumption and Heat Production of Organs in Man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (ml/min - 100 gm)</th>
<th>Typical Organ Weight (gm)</th>
<th>Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>9.5 (7.8 - 10.5)</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>3.6 (3.3 - 3.9)</td>
<td>1380</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidneys</td>
<td>10.2 (6.2 - 16.0)</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rest</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>28000</td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>28000</td>
<td>15.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Based on averaged data from Altman & Dittmer, 1968)

Measuring total body heat production is called direct calorimetry. The technique is complex and the machinery for doing it has always in the past confined and restrained the subject unnaturally. A new and less constraining method is evolving from research done with water cooled garments, about which more will be said later. But our body of knowledge about human work and energy exchange rests on a small number of direct calorimetric measurements, and a very large number of indirect calorimetric measurements.

Indirect calorimetry measures energy exchange by seeing how much oxygen a man uses to burn fuel, and how much carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen he excretes as the chemical residues of oxidation. By measuring these material exchanges in the respired air, and nitrogen in urine, one may estimate with reasonable accuracy the amount and type of fuel burned, hence the total energy being released.

Given the three measured quantities of O2 consumed, CO2 produced, and urinary N excreted, Consolazio et al. (1963) show that the three types of fuel, carbohydrate (CHO), fat (F), and protein (Pro), and the energy (H) released in their oxidation are directly calculable from:

\[ \text{CHO} = 2.909 \text{O}_2 + 4.115 \text{CO}_2 - 2.539 \text{N} \]
\[ \text{F} = 1.689 \text{O}_2 - 1.689 \text{CO}_2 - 1.943 \text{N} \]
\[ \text{Pro} = 6.25 \text{N} \]
\[ \text{H} = 3.78 \text{O}_2 + 1.16 \text{CO}_2 - 2.98 \text{N} \]

It is also feasible to do an energy exchange analysis by counting fuel calories. One can measure food intake, and any residues in urine and feces which are not oxidized, and know a man's daily energy exchange. But the measurement does not discriminate in usefully short time intervals since a man eats only about three times a day, and he stores his fuel rather than burning it as consumed.
Thus a 24-hour period is the shortest time we use for this type of data (see figure 18-4). To further complicate matters, a man can store great quantities of fuel as fat, and can live and work for days without eating at all. Body weight reflects storage and expenditure of stores, but it reflects other things as well, such as dehydration, growth, and atrophy.

The energetic equivalents of oxygen consumed and of carbon dioxide excreted are standard numbers in physiology. Every liter of oxygen consumed indicates that 5 kcal of energy has been released from stored fuel. The same 5 kcal is the caloric equivalent of 1 liter of CO₂ produced. These caloric equivalents were first described in experiments in a direct calorimeter while O₂ and CO₂ exchange were also monitored. There are small variations of the caloric equivalents of O₂ and CO₂ which reflect variations in the type of foodstuff being used. The range is from 4.7 to 5.0 kcal, but for most purposes 5 kcal is sufficiently accurate (Maxfield & Smith, 1967; Weir, 1949).

One way to visualize these basic work and energy relationships is shown in figure 18-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H</th>
<th>O₂</th>
<th>W</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 18-1. Relationship of heat production (H) to O₂ consumption (\(\dot{\text{V}}\text{O}_2\)), and of these to mechanical or external work (W), when a man performs at 20% efficiency. H and W are shown in various common units.
Daily Energy Exchange

Consider now the energetics of just staying alive, with no physical activity at all. This is, to use an old and imprecise term, the basal metabolism, or better, the cost of tissue maintenance. Figure 18-2 shows the oxygen cost and heat production for tissue maintenance. The ranges shown for periods of 4, 8, and 24 hours show how size and biochemical individuality affect such data. The three diagonal lines on the graph show how particular dietary mixtures would alter the values.

![Figure 18-2. O2 cost and heat production of tissue maintenance, calculated for men of astronaut size and age under basal conditions. (Redrawn from Fletcher, 1964; based on standard values from Diem, 1962)](image)

The total daily energy level is the cost of tissue maintenance plus the cost of activities. Assuming standard activity, the smaller the person the smaller his daily oxygen need, his food requirement, and his heat production. This is shown in the figure 18-3, which gives total daily energy levels for normally active people of various sizes. These daily levels are about twice as high as the daily cost of tissue maintenance. Note that the values for men of astronaut size and age, (3400 to 3800 kcal/day), imply considerable daily activity, whereas astronauts confined to simulated space cabin conditions (see figure 18-4) or in actual orbital flight (see table 18-2) show much lower values.

To illustrate the range of activity, hence the range of energy exchange (i.e., food consumed and heat plus external work output), which adult men exhibit, figure 18-4 shows that a day of "complete rest" involves the use of about 1500 kcal in 24 hours, while a "very active day" calls for about 6500 kcal in 24 hours. The four classifications of work, from light through very heavy,
represent values used in industry for 8 hours a day, year round employment. These figures come from a study by Edholm and Fletcher (1955) of British Army recruits during a very active period of training. Between these two extremes are similar data for many other military and civilian activities. Notice that some of the data are based on counting the calories in the food eaten, and the rest based on estimates of energy exchange from oxygen consumption.

Figure 18-3. Total daily O2 cost and heat production for normally active people, as affected by body size, calculated by method proposed by UN Food and Agricultural Organization (1957). (Redrawn from Fletcher, 1964)

One quite low level of daily energy exchange in figure 18-4 is that labeled “Space Cabin Simulator” (Welch et al., 1961). The low rate was largely due to the confinement of the subjects. Flight data shown in table 18-2, from the American Gemini and the Russian Vostok orbital space flights (Berry & Catterson, 1967), confirm the low estimates from the simulator. In flight, weightlessness and confinement together can explain the low metabolic rates.

In each of the three preceding figures there were three straight lines showing energy levels versus oxygen cost for three different types of diet. The oxygen used, and the carbon dioxide produced, vary slightly with the fuel oxidized. These dietary effects are relatively small, and it is an unusual diet which is purely one of the three types of food. The mixed diet is common in North America, and for most purposes we do not try to adjust energy estimates for a particular person’s diet. There are more important sources of variation, particularly the specific activities one undertakes during the day.
Figure 18-4. O2 cost and energy exchange levels for daily activities. Values identified below three dietary lines are based on measurements of O2 consumption; those above are based on careful measurements of daily food consumption and weight change, if any. (Redrawn from Fletcher, 1964; based on data from Buskirk et al., 1956; Buskirk et al., 1957; Consolazio et al., 1956; Edholm & Fletcher, 1955; Fletcher, 1958; Iampietro et al., 1956; Kark et al., 1948; Karvonen & Turpeinen, 1954; Lawton, 1960; Luthman & Lundgren, 1947; Ramzin, 1948; Richardson & Campbell, 1927; Rjabko & Agapov, 1947; Welch et al., 1961)

Table 18-2

Energy Exchange Levels in Space Flight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flight</th>
<th>Duration (days)</th>
<th>Daily Energy Level* (kcal/24 hr)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gemini 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vostok</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Based on analysis of LiOH canisters for carbon dioxide.

(Data from Berry & Catterson, 1967)
**Work and Heat Dissipation**

When a man begins muscular work, there is an immediate increase in energy release from the high energy phosphate bonds of adenosine triphosphate, and the breakdown of energy-rich phosphocreatine, followed by renewal from carbohydrate (glucose and glycogen) fuel stores. Some of the muscle energy may be applied to an external load, while the rest is expended in internal work, hence appearing only as heat. When a man walks or runs on a level surface, all the increased energy used appears as heat, that is, all the work is internal. This extra heat is stored, causing a rise in the temperature of the muscle, then is carried off by conduction to the skin and by convective cooling via the increased flow of blood through the muscle. As the work continues, the body begins to dissipate more heat to prevent an uncontrolled rise in general body temperature. This change in the rate of heat dissipation can be measured in a calorimeter, as illustrated in figure 18-5. Total heat loss, indicated in the figure, is the sum of respiratory heat loss, convective heat loss and radiative heat loss from the body surface, and evaporative heat loss from sweating.

![Figure 18-5. Example of direct calorimetric measurement with subject doing mild work. Up to time 0, the subject was resting in the supine position on a net hammock in the calorimeter box; starting at time 0, he worked with a crank ergometer, still lying down, against an external load of .36 kcal/min, or about 25 watts. (Redrawn from Benzinger & Kitzinger, 1963) It is the skeletal muscles that produce the extra heat during increased physical activity. Some organs, like the heart, become more active; some, like the brain, do not change; and some, like the kidney, decrease their activity. None of these organs is of significant metabolic size compared to skeletal muscle (see table 18-1). As seen in figure 18-5, the increased heat production from muscular work is followed somewhat later by an increase in heat picked up by the calorimeter.

Similar data have been obtained in experiments with men working in water cooled suits. The subjects involved in the study illustrated in figure 18-6 were thermally isolated in insulated, impermeable coveralls, with cooling controlled so that they neither felt cold nor did they sweat (i.e., their weight loss was less than 100 gm/hr). The curves of figures 18-6 and 18-7 show that metabolic heat production (M) calculated from oxygen consumption (\( \dot{V}_{O_2} \)) increased soon after work began, and that heat loss (H) to the water cooled suit increased somewhat later.
From the experiments discussed above, it became evident that oxygen consumption and heat dissipation increased exponentially to their final values, and that each function had a characteristic time constant. Webb et al. (1970) gave numerical values to these metabolic time constants, in addition to time constants for some other physiological variables that change with work (table 18-3).

To illustrate the point, the general shapes of the M and H curves, using their characteristic time constants, are given in figure 18-8.

When the initial exponential transient has passed, and heat dissipation has been adjusted to match heat production, a more or less steady state persists throughout the rest of the work, as seen in figure 18-6. When work is over, exponential decays in M and H characterize the return to resting levels.

Figure 18-9 shows heat dissipation during a single experiment lasting 16 hours, during which the subject did muscular work (walked on a treadmill at 4.8 km/hr or 3 mph for two 1-hour periods), and during the rest of the day carried out quiet activities like reading. The kind of near-calorimetric data depicted in the figure verify the general work, heat, and oxygen cost data discussed in this chapter. Calorimetric heat balances accurate to 1 percent have been made since this chapter was written. The technique is described by Webb et al., (1972) and a fundamental circadian rhythm of metabolism reported by Webb (1971).
Figure 18-7. Heat production (M) from $\hat{V}O_2$ and heat loss (H) to a water cooled suit, as in figure 18-6 but with double the activity level for half the time. External work of walking uphill for 3 mi. was added to H curve. Averaged data for 6 experiments, 4 subjects. (Redrawn from Webb & Annis, 1968)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physiological Measure</th>
<th>Time Constant (min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M (from $\hat{V}O_2$)</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean skin temperature</td>
<td>1.0 (Estimated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal temperature</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat loss</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These recent experiments with controlled water cooling in thermally isolated men, along with the comparable measurements in water cooled space suits shown in figures 18-25 and 18-26 at the end of the chapter, are essentially calorimetric. If continued, they should provide excellent design data for human cooling systems, and modernize our information about human energy exchange. Meanwhile, our best source is the extensive
literature on the oxygen costs of specific activities, which translate into heat and work data by the methods already described.

Figure 18-8. Pure shapes of exponential changes of two variables, VO₂ and H, based on their individual time constants, as given in table 18-3.

Figure 18-9. Heat dissipation (H) in a water cooled suit, under conditions similar to those for figure 18-6. Data points are for heat production (M) from VO₂–VCO₂ measured by collecting expired air and analyzing for O₂ and CO₂. (Redrawn from Webb et al., 1970)
Oxygen Costs of Specific Activities

To design life support equipment it is essential to be able to estimate heat production for the activities involved. There is a sizable body of data available for a large number of specific human activities, all based on oxygen cost, hence heat production. Tables 18-4 and 18-5 give this sort of data. The tabulated values have been adjusted for a man 175 cm (69 inches) tall who weighs 76 kg (167 lb), which are the mean values for the original seven Mercury astronauts. The means for the 43 current astronauts are 177 cm (69-1/2 inches) in height and 74 kg (163-1/2 lb) in weight.

Important subject-to-subject differences exist even in men of the same size. These commonly give rise to variations as high as 60 percent when different men are performing the same task, as high as 30 percent when adjustments for body size are made, and as high as 10 to 15 percent when repeated measurements are taken on the same man.

The efficiency with which external work is accomplished also varies widely. It is lowest in the work of respiration (less than 5 percent), is 10 to 20 percent for common tasks, and highest in bicycling and walking on the inclined treadmill (up to 35 percent and occasionally 40 percent in trained men). Several apparent discrepancies in the tabulated values however, are indicative of the imprecision of such data. This sort of variation is to be expected. For example, "shoveling sand" occurs twice; once under "Moderate activity—standing," and again under "Heavy activity—standing," with an appropriately higher level of energy cost. Both measurements shown have been reported in the literature, and both are probably valid for the subjects and activities measured. These disparities may be due to the wide range of subject-to-subject differences mentioned above, to differences in the rate of work, or to some variation in experimental technique.

The oxygen cost of moving at different speeds over a firm level surface is shown graphically in figure 18-10. If a man walks or runs uphill, and if he is carrying extra weight, oxygen costs increase significantly. Figure 18-11 shows data of this kind for treadmill work. The chart, which permits estimation of oxygen consumption, is based on extensive experiments in few subjects. The upper segment is based on two middle-distance runners, the lower segment, on 10 healthy male volunteer walkers. The hatched area indicates a range of values of the so-called "maximum aerobic capacity," which is approximately equal to the highest oxygen consumption that can be maintained continuously. Its value depends primarily on the body build and degree of training of the subject. Considerable variation must be expected, both between subjects and from experiment to experiment. Since only well-trained men are capable of sustained climbing, few men will be capable of reproducing the most severe combinations depicted.

Certain environmental stresses cause increases in oxygen cost. Three such conditions are vibration (figure 18-12), acceleration (figure 18-13), and heat (figure 18-14).
Table 18-4
Oxygen Cost of Everyday Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (liters/min)</th>
<th>Equivalent Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asleep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping, men over 40</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping, men aged 30 - 40</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping, men aged 20 - 30</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping, men aged 15 - 20</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lying fully relaxed</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lying moderately relaxed</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lying awake, after meals</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting at rest</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very light activity—seated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riding in automobile</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typing</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polishing</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very light activity—standing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relaxed</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drafting</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking lecture notes</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peeling potatoes</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light activity—seated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing musical instruments</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repairing boots and shoes</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At lecture</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembling weapons</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light activity—standing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering ledgers</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing clothes</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ironing</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrubbing</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light activity—moving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow movement about room</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle repairs</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow walking</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 18—4 (Continued)
**Oxygen Cost of Everyday Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (liters/min)</th>
<th>Equivalent Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moderate activity—lying</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creeping, crawling, prone resting maneuvers</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crawling</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming breaststroke at 1 mph</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming crawl at 1 mph</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moderate activity—sitting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rowing for pleasure</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling at 8 – 11 mph</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling rapidly</td>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trotting on horseback</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moderate activity—standing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardening</td>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chopping wood</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseball pitching</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoveling sand</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moderate activity—moving</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golf</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table tennis</td>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tennis</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army drill</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heavy activity—lying</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg exercises, average</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming breaststroke at 1.6 mph</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming backstroke at 1.0 mph</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lying on back, head raising</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heavy activity—sitting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling rapidly, own pace</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling at 10 mph, heavy bicycle</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>8.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling in race (100 mi in 4 hr 22 min)</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trotting on horseback</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heavy activity—standing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chopping wood</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoveling sand</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sawing wood by hand</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digging</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>8.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 18-4 (Continued)
Oxygen Cost of Everyday Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (liters/min)</th>
<th>Equivalent Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heavy activity—moving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skating at 9 mph</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing soccer</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing at 3 mph on level</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing stairs at 116 steps/min</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very heavy activity—sitting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling at 13.2 mph</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rowing with two oars at 3.5 mph</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galloping on horseback</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sculling (97 strokes/min)</td>
<td>2.52</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very heavy activity—moving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fencing</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing squash</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing basketball</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing stairs</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme activity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrestling</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marching at double</td>
<td>2.66</td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endurance marching</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvard Step Test</td>
<td>3.22</td>
<td>16.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 18-5

**Oxygen Cost of Special Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (liters/min)</th>
<th>Equivalent Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engineering tasks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium assembly work</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welding</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheet metal work</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machining</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punching</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine fitting</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy assembly work—noncontinuous</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving vehicles and piloting aircraft</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving a car in light traffic</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night flying—DC-3</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piloting DC-3 in level flight</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piloting helicopters</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument landing—DC-4</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piloting light aircraft in rough air</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxiing DC-3</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piloting bomber aircraft in combat</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving car in heavy traffic</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving truck</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving motorcycle</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving over rough terrain on foot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat, firm road</td>
<td>2.5 mph</td>
<td>0.56 – 0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grass path</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.64 – 1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stubble field</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.80 – 1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deeply plowed field</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.98 – 1.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steep 45° slope</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.98 – 1.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plowed field</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>1.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft snow, with 44 lb load</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load carrying</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on level with 58 lb load, trained men</td>
<td>2.1 mph</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on level with 67 lb load, trained men</td>
<td>2.1 mph</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on level with 75 lb load, trained men</td>
<td>2.1 mph</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking up 36% grade with 43 lb load, sedentary men</td>
<td>0.5 mph</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 18–5 (Continued)
Oxygen Cost of Special Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Oxygen Consumption (liters/min)</th>
<th>Equivalent Heat Production (kcal/min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swimming on surface</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breaststroke 1 mph</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.80</td>
<td>29.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>19.40</td>
<td>97.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crawl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 mph</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.60</td>
<td>18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9.60</td>
<td>48.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butterfly 1 mph</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.80</td>
<td>29.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking under water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking in tank minimal rate</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on muddy bottom minimal</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking in tank maximal rate</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on muddy bottom maximal</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement in snow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing in loose snow</td>
<td>2.6 mph</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sled pulling-hard snow</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snowshoeing (bearpaw)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing on level</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sled pulling—low drag, med. snow</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>1.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snowshoeing—trail type</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking, 12–18 in. snow, breakable crust</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing on loose snow</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>2.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snowshoeing—trail type</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skiing on loose snow</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>4.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measured work at different altitudes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle ergometer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workload</td>
<td>Altitude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430 kg·m/min</td>
<td>720 mm Hg</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>620</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>520</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain climbing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>880 - 1037 kg·m/min</td>
<td>610 mm Hg</td>
<td>1.84 – 2.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>786 - 580</td>
<td>425</td>
<td>1.54 – 1.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>370</td>
<td>1.28 – 2.10</td>
<td>6.4 – 10.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data for tables 18–4 and 18–5 were drawn from both published and unpublished sources. The principal references consulted were: Altman et al. (1958), Billings et al. (1962), Buskirk et al. (1956), Cathcart et al. (1923), Christensen (1953), Christensen and Hogberg (1950), Garry et al. (1955), Glasow and Müller (1951), Karpovich (1953), Littlefield and Joy (1969), Mayer (1959), Morehouse and Cherry (1945), Morehouse and Miller (1959), Passmore et al. (1952), Passmore and Durnin (1955), Pollack et al. (1944), Pugh (1958), Ramzin (1948), Rose (1944), Turner (1955), and U.S. Navy (1956).
Figure 18-10. Oxygen cost of walking and running at various speeds on level surfaces with no extra load. [Compilation by Altman et al., 1958; straight line for slow running (4–15 km/hr), from Shephard, 1969]

Figure 18-11. Chart for estimating O₂ consumption of men walking or running uphill wearing heavy equipment. To use: estimate percent grade from height of rise in 100 ft., or estimate angle of incline from the tangent, derived from vertical rise and horizontal distance. Note that above hatched area, work is exhausting, and the greater the oxygen consumption, the shorter the running time. (From Astrand, 1952, with permission of Einar Munksgaard, publisher; Goldman & lampietro, 1962; Margaria et al., 1963)
Figure 18-12. Change in O2 consumption for 4 male subjects during vibration, shown as a percentage change from control value. Subjects were exposed to 20 min. of vibration at an amplitude of 0.132 in. while seated on a chair and entirely unrestrained. (Adapted from Gaeuman et al., 1962)

Figure 18-13. Increase in O2 consumption with increasing levels of acceleration. Subjects were exposed to forward acceleration (+Gx) on a centrifuge, with onset time of 1 G/sec. Clear areas show control value of O2 consumption; hatched areas show additional O2 consumption for 1 min. of acceleration. (Data from Zechman et al., 1959)
Figure 18-14. Increase in O₂ consumption as body temperature rises during heat exposure, at rest and during the light activity of operating a flight simulator. (Adapted from Jones & Taylor, 1956)

Work Capacity

Although most regular activities are designed to use less than a man’s maximum effort, an effort which can be sustained for only a short time, nevertheless in an emergency a man may use his greatest power, and designs of respiratory and cooling equipment must allow for highest peak rates.

Figure 18-15 shows how a man’s peak rates depend on the duration of the effort. The harder the effort, the shorter the time for which it can be sustained. For 30 to 60 seconds, men can work against an external load developing a power of around 500 W (about two-thirds of a horsepower), while at the same time, assuming 20 percent efficiency, he will produce excess heat at the rate of 2000 W (36 kcal/min). Brief periods of maximal exertion, those lasting less than 2 minutes, are done at levels of oxygen demand which cannot be met by the man’s capacity to consume oxygen, hence this kind of work is called anaerobic and produces oxygen debt (see figures 18-21 to 18-23). The data shown in figure 18-15 are special in that: (1) the types of work (running, rowing, cycling, and cranking) were chosen to yield highest power, and at efficiencies above 20 percent, and (2) the “healthy men” were young, physically active and fit, and accustomed to doing the work, while the champion athletes were unusual physical specimens highly trained and highly motivated to work at maximum effort.
The maximum effort of durations longer than 2 or 3 minutes is limited by a given individual's greatest ability to consume oxygen—his aerobic power. Healthy fit men can consume 50 ml/kg of body weight each minute. Less fit men consume 30 or 40 ml/kg-min. Extremely fit athletes can consume 60 or 70 ml/kg-min, the record figure being 85 ml/kg-min (Saltin & Astrand, 1967). This maximal oxygen consumption (\(\dot{V}_{O_2}\)-max) is often used to evaluate the effect of physical conditioning programs.

If one looks at \(\dot{V}_{O_2}\)-max in men of various ages, it can be seen that this measure reaches its greatest values in the late teens and twenties, then declines slowly as the decades go by. Figures 18-16, 18-17, and 18-18 show mean data of this kind from several studies. These children and men were all healthy, not obese, and reasonably fit. Notice in figure 18-18 that the data are different for different populations. Several comparative studies have been reported, one of which is shown in table 18-6, from Cumming (1967).

Determining a man's \(\dot{V}_{O_2}\)-max is an important measurement in work physiology. The pure form of the procedure is illustrated in figure 18-19. Note that as work increases, oxygen cost increases until further work loads cause no further increase in \(\dot{V}_{O_2}\); 250 W brought the oxygen uptake up to the subject's maximum and 300 W did not further increase the oxygen

---

**Figure 18-15. Maximum efforts of healthy fit men and champion athletes. (After Fletcher, 1964; from Abbott and Bigland, 1953; Asmussen, 1950; Astrand, 1952; Bannister & Cunningham, 1954; Benedict & Catheart, 1913; Benedict & Murschhauser, 1915; Henderson & Haggard, 1925; Niehen & Hanson, 1937; Robinson, 1938; Wilkie, 1957)**
uptake. The increased work load was possible thanks to anaerobic processes (maximal aerobic power = 3.5 liters/min).

Figure 18–16. Mean values for maximal O₂ uptake during exercise on treadmills or bicycle ergometers in 350 Swedish boys and girls and men and women from 4 to 65 years of age. Included are values for 3 athletes and 86 trained students of physical education. (Redrawn from Astrand & Rodahl, 1970; used by permission of Pergamon Press, Oxford)

Figure 18–17. Maximal O₂ consumption for German men and women in relation to age, including data from athletes of both sexes. (Redrawn from Astrand & Rodahl, 1970; used by permission of Johann Ambrosius Barth, publisher)
Figure 18-18. Maximal O₂ consumption for American and women in relation to age, from several studies. (Redrawn from Astrand & Rodahl, 1970, by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company.)

Table 18-6
Maximal Oxygen Uptake of Men 20 to 40 Years of Age (Mean Values)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Oxygen Uptake (ml/kg · min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Average Caucasian males</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stockholm</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boston</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dallas</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winnipeg</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army recruits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.A.</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive populations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu mining recruits</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu miners</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalahari bushmen</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.A. Negro sharecroppers</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lapps</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arctic Indians</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eskimos</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athletes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden—physical education students</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden—athletes</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden—cross-country skiers</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway—athletes</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landy (runner)</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winnipeg—water-polo players</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winnipeg—track</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Cumming, 1970)
Figure 18-19. Schematic of maximum oxygen uptake ($\dot{V}O_2$ max) determinations. Left: increase in $O_2$ uptake during exercise on bicycle ergometer with various work loads performed during 5 to 6 min. of work. Right: $O_2$ uptake after 5 min., plotted in relation to work load. Peak blood lactic acid concentrations for each experiment are included. (Redrawn from Astrand & Rodahl, 1970; used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company)

The effect of physical conditioning programs on untrained but otherwise healthy men is to increase their $\dot{V}O_2$-max by 10 to 20 percent, as shown in figure 18-20. Notice also that a trained person can endure a prolonged period of work at a greater proportion of his maximum capacity than can an untrained person.

Figure 18-20. Effect of training on maximal $O_2$ uptake. With training, subject is also able to use a greater percentage of his maximal $O_2$ uptake during prolonged work. (Redrawn from Astrand & Rodahl, 1970, by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company)
It seems reasonable to suppose that quite sedentary, hence unfit, people could show greater than 20 percent changes in \( \dot{V}_{O_2\text{-max}} \) following a physical conditioning program. An example is given by Rodahl and Issekutz (1962), who observed a 25 percent change in women who trained by skipping rope daily for 4 weeks. Saltin et al. (1968) reported a 33 percent increase in three sedentary young men who trained vigorously for 55 days, while two other men who were previously active showed little change in \( \dot{V}_{O_2\text{-max}} \) from the same program.

**Anaerobic Work**

If \( \dot{V}_{O_2\text{-max}} \) data are compared with the maximum power data from figure 18-19, converting watts of external work into \( \dot{V}_{O_2} \) (assuming 25 percent efficiency), then the high rates of heat production in efforts lasting less than 1 minute show heat production above 20 kcal/min at an apparent oxygen cost of more than 4 liters per minute. These call for oxygen at rates greater than a healthy man's ability to consume oxygen. He is working anaerobically. For brief maximal efforts lasting only up to 1 or 2 minutes, his muscles get energy by splitting energy rich phosphates and glycogen, as contrasted with the aerobic oxidation of carbohydrates and fat used in the muscle work which can be sustained for 10 minutes or more.

At the beginning of hard work, circulation and oxygen supply increase exponentially, hence some of the work is anaerobic and an oxygen deficit occurs. After the work, oxygen consumption decays exponentially, and the excess oxygen is used to oxidize the end products of anaerobic glycolysis, e.g., lactic acid. Figure 18-21 shows acquisition of oxygen deficit early in hard work and its repayment (oxygen debt) after the work is finished.

---

![Figure 18-21. Stylized presentation of O2 uptake during strenuous but submaximal work for 3-1/2 min., followed by the O2 uptake during recovery. Note that the work has an O2 cost of 43 ml/kg-min, but that this level of O2 consumption is reached exponentially (cf. table 18-3 and figure 18-8), so that there is an O2 deficit before the final value is reached, paid back during recovery period. (Hermansen, 1969; used with permission)](image-url)
The highest values for oxygen debt are found when a maximum (exhausting) effort is made over a 2 or 3 minute period. Figure 18-22 shows oxygen debt as a function of work load, and figure 18-23 shows the course of oxygen consumption, oxygen debt, and lactic acid accumulation during a maximal effort lasting 3 minutes.

Figure 18-22. O2 debt increasing as the work becomes more severe, expressed as percentage of subject's maximal O2 uptake. (Hermansen, 1969; used with permission)

Figure 18-23. Cumulative increases in O2 debt and lactic acid in the blood, shown during a maximal work effort lasting 3 minutes. (Hermansen, 1969; used with permission)
Working in Space Suits

While ordinary clothing is no great burden, there is sizable extra effort involved in moving about and working in a pressurized space suit. Roth (1966) prepared a thorough analysis of this problem, as well as the mechanics of gait, the effects of variations in terrain, and the probable effect of walking in one-sixth gravity. Table 18-7 gives figures for the primary problem, the added metabolic cost (oxygen cost) of normal activities in space suits.

Table 18-7
Metabolic Cost of Space Suits
(Worn in 1 g in 1 Atm Pressure)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Heat Production</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kcal/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking on treadmill at 1.6 km/hr (0.8 mph)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light clothing</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space suit unpressurized</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space suit pressurized at 180 mm Hg (3.5 psi)</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space suit pressurized at 258 mm Hg (5.0 psi)</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting in spacecraft mockup operating switches every 5 sec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space suit unpressurized</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space suit pressurized at 180 mm Hg (3.5 psi)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Adapted from LaChance, 1964)

Data on the energy cost of moving at various speeds in Earth gravity and a simulated lunar gravity of 1/6 g are summarized in figure 18-24. This figure shows clearly that a pressurized space suit makes walking a strenuous exercise, and that walking speeds above 2 to 3 km/hr (1.2 to 1.9 mph) are probably too difficult to maintain for long. However, by the various techniques used for simulating the 1/6 g lunar gravity, it appears that progression across the moon's surface at 5 km/hr (3 mph) should be possible at reasonable cost. Further details may be found in Wortz et al. (1969) and Robertson and Wortz (1970).

Actual experience with lunar progression in Apollo 11 and 12 confirmed that the astronaut can move about without high metabolic cost. Various hopping and bouncing movements were devised to replace the usual earthly stride. During one 20-minute period late in Apollo 11, Astronaut Neil Armstrong showed a heart rate of 140 to 150 as he hurried to complete a collection of surface samples, but generally the heart rates of the four men who worked on the moon in these missions were 90 to 110 beats/min, which indicates relatively low effort.
Energy expenditure for walking in space suits at various speeds, based on O2 consumption measurements in laboratory and in simulators which partially produce effects of lunar gravity (1/6 g). (Data from Hewes, 1967; Kincaide, 1966; Robertson & Wortz, 1968)

Energy exchange data are available from the Apollo 11 mission. They are based on three different observations—heart rate, oxygen depletion from a portable reservoir, and temperature data from the water cooled garment worn under the space suit. These data are shown in figures 18-25 and 18-26.

Berry (1970) suggests that the energy data from analysis of the water cooled garment are the most reliable of the three measurements. The technique is close to direct calorimetry, and the data are similar to those shown in figures 18-6, 18-7, and 18-9 earlier in this chapter.
Figure 18–25. Cumulative totals of heat produced in walking and working on the moon for Apollo 11 commander, showing three simultaneous estimates from analyzing temperature data from water cooled suit, from depletion of O₂ from storage cylinder, and from known heart rate response of this man as a function of O₂ consumption. (Redrawn from Berry, 1970)

Figure 18–26. Data similar to those in figure 18–25, for the lunar module pilot, during his time on the lunar surface. (Redrawn from Berry, 1970)
References


Altman, P. L., Gibson, J. F., Jr., & Wang, C. C. Handbook of respiration. WADC TR 58-352, Aero Medical Laboratory, Wright Air Development Center, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, August 1958.


Work, Heat, and Oxygen Cost


Jones, R., & Taylor, C. L. Metabolic effects of work and heat in a simulated pilot's task. WADC TR 56-2, Aero Medical Laboratory, Wright Air Development Center, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, April 1956.


Robinson, S. Experimental studies of physical fitness in relation to age. *Arbeitsphysiologie*, 1938, 10, 251-323.


Zechman, F. W., Cherniak, N. S., & Hyde, A. S. Ventilatory response to forward acceleration. WADC TR 59-584, Aerospace Medical Laboratory, Wright Air Development Center, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio, September 1959.
CHAPTER 19
COMBINED ENVIRONMENTAL STRESSES

by

Raymond H. Murray, M.D.
Indiana University School of Medicine

and

Michael McCally, M.D., Ph.D.
Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory
Wright-Patterson Air Force Base

Man lives and functions in a physical environment that includes thermal, electromagnetic, and mechanical energies as well as chemical agents which affect the function of his body. In certain life situations and occupations, the physical environment may produce significant subjective responses, or strain. The energies and agents responsible for these effects are referred to as environmental stresses. Many environmental stresses, such as altitude, temperature, acceleration, vibration, noise, hypoxia, and radiation have been well studied in the laboratory and are the classic subject matter of environmental physiology. In most instances, a single environmental stress is studied as a controlled dependent variable in a specialized laboratory facility. Yet in normal circumstances, one rarely experiences exposure to a single environmental stress, but rather to an intricate interplay of several stresses. An astronaut is especially likely to experience complex environmental interactions. During reentry, he may be exposed to vibration which may alter his visual acuity; his visual performance might also be affected by simultaneous exposure to acceleration, noise, heat, and hyperoxic breathing gas mixtures, as well as prior exposure to the deconditioning effects of prolonged confinement, inactivity, and weightlessness.

Relatively few laboratory studies have described the tolerance levels, physiological effects, or performance degradation during simultaneous or sequential exposures to two environmental stresses, and fewer still have involved three or more simultaneous stresses. The available literature on combined environmental stress is summarized and discussed in this chapter. Although a

Reviewed by John P. Meehan, M.D., University of California School of Medicine.

881
A number of obvious factors have limited the study of combined environmental stress in spite of the obvious operational importance of such work. First, experimental design is exceedingly complex. The possible number of combinations and permutations of even a small set of environmental stresses is very large. Economy dictates that one select for study in the laboratory only stress combinations of particular scientific interest and relevance to a given mission, occupation, or life style. Second, this type of research requires complex experimental facilities not generally available. Finally, to assure valid conclusions, large numbers of subjects are required.

This chapter is limited to laboratory or exceptionally well-defined field studies. A number of studies of "combined stress" are available that report subject responses in an operational or field situation. The inflight data for astronauts is a case in point. These data describe the physiological responses of men exposed to a combination of weightlessness, confinement, noise, hyperoxia, radiation, and various acceleration forces. Unfortunately, in the operational setting, appropriate experimental design and controls are usually not possible, so that a response (decrease in red cell mass, for example) must be taken as a response to the environment as a whole. It is rarely possible to know which stress, or which combination of stresses, is responsible for the observed response. Operational or field studies may be useful to measure accurately the environment and so define the conditions to be simulated and studied in the laboratory. Such studies may also point up stress combinations of operational concern and thereby complement laboratory work. However, the majority of operational or field studies of environmental stress must be excluded from a consideration of combined stress interactions. Stress interaction, at present, can only be examined in specific laboratory situations where the necessary experimental design can be applied and tight control of conditions assured.

Combined Stress Interactions

The underlying hypothesis of combined stress research is that environmental factors interact in a systematic fashion which can be measured and/or predicted.

Characterization of Interaction

Environmental stress combinations may be characterized by four descriptors: (1) order of occurrence, (2) duration of exposure, (3) severity of exposure, and (4) type of interaction.

Order of Occurrence. Definitions of the pattern or temporal order of exposure to combined stresses are straightforward. Stresses are simultaneous when two or more stresses are applied concurrently; they are sequential when applied in order, one after another. Note that differing sequences may give...
different effects, and that the rate and duration of intermittency will sometimes alter effects. Stresses are complex when the pattern of application is not clearly simultaneous or sequential; this includes combinations that are both simultaneous and sequential, time varying, intermittent patterns, and other complex profiles.

Duration of Exposure. Arbitrary definitions and categorizations of combined stress durations cannot be made because of the complexities of the individual stresses as well as their interactions. The following functional definitions are suggested. Stresses may be referred to as transient when a steady-state subject response is never achieved or where physiological compensatory mechanisms are inadequate. The term sustained applies when a steady state is achieved and compensation is adequate. This refers to exposures of generally less than 24 hours. It must be understood that certain physiological responses to environmental stress, and probably to interactions involving these stresses, may take much longer periods to achieve a steady state; for example, acclimatization to heat and altitude. The term chronic denotes exposures lasting longer than 24 hours and includes continuing day-to-day exposures, such as occupational stresses.

Severity of Exposure. The determination of the severity or intensity of combined stress exposure is complicated by differing and often incompatible units of measurement of subject response. Such measurements must begin with the identification of an appropriate index (or indices) of body response, or strain. Subjective assessment can also be used as a quantitative measure of stress response. In this case, the subject is asked to describe how severe the environment was, using descriptors such as noticeable, mild, moderate, severe, very severe, and intolerable. Although simple in concept, such data are often of great utility and considerable validity. Stevens (1951) has shown that reliable and valid scales, particularly ratio scales, can be derived as a result of subjective assessment. The Cooper pilot opinion rating scale of aircraft handling and ride quality is an excellent example of the value of the subjective rating scale (Cooper, 1957). Modifications of this technique may be an important tool with which to rank the relative severity of combined stress environments. The use of criteria based upon diminished ability to perform a particular task which is relevant to the mission under study is also a particularly sensitive and useful index of response.

Type of Interaction. Environmental stresses may, hypothetically, interact in three general ways. When stresses act by addition, the physiological effect of a combination of environmental stresses is equal to the linear sum of the single effects of the stresses when presented separately. When synergism is involved, the effect of the combination is greater than the simple sum of the effects of each stress alone. Antagonism provides a total effect which is less than the linear sum of the single effects. Dean and McGlothlen (1964) describe in detail the complexities of the analysis of such interactions, including the use of analysis of variance models.

The criteria used to define a stress effect or endpoint must always be specified. A combination of stressors that is synergistic by one criterion might be
antagonistic by another. For example, $+G_z$ acceleration and $G_y$ rotation might be synergistic or additive with regard to heart rate but antagonistic with regard to peripheral light loss. Antagonistic interactions should be considered for the development of new protective devices.

The definitions of the words interactive and additive are tied to experimental design and analysis. For example, using three stresses, altitude (A), noise (N), and heat (H), assume the likely use of an experimental design based on Analysis of Variance (ANOVAR).

**ADDITION**

$$\text{E}_{A,N,H} = \text{E}_A + \text{E}_N + \text{E}_H$$

**SYNERGISM**

$$\text{E}_{A,N,H} > \text{E}_A + \text{E}_N + \text{E}_H$$

**ANTAGONISM**

$$\text{E}_{A,N,H} < \text{E}_A + \text{E}_N + \text{E}_H$$

Where:

- $\text{E}_{A,N,H}$ = Total effect of altitude, heat, noise
- $\text{E}_A$ = effect altitude alone
- $\text{E}_N$ = effect noise alone
- $\text{E}_H$ = effect of heat alone

Such a hypothetical ANOVAR model (after Dean & McGlothlen, 1964) implies that a set of scores by a single subject will be made up of the grand mean, the three main effects of the individual stresses, four interaction terms, and an error term. Groups of subjects and time or order are additional sources of variance and add additional terms to the equation. The hypothesis of additivity is checked by testing the interaction terms of the ANOVAR model for statistical significance. ANOVAR assumes additivity, and, if this assumption is met, the interaction effects will be zero, that is, there will be no interaction. Thus, in an ANOVAR model, when addition of effects is present, there is no interaction. Presence of statistically significant interaction terms contradicts the addition of effects hypothesis, and the remaining possibilities of synergism or antagonism are tested by examining the effect of the single stresses not in combination.

**Tolerance to Combined Stress**

In exposure to most environmental stresses, tolerance is defined by certain unique subjective or objective criteria which determine the endpoint of the
Combined Environmental Stresses

exposure; for example, central light loss during +Gz acceleration or rapidly rising body temperature in heat. In general, a review of the available literature (discussed later) suggests that tolerance to a particular stress combination is determined essentially by that stress which, if taken alone, would be the most severe. Rather than define a new tolerance endpoint, it has usually been found easier to ask, “How does a second stress alter the tolerance to a primary stress?” This approach provides a useful construct for organizing the available literature into sets of combined environmental stresses: primarily acceleration, or primarily heat, etc. It is usually possible to ascertain in a combined stress study which stress was the most severe and which stress was the one of primary interest to the authors. The literature review presented in this chapter is organized in this manner.

Interactions of Environmental Stresses with Host Factors

Environmental physiology describes the interaction of physical environments with the subject or host in terms of the response or modification of the host. It is ordinarily understood that the initial condition of the host is that of complete normality: a healthy young adult (male) with average physical characteristics, unacclimatized and physically fit, rested, relaxed, lightly clothed, unrestrained, without protective equipment, drugs or other countermeasures, and without task assignments. In real life situations, this is rarely the case, and in space missions, few, if any, of these conditions may obtain. However, any deviation from this “normal” state will modify the host and potentially alter, and perhaps determine, the effects of environmental stress. It is important to separate clearly what factors are considered to reside in the host. For example, exercise, though often considered to be an environmental stress, is in fact a subject state or host factor. Exercise is part of a continuum of activity ranging from strict inactivity, as in plaster cast immobilization, to maximal rhythmic exertion. Other factors often considered environmental stresses, but which should be considered host factors, are changes in blood or body fluid volume, change in sleep pattern, and changes in mental set, as in anxiety. The distinction between host and environmental factors are necessary for a correct definition of the subject matter of combined environmental stress.

The subject or host can be represented as the summation of all the physiological and psychological factors which are relevant to the environmental conditions under consideration. The descriptors in figure 19-1 are a set of factors which must be defined to characterize the host. Some of these are relatively fixed, such as height, weight, and age. Others, such as physiological, psychological, and social factors, may vary over wide ranges and profoundly alter the response of the human organism to its environment.

Of special importance for space flight problems is “task loading,” which includes all of those demands for sensory, higher mental, and motor performance required for a particular mission. The requirement to perform a complex maneuver in a high performance vehicle while responding to multiple communication channels and simultaneously monitoring several visual displays, for example, may alter the response to environmental stress. Task loading is arbitrarily included for the purposes of this discussion under reciprocative
factors. It represents a segment of the continuous interaction between a subject and his environment.

Figure 19-1. Three dimensional representation of the variables which must be controlled or otherwise defined and specified when conducting environmental research. (Modified from Rohles, 1965)

Complexity of the Problem

A study of combined environmental stresses is complex in all its aspects. Definition of each of the environments of concern is sometimes difficult; independent and simultaneous measurements of each environment of the pertinent combination may prove impossible under field conditions. The temperature, humidity, noise, acceleration, and vibration loads to be encountered by the pilot of a particular aircraft on a specific mission are usually not available to either the research scientist or systems designer. The problem of combined environmental stress can only be approached operationally, by studying the specific subsets or combinations which are peculiar to specific mission phases.

A related problem is the limitation of simulator capability. The production of combined stress environments in the laboratory requires the use of complex simulators, available, in general, only in large governmental or industrial facilities. Such facilities are complicated and expensive to operate and limit the scope of potential work in this field. Presently operating combined stress facilities are discussed later.
Another related complexity in the area of combined stress research is the problem of simulation versus representation. For example, a study of heat, noise, and vibration devised to simulate a real vehicle-mission combination would usually generate specific data which are not often representative of the general problem of heat, noise, and vibration. Specificity reduces generalizability. Combined stress studies are generally so large in scope, expensive to conduct, and difficult to replicate that this aspect of the problem becomes very complex. It is obvious that no general body of scientific information about combined stress interactions will develop until relatively nonspecific "representational" simulations are examined.

Another difficult problem in this area is in the selection of measures. A physiological measure appropriate to one environment may be relatively meaningless in another. For example, peripheral light loss, useful in acceleration research, has relatively little meaning in thermal stress. It can be fairly stated that, until a major group of environmental stresses is examined in all possible combinations using the same measures (preferably in the same subjects or comparable populations), no significant progress will be made in combined stress physiology. Only two or three such programs have ever been considered. A closely related problem concerns human performance measures. Do environmental stresses in combination affect the subject's performance more severely than when applied singly? To answer this question, a battery of performance tests is required which is specific, valid, and equally pertinent to a number of stresses. A task which is sensitive and specific for vibration may be insensitive to heat stress. The development of such a performance battery is difficult and apparently has not yet been successfully achieved. Another important problem with the use of performance measures is the variability between and among subjects, which tends to make tests insensitive to small effects. Performance measurements must be developed that relate directly and monotonically to stress intensity, that are generalizable to multiple environments, and that are valid and sensitive measures of operationally relevant tasks. Recent work suggests that certain parameters of a linear human operator model, including the describing function and the remnant term, may represent such measures (Jex & Allen, 1970).

**The Use of Models**

The use of mathematical and analog models has recently been adapted from engineering practice to the study of physiological systems and offers a number of advantages in handling the complexities involving combined stress studies. Modeling activities allow for the explicit definition of simplifying assumptions of the system in question, incorporate the best available information concerning the system, and, when operated, point out data needed to further refine the model, thereby suggesting new experiments. Good electrical analog models are available for human thermal regulation and for cardiovascular responses to positive acceleration. Attempts to combine such models should allow predictions to be made and hypotheses phrased concerning the interaction of heat and acceleration (particularly on the cardiovascular system). Human psychomotor performance is now being modeled with similar techniques.
Approach to the Study of Combined Environmental Stress

Units

Each environmental stress must be defined and quantified in appropriate measurement units and its pattern and time profile described in detail. A complex environment can sometimes be described by correlating secondary factors with the primary stress, and an integrated unit of stress devised which represents the complete environment. For example, in considering heat stress, temperature can be weighted with humidity and airflow to give an "effective temperature." Unfortunately, practical, comprehensive stress units have not been standardized for most environments.

Simple Relationships

When the effect of an environmental stress is defined in terms of the evoked physiologic response or strain, various degrees of severity of another stress can be evaluated by their effect on the primary stress-strain pattern. These effects can be represented in two general ways.

1. Change in the amplitude of response of the index of strain. For example, an increase in effective temperature of 90°F will be associated with a certain increase of heart rate. Increments of $+G_z$ stress will alter this heart rate response, and the interaction of heat and acceleration can be presented in terms of increments of heart rate above control values. This can also be represented by percent change above control heart rate rise.

2. Alteration of the rate of change of a physiological variable, but not the final amplitude. A temporal relationship can also be shown by demonstrating alteration in time to reach a definitive or arbitrary endpoint; the time-to-peripheral light loss during $+G_z$ stress is shortened as effective temperature increases.

Scaling

Study of the interaction of environments is complicated by the inability to relate the different units and scales used to quantify the various environments. Effects of environmental stress can, however, be added or related to each other quantitatively by appropriate scaling or normalization procedures. Each stress can be represented in terms of the degree of strain or physiologic response it produces in a subject. The scaling of a particular set of environmental stresses is a unique characterization of these individual stresses, and demands the detailed quantification of each environment being considered, and careful definition of the index of strain to be used. Because physiological systems are independent and nonlinear, strain values will hold only for the particular interactions which have been defined.

Choice of Indices of Strain

There are two prime considerations determining the choice of suitable indices of strain for evaluating environmental interactions. First, the
physiological or performance measure to be used must be affected measurably by each of the environments under study. Secondly, the measurement methods must be technically compatible with the constraints imposed by particular conditions in which the study will be carried out. In applied studies, indices would be chosen to provide operationally pertinent information regarding tolerance limits and performance decrements. The indices to be used must be individualized for each environmental interaction and for the test conditions in which the study will be done. Consideration must be given to defining common physiological pathways in the mechanism of action of each stress. This concept is illustrated in figure 19-2. For example, the interaction of heat and vibration can be evaluated by using peripheral vascular responses as well as by changes in respiration, since each environment affects both of these indices. Under space flight conditions, peripheral vascular responses may not be determinable but ventilation changes could be measured accurately. On the other hand, sweat rate would not be a suitable index since it is probably not affected by short-term vibration.

Combined Stress Data

The data on physiological and performance responses of man and animals to combinations of environmental stress which are available in the literature are presented in tables 19-1 through 19.9. In search for an organizing principle, it was felt that in most instances the authors expressed a clear interest in one of the stresses or that one of the stresses was clearly prepotent. For example, Martin and Henry (1951) asked how heat exposure affects $+G_z$ acceleration tolerance, as defined by peripheral light loss. These authors' primary interest in acceleration stress is revealed in their choice of tolerance measures. If interested primarily in heat, they might have used rate of rise of rectal temperature as their criterion; if interested in combined stress effects, they would have chosen both peripheral light loss and rectal temperature responses, and discussed their results with regard to both criteria. For this reason, the tables are organized by reference to the “primary” stress, for example, COMBINED STRESS, PRIMARILY ACCELERATION.

In a subject as complex as this, no literature survey is complete. There is no generally recognized descriptor for combined or multiple environmental stresses. The authors, therefore, urge that, in the future, investigators use the keywords “multiple environmental stresses” or “combined stress” in the title or in the list of index or keywords of any relevant paper. At present, it is impossible to retrieve, by hand or computer, studies dealing with combinations of environmental stresses. For example, heat and acceleration combinations are found by screening references dealing with each stress singly, a large retrieval.

Facilities for Study of Combined Stress

Facilities available in the United States for combined environment simulation have recently been surveyed and reviewed by Tierney (1969). In his article, primary attention is given to engineering tests of systems and hardware. In the last 10 years, Tierney was able to find about 100 papers published on combined
Figure 19-2. Common mechanisms of action of selected environmental stress. (Modified from Webb, 1964)
environment testing from numerous facilities throughout the United States. Only a limited number of man-rated or potentially man-rated combined stress facilities are available. All are in government laboratories or in the research divisions of major aircraft companies. A number of single stress human facilities are available to which additional environments have been or could be added. For example, small shakers (vibration devices) have been added to human centrifuges at the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Ames Research Center, the Naval Air Development Center, Johnsville, Pennsylvania, and Deutsches Forschungs und Versuchsanstalt für Luft und Raumfahrt, Bad Godesberg, Federal Republic of West Germany. However, in none of these cases was the original centrifuge arm designed for the added vibration capability, and the shaker forces and displacements on these devices are very limited and well below most human tolerance levels. Many human thermal stress facilities include control of humidity and air motion in addition to temperature and are not included in this enumeration of combined stress facilities. Table 19-10 is a summary of the major combined environmental stress test facilities presently operating in this country.

It must be noted regarding the table that the authors did not conduct a survey, and there may be other facilities with combined stress capabilities unknown to them. To the best of the authors' knowledge, however, only two facilities presently operating were established for the sole purpose of studying combined environmental stress: the Combined Stress Test Facility, Boeing Corporation, Seattle, Washington, and the Dynamic Environment Simulator, Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio. These are the only two facilities including moving-base (acceleration and/or vibration) capabilities.
### Table 19-1
Combined Stress – Primarily Acceleration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and hypoxia</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>G tolerance (peripheral light loss)</td>
<td>Hypoxia decreases +Gz tolerance</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Burgess (1958), Greeley (1945)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration (angular) and hypoxia</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Nystagmus</td>
<td>Hypoxia causes smaller change in nystagmus than apprehension</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Newberry et al. (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and heat/cold</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>G tolerance (peripheral light loss)</td>
<td>Heat lowers G tolerance. Cold raises G tolerance</td>
<td>Additive, synergistic</td>
<td>Martin &amp; Henry (1951)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>G tolerance (peripheral light loss)</td>
<td>Heat lowers G tolerance</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Burgess (1959)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and heat/cold</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Survival rates</td>
<td>High environmental temperature decreases and cold increases the tolerance of mice to positive acceleration</td>
<td>Additive, antagonistic</td>
<td>Chae (1957)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration (vertical tilt) and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Heart rate, forearm blood flow, blood pressure, rectal temperature</td>
<td>Heat lowers tilt table tolerance. Heart rate is higher, blood pressure is lower, and syncope is more common in heat</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Lind, Leitch &amp; McNicol (1968)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Biosastronautics Data Book.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acceleration and cold</th>
<th>Rats</th>
<th>Survival time</th>
<th>Hypothermia (22.5°C) improves tolerance to +G₂ at levels of 30 – 40 G</th>
<th>Antagonistic</th>
<th>Stiehm (1963)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Peripheral light loss</td>
<td>Prior heat stress producing minimal dehydration (1 – 3% body weight) decreases acceleration tolerance 15 – 18%</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Taliaferro, Wemper, &amp; White (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and dehydration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Peripheral light loss</td>
<td>Prior heat stress producing dehydration decreases acceleration tolerance</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Greenleaf et al. (1966)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration and hyperoxia</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Pulmonary function tests</td>
<td>Breathing 100% O₂ during acceleration does not interact with tolerance but does ameliorate acceleration-induced atelectasis*</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Hendler (1963), Alexander et al. (1966)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Numerous studies available on this combination. See Gillies et al., (1965)
### Table 19–2
Combined Stress – Primarily Vibration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and acceleration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Whole body mechanical impedance</td>
<td>Vibration (+0.4 G at 2.5 – 20 Hz) combined with linear acceleration (1, 2 1/2, and 4 G) produces increased stiffness, reduces damping, and increases energy transmission to internal organs</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Vyukul (1968)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and acceleration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Compensatory tracking task</td>
<td>Vibration (0 – +3.0 G at 11 Hz) combined with linear acceleration (1 – 3.5 G) produces performance decrements not significantly different from vibration alone</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Dolkas &amp; Stewart (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and heat</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td>Incidence of mortality (62%) is greater after 20 min exposure to heat (46.1°C) and random vibration (5 – 800 Hz 17.5 G RMS) in combination than singly</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Megel et al. (1962)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and hypoxia</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td>Mortality of restrained rats increases directly with hypoxia (altitude 8 – 18 000 ft) during +G_x vibration (60 Hz 15 G peak acceleration)</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Megel et al. (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and pressure breathing</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Mortality, tissue change</td>
<td>Pressure breathing (4 in. H_2O) reduces mortality of mice exposed to 10 min of 20 Hz random vibration (7.07 G RMS)</td>
<td>Antagonistic</td>
<td>Brady (1966)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and acceleration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Visual performance</td>
<td>(+3.85 G_x) acceleration improves the visual performance decrement associated with (11 Hz ±G_x) vibration</td>
<td>Antagonistic</td>
<td>Clarke et al. (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and carbon dioxide</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>+G_z vibration (40 Hz) and increased inspired CO_2 both increase ventilation but are not additive in combination</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Young et al. (1966)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and noise</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Physiological measures, performance</td>
<td>+G_2 vibration (semirandom) (0.16 - 0.4 RMSg) and noise (~112 dB) have no significant effect on multiple performance measures or physiological responses in simulated helicopter flight</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Dean et al. (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and noise and temperature</td>
<td>Primate, man</td>
<td>Sleep-staged EEG, performance</td>
<td>+G_2 vibration (0.7 RMS), noise (102 dB), and heat (90°F) in combination produce significant sleep disturbance and performance decrement (shock avoidance)</td>
<td>Not examined</td>
<td>Harris et al. (1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and noise</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance (compensatory tracking and reaction time)</td>
<td>Noise (100 dB) and vibration (0.25 +G_2, 6 Hz) produce additive decrement in vertical component of compensatory tracking task</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Harris &amp; Shoemaker (1970)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and drugs</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Mortality, tissue damage</td>
<td>Mortality is decreased significantly by CNS depressant and increased by CNS stimulants</td>
<td>Not examined</td>
<td>Ashton &amp; Roberts (1965)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Selected reference, other studies available on this topic.*
Table 19–3
Combined Stress – Primarily Noise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noise and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance task battery</td>
<td>Noise (90 dB) and heat (87°ET) produce no significant performance decrement, singly or in combination</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Viteles et al. (1946)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise and heat and sleep deprivation</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance (tracking and serial reaction)</td>
<td>See table 19–4</td>
<td>Heat and noise — none; noise and sleep deprivation — antagonistic</td>
<td>Broadbent (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise and vibration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance, physiological measures</td>
<td>See table 19–2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dean et al. (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise and vibration and heat</td>
<td>Primate</td>
<td>Sleep (EEG), performance</td>
<td>See table 19–2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Harris et al. (1971)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration and noise</td>
<td>Man (adolescent boys)</td>
<td>Sensitivity to vibration</td>
<td>Results vary widely with time of day and work experience with vibration. In general, vibration causes decrease in sensitivity. Exposure to noise and vibration varies but prolonged exposure to both causes a greater decrease in sensitivity</td>
<td>Not examined</td>
<td>Tsyasar (1965)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 19-4
Summary of the Effects of Heat, Noise and Sleep Deprivation on Performance (the Serial Reaction Test) Modified From Broadbent (1963)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stress</th>
<th>Speed</th>
<th>Errors</th>
<th>Place in Work Period Where Effect Appears</th>
<th>Effect of Incentives</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heat</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Increased</td>
<td>Throughout</td>
<td>(No effect)*</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>No effect**</td>
<td>Increased**</td>
<td>End**</td>
<td>Impairs performance</td>
<td>(None)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep deprivation</td>
<td>Reduced**</td>
<td>No effect**</td>
<td>End**</td>
<td>No effect or improved performance</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reduced effect (antagonistic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19-5
Combined Stress – Primarily Bed Rest or Immersion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bed rest and hypoxia</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Orthostatic tolerance, blood volume, metabolism</td>
<td>Hypoxia (10,000 ft simulated altitude) prevents changes in red cell mass and calcium metabolism associated with bed rest</td>
<td>Antagonistic</td>
<td>Lamb (1966), Stevens, et al. (1966), Lynch et al. (1967)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bed rest and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tilt table tolerance</td>
<td>Heat (95°C) and 48 hr of bed rest produced greater orthostatic intolerance in combination than alone</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>DiGiovanni &amp; Birkhead (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bed rest and water immersion (sequential)</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tilt table tolerance</td>
<td>Not defined. Subjects at bed rest at night and immersed by day to simulate deconditioning effects of prolonged weightlessness</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Graybiel &amp; Clark (1961), Torphy (1966)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bed rest/immersion and acceleration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tolerance to $+G_Z$, $+G_Y$ acceleration</td>
<td>Tolerance to $+G_Z$ slow onset acceleration is reduced by prior bed rest or immersion exposure</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Miller (1965), Benson et al. (1962)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immersion and acceleration (sequential)</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tolerance to $+G_Z$ acceleration</td>
<td>$+G_Z$ tolerance reduced in one subject after 5 days of water immersion</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Graveline &amp; Balke (1961)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19-6
Combined Stress – Primarily Cold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold and acceleration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See table 19-1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stiehm (1963), Martin &amp; Henry (1951), Chae (1957)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold and hypoxia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See table 19-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Luft (1950), Brown (1952), Bullard (1961a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold and radiation</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Survival time</td>
<td>Both neutron (220 rad) and X ray (430 rad) decrease survival time of rats at -20°C</td>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>Newsome &amp; Kimeldorf (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold and radiation</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Survival time, lesions</td>
<td>The reduced longevity, retarded growth, cataracts, and skin ulcers seen after 500 R X irradiation is not altered by 3–hr daily exposure to 32°F (0°C)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Gambino et al. (1964), Trujillo (1962)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold and alcohol</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Skin and rectal temperature, heat production</td>
<td>Alcohol does not significantly alter thermal responses to 8 hr sleep in cold (20°C)</td>
<td>Not examined</td>
<td>Andersen et al. (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold and hypoxia</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Survival time</td>
<td>Survival time in 100% O₂ normally &gt; 120 hr is reduced to &lt; 72 hr in cold (4°C)</td>
<td>Not examined</td>
<td>Gold &amp; Kolenzentsky (1968)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 19-7
Combined Stress – Primarily Heat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heat and acceleration</td>
<td>Man, mice</td>
<td>Tolerance, survival</td>
<td>See table 19–1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Martin &amp; Henry (1951), Chae (1957), Burgese (1959), Taliaferro et al. (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and hypoxia</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td></td>
<td>See table 19–8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Westler &amp; Frank (1950), Hale (1960)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and vibration</td>
<td>Man, primate</td>
<td>Sleep EEG</td>
<td>Combination of heat (90°F) and sinusoidal vibration reduces amount of REM sleep</td>
<td></td>
<td>Harris et al. (1971) (1970)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and vibration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td></td>
<td>See table 19–2</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Megel et al. (1962)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and noise</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance (tracking and monitoring), heart and respiration rates, body and skin temperature</td>
<td>Temperatures as high as 110°F (50% RH) and noise (110 dB) produce no significant degradation in performance or physiological thermal equilibrium</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Deal et al. (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and radiation</td>
<td>Dogs</td>
<td>Rectal temperature thyroid function</td>
<td>X irradiated (270 – 1800 R) dogs are unable to maintain thermal balance during 8 hr exposure to (105°F) heat</td>
<td>Not identified</td>
<td>Thomsen et al. (1969)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and microwave radiation</td>
<td>Dogs</td>
<td>Rectal temperature</td>
<td>Dogs surviving the lethal effects of X irradiation were less able to tolerate the thermal effects of microwaves</td>
<td>Not identified</td>
<td>Michaelson et al. (1967)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and hyperoxia</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Survival time, histopathology</td>
<td>Survival time in 100% O₂ normally ≥ 120 hr was reduced to &lt; 72 hr in heat (34°C)</td>
<td>Not identified</td>
<td>Gold &amp; Kozinitsky (1968), Gold et al. (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat and vibration</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rectal temperature</td>
<td>Rectal temperature (T_R), rose in proportion to degree of heat stress. Vibration (up to 15 G) lowered T_R. Combined stress interacted by synergism: T_R rose in proportion to degree of vibration stress</td>
<td>Synergistic</td>
<td>Megel, Keating, &amp; Stern (1961)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19–8
Combined Stress – Primarily Hypoxia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and heat and noise</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Performance (compensatory tracking), heart rate, respiration, rectal temperature</td>
<td>Heat (105°F), noise (110 dB white noise), and hypoxia (12 000 ft equiv.) studied in pairs or all three together show additive interactions</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Dean, McGlothlen, &amp; Monroe (1964) a,b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and cold</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tolerance time, peripheral light loss</td>
<td>Rapid collapse and delayed recovery</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Luft (1950), Brown (1952), Bullard (1961b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and acceleration</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tolerance time, peripheral light loss</td>
<td>Hypoxia decreases +G&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt; tolerance</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Greeley (1945), Gauer (1960), Burgess (1958)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and heat</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>Heat (49°C) and hypoxia (PO&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt; 100 mm Hg) increase heart rate at 15&quot; exposure 10 and 7 bpm respectively and 17 bpm when combined. No significant interaction is seen in other variables (skin and rectal temp., blood pressure, ventilation, and oxygen consumption). Initial synergistic interaction becomes antagonistic after 30 min</td>
<td>Synergistic and antagonistic</td>
<td>Wezler &amp; Frank (1950), Hale (1960)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and radiation</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Tolerance (survival)</td>
<td>Prior whole body X irradiation improves survival rates for acute 25— to 30 000—ft altitude exposure</td>
<td>Antagonistic</td>
<td>Newsom &amp; Kimmel-dorff (1960)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and cold</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Shivering, heart rate, oxygen consumption</td>
<td>Hypoxia (10% inspired O₂) during cold (5°C) inhibits shivering and lowers heat production</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Luft (1950), Brown (1952), Bullard (1961b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and vibration</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td>Mortality of restrained rats increases directly with hypoxia (8— to 18 000—ft altitude) during +Gₓ vibration (60 Hz 15 G peak acceleration)</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Megel (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and alcohol</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Visual acuity, performance</td>
<td>Combined effect of hypoxia and alcohol greater than simple sum of the (decreased) acuity produced by each</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Bietti &amp; Giardini (1950), Newman (1949)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and carbon monoxide</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Tolerance time</td>
<td>Small amounts of CO reduce tolerance to hypoxia</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Armstrong (1952)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and hypobaria</td>
<td>Rat red cells</td>
<td>Osmotic fragility</td>
<td>Under constant pressure, hypoxia increases RBC osmotic fragility. Under constant PO₂, hypobaria increases osmotic fragility but hypoxia and hypobaria are independent and do not interact</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Bernardini (1969)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and alcohol</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Psychomotor performance</td>
<td>Hypoxia and alcohol combined are additive</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Klein et al. (1966)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and carbon monoxide</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Gillies (1965)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia and alcohol</td>
<td>Man</td>
<td>Flicker fusion frequency</td>
<td>Hypoxia (altitude equivalent 10 000 ft) and the ingestion of alcohol each diminish flicker fusion frequency. The effect of the combined stresses is approximately the sum of the individual effects</td>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Rosketh &amp; Lorenzen (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stresses</td>
<td>Test Animal</td>
<td>Measures</td>
<td>Effect**</td>
<td>Interaction</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and acceleration</td>
<td>Rats, Mice</td>
<td>Survival, histopathology</td>
<td>Chronic acceleration improves radiation tolerance, acute acceleration degrades acceleration tolerance</td>
<td>Variable, complex</td>
<td>Casey et al. (1967), Davydov et al. (1965, 1966), Ivanov et al. (1963), Montgomery et al. (1964), Pinchuk et al. (1958), Taylor (1960), Zelmer et al. (1963)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and decompression</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Survival</td>
<td>No difference in acute survival of radiation when decompressed from air or oxygen environments. 30 d. survival less in oxygen breathing animals</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Carker et al. (1963), Clemedson et al. (1955), Furry (1964)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and cold</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Survival, tissue oxygen tension, histopathology</td>
<td>Cold exposure (0°C) has no significant effect on radiation induced histopathology</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Gambino et al. (1964), Konstantinova (1962), Trujillo et al. (1962)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and heat</td>
<td>Dogs</td>
<td>Rectal temperature</td>
<td>Both whole body and local thyroid irradiation (7 yr prior to heat) produce measurable changes in thermoregulation response to heat stress</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and hypoxia</td>
<td>Rats</td>
<td>Survival, hematology</td>
<td>Hypoxia, both acute and chronic, is radioprotective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and hyperoxia</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>A large literature indicates the effects of radiation are enhanced by oxygen-rich atmospheres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation (ionizing) and radiation (microwave)</td>
<td>Dogs</td>
<td>Survival, hematology</td>
<td>Mortality is greater after combined X ray and microwave exposure than singly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and vibration</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Histopathology</td>
<td>Damage to all nuclei and chromosomes produced by both radiation and vibration, but interaction of the two stresses is variable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Not specified**
  - Thomsen et al. (1969)

- **Antagonistic**
  - Devik (1954), Lindop & Rotblat (1965), Newsom & Kimmel-dorf (1954), Wright & Shewell (1965)

- **Synergistic**
  - Benjamin & Peyser (1964), Livshits (1964)

- **Additive**
  - Michaelson et al. (1963), Thomsen et al. (1967)

- **Variable**
  - Gaydamakin et al. (1966), Ganshina (1961), Damin (1967), Short et al. (1967)
Table 19–9 (Continued)
Combined Stress – Primarily Radiation*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stresses</th>
<th>Test Animal</th>
<th>Measures</th>
<th>Effect**</th>
<th>Interaction</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radiation and vibration and acceleration</td>
<td>Mice</td>
<td>Histopathology of bone marrow cell nuclei</td>
<td>Damage to cell nuclei and chromosome pattern by radiation is reduced by prior acceleration and vibration singly or in combination</td>
<td>Variable (depending on sequence of treatment)</td>
<td>Arsenova et al. (1965)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*There is an extensive literature on the combined effects of ionizing radiation and other environmental stresses, which has recently been reviewed by Livshits (1964, 1966).

**Little comparison of results across studies is possible due to lack of uniformity of type radiation, dose units, types of response studied, type of animal, etc. No attempt is made in this table to specify the nature of the radiation exposure.
### Table 19-10
Major Combined Environmental Stress Test Facilities in the U.S.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name, Organization, Location</th>
<th>Environments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Microwave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Environment Simulator (DES), USAF Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined Environment Facility (CEF), USAF Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic Hazards Research Unit (THRU) USAF Aerospace Medical Research Laboratory, Wright-Patterson AFB, Ohio</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined Stress Test Facility, Boeing Corp., Seattle, Washington</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References

Alexander, W. C., Sever, R. J., & Hoppin, F. G., Jr. Hypoxemia induced in man by sustained forward acceleration while breathing pure oxygen in a five pounds per square inch absolute environment. *Aerospace Medicine*, 1966, 37, 372-378.


Combined Environmental Stresses


Stevens, S. S. Effects of noise and vibration on psychomotor efficiencies. OSRN #32, National Research Council, Harvard Psycho-Acoustics Laboratory, 1941.


Vykukal, H. C. Dynamic response of the human body to vibration when combined with various magnitudes of linear acceleration. Aerospace Medicine, 1968, 39, 1163-1166.


**Additional Reading**


Pepler, R. D. Warmth and lack of sleep: Accuracy or activity reduced. *Journal of Comparative Physiological Psychology*, 1959, 52, 446-450.


CHAPTER 20
AEROSPACE VEHICLE WATER-WASTE MANAGEMENT

by

Joseph N. Pecoraro
National Aeronautics and Space Administration

The collection and disposal of human wastes, such as urine and feces, in a spacecraft environment, must be performed in an aesthetic and reliable manner to prevent degradation of crew performance. This is a difficult task because the equipment must be designed for use by a human operator in a weightless state, and biological contamination must be prevented. The design of this equipment is further complicated by the usual requirement for minimum size, weight, and power. An artificial force must be created to direct the feces and urine to the appropriate collection receptacles, thus preventing possible spacecraft contamination. One method of providing the force required for waste collection consists of drawing air from the cabin into the collection device so that flatus and fecal odors will not escape into the spacecraft.

The waste management system controls, transfers, and processes materials such as feces, emesis, food residues, used expendables, and other wastes. Control and transfer of urine, condensate, and water from personal hygiene and its reclamation is considered a waste management function.

Aerospace vehicle waste management systems do not exist as separate entities; they are a combination of various techniques designed into hardware for the collection of urine, feces, and waste preservation and disposal and/or recovery of materials such as water, air, etc. For any system, the chosen technique must be physiologically and psychologically acceptable to the crew and provide maximum equipment effectiveness.

Research and development of waste management systems for aerospace vehicles began in 1958 (Ingram, 1958; Des Jardins et al., 1960). This work demonstrated the performance of various techniques for collecting, transporting, storing, and disposal of wastes on missions up to 120 days. The Project Mercury,


915
Gemini, and Apollo astronauts were provided with relatively simple equipment, which was adequate for these relatively short missions. Since 1966, emphasis has been placed upon the development of equipment for longer missions, which may require the collection and recovery of usable products from human wastes.

Requirements

Aerospace waste includes all of the items that must be separated from the crew to prevent biological contamination. The items generally classified as wastes are: urine, feces, wipes, wash water, food containers, and debris. The composition and quantity of these wastes are not constant; they are a function of variables such as the individual, his diet, and the mission. Fortunately, the exact composition is less important than the quantity—at least from a design standpoint. The typical composition and nominal quantity of these wastes is presented in table 20-1.

Table 20–1
Nominal Crewman Metabolic Balance1
(lb/man-day)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food</td>
<td>1.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>0.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquids (water)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drink3</td>
<td>4.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food preparation</td>
<td>1.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold3</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot3</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total input</td>
<td>6.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Assumes metabolic rate = 11,200 BTU/man-day and RQ = 0.87
21% of sweat (Roth, 1964)
3From potable water supply
4Composed of lung latent loss (10% of total metabolic rate) plus skin diffusion.
Wastes must be collected and transported to storage and/or recovery process equipment in such a manner that they do not contaminate the crew and the internal environment of the vehicle. In most cases wastes must also be treated during collection to avoid the production of noxious gases and microorganisms in the collector, transport lines, and storage vessels. If the wastes are to be stored onboard for an extended period of time, they should be sterilized to avoid contamination if the storage vessel fails.

Since at times the aerospace vehicle may be in a weightless state, certain techniques for collection of wastes will have to be employed. These include the application of pressure, drag, and/or manual forces. This applies to such waste as urine, feces, vomitus, and debris. Furthermore, for human waste collection, foot restraints and a body restraining belt appear to be needed to enable zero gravity operation.

Collection and Transport

Solid wastes, such as wipes, used food containers and refuse, are easily collected and transported by hand to a storage/disposal unit. The most difficult problem is collecting liquid wastes in a weightless state. This task is especially complicated by the fact that gas is usually collected with the liquids, and it must be separated to avoid gas loss and oversizing liquid storage containers.

Specifically, the collection and transport subsystem must provide the following functions:

1. Collect, treat, and store all solid and liquid wastes and collect and transfer raw urine to the water and waste disposal subsystem.
2. Eliminate odors, aerosols, and existing gases.
3. Sterilize waste matter to:
   a. Inhibit or eliminate microorganism production.
   b. Prevent production of such gases as CO$_2$, CH$_4$, H$_2$, H$_2$S, in the wastes.
   c. Prevent crew contamination if wastes escape into the living areas.

The variety of wastes and the differences in physical characteristics (volume, density, composition, etc.) and microorganism activity requires that the subsystem be flexible enough to handle wet wastes such as feces, urine, unused food, and wet cloths, as well as food containers, urine sludge (from the water reclamation subsystem), fingernail clippings, hair, vomitus, and miscellaneous debris. The nature of waste products requires that psychological and physiological factors be considered. Urine is rapidly colonized by microorganisms that degrade urea and uric acid components to toxic ammonia gas. Immediate treatment of the urine is required to eliminate the production of ammonia and to insure potability when urine is processed through the water reclamation subsystem. Other waste materials must be collected to reduce particulate matter in the atmosphere. Solid waste matter must be sterilized or treated to inhibit the growth of microorganisms so that health hazards do not
develop and gases are not generated and dispersed into the atmosphere or within storage containers.

Urine and Liquid Waste

The objective of the urine and liquid waste collection and transport subsystem is to provide a means for collecting and transporting these wastes to the water management subsystem where treating and processing are performed. The major liquid waste includes condensate water from equipment and crew and personal hygiene of body wash.

Urine. The urine collection unit must be capable of being operated either by itself or simultaneously with defecation. Acceptable seal-type urinals which provide for dumping overboard have been developed (Des Jardins et al., 1960; Miner et al., 1961). A nonsealing urinal can be used without gas loss overboard by employing a centrifugal fan to draw cabin gas into the urinal. A urine-gas separator is necessary to collect the urine and protect the fan. Tests have demonstrated that the gas flow rate required should be at least 1 cfm and the fan must be capable of developing a minimum pressure differential of 5 inches of water.

The Project Mercury and Gemini astronauts used seal-on urinals and bladder pressure to transfer urine to plastic bags, and saved it for postflight analysis. Since these were relatively short duration missions, there was no major concern about personal or vehicle contamination. The Project Apollo Command Module was provided with a urinal that resembles an aircraft relief tube, with an overboard vacuum used to assist in collection and transfer. Since the gas flow rate required to operate a relief tube is on the order of 1 cfm, the mass of gas lost overboard was substantially less than the mass penalty of a reliable urine-gas separator. Vehicles designed for mission durations longer than several weeks must minimize overboard gas loss, and therefore, can advantageously utilize a pneumatic-type urinal with a urine-gas separator.

Two types of urine-gas separators have been developed, passive separators that utilize surface tension and viscous flow to retain liquids and active separators that utilize centrifugal forces. The passive separator uses a sponge-type hydrophilic material so that the inlet mixture must flow a tortuous path, which causes the urine to collide with the sponge material. After the separation process is complete, the sponge can be (1) squeezed to transfer the urine to a storage vessel or overboard or (2) evacuated to vaporize and/or sublimate water from the urine leaving the residue in the sponge. Typical of the problems associated with passive separators are:

1. Droplets smaller than 50 μ in diameter will tend to pass through the sponge with the gas. The separator should therefore, be provided with either an agglomerating device at the inlet or a final filter at the outlet.

2. Urine, a source of many gases, requires an odor filter downstream of the separator to remove gases generated by urine on the sponge surfaces.
3. Urine residue will tend to accumulate in the sponge. The sponge must therefore, be oversized or replaceable to compensate for this loss in capacity. Wick-type separators are not recommended for application with mixtures containing heavy solutes that can precipitate and restrict capillary action. The passive or sponge-type separators do not require electric power, but they do lose interstitial gas when urine is transferred to storage or overboard.

The active or centrifugal-type separator can be designed to lose a minimum of gas with separated urine, but they require an electric motor, gas turbine, or manual drive. In these devices, separation is achieved by inducing rotational flow in a urine-gas mixture. Rotating vanes, screens, and sponges can be used for this purpose. Another approach is to impinge the mixture against the inner wall of a rotating bowl so that urine is forced against the wall. Viscous and centrifugal forces will then cause the urine to rotate with the bowl, so that a stationary impact tube can be used to pump urine out of the bowl. The gas is drawn or forced out of the bowl by pressure differences, preferably through a rotating entrainment separator or “final” filter. If the urine outlet is provided with a back pressure regulator, the separator automatically stops “pumping” when the urine-gas interface reaches the tube inlet. The urine remaining in the bowl will stay at the wall when the separator is shut off, if the wall is a hydrophilic material.

Centrifugal separators are most attractive for application where urine must be forced into a pressurized storage vessel. Theoretically, the urine or bowl velocity required is then \( \sqrt{2 g \Delta p / \rho} \). In practice, however, a higher velocity is required because probe drag creates a velocity profile between the wall and the urine-gas interface. The shaft power required to operate a centrifugal-type urine-gas separator is determined primarily by probe drag. An extremely small diameter probe will minimize peak power demand, but requires long periods of operation to empty the bowl. For minimum expenditure of energy, the probe should be sized to minimize depth of submergence, i.e., pumping rate should equal urination rate. A 0.125 inch diameter probe is sufficient for this purpose when pumping urine into a tank at 5 psig. Provisions should be made for sterilization on a regularly scheduled basis as well as water flushing after each micturition.

**Liquid Waste.** Liquid-gas separation is required for many different functions within the environmental control subsystem. Condensate collection is required for separation of carbon dioxide concentrator water from the carbon dioxide in the concentrator. A porous plate condenser/separator has been found to fulfill the requirements of the carbon dioxide concentrator. A three-passage configuration (stacked unit) is used, the first and second passages being gas and condensate, respectively (separated by a porous plate). The condensate passage is initially filled with water and maintained at a negative pressure with respect to the gas flow passages. A centrifugal pump is employed to transfer condensate to the water management system. The third passage contains a flowing coolant to maintain the whole unit at a uniform temperature sufficient to condense water vapor on the gas side of the porous plate. The nature of the fluids being processed, the water and carbon dioxide flow rates, and equivalent weight considerations usually dictate the selection of the porous plate condenser/separator.
The use of cabin air/water separators with face wick heat exchangers is one of the more attractive techniques to condense and separate water vapor from the cabin air. These separators are essentially conventional heat exchangers with the addition of face wicking in the air outlet face. Use of a hydrophobic coating on the air side fins minimizes gas pressure drop. Water droplets transported to the heat exchanger outlet face will come into contact with strips of wicking, enter the wick, and be transported to a hydrophilic transfer disk. Capillary forces, in conjunction with a pressure differential across the disk, transfer liquid to the collection system.

Wash Water

In the Gemini and Apollo flights, cleaning of exposed body surfaces was accomplished by use of lintless wet and dry pads dispensed with each meal. The pads were made from rayon, terry-pile cloth, and measured 3.5 x 4.0 x 3/32 inches. The wet pads are treated with 5 ml of cleaning solution composed of one part Hyamine 1620, a quaternary ammonium antiseptic, to 60,000 parts distilled water. Larger pads were provided for body cleaning.

On long duration missions, whole body cleaning will be required, using a shower or bath. Such cleaning must remove the residual materials adhering to the skin from sources external to the body, as well as natural body products. Upon completion, the body must be dried to avoid losing water to the internal environment. Some early tests under weightless conditions (in USAF RC-135 zero “G” aircraft) demonstrated the wetting characteristics of water on skin to be satisfactory: sprayed water wets and adheres to the skin. In fact, water actually builds up on the skin and clings in sheets, if the droplets are not large. The use of airflow for the collection of water in a shower stall does not satisfactorily remove water from the body; only a suction system or sponge can be used for this purpose. It is estimated that a weightless shower would require the collection and processing of 1.5 liters of water.

Feces and Debris

The objective of the feces and debris collection and transport subsystem is to provide a means for collecting and transporting these wastes to the solid waste management subsystem where treating and processing are performed. Collection and transfer must be accomplished under zero gravity conditions, while the escape of solid waste to the cabin is positively prevented. The principal solid wastes include body wastes, unused food, and food containers.

Feces Collection. There are basically two techniques for collecting feces in a weightless state; namely, manual collection with a glove or bag, and pneumatic collection with the use of forced cabin gas for detachment and transfer. The glove method, as developed for Project Gemini, is a simple, low-weight technique but is psychologically objectionable and does not provide a means for preventing flatus from entering the cabin atmosphere. The technique, however, is desirable for use as an emergency fecal collector or where a pneumatic collector cannot be provided. On missions of durations longer than several days, fecal collection
equipment is required to maintain the physiological and psychological well-being of the crew.

Feces can be detached from the anus in a weightless state by gas impingement, and then carried into a collection bag or processing device by the same gas flow (e.g. Des Jardins et al., 1960; Charanian et al., 1965. & Rollo et al., 1967. The gas flow rate required is a function of equipment design; experience has shown that it should be in the range of 2 to 10 cfm. The gas is drawn through the device by a centrifugal blower and passed through a filter with activated carbon before being returned to the cabin. Recent laboratory tests have shown that:

1. Separation of feces from perineal surface was best accomplished by short duration impulse from a 30 to 40 psig air stream aimed at the fecal mass; water or air-water streams are not as effective as air alone.

2. Only small amounts of air are needed to effect separation, e.g. 0.1 to 0.2 std. 3 ft. at 30 to 40 psig, flowing at 6 cfm for 2 seconds.

Many types of fecal collection bags have been devised. None of these bags has all the characteristics desired; namely,

- High permeability for gases
- Impermeable to liquids
- High tear strength
- Low weight.

The two materials proven to be most successful so far are porous cellulose and a polyethylene; both are fabricated from 10 mil material and treated to prevent passage of liquids with pressure differentials less than 4 inches of water. Recently, these materials have been laminated with cloth to provide the tear strength desired.

Experiments have demonstrated that man can reliably defecate into a 4 inch diameter opening—provided this opening is indexed with respect to the anal perimeter. This is the minimum size recommended for a fecal collection bag or the opening in a fecal storage container.

Pneumatic collection provides for more natural defecation. In addition, it also entrains any flatus excreted. To minimize odors, the fecal collection gas should be passed through a bed of activated charcoal. If a catalytic oxidation unit is used for contamination control, the fecal collection gas should be directed to this unit for removal of any H₂, CH₄, and H₂S. Also pneumatic collection provides a suitable means for collecting vomitus.

**Overboard Dump.** Wastes can be disposed of overboard in gaseous or liquid form. Dumping of solids is not permitted to avoid imparting the wastes on the ground and/or the aerospace vehicle. Urine, of course, can be dumped as a liquid directly from a urinal or from a urine-gas separator if it is permissible to contaminate the external environment with microorganisms. Solids, however, should be incinerated or thermally decomposed.
A detailed investigation of waste incineration/decomposition is described in Dodson and Wallman (1964). This study concluded that incineration requires (1) an ignition temperature of 1000°F, (2) an energy input of at least 1 kilowatt-hours per man-day, and (3) an oxygen input of up to 0.2 pounds per man-day. Under these conditions the ash remaining is less than 10 grams per man-day and can be easily blown overboard by venting.

If oxygen is not available for incineration, the wastes can be gasified by thermal decomposition. However, this technique requires approximately 4000 BTU/ Ib of wastes at a temperature level of 1200°F. In addition, the overboard vent line must be maintained at this temperature to avoid condensation and plugging.

Incineration and thermal decomposition have not appeared to be practical for aerospace vehicles in the absence of a nuclear heat source. However, when these heat sources are available, it will most likely be advantageous to recover usable products from wastes.

Waste Processing

Since any unit capable of handling fecal matter should also dispose of the other wastes, this discussion will be primarily concerned with human waste treatment methods. Currently considered methods are: (1) biodegradation, (2) vacuum/thermal drying, and (3) incineration.

The biological treatment of wastes requires a blending device for feces since bacteria rapidly degrade only soluble and finely dispersed matter. The biological treatment process also requires waste storage facilities so that wastes of reasonably uniform composition and concentration can be treated. Thus, a minimum of two tanks are required for alternate use as storage and feed units. A pump is required to feed the waste to the activated sludge system at some fixed rate. The activated sludge system requires a minimum of one tank with components for gas-liquid contact, gas-liquid separation, and liquid-solid separation. Instrumentation must be provided for control and monitoring of the process. Other components are required for absorbing gases when storage tanks are vented and for heat rejection. This process is being used commercially in sewage treatment plants on a large scale. There has been some minor adaptation of this process for zero-gravity spacecraft use.

The basis for the vacuum drying method is that drying fecal matter to 50 percent of its water content by weight will stop microorganismic activity and allow safe storage. Two methods have been developed for drying waste matter to a bacteriostatic condition. They are:

1. Systems in which the collection and treatment (drying) functions are separated, with manual transfer required from the collection unit to the treatment unit, and thence to storage when drying is complete.

2. Systems in which the collection, treatment, and storage functions are integrated.
In the vacuum drying method, the fecal bags used for collection do not include chemicals for treatment, as is the case for Apollo mission fecal bags. The bags are placed directly into individual vacuum dryers. The number of vacuum drying containers is determined by crew size and waste processing time. If power is available, drying can be reduced by heating the wastes to 240°F and evacuating the evaporated matter to space. Fecal water is lost in this process.

Upon completion of drying, the permeable bags can be removed from the drying chambers, placed in a “Saran” bag with 1 gm of silica gel to maintain dryness, and put into a sealed storage container sized for the number of man-days required. If fecal water is to be saved, drying is accomplished by heating only. The recovered waste water is then sent to the water recovery subsystem.

Several techniques featuring integration of the collection, treatment, and storage processes are available. Two are currently being advanced to the state that will be considered prequalification for system test. A subsystem known as the “Super John” based on an earlier version of the “Dry John” has been designed and fabricated and has been extensively tested. The concepts include (1) fecal collection, and a means of direct sterilization of the seat area; and (2) dynamic phase separation by means of a rotating slinger which shreds and then spreads the feces and toilet tissue in a thin layer over the inner surface of the collection vessel where sterilization then takes place. Initial sterilization takes place at approximately 250°F for 30 minutes; then, processing is accomplished by means of thermal decomposition. Initial test results indicate approximately 3 hours at 800°F plus are required to reduce the original volume by 85 percent. At the end of this time the resultant ash closely resembles charcoal. Tests are being planned to study this ash in order to determine the feasibility of reuse of this material as a back-up regenerative filter source.

Another subsystem referred to as “Hydro John” involves similar hardware except for substitution of calrod heaters with a slurry collection area. In addition to using air, the system uses wash water for cleaning. The water also provides for development of the slurry. The water is collected for thermal decomposition of the solid waste and is returned to the waste management system after its recovery from the waste water reclamation subsystem.

It is recognized that on long-term space missions, there must be systems onboard for disposing of wet waste materials, such as feces. The feasibility of adapting the principle of high pressure wet oxidation to perform these combined operations is under consideration (Jagow & Saunders, undated).

The incineration and/or wet oxidation techniques are operated by adding waste materials, including feces, papers, and plastic food containers, to the incinerator. The waste materials can be dried and sterilized by using electrical resistance heaters and then burned with pure oxygen or oxygen diluted with nitrogen. The residue remaining is a dry, gray powder which could be easily removed.
Water Reclamation Subsystems

The water management subsystem interfaces with all of the waste management systems. Its objective is to purify waste water and to store and deliver potable water for use on demand. Water is collected for processing from the cabin heat exchanger, atmospheric condensate, and from the waste control subsystem in the form of urine, flush water, and used wash water.

The water management subsystem is constrained by biocontamination control requirements as follows: (1) the water produced must be essentially sterile and free of organic and inorganic toxic material; (2) stored water must remain sterile; (3) it must be possible to service equipment routinely without contaminating the stored water; (4) service operations, such as changing filters and removing sludge, should not contaminate the crewman or the atmosphere; (5) in the event of contamination of the water supply, there must be a means of complete and rapid system sterilization.

The major engineering criteria used in evaluating a water management subsystem are reliability, weight, power expendability requirements, recovery efficiency, and ease of integration with the thermal/humidity control and solid waste subsystems. There are many water recovery methods in various stages of development. This discussion will be limited to those which appear to be candidate subsystems for space application. Others can be assumed to be either too heavy, require too much power, or are of unproven feasibility.

Vapor Distillation Pyrolysis. In the vapor distillation and pyrolysis process waste water is catalytically oxidized in the vapor phase prior to condensation. A schematic diagram of a typical system which was used during a 90 day manned test conducted for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration by the McDonnell-Douglas Aircraft Corporation is shown in figure 20-1. Waste water is admitted into a zero gravity evaporator. The evaporator has a membrane at one end through which only vapor passes, which achieves liquid/gas separation. Residue is removed periodically from the evaporator to be further treated or stored. From the evaporator, the vapor passes into a regenerative heat exchanger where it is heated to about 1360°F. This vapor, along with some air and/or oxygen that is bled in, passes into the pyrolysis chamber where ammonia and volatile organics are oxidized. A platinum gauze catalyst and a resistive heating element are used to bring the vapor to a temperature of 1500°F. Vapor leaving the pyrolysis chamber passes to a heat exchanger. The relatively cool vapor then enters the condenser where cooling fluid condenses the vapor. Condensable and noncondensable gases, mainly nitrogen, are forced out of the condenser periodically by a piston activated by compressed air or nitrogen. Noncondensable gases are separated from the existing liquid by a static liquid/gas separator, preferably a nonwettable membrane.
Figure 20–1. Vapor distillation pyrolysis waste water recovery system.
**Vapor Compression.** Vapor compression, or compression distillation, is a process in which the latent heat of vaporization of the liquid feed is conserved. Heat transfer from the condensing vapor is accomplished by compressing the vapor so that it condenses at a high pressure and thus, a higher temperature. As a result, a temperature difference is created between the evaporator and condenser which makes the process possible. Even though the maximum vapor temperature can be as high as 100°F, the extent of breakdown of urea and other organics is low. Condensate from this process must therefore be further treated to render it potable. Filtration through activated charcoal and ion-exchange resins, and a bacteria filter sufficiently purify the condensate to make it potable.

A schematic diagram of one type of a vapor compression system is shown in figure 20-2. Urine containing a chemical disinfectant is fed to the rotating evaporator where heat from the condenser vaporizes the liquid at about 0.35 psia. The rotating evaporator-condenser is a cylinder: the inside is the evaporating surface and the outside, the condensing surface. The compressor motor, enclosed in the evapor-condenser shell, gives up heat which is utilized as makeup heat for vaporization. This replaces the heat given up by the condensing vapor to the surroundings. Vapor from the evaporating surface is compressed to about 0.70 psia and delivered to the condenser side of the drum. When condensed, a cam-activated pump forces the condensate water back to ambient pressure and out of the condensing chamber. A vacuum pump removes noncondensable gases from the condenser chamber to prevent a buildup in pressure. These gases are passed through an activated charcoal filter to the atmosphere. The urine residue collecting in the evaporator is removed periodically and stored.

![Figure 20-2. Vapor compression system for urine processing.](image-url)
Waste Recovery Subsystem

One of the first solid waste receivers to be extensively tested was the “Dry John.” This device was used by a four-man crew in a sixty day chamber test. Figure 20-3 is a schematic of hardware developed for NASA. The unit consisted of a seat, a mechanical vacuum valve, a receiving chamber, a motorized slinger rotor, exhaust lines, and bacteria and odor control (charcoal) filters.

![Figure 20-3. "Dry John" solid waste processing unit.](image)

The Dry John test reduced the water content of feces and vomitus to less than 30 percent water. At this point, there appears to be no further bacterial action, no odor, and no danger of infection. No attempt was made to salvage the water removed from the waste matter.

In actual use of the Dry John device, positive control of fecal material was obtained by a control-air flow drawn through the seat by suction created by the control-air fan. The air was directed towards the anal opening, where it turns and sweeps vertically down past the mechanical vacuum valve. In use, the fecal matter was carried down by the airstream to make contact with the spinning slinger. The slinger shredded the fecal matter and centrifuged it, in a thin layer, against the drying chamber’s inner surface. The control-air flow passed the slinger, and the slinger motor, into the exhaust line, through the vacuum valve, blower, bacteria filter, charcoal filter, and back to the cabin.
The toilet tissue used by the crew was dropped into the drying chamber. The tissue was centrifuged and mixed with the fecal matter. After use, the mechanical vacuum valve below the seat was closed and the slinger motor turned off, the vacuum valve leading to the cabin air blower closed, the cabin air blower shut off and the vacuum valve leading to the simulated space vacuum source was opened. This caused the pressure in the drying chamber to drop to nearly vacuum and to evaporate the water in the waste matter. Evaporation was relatively fast, because the wet fecal matter had spread in a thin layer over a large area. Heat was drawn into the dryer by conduction through the walls to prevent freezing before all the water was removed. The relatively large drying chamber surface area and the thin waste layer resulted in good heat transfer.

Bacterial and charcoal filters were provided on the vacuum line since the vacuum pump discharged to the atmosphere. Approximately 4 hours were required to dry a man's daily fecal matter. The single unit had the capacity to handle the wastes of the four-man test crew.

When a second crewman used the Dry John, he did not have to wait until the wastes of the previous user had completely dried. He used it immediately by shutting the high vacuum valve, starting the cabin air blower, opening the cabin air vacuum valve, starting the slinger motor and opening the mechanical vacuum valve under the seat.

A vomitus collection adapter was provided for the Dry John. This device inserts into the seat opening so that the control airflow ducts are blocked off. This causes air to be drawn through holes in the adapter for zero-g collection. The vomitus is spread along the drying chamber wall and is dried in the same manner as fecal material.

Debris

The crews of any aerospace vehicle will generate particulate matter from their bodies and their clothing. Equipment also releases particulates. In a weightless state this debris will float in the cabin until it is entrained by the ventilation gas or is separated and captured by a surface (such as a crewman's lungs). Of course, the ventilation gas and filters will remove most of the debris; however, some spaces in the cabin will tend to accumulate floating debris due to a lack of sufficient ventilation. Therefore, on long duration missions (of one or more weeks) a vacuum cleaner should be provided to collect this material—which may include viable microorganisms and the media necessary for growth.

If the vehicle is provided with a pneumatic collection system for urine and/or feces, the fan used for this purpose can also be used to draw gas into a small debris collection bag. This bag can be made from the same material as the fecal collection bag. A gas flow rate of 5 ft³/min is adequate for this purpose.
A personal grooming device—vacuum cleaner is provided on a branch of the control air circuit of the waste management unit. This collects hair, nail clippings, shaving clippings, etc. Collection bags are provided to dry and store the wastes. There are three key problem areas associated with the Dry John integrated waste management system at the present time. They are:

1. The vacuum seals in the fecal receiver are critical in minimizing the loss of cabin atmosphere.
2. Lubrication of the fecal slinger motor may be required after long exposure to hard vacuum.
3. The adsorbent beds in the fecal collector must be properly sized for odor control.

Disposal and Processing

Collected wastes must be either stored in an aesthetic and sanitary manner or dumped overboard to protect the crew from microorganisms and noxious gases. The best technique for a specific vehicle depends upon the mission duration and the onboard equipment to support a waste disposal subsystem.

Storage Onboard. Wastes can be stored satisfactorily by merely sealing them in a container. However, if the wastes contain microorganisms, water and nutrients, biological activity can occur and produce undesirable gases. The pressure developed is a function of the container ullage, water and nutrient available, types of microorganisms active, gas available, and storage temperature. Under ideal conditions, each gram of waste material could produce 10 ft$^3$ of gas. For safe storage of wastes such as urine, feces, vomitus, unused food, and debris processing prior to storage is needed to prevent or minimize biological activity. Processing methods include: (1) killing the microorganisms, (2) freezing the wastes, and/or (3) removing the water.

The urine and liquid waste collection subsystem should be disinfected periodically to prevent biological growth and production of noxious gases in this area. Several disinfectants are satisfactory for this purpose; for example, Wescodyne, a mixture containing iodine complexed with surface active agents. In most cases, the quantity of disinfectant required is less than 0.1 percent. If a disinfectant is provided for the urine collection subsystem it will also serve to stabilize the urine for onboard storage or water reclamation.

Disinfectants or germicides have also been used to prepare feces and debris for onboard storage in plastic bags. Tests have been performed to demonstrate that a 15 ml mixture of germicide, water and humectant is capable of inducing sterility in feces; however, only 10 ml of this mixture is required to conduction. In practice, the germicidal mixture is usually supplied in a collection bag; it is then distributed by breaking the small bag for ten minutes to uniformly distribute the germicide.
The most positive and reliable method for killing microorganisms is heating the wastes to a temperature above 250°F, and holding at this temperature for at least ten minutes. This technique is attractive when waste heat is available; if electric power must be used, this method usually imposes a higher weight penalty than other storage techniques. Also, heat sterilization has the disadvantages of (1) producing internal pressures higher than 30 psia, and (2) generating obnoxious odors.

Biological activity can be retarded by freezing wastes. For maximum effect, a storage temperature of 0°F is recommended. Conventional refrigeration techniques can be utilized to cool and maintain wastes at this temperature—but at the expense of electric power. Another approach is to freeze-dry the wastes in an insulated storage container, using the latent heat of water sublimation to remove the heat transferred through the insulation (Zeff et al., 1961; Rollo & Popoff 1965). This technique is very attractive for missions without water recovery because the wastes are also dried, which serves to backup the freezing technique. The disadvantages of this technique are that (1) a vacuum storage vessel is required and (2) an appreciable quantity of cabin gas is lost overboard unless a waste loading lock is provided.

The simplest and most versatile method for storing all types of waste is vacuum drying—to remove the water necessary for biological mobility and growth. This technique does not “kill” the microorganisms, but it does inactivate them sufficiently to permit storage in a plastic bag for periods of 120 days or more. The drying pressure recommended is 0.3 psia or less, so that cabin heat can be utilized for vaporization of water and other low molecular weight constituents.

References
Dodson, J., & Wallman, H. Research on a waste system for aerospace stations. AMRL TDR 64-33, May 1964.
Jagow, R. R., & Saunders, C. G. The processing of human wastes by wet oxidation for manned spacecraft. ASME Rept. 70-AVI SPT-1, undated.